This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

942
G 789
no. 41
v. 4

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY,
UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

SENIOR FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

VOL. I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:

LONGMAN, GREEN, LONGMAN, ROBERTS, AND GREEN.

1865.

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

parte of þe þridde þe þiknesse of þe erþe þorw oute is almest sexe þousand and fyue hondred myle. ffor nyne myle lakkeþ at þe leste of þat somme. So þere schal be sexe þowsand foure hondred nyne score and elleuene myle. ¶ Þan half þe þiknesse of þe erþe inward and doun riȝt is þre þowsand two hundred and fyue and fourty myle and somwhat ouer as it were half a myle. So ȝif helle is in myddel of þe erþe doun riȝt me myȝte knowe how meny myle is to helle. De orbis diuisione Augustinus de ciuitate dei li. 16. c. 8.

¶ Ca. 6.

Horþe delynge of þe worlde take hede þat þe grete see of Occean byclippeþ al þe erþe aboute and þe erþe is i deled in þre grete parties. Asia is þat oon Europa þat oþer and Affrica þe þridde. ¶ But þese þre parties beeþ not all euene and yliche moche. ffor Asia oon of þe þre conteyneþ half þe erþe and streccheþ from þe south by þe est anon to þe north and is i closed aboute wiþ þe see of Occean but he endeþ westwarde at þe grete see. Beda de natura rerum. His endes beeþ þe mouth of þe ryuer Nilus in þe souþ and of þe ryuer Thanays in þe norþe. Conte an to þe costes of Spayne and Ioyneþ to þe grete see by este and by south: and endeþ in þe ilonds Gades. Ysidorus li. 14. capitulo 4. Affrica þe þridde parte streccheþ from þe west to þe southe anon to þe coste of Egypte and þese two parties Affrica and Europa beeþ departed atwyne by þe arme of þe see. Plin. li. 3. c. p°. Þe mouthes of þe arme conteyneþ fiftene þowsand paas in lengþe and fyue þowsand paas in brede and of þis þe mouþes of þe see of myddel erþe bygynneþ and by dyuers armes spredeþ and weteþ inward þe londes. De parui orbis descripcione. Plin. li. 6. prologo in cosmagraphia.

Ca. 7.

Asia is most in quantite. Europa is lasse and þere in noumbre of peple bot Affrica is lest of alle þe þre parties boþe in place and in noumbre of peple. And þerfore somme men þat knowe men and londes counted but two parties of þe erþe onliche Asia and Europa and þei acounted þat Affrica longeþ to Europa. ffor Affrica is narwe in brede and þere dwelleþ doers corrupte ayre wylde bestes and venemous woneþ þerynne. ¶ Þerfore þey þat acounteþ Affrica þe þridde part acounteþ not by space and mesure of lengþe and brede bot by dyuers disposicions better and worse and departeþ Affrica from Europa and Asia as a sore membre þat is nouȝt from membres þat beeþ hole and sounde and in good poynt at þe beste. ¶ Also Affrica in his kynde haþ lasse space and for þe sturnesse of heuene he haþ þe more wildernes and waste londe for grete brennynge and hete of þe sonne. Þan Europa for all þe chil and greet colde þat ofte is þerynne. ffor why all þat lyueþ and groweþ may bettre endure wiþ colde þan wiþ hete bote mesure rule boþe. Plin. li. 6. Þerfore it is þat Europa norischeþ and bryngeþ forþ men huger and gretter of body myȝtier of strengþe hardier and bolder of herte and fayre of schap þan Affrica. ¶ ffor þe sonne beme al wey abideþ uppon þe men of Affrica and draweþ oute þe humours and makeþ hem short of body blak of skyn crips of heer and by drawinge oute of spirites makeþ hem cowarde of herte. Þe contrarie is of norþeren men in þe whiche colde wiþ oute stoppeþ smale holes and poorus and holdeþ þe hete wiþ ynne and so makeþ hem fatter gretter and whitter and hatter wiþ ynne and so hardier and boldere of herte. De magno medio siue mediterraneo. Plin. li. 3. c. p°.

¶ Ca. 8.

Þanne þe grete see of myddel erþe bygynneþ in þe west at Hercules pilers þere þe see of Occean of Athlant brekeþ out and makeþ þe see Gaditan. Þe lengþe of þat see is fiftene þowsand paas and þe brede fyue þowsand paas and haþ in þe riȝt side Affrica and in þe lefte side Europa and þerof springeþ þe ynnere sees. Þe endes þerof is þe water Thanay an þe norþ side and Nilus in þe souþ side. Ysidorus li. 13. Þe grete see flowynge oute of Occean turneþ into þe souþ and þan in to þe north. Ga learis þe firste greet hauen and passage of þat

Bibl. Coll. Div. Joh. Cant. (H. 1).

Day & Son, Lithrs to the Queen.

Ranulphus monke of chestre compilede this presente werke and cronicle

The firste prolog begynnethe here in to pis story of mony cronicles

Ca^m primum

After the nowble wryters of artes to whom hit was a pleasure in this life presente to fixe theire studies and laboures abowte the knowlege of thynges and vertues moralle ther ar to be enhaunsede and exaltede by merite with grete preysynges as makenge a compilacion of a thynge profitable with a swetenesse mellifluous whiche haue deserved to men succedenge thro the benefite of scripture thexcellent gestes of men precedenge. For in the contexte historialle the rewle of lyvenge and forme of vertues moralle and the meritte of manhode ziffe grete resplendence thro the diligence of cronicleres. Also the trinalle of the vertues theologicalle and quadrinalle of the cardinalle vertues to comprehende the knowlege of whom owre insufficience sufficethe not withowte the sollicitude of writers schollde transfunde to vs the memory of thynges of antiquite. For schorte lyfe a slawe sawle and a slipper memory lete vs to knawe mony thynges, oblivion schewenge helpe an enmye alle weies and a steppe moder to the memory. For in this tyme presente artes and lawes scholde falle vtterly, thexemplares of acciones spectable scholde not be patent, the ornate eloquence scholde perische, but that divine miseracion hathe provided vse of letters in to the remedy of the imperfeccion of man. What man scholde haue perfecte knowlege of Emperoures, innate of philosophres, and folowe thappostles but that the actes of writers made them nowble. Wherefore a story is the testimony of tymes, the memory of life, hauenge in possession dowerys permanent, rendwenge as thro inmortalite thynges like to perische, beynge as in a maner a conservatiue perpetualle to thynges mortalle. Wherefore y wyllenge to folowe the descripcioneres of the storye quadrinalle, and as provocate thro thexemple of theim, intende to compile a trety of the state of the yle of Breteyne excerpte of diuerse labores of Auctores, whiche labore expressede to my felawes hauenge insaciable appetite to beholde gestes of antiquite, y was movede thro the importune instance of theyme to compile some thynges of the famose storyes of the worlde from the

Mus. Brit. M S. Harl. n. 2261.

Day & Son Lith^rs to the Queen.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Introduction - - - - - - -	ix
Summary of Contents - - - - -	lxxiii
Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Liber Primus -	2

INTRODUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

Biographical notice of Higden. Materials scanty and unsatisfactory.

SCARCELY anything of the personal history of Ranulph Higden has come down to us; and indeed the scanty notices which we now possess, relating both to him and to his Chronicle, serve rather to perplex than to instruct us. A single sentence may tell all that we can say about him with certainty. He was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg's abbey in Chester, who died at an advanced age in the latter half of the fourteenth century, having compiled a *Polychronicon*, or *Universal History*, reaching to his own time; being likewise the author of some other works, which are in part extant.

His name variously written.

The name of Higden is variously written, and appears under the following forms: Higdenus, Higden, Hygden; also, Hikeden, Hykedoun, Higedenus, Higgeden; and, besides these variations, we have likewise, as it would appear, Higgenet (by a transition from Higgened) and Heggenet.[1] His Christian name is usually written Ranulphus, in English Ranulf, or Ralph; but also Radulphus, and in English Randall, Rondoll, or Rondle.[2] He is very frequently designated Ranulphus

[1] That is to say, if Randall Higgenet, the monk of Chester, author of the miracle plays, be the same person; of which, as Warton says, not without reason, "there is the greatest probability." *Hist. of Engl. Poetry* (vol. ii. p. 179, note. Lond. 1778). Their dwelling place, vocation, and age agree; their names differ but slightly. See also *Catalogue of Harl. MSS.*, *n.* 2013. Dr. Guest (*English Rhythms*, vol. ii. p. 415) observes that Hignet is still a common name at Chester.

[2] Leland, *Collect.*, t. 2, p. 368 (ed. 1770); Tanner, *Bibl.*, p. 403; Oudinus, *De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1029. We have, however, Higden's own authority for the form *Ranulphus*. In a Cambridge MS.,

Cestrensis, or Cestrensis only. The reader may well be satiated with these synonyms, and yet the most important variation is to be mentioned, if variation it be. It should rather be styled an erroneous designation. The Roger of Chester, mentioned by Bale and many others as a writer distinct from Ranulph Higden, seems, upon the whole, to be most probably identical with him; and his *Polycraticon* appears to be nothing else but a shorter form of the *Polychronicon* of our author, or, as some MSS. call it, his *Polycraticon*. But of this more hereafter.

Details of his history inexact or doubtful.

We are unable to point out either the exact place or date of his birth. His native place was somewhere in the west of England, according to Bale, and he must have been born in the latter part, probably during the last twenty years of the 13th century. He appears to have taken monastic vows in or about the year 1299. He attached himself to the Benedictine order, and became an inmate of the rich and powerful abbey of St. Werburgh in Chester.[1] From this time to the date

our E., a foot note on the prologue obscurely lets us into a deep mystery: *Gramata* (sic) *dant prima capitalia nomen agentis*. The same line is also mentioned by Oudinus from Selden. The initial letters of the chapters of the first book form the following words:—

"Presentem cronicam compilavit
frater Ranulphus Cestrensis."

Ranulphus is obtained from c. 34, sqq., thus:—

"R[efert] A[ffirmatum] N[otat]
V[ulgatum] L[ibri] P[ost]
H[æc] V[t] S[unt]."

It seems that this whimsical mode of writing a title-page was adopted by other writers also. See Oudinus, *u. s.*; also Pits, *de Ill. Angl. Script.*, p. 516.

[1] "Ranulphus Hygden, in occi-
"dentali Anglorum patria oriundus,
"ad Werburgæ fanum in Cestrien-
"sis urbis cœnobio, perpetuis se
"Benedictinorum sanctionibus con-
"secravit." Bale, *Cent.* vi. n. 12.
"Usque huc (A.D. 1348) scripsit
"Dominus Ranulphus Hykedon,
"monachus monasterii Sanctæ Wer-
"bergæ Cestrensis." MS. Laud, 619, in fine.

In the year 1093 Hugh Lupus, earl of Chester, established a convent of Benedictine monks, from Bec in Normandy, upon the foundation of St. Werburgh, having expelled the secular canons.

Her shrine, now the bishop's throne in the cathedral, is a beautiful specimen of workmanship of the early part of the 14th century. It must, as it would appear, have been built while Higden was an inmate of the abbey. Lewis, *Topogr. Dict.*, s. v.; Dugdale, *Monast.* vol. ii. p. 7 1 (ed. 1846).

nicle, both buried at Chester. Indeed there is nothing in Roger's history which differs from Higden's, except so far as concerns (1), their names; (2), the titles of their works; (3), their dates.

(1) With regard to the name, it is very probably by a mere error that Roger is written instead of Ranulphus; in many MSS. of the *Polychronicon* the name of the author is not given at all; and the book is often cited by others simply as the *Polychronicon*, or as *Cestrensis* only; the latter designation seeming to be inconsistent with the notion that *two* monks of Chester wrote Chronicles differing slightly from each other. There was a Roger Frend, afterwards abbot of Chester, in Higden's time, and if he was one of those who urged Higden to compose the chronicle, and assisted him in the compilation, it is not impossible that his name might be attached to the work by some scribes, who were only partially acquainted with the facts of the case.[1] Moreover, as appears from Wanley's probable conjecture, the name of Ranulphus has in one instance at least been substituted for the name of Roger, as though the error had been detected and corrected.

(2) No argument can be founded on the difference of the titles of their works. The *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury is designated in one of our MSS. (B.), and cited in one of the versions, as the *Polychronicon;* and in another MS. used in this edition (C.), we have actually have, "Idcirco eam historiam *Polycraticam*, "a pluralitate temporum quam continet censui nun-"cupandam." Indeed, *Polycratica temporum* could not be used as a title of an Universal History, by any

[1] See Dugdale's *Monast.*, vol. ii. p. 373. He was the eleventh abbot, and held office from A.D. 1240 to 1249. It may appear even more probable that the chronicle was often entitled only *Cestrensis Polychronicon*, or *R. Cestrensis*, and that *Rogeri* was added by conjecture as the interpretation of the symbol ℟. which occurs throughout the book.

of his death, he being then "in a good old age,"[1] we have, I believe, no details of his personal history, except that we are told (but on very doubtful authority) that "one Don Rondle Heggenet" thrice visited Rome in order to obtain leave of the pope that the miracle plays, of which he was the author, should be acted "in the English tongue" at Chester. They were eventually acted in the mayoralty of Sir John Arnway (A.D. 1327, 1328). From A.D. 1309, during a period of seventy years, which was termed the Babylonian captivity, the pope resided at Avignon, and that without interruption, so far as we are aware. A grave suspicion, therefore, attaches to the whole story, which rests upon a note written in a Harl. MS. in 1628. Moreover it is not absolutely certain that Higgenet and Higden are the same person.[2] Our author certainly appears to have left his monastery on occasions, and to have visited various parts of England, including Derbyshire, Shropshire, and Lancashire, with which he is said to be familiar.[3] I can only add that his death probably occurred in the month of March 1363, and that he was buried in the abbey at Chester.[4]

---

[1] Usque hic (*i.e.* 1352) scripsit "Ranulphus Hikedoun, monachus "Cestrensis, istorum Chronicorum "compilator, qui obiit in senectute "bona." Note at the end of MS. E. A later hand has added, "Anno "Domini 1363."

[2] See Warton, *u. s.*

[3] "Aperte ausim affirmare Ra- "nulphum in eruendis mysteriis "antiquitatis Britannicæ δὶς διὰ "πασῶν illo (Polydoro Vergilio) "superiorem fuisse; si spectes pro- "vincias in quibus versatus fuit, "nempe Salapiam, Devaniam, Lu- "niam, Doroventaniam." Leland, *De Script. Brit.*, p. 339. He often quotes Higden in this work.

[4] "Senex tandem obiit, annos ha- "bens in monachatu 64, circa Gre- "gorii festum (March 12), anno "ab incarnato Messia 1363, Cestriæ "in cœnobio sepultus." Bale, *Cent.*, vi. n. 12. "Tandem in senectute "bona postquam vixerat in religione "lxiv. annos, circa festum S. Grego- "rii, anno gratiæ 1363, in Domino "obdormivit." (MS. *Laud.*, 619, *u. s.*) So also note at end of MS. E. (See above.) Hearne (Preface to Camden's *Annales*, p. 117) quotes from a Christ Church MS. this note

His works; the *Polychronicon*. Occasion

Higden is principally[1] known to posterity as the author of the *Polychronicon*,[2] which was one of the most popular histories during the 14th and 15th cen-

' manu vetusta : ' " Corpus hujus " Ranulphi conditum est in monas- " terio D. Wereburgæ in australi " parte templi juxta chorum prope " ostium quod ducit in cemiterium. " Arcus illi muro concavatus est. " Inscriptum fuit in muro : *Non* " *hic sub muro, sed subter marmore* " *duro.*" Pits, *u. s.*, who is followed by bishop Nicholson (*Engl. Hist. Libr.*, 65), places his death in 1377.

[1] Some other works of his are extant in MS. : viz., *Speculum curatorum* (composed in 1340), Ball. Coll. Oxon. Cod. 69, and Cambr. Univ. Libr. Mm., 1. 20 ; and *Ars componendi sermones*, Bibl. Bodl. Cod. 2752. The former of these is mentioned by Bale, who had seen it, as appears by his quoting the opening words. He had also seen his *Pædagogicon grammatices*, and his *Distinctiones Theologicæ*. The former of these was in Sion College, and the latter is in the Lambeth Library. See Tanner, p. 403, and Cave's *Hist. Lit.* Besides these, Bale mentions the following : *Abbreviationes Chronicorum*, which is probably the same as a very damaged work now in the British Museum (Cotton. MSS. Tib. E. viii. fol. 210), thus entitled ; " *Cronica* " *bona et compendiosa de Regibus An-* " *gliæ tantum, a Noe post diluvium* " *usque in hunc diem*" (it ends A.D. 1300) " *conscripta a Ranulpho Hig-* " *deno Cestriensi monacho, qui vixit* " *anno gratiæ* 1358." Another copy is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, numbered 21, ending at 1367. See Nasmith's *Catalogue*, p. 10. A letter from Dr. Moberly apprises me of the existence of a third copy in the Winchester College library, ending at 1377. Bale then enumerates : *Expositio super Job ; In Cantica Canticorum ; Sermones per annum ; Determinationes sub compendio ; In litteram Calendarii ;* adding, as usual, *aliaque plura fecit.* The *Mappa Mundi*, which he names as a distinct work, is nothing but the first book of the *Polychronicon.* Bale likewise mentions *Ex Guilhelmo Stephanide ;* but it appears that this "ad ea pertinet " quæ in *Polychronico* scripsit de " Thoma Becket, archiepiscopo " Cantuariensi," Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin.* The like remark is probably to be made of the *Ex Stephano Langton* mentioned by Tanner.

[2] Higden gives as the reason for adopting this title, " quia præsens " chronica multorum temporum con- " tinet gesta." Oudinus is therefore mistaken in saying, " Operi suo " Polychronici nomen indidit, recte " quidem, et cum modestia, quia " nimirum uti collectaneum quod- " dam ex multis aliis chronicis ex- " cerptum ; quod aliorum quidem " est quoad res contentas, Ranulphi " autem quoad ordinem, atque enar- " rationes rerum ultimæ ætatis." (*De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1027.) He soon afterwards refers to G. J. Vossius, Sandius, the *Acta Erud. Lips.* for 1694 (read 1692), and V. Placcius, for more information about Higden. I have examined them all, but they contain nothing which is not otherwise well known.

turies, and which continued to be much in use during the following century also. He tells us in the prologue to the first book that he composed it at the earnest request of his companions, *i.e.*, the Benedictines of St. Werburg, and designed to include therein the more important facts of general history from the Creation to his own time in chronological order, noting also the dates of their occurrence according to more than one computation of years. In the early part of the history the birth of Abraham is taken as the origin, and the year of the judge, or other historical personage, is also added in the margin. From Abraham to David he reckons 942 years. The establishment of David's kingdom becomes another origin, and Abraham disappears; and from this date to the Babylonian captivity he reckons 496 years, adding also the year of the Jewish king then reigning in the margin; but for the latter part the year of the foundation of Rome, after which date the secondary king disappears in the later editions of the chronicle.[1] From the Babylonian captivity to Christ, the years from the captivity and from the foundation are recorded. From the Christian era downwards to the age of Charlemagne, the years of that era and of the emperor of Rome are noticed; and from that time forwards the years of the Christian era and of the king or emperor whose acts are related.

of its composition. His chronological system.

The Polychronicon is divided into seven books, this division being suggested by the account of the cosmogony in Genesis. The first book is rather geographical than historical, being, as the author calls it, a map

Plan of the work. Contents of the seven books.

[1] Higden threatens occasionally to "purple his margins" with a triple series. This would be a fit place for doing so, and accordingly we find three columns of dates in the shorter forms of the chronicle, as in MS. D. In the following period the year of Alexander's or Ptolemy's reign is not unfrequently added to the years of the Captivity and of Rome. But in other MSS., as A. and E., we never have more than two series of years tabulated in the margin.

of the world. It comprises a brief description of the countries of the known world, and a more particular account of Great Britain. The second book is a History of the World from the Creation to the destruction of the Jewish temple by Nebuchadnezzar. The third book carries on the history to the birth of Christ. The fourth proceeds thenceforward to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth goes on with the history up to the invasion of the Danes, or, as Higden calls them, Dacians. The sixth book concludes with the Norman conquest. The remaining book proceeds as far as Higden's own time, that is to say, as far as the reign of Edward III.[1] The author pleasantly conceives that by thus dividing the vast current of history into seven streams, he laid open a path by which his readers may "go over dryshod."

---

[1] Thus far all is easy; but when we come to consider the exact year, we are immediately involved in grave difficulties. The MSS. end at very different years, and the notes in different MSS. give different accounts of the years at which Higden himself concluded his work. A full discussion of this perplexed matter must be left for our last volume. In the mean time, so far as I can judge at present, Higden's own work, after he had put his last strokes to it, terminated in the end of the year 1342. There are notes in several MSS. to that effect. See Tanner, &c. But there is also a considerable number of MSS. which end in the year 1327. These are either all or for the most part, I believe, more brief than the later ones; and I should conceive that we may place Higden's first edition in that year. The number of MSS. (not being imperfect) ending before 1327 is very small, and I have not myself examined any such; but from Mr. S. A. Moore's notes it appears that there is one in Magd. Coll. Oxon. which ends in 1321, and another in the Advocate's Library at Edinburgh ending in 1326. These may have been written before a general issue of the book took place. The excellent Cambridge MS., our E., says that Higden concluded his chronicle at 1352, (in which, however, the events between 1342 and 1352 occupy less than a page,) and Caxton places the last year written by Higden in 1357. This will be the latest date that is well possible, if Higden died in 1363 at a very advanced age, to which latter year indeed J. Joscelin, archbishop Parker's secretary, says that he continued his work (*Cat. Hist.*, p. 292, Hearne). Trevisa leaps from 1348 to 1354, and ends 1360. But on these matters I hope to say something more definite on a future opportunity.

Our author mentions at great length, in his second chapter, the authorities from which his history is derived. But before discussing them it may be as well to consider a charge which has been brought against him by Wanley, Nicholson, and others.[1] The first-named author describing the Harleian MS. n. 655, writes thus in his catalogue :—

Sources of the history. Charge of wholesale plagiarism considered.

" Polycratica temporum, seu Polychronica Rogeri, " monachi Cestrensis, quam fœdissime defloravit plagi- " ariorum insignissimus, Ranulfus Higden commonachus " suus."[2] And again, describing n. 1707 of the same collection, he tells us that Ranulph Higden was not the original author of the *Polychronicon*, but an arrant plagiary (plagiarium maxime insignem).[3]

Bishop Nicholson repeats the charge, adding reasons which will be best understood and appreciated by citing portions of his accounts of Roger Cestrensis and of Ranulphus Higden, given in his *English Historical Library*.

" Roger Cestrensis, who was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg, in Chester ... wrote a large account of the affairs of this nation. This work he entitled *Polycratica Temporum*, and began it with the coming in of the Romans: he continued it at first no lower than 1314, but added afterwards a supplement of fifteen years more. In the Harleyan library there are several MS. copies of this work,[4] one whereof is frequently marked

[1] Fuller (*Worthies of Chester*) had already asserted : "He vamped " the history of Roger aforesaid." After Wanley's time the charge has been often repeated ; Bale had indeed given occasion for it.

[2] Harl. Cat., vol. 1, p. 398. Lond. 1808. This was first published in 1762, long after the author's death in 1726.

[3] Id. vol. 2, p. 180.

[4] I have examined (somewhat cursorily) all the MSS. of Roger of Chester in the British Museum ; viz., Harl. MSS. n. 1707, 1728–9, 1751 ; Cotton, Julius E. viii. In none of them (so far as I observed) was the name of Roger written by the original scribe. The same remark is to be made of the MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; see below. The Rev. W. Stubbs, M.A., librarian to the Lord Arch-

by Bale's own hand. By comparing these with those of R. Higden in the same noble repository, it is manifest that Ralph stole his pretended work from Roger, disguising it only with his own superscription. For (1) one of the copies of the *Polycraticon* is plainly the numerical book described by Pitts,[1] under the name of Higden. (2) Another of them has *Ran. Cestr.* in a modern hand on its title, instead (as Mr. Wanley probably conjectures) of *Rog. Cestr.* rased out. (3) The forgery is most evident, from comparing a passage relating to the two Caerleons, to one whereof (Chester) the true historian takes notice of his being particularly related ;[2] which Ralph literally transcribes, adding, *Sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius patet.* Which is ascertaining the whole chronicle to

---

bishop of Canterbury, at my request, kindly examined a Lambeth MS. of Roger of Chester, and writes as follows : "The ascription of the Lam-
" beth MS. 112 to Roger of Chester is
" not in a contemporary hand. It is
" written in the margin, I am pretty
" sure in Archbishop Sancroft's
" hand, and the title is written on
" the label outside in the same
" hand: 'Rogeri de Cestriâ Historia
" 'Polychronica.'

" The title of the book I do not
" find. It begins, 'Prologus primus
" 'in Historiam Policronicam.

" '*Post præclaros artium.*

" 'Præfatio . II. *At quoniam*
" '*præsens Cronica.*

" 'Præfatio III. *Cupientibus*
" '*igitur.*'

" It ends in '*ecclesia libertatem*'
" (*i.e.* in 1327). and '*Explicit*
" '*Historia Policronica.*'

" The dates in the later books are
" in two columns." We have some curious phenomena here. The *longer* form of the Chronicle is ascribed to *Roger*, and the title of his book is *Polychronicon*. To myself, as well as to Archdeacon Hardwick, the work seems to be the same as the *Polychronicon* of Higden.

[1] Reference to Pits might have been spared, as he had never seen the book. "Historiam Ranulphi
" multum quæsitam, nunquam in-
" ventam, et mihi non visam fa-
" teor." (De Illust. Angl. Scriptoribus, p. 516.) This is most extraordinary.

[2] In MSS. Harl. 1707 and 1751, and in the MS. C.C.C., Cant. n. 259, the clause runs thus : "Est et alia
" Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis,
" *ubi et præsens chronica fuit elabo-*
" *rata*, urbs quidem in confinio An-
" gliæ." But in Harl. MS. 1728, we have only this notice : "Est et alia
" Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis,
" Caerleon sive Caerlegion, urbs
" quidem in confinio Angliæ."

himself, according to the villainous contrivance, which we shall mention anon."[1]

And again under Higden:—

"If you spell the first letters of the several chapters "that begin it, you read: *Præsentem chronicam con-* "*pilavit Frater Ranulphus monachus Cestrensis.* 'Tis "observable, that the plagiary picks out such capitals, "and enlarges them, as are for his wicked purpose, and "omits the rest; which is another notorious proof of his "knavish forgery."[2] Now if we compare the accounts of Roger of Chester and of Ranulphus Higden, as given by Bale,[3] from whom others do little else but copy, we are immediately struck with their remarkable similarity. Both Benedictine monks of St. Werburg of Chester, both concluding their Universal Chronicle in the time of Edward III., both urged to write it by their fellow-monks, both adding to their original chro-

[1] p. 64. Second ed., Lond. 1714. The first edition was published in 1696. See also Hearne, *Præf. ad Camd. Annal.*, p. 119.

[2] Id. p. 65.

[3] "Rogerus de Cestria, Benedic- "tinorum sectæ monachus, et in "eadem urbe ad Werburgæ fanum, "historiographus illustris, bonarum "litterarum campos . . . merito mul- "tumque colebat. . . . Hic a suis "commilitonibus monachis, præ- "cipue ab ejus loci episcopo patrono "suo rogatus, Anglorum historiam "a Britannorum, immo ab ipsius "mundi origine, usque ad annum "Domini 1314, et demum ad annum "Christi 1339, Latine docte et ele- "ganter scripsit. In qua, præter "authores a Ranulpho Hygdeno "numeratos, Nennium, Elvodugi "discipulum, et Gildam adducit, "Ranulphumque ipsum plusquam "22 annis præcessit, ab Hugone "Virleyo in *Historiarum Figuris* "plerisque in locis citatus. Compo- "suit ergo Rogerus Chronicon, egre- "gium certe, quod vocabat *Polycra-* "*tica Temporum*, libris septem. In- "cipit, '*Intrabo in agros priscorum* "*subsequens.*'"

"*Additiones* 15 *annorum*, libro "uno. Incipit, '*Septimo anno* "'*Regis Edwardi Secundi.*' Et "alia quædam. Polycraticorum "vero primus post Præfationem "liber incipit: '*Julius Cæsar di-* "'*vinis humanisque rebus,*' etc. "Claruit hic Cestrius anno a Christi "nativitate 1339, quo ultimum opus "finiit, sub Edwardo Tertio, et Ces- "triæ sepelitur." Bale (*Cent.* v. n. xlviii. ed. 1569). Hugo Virley flourished A.D. 1344. He is the only writer before Bale, who mentions Roger of Chester, so far as I know. The *Figuræ Historiarum*, called by Bale "nobile opus," have not been printed. I do not perceive that they even exist.

one who knew the meaning of the word, but in the general ignorance of Greek, the scribes, to whom the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury was a familiar name, frequently confounded the two words. The work of Higden, moreover, is sometimes called Polycraticon: thus our MS. C. has in the colophon: "Expliciunt "chronicæ venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi Cestrensis, in "septem libellos distinctæ, dictæque *Historia Policra-*"*tica.*" In the sixteenth century Higden's work was known under both titles.[1] It is not altogether impossible that Higden himself may have made the blunder, and corrected it in his later editions; for it is in the earlier MSS., so far as we know, that this error is mostly to be found.

(3) Very little stress can be laid on the slight difference of their dates. "Ranulphum ipsum plus quam xxii. "annis præcessit," says Bale; but, by his own account, Roger afterwards continued the chronicle from 1314 to 1339. Now, as many of Higden's earlier copies cease at 1327, and at various years afterwards, it can scarcely be said that there is any difference of time between his and Roger's chronicles.[2]

The contents of the two chronicles may be said to be identical.[3] Higden's work itself appears in a longer

[1] "Vulgo vocatur Polichronicon "sive Policraticon," note on second fly-leaf of our MS. A.

[2] Bale indeed says, "In qua (his-"toria), præter authores a Ranulpho "Hygdeno numeratos, Nennium El-"vodugi discipulum et Gildam ad-"ducit." This is an error; in this edition the latter of these authors is enumerated among the sources of the history, and he is also quoted in c. xxxviii. With regard to Nennius, he is mentioned in our MSS. C. D. (See p. 24, note 2), as one of the historians used by Higden, but not in the other MSS. or in the versions. This is one indication among others that the Polycraticon of Roger, is nothing else but a form of the Polychronicon.

[3] Bale mentions that it commences, "Intrabo in agros priscorum:" see this edition, p. 12. Archdeacon Hardwick had printed this note on the word *Intrabo*: "Here begins "the so-called 'Polycraticon' of "*Roger* of Chester." In a copy of Macray's *Manual of British Historians*, p. 36 (Pick. 1845), where Roger of Chester is noticed, he has written: "I have collated "part of this" (*i.e.* Harl. MS. 1707,

and in a shorter form; and Roger's *Polycraticon* is only a slightly more abbreviated state of the shorter form.

Upon the whole there seems to be no ground for the charge of plagiarism brought against Higden; and from henceforth dismissing Roger of Chester and his Polycraticon, as being things of buckram,[1] we proceed to consider the sources whence the Polychronicon was derived.

Authorities cited by Higden.

The author recounts at large in his second chapter the names of the writers who are alleged in his Chronicle. They are about forty in number,[2] and it is needless to transcribe them here.[3] It will be of more

---

which Wanley declares to be almost identical with a MS. in which Bale himself has written *Polycratica temporum Rogeri Cestrensis*, and some other late hand has also written *Rogeri Cestrensis Polychronicon*; see Cat. Harl. MSS., vol. 1, p. 180, ed. 1808) "with MS. "Nero, D. viii., assigned to Higden, "and find the two works almost "identical. One writer adopts the "title *Polycronicon*, and the other "*Polycraticon*, but for precisely the "same reason. The Harleian is the "better text; the latter MS. (the "Harleian) goes down to 1327, and "there ends with an index." It commences not with "Intrabo," but with "In historico namque con- "textu;" above which a later hand has written, "Post præclaros," &c. By the kindness of the Rev. E. H. Perowne, B.D., I have examined the MS. (numbered 259) of Roger of Chester, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Bale's account of him is transcribed on a fly-leaf, but his name does not occur in the MS. itself. It begins (certainly not abruptly) "Intrabo," and ends A.D. 1338, "statim postea "concusserunt."

[1] Neither Leland in his *Comment. de Script. Britann.*, nor Henry Wharton, nor R. Gery, who write accounts of Higden, in the Appendix to Cave's *Historia Litteraria*, give Roger a place, or even mention him at all.

[2] Many authors are quoted in the first volume, which are not included in Higden's catalogue. Thus he refers to the life of John the Almoner, and copies it pretty closely (p. 240); also to Ptolemy the geographer (p. 44); and to Cicero (p. 82); to say nothing of passing allusions to the classics, as to Horace (p. 12), Virgil (pp. 208, 266), Ovid (p. 238), and Juvenal (p. 412); or to the Fathers, as Gregory Nazianzen (p. 8), or Gregory the Great (p. 12). Conversely a large number of the authors named are not quoted at all in this volume.

[3] The reader is requested to examine not only the lists, but also the various readings. The MSS. C. and D. give, in addition to the

utility to point out briefly, as the volumes of this edition make their appearance, to whom Higden is principally indebted for his accounts of the history and geography therein severally contained.[1] I proceed, therefore, to indicate the contents of the first book, (which may be seen more fully in the Summary which follows this Introduction,) in connection with the fountains (which are sometimes none of the purest) from which Higden has drawn.

Contents of Higden's first book.

The bombastic and not very intelligible[2] prologue concluded (c. i.),[3] the plan of the work expounded

list in our text, the names of Herodotus, Quintilian, and Aulus Gellius. Who this Herodotus (or as Higden writes him Erodotus) is I do not know. He is quoted or alluded to at pp. 172, 290, 296, 386. He names Pompey the Great, also the Picts, and seems to be some Western medieval chronicler.

[1] In the present volume he quotes Isidore, *naming* him, about fifty times, and very frequently uses him without naming him at all; he quotes Pliny and Justin about a dozen times each. These last are the only classical authors of whom he makes *considerable* use, unless Solinus be so designated, who is referred to about half a dozen times. Of the rest, Hugutio, Petrus Comestor, Paulus Diaconus, William of Malmesbury, Bede, and especially Giraldus Cambrensis, are Higden's principal authorities, besides the anonymous *Geographia*, which he never names. His allusions to Augustine and Jerome are rather numerous, but mostly unimportant.

[2] It is possible that conjecture, or a collation of other MSS., might help the text a little; but I suspect not a great deal. On reflection, I think that *quo adviverent* (p. 2), though evidently the reading of the MSS. (A., E.), should be changed into *quoad viverent*. Dr. Moberly has very kindly collated for this edition the prologue and also the second chapter (giving names of the authorities) as they stand in the Winchester MS. (see below); but the various readings are few and unimportant. For *quo adviverent* (p. 2) the Winchester MS., *quo advenirent*; for *tulerunt* (p. 6), *contulerunt* (which is better); for *nempe* (p. 6), *namque*; for *reperies* (p. 16), *invenies*; for *Ormesta* (p. 22), *Ormestia*; for *memorabilibus* (p. 22), *memoriæ*; for *episcopus. Historia* (p. 24), *episcopus de historia*. The other variations are not worth mentioning, being in some cases mere blunders. I have also subsequently collated Gale's excellent MS. (G.) for the same parts, but have not found a single various reading worth recording here.

[3] The reader who compares this Introduction with Higden's text, is requested to refer to the chapters by means of the Summary of Contents, as a few of the chapters of the Latin (not English) text are misnumbered. See *Corrigenda*.

His physical geography.

(c. iii., iv.), and the authorities rehearsed (c. ii.), the author proceeds with the first book, which is, as we have already said, a map of the world, or series of descriptions of the principal countries of the ancient and more modern nations. He begins by describing the magnitude of the globe, whose diameter he determines to be 6,491 miles;[1] then the three great parts of the world, and the relations of their magnitudes to one another. After that he proceeds to describe the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, c. viii., ix. His principal authorities for these accounts are Isidore of Seville, of whom he makes very extensive use in the first book, and Pliny, to whom he is also largely indebted. Besides these Higden also quotes Giraldus Cambrensis, Bede, Solinus, Paulus Diaconus, and the author of a cosmography, whom he calls Priscianus, but who commonly passes, whether rightly or wrongly, under the name of Æthicus.[2]

[1] The true mean diameter is 7,912 miles.

[2] See pp. 22, 40, 42, 50. I now see that Higden only followed the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more below, in which he is called *Prescianus*. The quotation at p. 40 appears thus in Æthicus: "Itaque "Julius Cæsar bissextilis rationis "inventor, divinis humanisque "rebus singulariter instructus, cum "consulatus sui fasces erigeret, ex "senatus consulto censuit omnem "orbem jam Romani nominis ad-"metiri per prudentissimos viros, "et omni philosophiæ munere de-"coratos. . . . Ac sic omnis orbis "terræ intra annos xxxii. a dimen-"soribus peragratus est, et de omni "ejus continentia perlatum est ad se-"natum," p. 26. Ed. Gronov. (ad calc. Pomp. Melæ, Lugd. Bat, 1696.) The readings of C. D., it will be observed here and in other places, agree more nearly with the original text of the author referred to than the later and larger forms of the chronicle do. The quotation at p. 50 appears thus: "Plurimi qui res divinas (*hu-*"*manas*, Higden) evidentius agno-"verunt duas tantum partes accipi-"endas suadent, id est, Asiam et "Europam tantummodo; Africam "vero censent Europæ finibus depu-"tandam. * * * Quia et spatio latitu-"dinis caret, et cœli male (*leg.* malo) "subjacet climati, laborans aeribus "suis, venenis fucisque repleta im-"manium et incognitarum humano "generi innumerabilium bestia-"rum." Id. pp. 25 and 51. (ubi plura.) These citations will in some degree show the manner in which Higden manipulates his authorities, as well as the difference of treatment in the earlier and later editions. There are several other places in which Higden may perhaps have

Higden's account of the great divisions of the earth. Asia and its provinces.

Our author, having at length concluded his general account of earth and sea, which we may call his physical geography, proceeds to describe the separate provinces of Asia, Africa, and Europe. Not to dwell on his speculations on Paradise (c. x.), derived in part from Isidore of Seville, Petrus Comestor, and John Damascene,[1] we pass on to his description of Asia,

used Æthicus, though without acknowledgment *e.g.*, in his description of Tile (Thule), of which Æthicus says (p. 61): "Insula "Tilæ, quæ per infinitum a cæteris "patet longius secreta, in medio "oceani sita, *vix paucis nota*." Compare Higden, c. 31, who refers to Solinus *De Mirabilibus*; Solinus however (*Polyhist, c.* 22), does not employ the phrase, nor does his original source, Pliny. I now perceive, however, that Orosius (lib. i. c. 2) has almost copied Æthicus; and as Higden certainly knew that author, nothing can be said positively.

For more about Æthicus, who is most probably the same person as Julius Honorius, see Ritschl, in *Rhein. Mus*, 1842, pp. 481–523. Æthicus is by no means the only author quoted in Higden, which has occasioned me trouble, and I may be permitted to make one or two remarks respecting his citations and allusions in general. When the MSS. agree in the reference to an author, I have not *in general* thought it worth while to verify it; when otherwise, I have commonly tried to discover (frequently without success) which of the references was the true one. It has sometimes fallen out that an examination of the original authority shows that the true reference is something different to what any of the MSS. contain. (See pp. 84, 196, &c.). It is much to be feared that some other citations may likewise be erroneous; but in cases where the MSS. agree, the fault ought to be charged upon Higden, not on his editor. To rectify every erroneous reference in a work which is in a great measure made up of quotations from other writers, variously altered and modified, would be an endless task; and indeed would very ill repay the labour in the case of such an author as Higden. However, where the case seemed to require it, I have made some search into the original authority for the statement; but shall be thankful to any one who may discover and inform me respecting errors or omissions on Higden's part or my own.

[1] The text of our edition differs much from the MSS. C. D., so much indeed that a collation is impossible. I now perceive, from a comparison of the *Eulogium Historiarum* (vol. ii. pp. 11-14) that this early text was very much derived from an unpublished work, entitled *Geographia Universalis*, which has been a good deal used by Higden for his description of northern Europe, though he never refers to the book. A copy of the text in D., and of the text of the Geographia, is subjoined in an appendix.

which commences with India (c. xi.). His account, which is for the most part fabulous, and relates to monstrous dragons, to the battles of pigmies and cranes, to men of strange conformations, ages, habits, and qualities, and to prophetical trees, which warned Alexander the Great not to enter Babylon,[1] is taken from Isidore, Pliny, Cicero, and Petrus Comestor. He preserves, however, some grains of truth, and describes with tolerable correctness the institutions of caste, the burning of widows, and the natural products. Parthia follows next in order, and the account of its kings and people is derived principally from Justin, some portions being also said to be taken from Isidore and Giraldus. Except that he erroneously designates Phrahates the Fourth, (who is known as Arsaces the Fifteenth,) by the name of "Mithridates, son of Mithridates," his account is conformable to the classical accounts which have come down to us.[2]

An account of Assyria and the adjoining regions follows (c. xiii.); it has the name of Isidore prefixed to several of the paragraphs, and he is also the authority for some clauses which have no name at their head.[3] The account of Babylon is mostly taken from Orosius. Some slight use is also made of Justin,

[1] Compare Jul. Valer. *Res Gest. Alex.*, lib. iii. c. 40, 41. (Ed. Mai.); Pseudo-Alex. *ad Aristot. de Mirab. Ind.* (Sig. Q. ii., ed. Neap. 1555); Vinc. Bel. *Spec. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 57; Mart. Pol. *Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4., for an account of these wonderful trees.

[2] Higden refers to Giraldus, dist. 17. for the statement. I do not understand the reference, neither does it appear likely that Giraldus (whose name is written at length in our MS. E.) is his authority at all. Although there is great confusion about Oriental names in the classical writers, it does not appear (so far as I know) that any of them have called Arsaces xv. by the name of Mithridates. His father's name, moreover, was not Mithridates, but Orodes. See Lindsay's *Hist. and Coinage of the Parthians*, pp. 38–50, Cork, 1852.

[3] Thus the description of the boundaries of Syria (p. 100) is taken from Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3. § 16. Compare also § 15 with Higden's notice of Arabia.

Petrus Comestor, and Josephus. Judea and Jerusalem, as might be anticipated, are more fully described (c. xiv.). His principal authority is still Isidore, but reference is also made to several other writers, as Josephus, Augustine, Jerome, William of Malmesbury, Giraldus, Petrus Comestor. There is little in the account itself on which it is necessary to dwell. The most curious point about it is a change for the better which occurs in the text of MS. E., the latest and purest form, so far as I know, in which the Chronicle has appeared. In the earlier forms of the text, Mount Sion is placed at the north of Jersualem, in the later at the south.[1] In the following chapter (c. xv.) the description of the Holy Land is concluded, embracing Idumea, Samaria, Galilee, Cedar, and Phenicia. In addition to Isidore, Higden quotes from Hugutio and Pseudo-Methodius. In the notice of Egypt (c. xvi.), Higden refers to Petrus Comestor, Bede, Jerome, and Isidore; from the last-named author he has derived some statements without acknowledgment. In common with various ancient writers, to whom he makes only a vague allusion, he considers that the Nile has its

[1] The reference is to William of Malmesbury "*De Regibus;*" the versions add falsely *libro primo*. The passage runs thus: "Fons intra nul-
"lus, sed cisternis ad hoc præparatis
"colliguntur latices, siti civium pro-
"futuri; quod ipsius urbis situs,
"supercilio ab aquilone montis Sion
"incipiens, ita sit molli clivo dispo-
"situs, ut pluvia ibi decidens nequa-
"quam lutum faciat, sed instar flu-
"viorum vel cisternis excipiatur,
"vel per portas defluens torrentem
"Cedron augeat." *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. iv. § 367 (vol. ii. pp. 561, 562. Engl. Hist. Soc.). The text of E. expresses the sense of Malmesbury: "Urbis ipsius situs ab austro (*aqui-
"lone*, A. B.) montem Syon habens,
"molli clivo versus boream (*aus-
"trum*, A. B.) descendens sic dis-
"ponitur ut pluvia stillans nequa-
"quam lacum (*lutum*, B. and Malm.)
"faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cis-
"ternis excipiatur, vel saltem per
"portas effluens torrentem Cedron
"adaugeat," p. 108. Here again it is instructive to observe the variations of expression between the text of the original author and the text of Higden. In the earliest form of Higden's text, which some would call Roger's *Polycraticon*, the whole passage based on William of Malmesbury is omitted.

sources in Ethiopia, not far from Mount Atlas.[1] It will be observed that Egypt in his cosmography forms a part of Asia.

Higden next proceeds to describe Scythia at some length (c. xvii.), following Justin almost entirely; the same chapter contains also brief notices of Bactria, the Caucasus, Hyrcania, Albania, Gothia, Armenia, and Mount Ararat. For his descriptions of these countries he quotes no authorities, except Albertus Magnus for some details about Mount Atlas, but his principal source of information is, as usual, Isidore.[2] His Gothia seems to include parts of Scandinavia and of Russia, both European and Asiatic.

In the following chapter (c. xviii.) he concludes his account of Asia, mentioning in a very brief manner Cappadocia, (which he distinguishes from Asia Minor,) and the following provinces of Asia Minor: Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia, Lydia, Pamphylia, and Cilicia. He has made much use of the New Testament in his notices of these, and also of Isidore,[3] whom, however,

---

[1] This is the view of Julius Honorius, p. 19 (ed. Gronov. ad calc. Pomp. Melæ), of Æthicus (*u. s.* p. 50); also of Solinus (c. xxvii. and c. xxxii.), and of his original author Pliny (lib. v. c. 10, where see Harduin's note, who refers to Marcianus Capella, Ammianus Marcellinus, and Xiphilinus; also lib. viii. c. 32, where he speaks more positively). Since this note was written, I have seen Mr. Vaux's paper, *On the Knowledge of the Ancients on the Sources of the Nile.* Trans. Roy. Soc. Lit., vol. viii. (new series) pp. 35–66, which contains much curious information on a subject which has just acquired a new interest.

[2] Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 8, § 2 (for the Caucasus); c. 3, § 33 (for Hyrcania); c. 3, § 34 (for Albania); lib. ix. c. 2, § 89 (for Gothia, where, however, Higden substitutes *Gothos* for *Getas* in his text); lib. xiv. c. 3, § 35 (for Armenia). In Higden's account, however, are some things not contained in Isidore. Thus his short notice of Bactria seems not to be taken from him, but it is so unimportant that it is hardly worth while to inquire more particularly. Neither is it the same as that in the *Geographia Universalis* and the *Eulogium.*

[3] Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 3, § 37 (for Cappadocia, who also places it to the *east* of Asia Minor); § 38 (for Asia Minor); § 39 (for Bithynia); § 40 (for Ga-

he does not professedly quote. The chapter concludes with a more extended account of Amazonia (which he makes partly in Europe and partly in Asia), which is principally taken from Justin, and partly (with some expressions of dissent) from Isidore.[1] He also quotes from the apocryphal "Historia Alexandri" the letters of Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, to Alexander the Great, and that monarch's gracious reply.[2] These are the original sources of the account of Amazonia, and which it is important to indicate; but there is no doubt that Higden has taken his notice of this, as well as of some other countries, almost entire from the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more hereafter, in which the same authorities as he quotes are quoted also, and in the same order, or nearly so, with some verbal alterations.[3]

Africa and its provinces.

The nineteenth and twentieth chapters contain an account of Africa, from which Egypt is excluded. Still following Isidore, he discusses the etymology of the name, and runs rapidly over the provinces of Ethiopia, Libya, Tripolis, Gætulia, and Mauretania, dwelling somewhat more particularly on the foundation of Carthage and its date, maintaining, against Virgil and Dares Phrygius, that Eneas could not have seen

latia); § 41 (for Phrygia; making, however, Phrygia the daughter of Æsopus, not of Europa); § 43 (for Lydia, which Higden has copied almost bodily); § 44 (for Pamphylia, which Isidore also identifies with Isauria, though he does not create a "Seleucus Antiochus" as the founder of Seleucia); §§ 45 and 46 (for Cilicia and Lycia; the identification, however, of Lycia with Lycaonia is an error with which Isidore is not chargeable). Some of the deviations from Isidore are to be found in the *Geographia*.

[1] Just., lib. ii. c. 4; Isid. Hisp., lib. ix. c. 2, § 64.

[2] "Ejusmodi Historiæ Alexandri "in bibl. Leidensi aliisque servantur "MSS." Harl. in Fabr. *Bibl. Græc.*, vol. iii. p. 34 (Hamb. 1783). Cardinal Mai has since published two such works, one of which is ascribed to Julius Valerius, but they do not contain these letters. Martinus Polonus, however (*Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4.), gives the same letters in substance, but writes *Callistrata* for *Thalestris*.

[3] See Haydon's Introd. to *Eulog. Hist.*, vol. ii. xxxii. (note).

Dido. He maintains the view of Justin, that Carthage was founded 72 years before Rome, and confirms it by the authority of Papias.[1] In the course of his remarks on these regions he acknowledges his obligations to Josephus, Gregory the Great, Marianus, Augustine, and Hugutio. His account of the marvels and monstrous people of Africa seems to be mostly taken from Solinus[2] (or from Pliny, whom he epitomizes), though no authority is cited for the statements made.

Europe and its provinces.

Higden now proceeds (cap. xxi.) to describe Europe, which occupies the remainder of the book. He begins with an account of northern Europe, which is in good part derived from Isidore[3] and the *Geographia*,[4] and passes lightly over the provinces of Scythia, Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia or Sclavonia, and Pannonia. In his account of the last, he makes mention of the

[1] This Papias is the author of the *Elementarium*; in which the passage occurs under *Carthago*; and I should suppose that he is the same that Grabe mentions, "cujus (Pa-" piæ, sc.) *Syngrammata* allegantur " in *Chronica Demonstratione* Alla-" tii, libro de Simeonum scriptis " suffixa, p. 22." Routh, *Rel. Sacr.*, tom. i. p 43 (ed. alt.) I learn from Dr. Lightfoot that the famous passage about our Lord's brethren, referred to Papias, the apostolic father, by Routh and others, occurs in the *Elementarium* of this medieval Papias, who, no doubt, takes it from Jerome.

[2] Compare Solinus, capp. 30–31, with p. 158 of Higden.

[3] See Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 4, § 1–5 (for Europe generally, and for Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia); lib. xiii. c. 21, § 24 (for Tanais). He says scarcely anything about Pannonia (lib. xiv. c. 4, § 5), and about Sclavia nothing at all. The accounts of Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia, in the *Geographia*, do not closely resemble those in Higden.

[4] For Pannonia and Sclavia see *Eulog. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 66 and 67, and Mr. Haydon's preface, vol. ii. p. xxxviii., and the notes, where the deviations from the *Geographia* are given. The account of the latter is generally fuller and more accurate than Higden, and there seems to be no doubt that the *Geographia* is the parent of much in the *Polychronicon*, and not *vice versa*. I should be glad to discover the *Herodotus*, from whom these two works and the *Eulogium* so often borrow. It might, perhaps, be worth while to print the *Geographia*, as so much use has been made of it by other writers.

Huns, professing to derive his information from an author whom he calls Herodotus, but in truth taking his notice, citations inclusive, from the *Geographia.*

The twenty-second chapter is taken up with a description of Greece and its provinces. The classical authorities referred to are Justin, Varro, and Ovid, from whom are derived notices of the early history of Athens, the contest of Neptune with Minerva, the Delphian oracle, Deucalion's flood, and an allusion to Tempe; also an account of the colonization of Tarentum by the Spartans after the siege of Messene, which latter city he strangely places in Apulia, confusing it apparently with the Sicilian Messana. In the description of the provinces he principally follows Isidore,[1] and gives some details about Constantinople from William of Malmesbury. He refers also for smaller matters to Giraldus Cambrensis and Petrus Comestor.

Higden's account of Italy (c. xxiii.) is for the most part taken from Isidore, one citation being also made from Pliny. The conclusion of the chapter relates the origin and progress of the Lombards, and is derived wholly from Paulus Diaconus.

From Italy generally, Higden proceeds to a description of Rome in particular, which is made up of a strange assemblage of absurdities. A large part of these are derived from a small tract, whose author is generally considered to be unknown, though styled by Higden Magister Gregorius.[2] Its title is *Mirabilia Urbis Romæ,* and so popular did it become, that it

[1] See lib. xiv. c. 4, § 7–16. But some touches are due to the *Geographia,* e.g., the barbarous word *Helladia.* See Haydon, *u. s.*, p. xxxix., and the *Eulogium*, lib. iv. capp. 73–77.

[2] I transcribed the following extracts from a copy in the British Museum, supposed to be printed about 1473. It consists of six leaves. In the description of the palace of Peace we read: "Ubi posuit Romulus suam statuam dicens: 'Hæc 'statua non cadet, donec virgo 'pariat.' Et statim cum B. Virgo peperit, statua corruit." (fol. 1, b). Compare Higden, p. 214. The section *De agulea* (sic) *S. Petri,* con-

went through more than 30 editions in the fifteenth century, apart from the translations into German and into Italian which were printed in the same period.[1] Other marvels are transcribed from the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury. The reader, who has any taste for the investigation of such matters, may consult the recent work of Dr. Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter* (of which the first volume appeared at Stuttgard in 1859), in which the medieval

---

cludes with six rhyming lines, of which the last three are:

" Regia structura, quanta non extat
in aula.
" Si lapis est unus, [dic] qua fuit
arte levatus:
" Et si sunt plures, dic ubi con-
geries." (Fol. 2, b.)

Compare Higden, p. 226, where the lines are read differently. Again: " Infra capitolium fuit palatium pro " magna parte aureum et lapidibus " pretiosis ornatum, quod dicebatur " valere tertiam partem mundi, in " quo tot statuæ imaginum erant, " quot erant mundi provinciæ, et " habebat quælibet imago tintinna- " bulum in collo per artem mathe- " maticam dispositum, ut quando ali- " qua regio Romano populo rebellis " efficeretur, statim [imago] illius " provinciæ vertebat dorsum imagini " urbis Romanæ, quæ major erat " super alias imagines tanquam do- " mina; et sic tintinnabulum quod " habebat ad collum statim resona- " bat. Tunc vates, qui capitolii " quoque erant custodes, referebant " illud senatui." (fol. 3 b). Compare Higden, pp. 216, 218. Again: " Tempore imperatoris Tiberii ve- " nerunt Romam duo philosophi " juvenes, scilicet Praxitelis (sic) " et Phidias," &c., as in Higden, p. 226, q. v., but more briefly. (fol. 4.) The author likewise gives an account of the Colosseum and the Pantheon, which may be compared with those in Higden. It appears from Mr. Dyer's elaborate article *Roma*, in Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geography, that this treatise " was the first attempt at a regular " description of ancient Rome." He mentions that it has been edited with notes by Nibby (*Ephemeride Letterarie*, Rome, 1820). See also Montfaucon, *Diar. Ital.*, c. 20.

[1] See Hain's *Repertorium*, vol. iii. pp. 414–421 (n. 11,174–11,220). Harding, in his *Confutation of the Apology* of Jewel (fol. 166, b., Antwerp, 1565), ascribes the *Mirabilia* to Martinus Polonus. " The " like fables and fond lyes he (Mar- " tine of Pole) stuffed an other " booke withall, which he wrote, " entituled *Mirabilium vrbis Romæ*." Many of the worst absurdities of the *Mirabilia* are related in his Chronicle, *e.g.* the story of Praxiteles and Phidias, *Chron.* lib. i. c. 7, where we further learn that the temple of crystal and gold (*see* Higden, p. 214) was the Colosseum! Whether however he is the author of the treatise is uncertain.

legends are recounted with a patience and diligence rarely to be found except in a German. Willingly passing over these, I have only further to observe that Higden makes considerable use of Martinus Polonus in his account of the construction of the city,[1] and has also drawn upon Virgil, Livy, Solinus, William of Malmesbury,[2] and some very late verses, whose author does not appear, for various particulars embraced in his account.

In the following chapter (xxv.) Higden gives some account of certain institutions of the Romans, which is mostly taken from the *Etymologies* of Hugutio, which seem not to have been printed.[3] He has also used in a much smaller degree Ovid, Valerius Maximus, Isidore, and John of Salisbury, and in one instance, unfortunately, the *Legenda Aurea*. Upon the whole, this chapter is a much more historical and trustworthy compilation than that which went before it.

Leaving the old world, Higden now approaches the countries of modern Europe, and, beginning with Germany, makes his way westward to Britain, with which his "Map of the World" concludes. His somewhat meagre notice of Germany (c. xxvi.) is due in part to Isidore, also to Paulus Diaconus (from whom he takes the beautiful legend of the Seven Sleepers), to Bede, and to Pliny. Numerous particulars of his account in this and in many of the following chapters are derived from a source to which he has not referred, but which exists in manuscript under the title of *Geographia Uni-*

[1] See Mart. Pol. *Chron.*, lib. i. capp. 4–7; lib. iv. cap. *Domitianus*, &c.

[2] The verses, however, of Hildebert appear thus in William's, fourth book (§ 351, p. 537, Hardy):

"Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis prope tota ruina;
Quam magni fueris integra, fracta doces."

[3] I have consulted a MS. of this work in the Cambridge University Library, and found that Higden had correctly quoted it in all the cases where it seemed worth while to verify his references.

versalis. The author is unknown, but it is quite clear that Higden, as well as the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, is under considerable obligations to him.[1] The time at which he lived does not appear to have been investigated; the manuscript itself is of the 14th century, and probably the author himself is little, if at all, older.[2]

The opening sentence of his account of France (c. xxvii.) is taken without acknowledgment from Isidore.[3]

---

[1] Mr. Haydon, to whose valuable introduction to the *Eulogium Historiarum* (published in this series) I am much indebted, points out the chapters in that work which are taken from the Polychronicon and from the *Geographia*, and mentions the deviations *very minutely*. The reader who compares those chapters in the *Eulogium* borrowed from the *Geographia* with the chapters in Higden which treat of the same countries, will see at once that many of his statements, *for which he gives no authority*, are taken from this book. Thus, to take a crucial instance, the *Geographia* (fol. 4 b.) says of the Auroch: "Et hoc animal "lingua Boemica *Loz* nuncupatur" (*Intr. to Eulog.* vol. ii. p. xl. (note.) This is altered in the Eulogium into, "In lingua nostra nomen ignora-"tur" (vol. ii. p. 72), but in Higden, p. 256, we have the identical statement: "Quod lingua Boemica "Leoz (Loz, A) vocatur." This clause excepted, most of of his account is tacitly taken from Pliny (lib. viii. c. 16). It was with no small satisfaction that I discovered, with Mr. Haydon's help, the source of not a few passages, or parts of passages, which I had in vain endeavoured to find elsewhere. I now perceive also that some of Higden's authorities have been taken by him from the *Geographia*. All the quotations from Herodotus (so called) are, I believe, derived from this work. The *Geographia* also repeatedly quotes Isidore, but although Higden uses the same quotations, he is so familiar with him that he cannot be said to be beholden to any other writer for them. I have now examined the MS. of the *Geographia* in the British Museum (Arundel MSS. n. 123) since this Introduction was in type, and have traced Higden's statements to their origin in some cases, where the notes on the *Eulogium* did not conduct me to them.

[2] He quotes Petrus Comestor, who lived at the end of the 12th century, and an Alexander, who is doubtless Neckham, who lived a little later. See Appendix. The same quotations are reproduced in Higden, but in this introduction the authors, from whom the citations are professedly made, are called *his* authorities, even though they may have been taken at second hand.

[3] Higden's mistake in reading *humectentur* for *innectuntur* in Virgil is his own. Lactantius, the fountain head of the account, has

The more important parts of this chapter, relating to the succession of the early French kings, are taken from William of Malmesbury; other parts are derived from Ovid, Augustine, Hugutio, and Giraldus; also from those untrustworthy authorities, Turpin, and Geoffrey of Monmouth.[1] Higden likewise professes to quote from Herodotus, and from the second book of Eutropius, but the reference is false in each case, and some other authors are intended.[2] This chapter is mostly occupied with an account of the various tribes and dynasties of France from the times of Julius Cæsar downwards, and with a general outline of its geography. In that which follows (c. xxviii.) he enters on a description of the limits and positions of the provinces in particular, which seems to be for the most part taken from the *Geographia*;[3] but reference is made on certain points to Giraldus, Isidore, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Pliny, and also to Herodotus, but falsely as always. His observations respecting the woollen cloth

---

committed the error about the Sibyl. See Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2. § 104, vol. iii. p. 414 (ed. Arev.) and the notes. I had overlooked this in writing the note at p. 266.

[1] Warton (*Hist. Eng. Poetry*, vol. i. *diss.* 1) has many remarks on these writers. He thinks that the fabulous history ascribed to Turpin is not older than the 12th century. Pope Calixtus II. in 1122, it seems, pronounced the history to be genuine!

[2] Herodotus is quoted as giving an account of the Picts, p. 294. The second book of Eutropius is quoted for an account of the Gauls, in which it might very naturally have occurred; but there is no such passage either in that book or in the whole of his history, so far as I know. It occurs, however, in Mart. Pol. *Chron.*, lib. ii. c. 6, who says, "Galli vero, *ut Orosius* ait, sunt "animo feroces, corpora fortiora "aliis hominibus habentes. Sed hoc "comprobatum est, quod sicut in "primo impetu virtus eorum fortior "est aliis hominibus, ita postea vir-"tus eorum minor est ferme quam "mulierum." Possibly he has in his eye Oros. lib. v. c. 16 (compare also lib. vi. c. 12), with whom Higden's words agree more nearly than his own. With the expression of Orosius (p. 329 Hav.), "Post ubi "incalescente sole fluxa Gallorum "corpora *in modum nivium* distabue-"runt," compare Higden, p. 268.

[3] For Flanders, compare *Geographia*, fol. 8 (almost copied); for Picardy, *Geogr.* fol. 17 (very similar);

of Brabant[1] and Flanders (which he includes under France) as compared with the scarlet cloth of Lincoln are not without interest, and are probably derived from his own knowledge and observation.

His notice of Spain (c. xxix.) is but slight, and is principally taken from Justin and Isidore. The concluding remark about the Spanish possessions of the Saracens, as they then existed, is found only in the later form of the chronicle, and may be original.[2] In the thirtieth chapter the islands of the Mediterranean are described. For a great part of the account Higden is indebted to Isidore, not only for those sentences to which his name is prefixed, but likewise for much besides.[3] His account of Sicily is partly taken from Bede and Giraldus, as well as from Isidore. He also mentions St. Gregory's notion that souls are tormented in the flames of Etna. The only other author quoted in this unimportant chapter is Orosius.

---

for Normandy, *Geogr.* fol. 14 (which Higden abbreviates); for Poitou, *Geogr.* fol. 16, b.; for Aquitaine, the *Geogr.* fol. 3 (which gives, as the sources of the information, Isidore, Pliny, and Orosius); for Gascony, the *Geogr.* fol. 22, which however has not the latter part of Higden's description; and for Burgundy, the *Geogr.* fol. 4, b., which is pretty closely copied. The descriptions of Brittany (p. 290), and Anjou (p. 294), do not coincide with those in the *Geographia*, fol. 4 and fol. 3.

[1] The account of Brabant is not from the *Geographia*, where it is made a part of Germany (fol. 4).

[2] It does not occur in the account of Hispania, given in the *Geographia* (fol. 11).

[3] See Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 7 (for Gades); § 39, 40 (for Sardinia); § 41 (for Corsica); § 19, 20 (for the Cyclades); § 21 (for Delos); § 22 (for Rhodes); § 31 (for Samos); § 14 (for Cyprus, in part); § 15, 16 (for Crete); § 32 (for Sicily); lib. xiii. c. 18, § 3, 4, 5 (for Scylla and Charybdis); lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36 (for the Æolian Islands); lib. xvi. c. 2 (for the salt of Agrigentum). The short notice of Aradus has nothing but what is contained in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2, § 24, and Ezek., xxvii. 8, 11. Higden, however, took it with little alteration from the Aradia sive Aradium of the *Geographia* (fol. 1, b.), which refers to the *Glossa* on Ezekiel. Even when *Ranulphus* is prefixed to a sentence the matter is taken from Isidore, who writes, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36, thus: "Eædem "insulæ et Vulcaniæ vocantur "quod et ipsæ, sicut Ætna, "ardeant." See Higden, p. 318.

The islands of the Atlantic (including the Baltic) follow upon these (c. xxxi.) The description of the Canaries, or Fortunate Islands, is taken from Pliny and Isidore. His account of Denmark, which he and other medieval writers call Dacia,[1] is likewise in part taken from Isidore, though without acknowledgment. Higden however has misapplied his authority, for Isidore undoubtedly intended by Dacia the Roman province on the Danube usually so called.[2]

For his notices of some other parts of Northern Europe, Wyntlandia, Islandia, and Norguegia, he gives no authority, but there is no doubt that he has again made considerable use of the *Geographia Universalis*. By the first of these, which he describes as an island lying to the west of Dacia, he seems to intend the northern part of Jutland, which is indeed not very far from being an island.[3] His account of Iceland and Norway deals principally with their natural productions. The great imperfection of his geographical

[1] See, for example, Henry of Huntingdon, and his copyist, B. Cotton (edited in this series), passim; also the Index to Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.* &c. "When the Danes," says Dr. Latham, "took their place "in history, they had not long been "known under that name, before "they were attributed to Attila, "and Scandinavia became a part "of Hundom. Why? Because "the *Daci* were more or less Hun; "and because, as early as the time "of Procopius, we find them called "*Dani*, the Dani (in after times) "being called *Daci*." Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., vol. i. p. 1094. s. v. *Hunni*. To make confusion worse confounded Denmark is called *Danubia* in the Abingdon Chronicle (vol. i. p. 46).

[2] "Daci autem Getarum soboles "fuerunt, et dictos putant Dacos, "quasi Dagos, quia de Gothorum "stirpe creati sunt." Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 90, who copies Justin's words: "Daci quoque soboles Getarum "sunt," lib. xxxii. c. 3. See Higden, p. 320.

[3] In Spruner's *Hist. Atl.*, t. 57, this tract is marked *Wendila*, which seems to be the same word. In the *Eulogium Historiarum*, however (vol. ii. p. 78), Wynlandia or Winlandia is thus described: "Winlan-"dia est patria juxta montana "Norwegiæ versus *Orientem* sita, "super littus oceani; .... globum "de filo faciunt," &c. This is taken *verbatim* from the *Geographia* (fol. 22 b.), and is plausibly understood by Mr. Haydon to mean Finland, and I now incline to believe that Higden ought to have

knowledge of these regions at once reveals itself by his description of Norway (in which he doubtless includes Sweden) as an island, surrounded everywhere by the sea.[1] He also conceived Iceland as lying to the north of Norway.[2] His description of Thule, or, as he miscalls it, Tile, is taken from Pliny, Solinus, and Giraldus; he also derives something, as has been already observed, though without acknowledgment, from Æthicus. He thinks it necessary to distinguish from this another island, near India, called Tylos, mentioned by St. Augustine.[3] Thule is still, as Æthicus long ago said, "vix paucis nota;" and it is impossible to say where Higden supposed it to lie.

His description of the British isles.

Our author at length approaches the British isles, and begins by Ireland, which begins by the thirty-second chapter, and ends with the thirty-sixth. In this lengthy account he incorporates almost everything which Solinus had written,[4] and makes one or two

meant Finland also, but in describing the island as lying to the west of Denmark, he seems to have confused Wendila with the Winlandia whose description he has taken from the *Geographia*. Neither Wyntlandia nor Wynlandia are ordinary forms; Finlandia, Finnia, and Finnonia are the only Latin renderings of Finland mentioned in Lloyd's edition of the *Dict. Hist.* of C. Stephens (Genev. 1693). Neither does Zedler (*Universal Lexicon*, s. v. *Finland*) throw any light upon the matter.

[1] He has, doubtless, misunderstood his authority, the *Geographia*, which says (fol. 14), "Norwegia "latissima est Europæ provincia "mari fere undique circumcincta;" but Higden omits the *fere* and calls it *insula*, p. 326. Most of his description is transferred, with alterations, from the *Geographia*.

[2] Our author was misled by the *Geographia*, which, describing Norway, says: "Ab oriente habet Ga- "latiam (!), a septentrione Isolan- "diam (sic), ubi mare perpetuo "congelatur; ab occidente et Hi- "bernicum oceanum et Britanni- "cum; a meridie Daciæ (*i.e.* "Denmark) et Gothiæ finibus ter- "minatur." The description of Iceland, however, in Higden is mostly taken from Giraldus Cambrensis. *Top. Hib.* ii. 13.

[3] Aug. *De Civ. Dei*, lib. xxi. c. 5, § 1 (and the note of the Benedictine editor); Plin. lib. vi. c. 32, on which Harduin observes that it is the modern *Queximi*.

[4] C. xxii. He observes: "Illic "nullus anguis." This may well

remarks on the authority of Bede and a martyrology.[1] But so nearly the whole of his account is taken from Giraldus Cambrensis,[2] that it is unnecessary to add much about it in this place. With regard to St. Patrick's purgatory in Lough Derg, of which little is said by Giraldus,[3] the following passage from Archbishop Usher will satisfy most readers. "Quæ vero de "Patricii feruntur Purgatorio, non modo Ranulphus "Cestrensis, Henricus Knighton, et Johannes Bramp-"ton, sed etiam Matthæus Parisiensis, Vincentius "Bellovacensis, et Antoninus Florentinus ex eo mutuati "sunt libello, quem de Oëni cujusdam militis Hibernici "in Patricianum purgatorium ingressu, ex Gilleberti "Ludensis monachi relatione, in lucem edidit Hen-"ricus, Cisterciensis ordinis in Saltereyensi apud Hunt-"ingdonienses monasterio cœnobita." *Britt. Eccl. Antiq.* account for Higden's scepticism about St. Patrick, who regards the common legend as "sufficiently fa-"vorable," p. 338.

[1] A Life of St. Brigid, the saint referred to, goes under the name of Cogitosus, in which *Scotia* is used for *Ireland* (See Canis. *Thes. Mon. Eccl.*, vol. i. 416.), and probably the same may be true of her other biographies, which are numerous. (*See* Hardy, *Descr. Cat. of Materials of British History*, vol. i. p. 720.) Mr. Wright thinks it later than the 6th century, when it is supposed to have been written. (*Hist. of Ireland*, vol. i. p. 29, note.)

[2] The reader may pick out the pieces of Giraldus, by comparing Higden's sentences in order, thus:—

Cap. xxxii. of Higden is contained in Girald. *Top. Hib.* iii. 7; i. 1; ii. 1; i. 2; i. 4; i. 25, 26, 27; i. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; i. 22; i. 5 (referring to Bede and Solinus); i. 4; i. 18; i. 7; i. 18 (also reading *philomenæ* for *philomelæ*); i. 22, 23, 25.

Cap. xxxiii. in the same work, iii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (reading *Sangandius*), 5; iii. 16 (reading *Herymon*); iii. 7, 8; iii. 36, 37, 38; iii. 40; iii. 43 (reading *Sitaracus*), 44, 45, 46.

Cap. xxxiv. (after the reference to Solinus) in iii. 10 (reading *phalingis*, which is perhaps better), 11; iii. 19, 20, 21 (confirming Gale's emendation *ars quam Mars*), 22, 23, 24; iii. 26; iii. 35; ii. 19; ii. 1; ii. 43.

Cap. xxxv. in ii. 4, 5, 6, 7; ii. 28; ii. 9; ii. 19; ii. 7; ii. 42, 43; ii. 29. (The conclusion of the chapter, pp. 370–376, is not contained in Giraldus.)

Cap. xxxvi. in ii. 55; iii. 27, 28, 29; iii. 32, 33, 34. (The quotation from Augustine, p. 380, is not in Giraldus.)

[3] See his *Top. Hib.* ii. 5.

c. xvii., p. 465 (ed. 1687), where a great deal more information will be found.[1]

A short chapter on Scotland follows (c. xxxvii.), for which Bede, Isidore, and Giraldus are quoted, as well as the Herodotus before mentioned. Higden has misunderstood his authorities to some extent,[2] and upon the whole his account is of very little value, and for the most part legendary.[3]

At length Higden concludes with a description of his own country, "on account of which his whole "work was undertaken." He takes Wales first, and England afterwards. His description of Wales is written in a lame kind of rhyming verse, occupying one long chapter (c. xxxviii.); and the only authority whom he quotes is Gildas, and him only once.

---

[1] It appears from Mr. Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue of Materials of British History* (vol. 1. p. 859.), that this choice production has been printed "in almost every language "of Europe."

[2] Thus Isidore is represented as saying: "Hujus Scotiæ (Scotland) "incolæ dicuntur Scoti propria "lingua;" but that author (lib. ix. c. 2, § 103) appears to me to mean the Irish by Scoti. Elsewhere (lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6) he says: "Scotia, "eadem et Hibernia, proxima Bri-"tanniæ *insula*." Further Higden appears to have no authority from Bede, or from any writer but Giraldus, for saying that Scotland was ever called *Hibernia*. The Scoti of Bede in all the places quoted seem to be Irishmen, and the Hibernia in which they dwell to be Ireland. Higden rightly enough observed that Ireland was called Scotia in St. Brigid's Life; but the converse, that Scotland is called in old writers Hibernia, does not seem to be correct.

[3] For the legend of St. Andrew Higden refers to Giraldus, but like several other citations which purport to be from him, I know not where to find it. "Eadem etiam "de re," *i.e.*, the translation of St. Andrew's relics from Constantinople, says Usher, "scripsisse Giraldum "in Chronica sua, refert Eulogii "auctor; ad ea respiciens, quæ ex "Giraldo Cambrensi, libro i. Poly-"chronici sui, cap 37, Ranulphus "Cestrensis inseruit. Ejusmodi ar-"gumenti commentariolum in ma-"nibus habeo, ab Andreapolito quo-"dam Culdeo exaratum; .... illum "certe fuisse, ex quo sua descripsit "Giraldus, res ipsa indicat." *Britt Eccles. Antiq.*, c. xv. p. 341 (Lond. 1687). Usher then gives the document at length, which agrees substantially (but by no means verbally) with Higden.

The whole of his account however, or very nearly so, is taken from the *Itinerarium Cambriæ* and the *Cambriæ Descriptio* of Giraldus.[1] Under these circumstances we pass over the account without further remark, than that some few touches about the Welsh manners and Welsh productions may be due to Higden's personal knowledge or to the reports which he had heard from others.

The remaining chapters of this book contain an

[1] For Higden's account of the veneration of bells, &c. in Wales, p. 428, compare Girald. *Itin. Cambr.*, lib. i. c. 2; of Brecknock and its marvels, p. 412, Id. lib. i. c. 2; for the Welsh bowmen, p. 402, Id. lib. i. c. 4. (allusion doubtful); for Goldcliff, p. 412, Id. lib. i. c. 5; for Barry island, p. 414, Id. lib. i. c. 6 (very closely copied); for the three courts (curiæ) of Wales, p. 400, Id. lib. i. c. 9; for the Pembroke demons, p. 416, Id. lib. i. c. 12; for Crucmaur (Cruc Mawr, Giraldus) and its wonderful tumulus, p. 416, Id. lib. ii. c. 3; for the weapons of North and South Wales, p. 400, Id. lib. ii. c. 5; for the Bardesey island, p. 416, Id. lib. ii. c. 6; for the marvellous stone in Anglesey, and Count Hugh's experiment upon it, p. 424, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the rock of the hearers, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the mice and the monks, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the vindictive character of the Welsh and Irish saints, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the two Merlins, pp. 418–422, Id. lib. ii. c. 8 (very closely copied); for the mountains of Snowdon and their rich pastures, p. 422, Id. lib. ii. c. 9; for their lakes and one-eyed trout and other marvels, p. 422, Id. lib. ii. c. 9 (where Giraldus has *trutæ* for *turtri*); for the well at Ruthelan, pp. 422–424, Id. lib. ii. c. 9; for the Trojan descent of the Welsh, p. 394, Id. *Cambr. Descript.* c. 3; for the civil and ecclesiastical divisions of Wales, p. 400, Id. c. 4; for the names Cambria and Wallia, p. 396, Id. c. 7; for the manners of the Welsh, pp. 400–412, Id. c. 8–18 (but Higden has some details about dress, &c., which are not there contained); for the fertility of the country and its products, pp. 396–398, Id. c. 6 and 8 (but Higden here again has some things not in Giraldus). The blood in St. Winifrid's well seems to be the only marvel related by Higden, not to be found in these works of Giraldus, for which see Camden's notes on Girald. *Itin. Cambr.*, lib. ii. c. 10.

One or two of the absurd stories related by Giraldus are also to be found in Nennius, as those about the wonderful stone of Anglesey, and the tumulus at Crucmaur, near Cardigan. See his Hist., c. 84. and c. 87, and the notes in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, p. 80. Nearly the whole of Higden's metrical account is transferred into the *Eulogium*, but very inaccurately. Mr. Haydon (vol. ii. pref. p. li.) does not seem to have been aware that Giraldus is the authority from whom Higden took almost everything.

account of England, which must be discussed in the following volume.

Credibility and value of Higden, as an historian.

I have thus far briefly gone over the chapters of Higden's first book herein-after contained, with a view to indicate the authorities upon which they profess to depend; at the same time, when I could, I have pointed out his sources of information when he has himself withheld them, as in his chapters on the islands of the Mediterranean, on Northern Europe, and on Wales. Such cases also as I have observed of erroneous citations, those for example of Priscian, Eutropius, and Herodotus, have been pointed out, and in one or two instances corrected. At the same time, I fear that there are more errors of citation than I have myself discovered, and an increased knowledge of Higden has more and more convinced me of his inaccuracy. Not, indeed, that this fault is to be very severely dealt with, when we bear in mind the age in which he lived; but it is not the less a cause of disquiet and perplexity to his editor. We have also to regret that Higden has drawn so much from untrustworthy authorities. For recounting the Trojan origin of the European nations, and the absurdities which had clustered about the history of Alexander the Great, and a variety of fabulous narratives relating to distant lands and ancient times, we ought not to tax Higden severely; more especially as in some cases, for example when repeating the marvels current about Rome, he expresses doubts respecting their truth. At the same time, we cannot but feel disappointment that his account of countries which lay nearer home, as Scotland and Wales, should contain so little that is valuable, and so much that is utterly worthless and absurd. For the rest we need only say, that the value of the history and geography varies much with the authors quoted; whose sense Higden has in general represented with truthfulness and with much elegance

of expression.[1] His knowledge of letters was for his age very considerable; and any one who examines his list of authors would find that it could be no light matter, even in an age of printed books and every appliance for understanding them, to go through them all.[2] So far as I have at present observed, there is no appearance of any intentional garbling or falsifying his authorities, so as to make them mean something else than what they do mean. When compared with other writers of his time, he is considered by excellent judges to appear very favourably.

The following testimonials to his diligence and integrity deserve to be cited:—

"Litteris divinis et humanis" (says Bale) "tam clarus "evasit, ut inter suæ ætatis præcipuos earum cultores "connumeraretur. In historiographorum lectione multa "diligentia, opera, et cura usus est. . . . . Compendio "quodam in unum redegit historiæ volumen ea quæ "ante sparsim et sine lucido ordine apud multos "authores in obscuris delitebant bibliothecis; unicuique "suorum authorum honorem integrum servans. . . . . "Tamque egregie suam in eo navabat operam, ut a "peritis scriptoribus, Polydoro potissime, egregius his-"toricus diceretur."[3]

Henry Wharton observes, "ut vix aliam quam com-"pilatoris gloriam meruerit, nisi quod libro ultimo

[1] It will be understood from Higden's own remarks (pp. 18–20), that he does not quote the actual words of his authors. His later and longer edition deviates from them much more than the earlier, represented by C. D. This is singular, as the commencement of D. shows that it is an abbreviation of a larger work; and I cannot quite satisfactorily account for the phenomenon.

[2] At the same time Higden appears to have taken his quotations not unfrequently at second hand. I cannot altogether acquit him of disingenuousness in suppressing his obligations to the *Geographia Universalis*.

[3] Cent. vi. n. 12. This is taken in part from Leland, *De Script. Brit.*, p. 339, who elsewhere (p. 13) writes thus: "Ranulphus Higede-"nus, Cestrensis, antiquarum rerum, "ut illa ferebant sæcula, non impe-"ritus."

" multa e suo penu inseruerit;" and then proceeds to add these terms of high commendation: " Compilatoris " tamen munus tam egregie præstitit, ut pauci admo- " dum e nostratibus historici fide, gravitate, ac judicio " cum eo sint conferendi." [1]

Popularity of Higden's Polychronicon.

There is a value, however, to be attached to Higden's work apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography, which well informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed; for it was to them the standard work on general history. The Latin MSS. of the work are prodigiously numerous, and amount in all, I believe, to a number considerably greater than one hundred.[2] Moreover it was translated into English in the fourteenth and again in the fifteenth century; the earlier of which translations was printed, with some modern alterations, by the father of English typography, Caxton, in 1482, and again by his scholar Wynkyn de Worde in 1495; and yet once more, in such demand must the book have been, by Peter Treveris in 1527. But of the translations more hereafter. Nor is this all; not only were manuscripts of the original *Polychronicon* multiplied, and the English translation circulated extensively by means of the printing press, but other authors incorporated the labours of Higden into their own works, and sometimes with little other acknowledgment than by adding calumny to larceny. Thus the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, whose name is deservedly unknown, not content with pilfering a large part of his history from Higden, and with

[1] Appendix to Cave's Hist. Lit. s. a. 1357.

[2] Mr. Macray (*Manual of British Historians*, p. 39) says: " There " are MSS. in nearly all the libraries " in England." He then goes on to mention " some of them." These " some " are upwards of seventy; and I know from a MS. catalogue drawn up by Mr. Stuart Moore from Mr. Hardy's notes, and kindly communicated to me, of a good many which are not contained therein. This catalogue I hope to publish in the last volume, when I have rendered it as complete as possible.

spoiling not a few things that he touches, must needs go out of his way to call our author *madidus monachus*, and while following the common legend about St. Patrick and the snakes, exclaim in pious horror against Higden (under the name of "monachus Cestriæ,") as a *novus chronographus, qui dicta antiquorum vilipendit.*[1]

Such was the contemptuous treatment which Higden received at the hands of a contemporary thief. Another writer, who flourished later in the 14th century, Henry of Knighton, canon of Leicester, like the author of the *Eulogium*, incorporates much of Higden into his history; but, unlike that mean writer, handsomely acknowledges his obligations in the following terms: "Igitur opusculum historiolæ meæ a conquæstu regni "Angliæ cum adminiculo septimi libri Cistrensis (sic "in Twysden), *laudiflui chronographi, perlucide scri-*"*bentis;* cujus seriem de verbo ad verbum cum aliis "quæ aspectui meo sparsim se obtulerant inscribere "seriatim propono."[2]

[1] See Mr. Haydon's pref. to vol. i. of the *Eulog. Hist.*, pp. xliv.–xlvii. It does not appear that Higden is quoted by name, but only as "a monk "of Chester." For the deviations from Higden which this writer makes, either by design, or in carelessness, or in ignorance, the reader may consult Mr. Haydon, who has detailed them with a most laborious minuteness. It is impossible to help wishing that the author had been more worthy of the pains and erudition of his editor. Here and there, however, *aliquid humani* has happened to him, in common with us all; thus the Paulus (*Introd.* to vol. ii. p. xxiii.) of the *Polychronicon* (see p. 64) is not Marco Polo, but Paulus Diaconus. (See *De Gest. Long.*, lib. i. c. 6.) Similarly the Hugo named in the preface to vol. i. p. lv. note, is not Hugo de S. Victore, but Hugo or Hugutio Pisanus. (*Etymol.* cap. *Molo.*)

[2] P. 2311. (Twysd. *Hist. Angl. Script.* x.) The following passage, which quite accords with our notion that Higden put out two editions of his chronicle, may be quoted now, though we hope to recur again to the subject at the close of the work: "Explicit historia Leycestrensis "anno gratiæ MCCCXXVI. Nunc "Cistrensis imponit finem chro-"nicæ suæ; sed postea quædam "adjecit ei, videlicet de morte an-"tiqui Edwardi regis, cum quibus-"dam aliis eventibus in tempore "regis Edwardi tertii, prout infra "patebit in suo loco per singula." (*Id.* p. 2550.) Knyghton considers that Higden ended his chronicle at this point, "utrinque discessum est"

We learn from Bale, that John Rocheforth, who wrote in the beginning of the 15th century, made a compendium of the *Polychronicon* in one book.[1]

Henry Bradshaw, in fine, himself "a native of "Chester . . . and at length a Benedictine monk of "St. Werburgh's abbey," Higden's own home, composed before the close of the 15th century a *Life of St. Werburgh* in English verse. He thus acknowledges his obligations to Higden:

"Untoo this rude worke myne auctors these;
"Fyrst the true legends, and the venerable Bede,
"Mayster Alfrydus, and Wyllyam Malmusbury,
"Gyrard, *Polychronicon*, and other mo indeed."[2]

Several writers, also, as Knyghton himself, Malverne, Caxton, and others, undertook the continuation of the *Polychronicon*, both in the 14th and 15th centuries; but of these we say nothing now, reserving our account for the close of Higden's work. The reader, however, will easily perceive how popular the history must have been, to have been so often continued by other hands.

In the course of these remarks we have had occasion to quote several authors who mention Higden; but it would be a long undertaking to collect a catena of allusions to the *Polychronicon* from the writers of the 14th and following centuries. In addition to those to whom we have already referred, we may mention the names of Wycliffe,[3] Purvey,[4] and Thorpe,[5]

(*Id.* p. 2569). These words refer to the events of year 1340, according to the marginal date in our MSS. A. and E.; but Knyghton appears to refer them to 1336 or 1337; at least, we have 1336 occurring in his margin a little before them, and 1338 a little after them.

[1] *Cent.*, vii. n. 41. This may possibly be the same book that is mentioned above, p. xii. note, as a work of Higden.

[2] Quoted in Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetry*, vol. ii. p. 178.

[3] *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, p. 256 (Ut narrat Cestrensis in suo *Polychronicon*).

[4] Id. 397 (quod narrat Cestrensis, libro vi.)

[5] Writings of Brute, Thorpe, Cobham, &c., p. 79 (*Rel. Tract Society*) (as "Cisterciensis" [*i.e.*, Higden, lib. vii. c. 37] "tells"). A MS. memorandum in the Annales of William

among the Lollards; also of John Capgrave,[1] Richard of Cirencester,[2] and Thomas of Elmham,[3] among the chroniclers; all of whom wrote before Caxton's edition appeared in 1482. None of these authors, however, so far as I know, mention Higden by name.[4] To them, I doubt not, others might be added.[5] After the English translation was printed and reprinted, the book, of course, became more generally known, and it would be useless to collect mere allusions; such passages as throw any light upon the author's life or his works have been already quoted, so far as they have come to my knowledge.[6]

Wyrcester designates him similarly: "Nota etiam Chronica Ranulphi "monachi Cisterciensis." *Wars of the English in France, temp. Henr. VI.*, vol ii. p. 765, note (in this series). This was, probably, written at the end of the 15th century.

[1] *De Illust. Henr.*, p. 40, &c. (secundum Pollichronicam). Capgrave quotes from the work several times in the same manner, without naming the author, and sometimes incorporates it without naming it at all. See pp. 75, 79, and Mr. Hingeston's notes, and the Index.

[2] *Spec. Hist.*, lib. ii. c. 51, vol. i. p. 204 (Cestrensis, sicut dicit in sua *Polychronicon*).

[3] *Hist. Monast. S. August.*, pp. 185, 186 (Cestrensis in sua *Polychronica*, and similarly elsewhere).

[4] Those of them who call him *Cestrensis* can have known nothing of *two* monks of Chester, Roger and Ranulf; and I believe Bale to have been the inventor of the hypothesis that there were two.

[5] It is likely enough that Lord Cobham and Reginald Pecock tacitly refer to Higden. See *Writings of Brute, Cobham*, &c., p. 126 (as above); and the *Addenda* to Pecock's *Repressor*.

[6] The Reformers frequently quote Higden. See the Index to the Parker Society's volumes for references to Calfhill, Pilkington, and Jewel. I have examined all the passages, but there is little to be said of them. Calfhill and Pilkington simply refer to the *Polychronicon* without naming the author. Jewel sometimes quotes thus, "Sir John "Trevisa saith," but also refers to "Ranulf Cestr.," and, what is more deserving of notice, distinguishes him from Roger, though, as I conceive, erroneously. "This story is "recorded by Ranulphus, Rogerus "Cestrensis, and Rogerus Hoveden, "that lived at the same time." (*Works*, vol. iv. p. 697.) I will only add that the *Polychronicon* was referred to, both as a book of authority, *and as a well-known book*, by the Reformers and their opponents alike. Thus Horne, bishop of Winchester, after quoting the *Polychronicon*, writes: "Polychronicon vult, "quod nullum legatum papæ in "suam terram venire permisit." To which Stapleton replies: "Fal-

MSS. of Higden used for this edition.

The Latin text, however, was never printed before the present edition, with the exception of the portions relating to British History, which were published by Gale.[1] These seem to have been taken from a single MS., though it is possible that the occasional deviations from it may not always be due to accident or conjecture; it was formerly in his own possession, and is now with his other books in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge. (O. 5, 12.)

In the present edition it has been used only occasionally, and nearly always for those readings of Gale which seemed to require verification. It is called G. in the notes of this volume. It is a folio on vellum of 149 leaves, paged by a contemporary hand, in double columns, each column containing 51 lines, very neatly written in a hand of the 15th century.

Begins: "*Prologus primus in historiam Polocroni-*" *cam* (sic.) Post præclaros," &c.

Ends (under A.D. 1352): "cannabi, lini, et specierum."

A table of contents in a later hand is bound up with it.

The following account of the MSS. collated throughout for the present work may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text.

" sum est, quod ex Polychronico " prætendis desumere, quod papæ " legati," &c. Elsewhere, on the same page, he says: "Polychronici " author refert, quod, &c., quæ " verba tu omittis;" and bye and bye goes on to observe, "non opus " est ad *libros eruditos* Lanfranci, " benigne lector, remittere. Rogo " eos, quibus *Polychronicon aut Fa-*" *bianum* inspiciendi facultas datur, " ut ipsa loca examinent." See Stapl., *Op.*, tom. ii. pp. 1025, 1028 (ed. Par. 1620). Stapleton's work is dated, Lovanii, 1561. Of other writers, John Ross, who wrote at the beginning of Henry VII.'s reign a *Historia Regum Angliæ*, edited by Hearne; Caius, who styles him "summæ fidei scripto-" rem," *Animadv.* (p. 371, Hearne), though he distinguishes him from Roger; and Usher, in his *Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates*, have made more or less use of Higden as a historical authority.

[1] In his *Hist. Brit. Scriptores XV.* (vol. i. pp. 179–287, Oxon. 1691.)

A. This beautiful vellum MS., in double columns, of about the beginning of the 15th century, written by a scribe named Arnold, was given to the library of the University of Cambridge (where it is marked Ii, 2, 24) by archbishop Parker. It wants the first leaf of the contents and two fly-leaves; now containing 163 leaves.

Begins (fol. 13, after table of contents): "Post præ-" claros."

Ends (fol. 161, lib. viii. A.D. 1381): "Mense Martii " ejusdem anni Dominus Thomas Hatfield Episcopus " Dunelmensis moritur senex multorum dierum."

At the beginning, on fly-leaves of parchment, are pasted two pieces of parchment, in hands of the 15th century, inscribed *Ranulphus Chestrensis*, and *Ranulphus vel Polichronicon*.

On fol. 4 is written *Cronica que dicuntur Chester*, a remark which seems to indicate that the scribe knew nothing about *two different* Chester Chronicles, one by Roger and another by Ranulf.

After which, in archbishop Parker's hand, "qui " scripsit ad annum 1341."

Below this is written, in a hand of the 16th century, on an erasure: "Ranulphus Hygden."

And below this the anagram, *Presentem cronicam*, &c. (wrongly written *chronicam*), about which we have already spoken. Below this again, in the same hand of the 16th century: "Hic titulus texitur ex literis " initialibus capitum primi libri, et vulgo vocatur " *Polichronicon* sive *Policraticon*." This writer, who is probably archbishop Parker, evidently knew nothing about a *Polycraticon* of *Roger* distinct from a *Polychronicon* of *Ranulf*.

At fol. 152 (p. 297 of the red pagination), against the words *ecclesia libertatem* (lib. vii. c. 44, misnumbered 43, A.D. 1327), the original scribe has written "*explicit historia*,"* but the history is continued in the same hand. In the margin Parker, as it seems, has written, "Nota, quæ sequuntur in codice isto et altero

" diversos habuerunt scriptores; ut in hac proxima " sententia plane cernitur de morte Edwardi II." *

On fol. 152 b we have, in Parker's ordinary hand, " In hoc anno," *i.e.* 1330, " incipit continuatio historiæ " hujus scripta in cœnobio S. Albani et vocari potest " Chronica Albanensis, ut in alio libro ejusdem ma- " nus et formæ." Also at the bottom of the leaf, at the words "*utriusque discessum est*, A.D. 1340, in a contemporary hand is written " Hic finit Ches- " tyr." *

At fol. 153, however, is written at the side, in a scrawling hand of the end of the fifteenth century, against the words *sub pena carceris et capitis interdixit* (lib. vii. c. 44, A.D. 1342), the following note: *Alius liber scriptus habet in margine "Hucusque Randulphus,"* below which Parker again has written, *Non hic, sed superius,* referring to his note on A.D. 1327. In the upper margin at the same place is written in a different hand of the sixteenth century, a long note stated to be taken "ex veteri quodam libro," of which the following is a part: "Hic revera Ranulphus monachus " Cestrensis suas cronicas terminavit." He goes on to " say: "Hic etenim liberalibus artibus eruditus litera- " turaque insignis quorundam sodalium suorum instan- " tia pulsatus de famosioribus orbis historiis, scilicet ab " initio microcosmi usque ad tempora Edwardi regis, " tertii post conquæstum, opus æternaliter commendabile " produxit in lucem. Quod opus, quia multorum tem- " porum chronicas claudit, *Policraticon* voluit appellari." He then goes on to mention the continuation by John Malverne, a monk of Worcester, about which nothing shall be said at present. The reader is again requested to observe that *Polycraticon* is the title of the work attributed to *Ranulphus.* The notes which are followed by an asterisk recur (in the same words or nearly so) in another MS. of Higden, formerly in Parker's possession, and now numbered 117 in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

Described in the Catalogue of the MSS. of the Cambridge University Library, from which this account is partly taken. Some additional information will be found there (vol. iii. p. 396).

B. In the library of Caius College, Cambridge. A very fine MS., and earlier than the preceding. Henry Wharton says of it: "Ex quamplurimis, quos vidi, historiæ "istius codicibus manu scriptis longe pulcherrimus est "qui in collegio Gonvilii et Caii, cujus ipsemet alumnus "fui, asservatur." Tanner also calls it "omnium "pulcherrimum." It is a folio, on vellum, of 191 leaves, in two columns, each column of about 45 lines, written in a contracted hand of the latter part of the 14th century, and illuminated.

Begins (fol. 8): "Post præclaros."

Ends (A.D. 1375): "et palam in eorum sermonibus "prædicantes."

The MS. has no original title, and no note or notes concerning Higden. It contains an index, above which (fol. 1) a later hand, probably of the 15th century, has written, "Polychronicon Ran. Hygden usque ad "annum Domini 1370." The notes on the fly-leaves show that it was written before the end of the 14th century: "Cautio Magri Henrici Hosbern expos. ciste "de Derlynton in vigilia nativitatis beate Marie, A.D. "MCCCC." "Cautio Henrici Osberne expos. ciste Ling "in festo Sci Benedicti, et erit pollicronica pro xxvi. *s.* "viii. *d.*" &c. Numbered 82 in the library. See Descriptive Cat. of MSS. in Caius Coll., p. 36.

The above notes are not in the same hand as the MS. itself.

The scribe of MS. B. was evidently often unable to read his original well, for he sometimes leaves a space for a word which he cannot understand, sometimes runs two words into one, and occasionally distorts the orthography of a word in such a manner as to make it unintelligible.

C. In the library of St. Mary Magdalen's College, Oxford. One of the earliest MSS. of Higden in existence.

Folio, on vellum, of 119 leaves, in double columns, each column containing about 56 lines, written in a hand, abounding in contractions, of about the middle of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 1): "In historico contextu."

Ends (A.D. 1327): "Nam in ejus primordiis recepit " terra fertilitatem, aer temperiem, mare tranquillita- " tem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia libertatem."

After which (all in the same hand):

" Scribitur ecce liber, patrias profer mihi liber,
" Virginis o liber, scriptor tibi sit peto liber.
" Qui legit attendat, ne scriptorem reprehendat;
" Nam defectiva sit copia sæpe nociva.
" Libro conscripto, scriptor pellatur Egypto,
" Solvat ut invicto Regi laudes benedicto."

" *Expliciunt cronicæ venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi* " *Cestrensis, in septem libellos distinctæ, dictæ-* " *que Historia Policratica.*"

" Penna, quiesce, modo; finemque laboris ego do.
" Metro complodo liber claudens quasi nodo."

After this follows the table, consisting of 24 columns (complete), likewise in the same hand. Numbered clxxxi. in the library. Described in Coxe's *Catalogue of the MSS. in the Libraries of the Oxford Colleges* (Magd. p. 82.), where some additional information will be found. There is nothing to show to whom the MS. belonged, or by whom it was given to the College, as I am informed by the Rev. J. W. Knight, the librarian.

D. In the library of St. John's College, Cambridge.—A distinctly written MS., on vellum, in double columns, of 232 leaves (excluding blanks), each column containing 49 lines, the initial letters handsomely illuminated, of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 1): "In historico namque[1] contextu."

Ends (fol. 220, misnumbered 218, A.D. 1327) "Nam " in ejus primordiis recepit terra fertilitatem, aer tempe- " riem, mare tranquillitatem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia " libertatem. Et hic finis;" below which, in the same hand, "Qui scripsit librum, Ion. Luttōn (sic) est sibi " nomen."

After which follows the table of contents, to which additions have been made by other hands. On the first leaf are the following marks of ownership: "Joannes " Dee, 1573, Nov. 13. W. Crashawe, 1609, Novemb. " 17." The latter may have written also "Polychro- " nica," the only title that appears in the body of the MS., which has, however, lost one fly-leaf at the beginning and a portiŏn of another at the end, on the reverse of which is written: "Iste liber pertinet ad W. (?) " Hidam." The book is now bound up with a MS. of Ægidius, and has W. C. (*i.e.*, William Crashawe) stamped on it, and it is probably in his hand that the following remarks are made on a blank paper leaf at the beginning:

"Polychronica, per Ranulphum Higden Cestrensem; " Johannes Lutton monachus scripsit circa annum " 1386." Purchased of W. Crashawe (brother of R. Crashawe, the poet), by Thomas Wriothesley, earl of Southampton, and presented with many other books to the library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked A. 12. It has been described by the Rev. B. M. Cowie in the *Catalogue of MSS. and Scarce Books of the Library of St. John's.*[2]

These four MS., A., B., C., D., had been selected, with the approbation of the Master of the Rolls, by my

[1] The MS. might be thought to commence imperfectly, but this is not so; several other MSS. begin similarly (*e.g.*, Univ. Coll. Oxon. 177; Mert. 118). Such an opening indicates that the work in this shape is *an abbreviation* of a larger work.

[2] P. 4 (*Publ. Camb. Ant. Soc.* for 1842).

lamented friend the Ven. Archdeacon Hardwick, who had examined a great number of MSS., and made notes upon them, as the materials upon which the Latin text[1] in this edition should be formed, special preference being given to MS. A. It appeared, however, desirable to take in an additional MS. for the *longer* form of the chronicle, which is exhibited in a very pure form in the following MS., our E., whose readings, however, are sometimes corrected from the other MSS., A. and B., and occasionally also from C. and D., which exhibit the chronicle in the *shorter* form, and differ but very little from each other.[2]

E. In the University Library, Cambridge.—A folio, on vellum, of 276 leaves (a fly-leaf at the end having been cut away), each page containing between 30 and 40 lines (or a little more than 40 in the last two books), the initials very elaborately ornamented, well written, in the latter part of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 11, after the table of contents, entitled Kalendarium Cronicorum): "Prologus primus. Incipit "prologus in historiam policronicam Ranulphi. Post "præclaros," etc.

Ends (fol. 275, under A.D. 1352): "circa maritimas "urbes Angliæ et Hiberniæ."

[1] I should perhaps say here, that the marginal summaries are not a part of the Latin text: they vary much in the different MSS. Usually I have taken them from E., but sometimes from other sources, and have occasionally added them myself, and more often omitted them. The headings of the chapters, however, are in all cases taken from MSS.; these also vary, but not in an equal degree.

[2] So similar are C. and D., that I have often thought it desirable to say "C., not D.," of particular readings. Where, however, it is only recorded that D. has a particular reading, it is less certain that C. has it not. The MSS. A., D., E., the standard MS. of Trevisa (called MS.), and Caxton's edition, have been always under my eye in preparing the sheets for the press, the other MSS. have not. With regard to B., when its readings are not recorded, they may be presumed to agree with those of E., with whose text the other Latin MSS. have been collated, and which has been *generally* followed in this edition.

After which this note (in the same hand): "Usque "hic scripsit Ranulphus Hykedoun monachus Cestren- "sis, istorum cronicorum compilator, qui obiit in senec- "tute bona —," where a later hand has added "Anno "Do. 1363."

However, at fol. 273 *b*, in the original hand, under A.D. 1327, after "ecclesia libertatem," is written "Ex- "plicit historia."

Inside the cover, in a hand of the 17th century, probably Mr. Lorton's, "Ranulphi Hikeden monachi "Cestrensis Chronica;" at fol. 2, probably in Wheelock's hand, "Ranulfi Cestrensis Polychronicon." At fol. 11, also in a somewhat late hand: "Gramata (sic) dant "prima capitalia nomen agentis." On the reverse of fol. 276 (written in a hand of the 15th century): "Iste liber constat J. Broke monacho ecclie X^{i} Cant." (*i.e.*, Canterbury Cathedral).

Described in the *Catalogue of MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*, where it is marked Ii. 3. 1. (vol. iii. p. 401). It came into the library shortly before 1600.[1]

One other valuable MS. has been consulted for the first three chapters. It was given to Winchester College by William of Wykeham, with a continuation to the end of the reign of Edward III. About the continuation we must defer our remarks, and only now say that, in common with others, this MS. has a note at the end of the year 1342: "Huc usque "scripsit Ranulfus." Its readings are mentioned above.

MSS. of Trevisa used in this edition.

For the version of Trevisa,[2] which ends with an account of the treaty of Bretigny in the year 1360, two MSS. and Caxton's edition have been employed.

[1] Some points in the descriptions of these MSS. belonging to the University have been kindly brought to my notice by H. Bradshaw, Esq., M.A., Fellow of King's College, who has the charge of them.

[2] The following account of Trevisa, principally derived from Tanner's *Bibliotheca* and Dibdin's enlarged edition of Ames' *Typographical Antiquities*, may not be unacceptable. John Trevisa was a

One of these MSS. is followed very closely, and adopted as the standard, and therefore designated in the notes simply as "MS." It is preserved in the

native of Cornwall, born at Caradok, according to Fuller, sometime in the 14th century, entered the university of Oxford first at Exeter College, then at Queen's College, of which he became fellow. He afterwards became vicar of the parish of Berkeley in Gloucestershire, and chaplain to Thomas, fourth Lord Berkeley of Berkeley, (who died in 1416, of whom we have a large account in Collins' *Peerage* by Brydges, vol. iii. p. 606,) and, in fine, canon of the Collegiate church of Westbury on Severn in Gloucestershire, or, according to Dugdale, *Baronage*, vol. ii. p. 360, of Westbury in Wiltshire. He seems to have resided principally in Gloucestershire (his notes on the *Polychronicon* having especial reference to that part of England), and to have occupied a great part of his time in translating various Latin works into his mother tongue. He had, however, also seen foreign countries, and mentions the hot baths of "Akon in Almayne and Egges in "Savoye," in which he also bathed, "and assayed them." (Polychron., lib. 1, c. 47.) Being no friend to the monks, he finds great favour with Bale. He was living in 1398, when he concluded his translation of Bartholomæus' *De Proprietatibus Rerum*, and most probably as late as 1408, when the translation of Vegetius was concluded; for it would appear that Trevisa is author of that work. According to Tanner, he died in 1412. He is said to have been buried in the chancel of the church at Berkeley. Some ancient pieces of almost obliterated writing, partly in Norman French, partly in Latin, remaining in the church at Berkeley in 1805, when Mr. Hughes, at Dibdin's request, examined them, are thought to be by Trevisa, or of Trevisa's day; but Mr. Hughes informed Dibdin that "not one certain "vestige of him remains here, nor "is even his grave in the church "known."

The following works by Trevisa are extant:—

A Dialogue on Translation between a lord and a clerk (*i.e.*, his patron and himself). Printed by Caxton with the *Polychronicon*.

This dialogue is composed as an introduction to the *Polychronicon*, which is directly mentioned in the following words: "And so Ranul- "phus, monke of Chestre, wrote in "Latyn his bookes of Cronykes, "that descryueth the worlde aboute "in lengthe and in breede, and "maketh mencion and mynde of "doynges and dedes of meruaylles "and of wondres, and rekeneth the "yeres *to his last dayes* fro the first "makyng of heuen and of erthe; "and so therinne is grete and "noble information and loore *to* "hem that can therein rede and "vnderstande." (Sig. 1, 2, Caxton's edition.)

Also another *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which Trevisa translated from the Latin of William of Occam, which is published (in the original) by Goldastus, *Mon. S. Rom. Imp.*, vol. i. pp. 13–18, and

library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked H. 1.

This superb MS. is on vellum, and contains 280 leaves, one at each end being blank. (See facsimile.)

The first 18 leaves contain Occam's *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum* (occupying nearly nine pages), and

---

treats "De Potestate Ecclesiastica " et Sæculari."

Trevisa's translation of a sermon by Fitzralf, archbishop of Armagh, preached in 1357 at Oxford against the mendicant friars, is contained, together with the preceding, in both the MSS. of the *Polychronicon* used for this edition, and in a Harleian MS. (n. 1900).

The last-named MS. contains also his translation of a spurious production, *On the Beginning and End of the World*, ascribed to Methodius, from which Higden in this volume gives extracts. (See Harleian Catalogue.)

Trevisa's translation of Bartholomæus de Glanvilla *De Proprietatibus Rerum* was finished, as he tells us, in 1398. Wynkyn de Worde printed it (about 1494), and it was more than once reprinted in the following century. (See Tanner.)

His translation of the *Polychronicon* was concluded (as he tells us at the end) April 18, 1387, with a continuation by himself, and a dedication to Lord Berkeley (at whose request it was made), of which no more here.

In the Bodleian Library (Digby, 233) is a translation of Vegetius' *De Re Militari*, composed at Lord Berkeley's request, and finished in 1408. This is reasonably presumed to be executed by Trevisa, as wel as a translation of Ægidius Romanus' *De Regimine Principum*, contained in the same volume.

Of his other translations, that of the Bible, *said*, by Caxton, Bale, and others, to have been made by Trevisa, and *possibly still extant at Rome*, is the most important on all accounts. It is not, however, certain, though at the same time by no means improbable, that Trevisa ever translated the Scriptures at all. (See Mr. Hughes' letter as above.) The remark of the lord to the clerk (Sig. 1, 3, b. Caxton): "Also thou " wotest where the Apocalips is " wryten in the walles and roof of " a chappel both in Latyn and in " Frensshe," has reference of course to the decorations of Berkeley church mentioned above, but it cannot safely be inferred that Trevisa was connected with them. They may have been earlier than his time.

Besides these works, his *Genealogy of David, King of Scotland*, is quoted from a MS. by Usher. (See Tanner.)

According to Bale, who has omitted some of these works of Trevisa, he also wrote or translated *Gesta Regis Arthuri, Britanniæ Descriptionem, Hiberniæ Descriptionem, De Memorabilibus Temporum, e alia plura fecit ac transtulit.*

Sermo Domini Archiepiscopi Armachanani. These works, done into English by Trevisa, (for which see the note,) are followed by a double index to the *Polychronicon,* one in Latin, one in English, without title, or colophon. They occupy 15 leaves. After this follows the *Polychronicon,* also without title or colophon. The name of Higden is not so much as mentioned in the MS. at all.[1] At the beginning is this note: "Ele- " gantissimum hunc codicem manu scriptum bibliothecæ " Collegii S. Johannis Evangelistæ donavit magister " Baile de Newington, in agro Middlesexiæ, A.D. " 1674."

This was the only MS. used by Archdeacon Hardwick, (who, with great probability, supposes that it is the MS. formerly belonging to Mr. Forster, a member of St. John's, mentioned in the Harleian catalogue, n. 1900,) but it soon became evident that it was necessary to correct its errors and supply its defects by some better aid than Caxton's printed edition. The subsidiary MS. employed for that purpose, called α. in our notes, was formerly in Archbishop Tenison's library, and when that library was dispersed by public auction, in July 1861, it was purchased for the British Museum, where it is now marked as 24,194 of the Additional MSS.

It is on vellum, and now consists of 261 folio leaves, in double columns. An hiatus of eight leaves occurs between the 41st chapter of the third book and the beginning of the fifth chapter of the fourth book; and again, in the sixth book, the scribe appears to have jumped from part of the 14th chapter to part of the 26th. The volume is otherwise in the finest preservation, and contains many splendid illuminations.[2]

---

[1] Described in Cowie's *Catalogue* (u. s.), pp. 75, 76.

[2] See Sotheby and Wilkinson's Sale Catalogue of Archbishop Tenison's MSS., lot 42, p. 11.

In the beginning is inserted this note, on a leaf of paper: "Archbishop Tenison's library, MS. No. 1. Higden's Polychronicon, translated by John de Trevisa, finished 1387. The arms upon the first page of this book are nearly obliterated, yet enough remains to show that they are those of Beauchamp and Warwick quarterly. The latter, being the arms sometimes fabulously ascribed to the famous Guy, earl of Warwick, appear to have been borne by the Beauchamps as feudal arms for the earldom. On the 33rd page the same arms occur separately, and in better preservation. This copy of Higden seems, therefore, to have been made, or at least illuminated, for one of the earls of Warwick of the family of Beauchamp." To this Sir F. Madden has added the following remark: "The earl of Warwick, for whom this MS. was executed, is Richard Beauchamp, who died in 1439, and who married Margaret,[1] sole daughter and heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley, for whom the translation was made by Trevisa. F. M." The MS. begins with the *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which is followed by the *Sermo Domini Episcopi Armacani* (both in English). To this succeeds the double *Tabula* of the *Polychronicon*, and after it the work itself; on the last leaf we have: "This translacioun is y-ended in a Thors- day, the eyȝteþe (sic) day of Aueryl, the ȝere of our Lord a þowsand þre hondred foure score and seuene; þe tenþe ȝere of kyng Richard þe secounde after þe conquest of Engelonde; þe ȝere of my lordes age Sire Thomas lorde of Berkeley, þat made me make þis translacioun, fyue and þritty. Explicit."

The MS. in St. John's library concludes with the very same words, except that it reads "Thomas of Berkeley," and has *Deo Gratias* instead of *Explicit*.[2]

[1] Dugdale (*Baronage*, vol. i. p. 247) calls her Elizabeth, daughter and heir of Thomas, Lord Berkeley. See also p. 361.

[2] The Harleian MS. (1900) has xviij. for *eyȝteþe*; and this is quite right. The Harleian Catalogue wrongly makes Tenison's MS. and

The name of a former owner occurs at the end of the tabula, "William Bradwell, A.D. 1610." We have also at the end of the volume, "Mr. John Knighton," "William Knighton," and on the last leaf, "Emanuel, "anno Domini, 1570."

It will thus be seen that the contents of this MS. are precisely the same as in our standard MS. So very similar, indeed, are these two magnificent volumes to each other, that they appear at first sight to have been executed by the same scribe. I compared the two, however, in company with Mr. Bond, of the British Museum, and he pointed out differences in the form of the *s* and the *r* in the two MSS., which convinced us both that they are not by the same hand. Both, however, are certainly of the same period, namely, about the reign of Henry IV. Tenison's MS. was composed during the life of the first wife of the earl of Warwick, for whom it was made. He was contracted to her in marriage in 1393, and she died in 1422.[1] It appears, therefore, that both these MSS. are only a few years later than the date of Trevisa's translation (1387). To Mr. Bond's very practised eye the Tenison MS. appears slightly the older of the two.

the St. John's MS. read *eyghtenthe*; there is no *n* in either of them.

[1] Having in vain endeavoured to ascertain these dates from books, I consulted my learned friend, Mr. C. H. Cooper, who apprised me of the existence of a MS. *Life of the Berkeleys*, by Smyth, in the possession of the Earl Fitzhardinge. By his Lordship's kindness, and that of Mr. J. H. Cooke, who searched the volume, I am enabled to give the following information. "I am di- "rected," says he, "by Lord Fitz- "hardinge to reply to your note to "him asking some information from "Smyth's Berkeley MSS., which "are in my custody here. Smyth "does not give the date of the mar- "riage of Elizabeth, daughter and "heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley "(fourth of that name); but he "states that the contract for the "marriage (with Richard Beau- "champ) was entered into in Sep- "tember, 17 Rich[d]. II., and the "marriage, it is therein stated, was "intended to be solemnized 'as soon "'as conveniently may be,' and "that the bride was then under the "age of 'seaven yeares.' Smyth "states that her death took place "28th December, 1st Hen. VI., "and that she was buried at the "monastery of Kingswood."

The orthography is substantially the same in both the MSS., the same word being written in several different ways in both. In some few cases, more especially where the ȝ occurs, the variations in the spelling are recorded. The *z* and ȝ are expressed in both MSS. by the same character; and unfortunately the *c* and *t* also, so that it is sometimes uncertain which letter is intended in such words as *nacioun, correccioun,* &c. The same clerical errors likewise frequently occur in both MSS., and can sometimes be corrected by the aid of Caxton, who certainly did not use either of them as his standard.[1]

As respects the text of Trevisa's translation, he followed the larger form of the chronicle, represented by A., B., E. The long passage about the diameter of the earth (p. 44), which occurs in E. only, is translated by Trevisa, but does not occur in the Harleian version, printed in this edition. The section relating to Brabant (p. 288) occurs in A. only of our MSS., but is translated in both the versions. It is clear, that neither translation was made precisely from the text of any MS. used for this edition; there is, however, little or nothing in either of them which is not to be found in one of the three Latin MSS. above mentioned.

Literary estimate of Trevisa's version.

With regard to the merits of Trevisa's translation, the following judgment is delivered by Mr. Hardy in the general introduction to Petrie's *Monumenta Historica Britannica.* "This translation by Trevisa "is generally strict and literal, but sometimes confused "from a misapprehension of the author's meaning. "Occasionally short notices [to which Trevisa's name "is prefixed] are inserted by way of explanation..... "On the whole, Trevisa appears to have shrewd "and well-informed" (p. 4). Trevisa appears to have

[1] A specimen of the orthography of Tenison's MS., and also of Caxton's printed text, may be seen in the Appendix.

been puzzled with the Latinity of Higden, which is, however, in general extremely good for the period, as appears by the following words which in his above-named *Dialogue* he puts into the mouth of his patron. "Though I can spéke, rede, and vnderstande Latyn, "ther is moche Latyn in these bookes of Cronykes "that I can not vnderstonde nether thou, without "studyeng, auisement, and lokyng of other bookes." It must be owned that Trevisa has occasionally fallen into the most ludicrous errors, which a very little "avisement" might have avoided. Thus Higden writes: "Terra frugifera maxime tritici, unde et eam veteres "Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt;" which Trevisa renders thus: "Mesia is a prise lond of wine and of "whete, þerfore *the olde cereris* cleped hit a berne" (p. 173). Again, Higden has in his text: "Justinianus "postmodum litteris et bellis egregius addidit tertiam "ecclesiam in honorem Divinæ Sophiæ, id est, Domini "Christi, quem 'hagiam sophiam' vocavit." The passage is thus misdone into English by our clerk: "Ius-"tinianus þe emperour bulde afterward the þridde "chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure "Lord Crist, *that Agia clepeþ Diuina Sophia,* in "Englisshe þe Wisdom of God" (p. 181). Again, what reasonable excuse can we make for a man who can render "Consuluit Cecrops Apollinem Delphicum" thus, "Cecrops axede counsaile of *Appolyn* Delphicus?" (p. 193). The reader who is inclined to be malicious may find gratification in comparing the obscure Latin verses quoted by Higden with Trevisa's rendering of them (p. 237). It ought, however, to be borne in mind that the age of Trevisa was not an age of learning or of criticism; the errors which would be disgraceful in our time are in some degree venial in the fourteenth century.[1] Still it is impossible not to perceive that

[1] Trevisa seems to have suspected that his translation was not always accurate. In his *Dialogue*, the clerk says: "Yf a translacion were made

Higden's scholarship is very far superior to that of his translator. As one of the earliest specimens of English prose (A.D. 1387), containing many rare words and curious expressions, the version of Trevisa will be gladly welcomed by philologists, who will not be over severe upon his errors. All remarks on his language and idioms must be reserved for the glossary at the end of the work.

Caxton's edition of Trevisa.

The edition of Caxton, which Archdeacon Hardwick had begun to collate for this edition, must now briefly be noticed. Besides Trevisa's translation, he gives, as has been already said, the Dialogue of the lord and the clerk, occupying four pages and a half, and also "The Epystle of Sir Iohan Treuisa, chapelayn vnto Lord "Thomas of Barkley, vpon the translacion of Poly-"cronycon into our Englysshe tongue," occupying about one page.[1] Caxton's own *Prohemye* occupies nearly

---

"that myght be amended in ony "poynt, somme men it wold blame;" to which the lord replies: "Yf men "blame that is not worthy to be "blamed, thenne they ben to blame. "Clerkes knowe wel ynowgh that "no synfull man doth so well that "it (he?) ne myght doo better, ne "make so good a translacion that "he (it?) ne myght be better." (Sig. l. 3, *b*.) This is quite true, yet all errors are not equally excusable.

[1] The following portions may interest the reader: "Welthe and wor-"ship to my worthy and worshipful "lord sir Thomas, lord of Barkley, "I, Iohan Treuisa, youre preest and "bedeman, obedyent and buxom to "werke your wille, holde in herte, "thenke in thought, and meen in "mynde youre nedefful menyng "and speche that ye spak and sayde "that ye wold have Englysshe "translacion of Ranulphus of Ches-"tres bookes of Cronykes; therfor "I wole fonde to take that trauayll "and make Englysshe translacion "of the same bookes as God "graunteth me grace..... In "somme place I shall sette word "for worde, and actyf for actyf, "and passyf for passif arowe right "as it stondeth withoute chaung-"ynge of the ordre of wordes; but "in somme place I must chaunge "the ordre of wordes, and sette "actyf for passyf and ayenward; "and in somme place I muste sette "a reson for a worde, and telle "what it meneth; but for al such "chaungyng the menyng shal "stande and not be chaunged. But "somme words and names of coun-"treyes, of londes, of cytees, of "waters, of ryuers, of montaynes "and hilles, of persons, and of "places muste be sette and stonde

four pages, the early part of which consists of a recommendation of the study of history, after which he goes on to say that he "has delyvered to write "twoo bookes notable," viz., the Golden Legend and the Polycronycon, in which are comprised, *inter alia*, "the historial actes and wonderful dedes, syth the "fyrst makyng of heuen and erth vnto the begynnyng "of the regne of kyng Edward the fourth and vnto "the yere of our Lord MCCCCLX., as by the ayde of "Almyghty God shal folwe al a longe after the com-"posynge and gaderynge of dan Ranulph, monke of "Chestre, fyrste auctour of this book, and afterward "englisshed by one Treuisa, vycarye of Barkley, (which "atte request of one Sir Thomas Lord Barkley trans-"lated this sayd book, the byble, and Bartylmew de "proprietatibus rerum out of Latyn into Englyssh,) "and now at this tyme simply emprynted and sette "in forme by me William Caxton *and a lytel em-*"*belysshed fro tholde makyng*, and also haue added "suche storyes as I coude fynde fro thende that "the said Ranulph fynysshed his book, which was "the yere of our Lord MCCCLVIJ., vnto the yere of the "same MCCCCLX., whiche ben an honderd and thre yere. "... And where the sayd auctor hath alle his werke "in seuen bookes, I haue sette that whiche I haue "added to after a parte, and haue marked it the laste "booke."[1] Caxton elsewhere informs us more par-

---

"for hem self in her owne kynde, "as Asia, Europa, Affryca, and "Syrya; Mount Athlas, Syna and "Oreb, Marach, Iordan, and Arnon, "Bethleem, Nazareth, Iherusalem, "and Damascus; Hanybal, Rasyn, "Assuerus and Cyrus, and many "suche wordes and names. Yf ony "man make of these bookes of "Cronykes a better Englissh trans-"lacion and moore prouffytable, "God do hym mede." (Sig. 1, 4. Caxton, who has taken his usual liberties with the orthography.)

[1] Caxton (fol. 389 b.) falsely makes Trevisa's translation end in 1357. "This translacion is ended "on a Thursdaye, the eyghtenthe "daye of Apryll, the yere of our "Lord a thousand thre hondred "and lvij., the xxxj. yere of kyng "Edward the thyrd after the con-

ticularly what these little embellishments were: "I, "William Caxton, a symple person, haue endeuoyred "me to wryte fyrst ouer all the sayd book of pro- "loconycon (sic), *and somwhat haue chaunged the* "*rude and old Englyssh, that is to wete certayn* "*wordes which in these days,*" (*i.e.*, in 1482), "*be* "*neither vsyd ne vnderstanden,* and furthermore "haue put it in emprynte to thende that it maye "be had and the maters therin comprised to be "knowen."[1]

Nothing need be said here about Caxton's continuation of Higden, but a few words may be necessary about his manipulation of Trevisa. Not only are certain words replaced by others, but the whole orthography is changed, so that the English is no longer the language of the 14th, but of the 15th century. In particular the ȝ has vanished altogether; so also has the þ in almost every instance; but this last is of less moment, as the MSS. of Trevisa are very inconstant in the use of the letter. A minute collation of Caxton's text, therefore, with that of the MSS. used for the present edition is well-nigh impossible; it must be sufficient to note in general those readings in which there is a difference of words, and not merely of forms and inflections. The reader is requested to observe in this place, that there are certain words in Trevisa which Caxton *in general* (but not uniformly) replaces by others, as will appear from the following

---

"quest of Englond, the yere of my "lordes age, Sir Thomas Lord of "Berkley, that made me make this "translacion fyue and thyrtty." The true date is 1387, and Caxton's error has been corrected in the Harleian MSS. Catalogue (n. 1900), and in the general introduction to the Monumenta Historica Britannica, p. 4. The last date mentioned in Trevisa's text is 1357; hence, perhaps, Caxton's mistake; but the chronicle is continued to the year 1360.

[1] Fol. 390 a., where he again mentions Trevisa by name, but gives no information which has not been already set down.

able of variations in words and expressions taken from our first volume.[1]

[1] *Trevisa's word or expression.*	*Caxton's substituted word or expression.*
clepeþ—i-cleped	- callith, p. 7; called, p. 31 (a frequent substitution, but see p. 111).
hiȝteres - -	- embelysshers, *id.*
schulleþ fonge—feng	- shall resseyue, *id.* (frequent); resseyued, p. 163.
vnwralle - -	- vnwynde, p. 9.
wonder (adjective)	- wonderful, *id.*
trauaille - -	- laboure, p. 11.
ich - - -	- I, *id.* See *Addenda*.
lose - - -	- leese or gleyne, *id.*
eche - - -	- encrece, p. 15.
for me schulde hem knowe	- by cause men, &c., *id.* (frequent.)
lore - - -	- doctryne, p. 27 (frequent).
i-cleped - -	- named, p. 31 (frequent, see p. 107).
woneþ - -	- dwelle, p. 45 (frequent).
deleþ - - -	- departe, *id.* (frequent).
atweyne - -	- a sounder, p. 49 (frequent).
pere - - -	- lyke, p. 49.
mulleþ - -	- melte, p. 63.
to menynge - -	- to say, p. 69 (frequent); *or*, as moche to saye as, p. 103.
efte - - -	- after, p. 71; *also*, agayn, p. 173.
byneme - -	- teke away, p. 73.
welkeþ - -	- fade, p. 77.
firen (adj.) - -	- brennyng, *id.*
al arewe - -	- al along, p. 79.
eueleþ nouȝt - -	- wexe not seke, p. 81.
horeþ - - -	- wexe hore, *id.*
eyren - -	- egges, *id.*
buxom - -	- obedient, p. 87.
i-cast - -	- disposed, *id.*
rese - - -	- fyghte, p. 91.
rather - -	- to fore, p. 93 (frequent).
hatte—hiȝt - -	- is named, p. 99; was named, p. 115. See p. 131.
defoule - -	- fylthe, p. 109.
as me troweþ - -	- as men suppose, p. 111.
steihe - -	- ascended, p. 113.
wilneþ - -	- wylleth, p. 119.
ouer (his lotte) -	- aboue, p. 125.
heleful - -	- helthful, p. 127; holsom, p. 305.
teeldis - -	- tents, *id.*
lesue, lese - -	- pasture, p. 131.

It has not been deemed necessary to warn the reader every time that the more common changes

Trevisa's word or expression.	*Caxton's substituted word or expression.*
to schedeþ and to falleð	- departe and befalle, p. 133.
aȝe - - -	- agayn, *id.* (frequent).
meres - -	- dyches, p. 137.
kynde - -	- nature and kynde, *id.* See p. 359.
toke hem to rede -	- concluded, p. 139.
schenful - -	- shameful, p. 141.
rediloker - -	- redylyer, p. 145.
happed - -	- happened, p. 151.
schrewednesse -	- ylle disposicioun, p. 153.
grisbaytynge -	- gruntynge, p. 159.
fette (to hem) -	- toke (with hem), p. 173.
auntrede - -	- aventured, p. 177.
wem - - -	- hurtynge or wemme, p. 185.
nostrilles - -	- nose thirles, *id.*
adraynt - -	- drowned, p. 195.
ospringe - -	- offsprynge, p. 203.
were twynnes -	- were born at one burthon, p. 211.
i-hiȝt - -	- besette, p. 217.
(þe þridde) deel -	- part, *id.*
chene - -	- space, p. 223; *also* clyfte or hoole, p. 233.
corn hepe - -	- corn hupple, p. 225.
ȝede - - -	- went, p. 227.
mynde - -	- remembraunce, p. 233.
ȝetynge - -	- milting, p. 235.
(sixty) wynter -	- yere, p. 247.
chast (verb) - -	- chastyse, p. 249.
fey - - -	- feyth, p. 251.
for to þey amende -	- vnto the tyme, &c., p. 253.
skymours - -	- scommers or theuys, p. 261.
outakyn tyn - -	- reserued (i.e. *except*) tin, p. 261. See p. 337.
mynystre - -	- monasterye, *id.*
to wyfe - -	- to marie, p. 263.
worschippe - -	- worship and reuerence, p. 265.
wood wroth - -	- sore wroth, p. 275.
a payed - -	- paid and content, p. 283.
is swiþe good - -	- is right good, p. 293. See p. 343.
keste - -	- purposed, p. 297.
copy and plente -	- plente, p. 301.
at þe best - -	- wel in the best wyse, p. 317.
sprankeleþ - - -	- sperclyth, p. 319.
(as it is declared) wiþynne	- after, *id.*
outlawed - -	- exyled, p. 319.

have been made; but the words in the notes "*and* "*so frequently*," "*and so elsewhere*," will sufficiently apprise him of the fact. Conversely it has been sometimes thought worth while to add that Caxton has in certain places, contrary to his more general usage, retained some of these words in particular passages of his text.

But besides these noteworthy changes by Caxton, there are likewise many others where a clause or even the greater part of a sentence has been re-cast more in accordance, it must be presumed, with the phraseology of his own day. In the more remarkable instances Caxton's text is given in the notes,[1] in others it has been considered enough to say "*slightly varied*

Trevisa's word or expression.	*Caxton's substituted word or expression.*
(men) myslyleued	- oute of byleue, p. 323.
nesche	- soft, p. 333.
vseþ	- driuen, p. 339.
lederes	- capitayns, p. 345. See p. 349.
nolles	- hedes, p. 355.
awrekeþ	- auenge, p. 357.
chepinge	- markettis, p. 359.
wilewys	- withges, p. 365.
i-heled	- couered, p. 367.
piȝt	- pight and stycked, p. 369.
wende	- goo, p. 373.
i-loke	- shette, p. 377.
biddeþ meny bedes	- sayen many prayers, *id.*
battes	- staues, p. 381.
heste	- comaundement, p 383.
behote	- promise, p. 391.
he and al his meyny	- he and his men, p. 393.
gree	- degree, p. 409.
splekked	- spercled, p. 429.

These are by no means the only substitutions made by Caxton, but they comprise the principal ones, so far as this volume is concerned, and they will be quite sufficient to apprise the reader of the general character of his embellishments. The subject will be more minutely handled in the Glossary.

[1] See pp. 91, 141, 177, 179, 303, 305, 311, 313 (especially), 315, 333, 335, 369, 393 (especially).

in Cx."[1] Without wishing to say anything in derogation of the great patriarch of English typographers, I am compelled to observe that his edition is not of much critical value,[2] and I could now almost wish that it had not been employed at all in this edition, but that another good MS. had been used in its place.[3] However, when the two MSS. differ, and when Caxton agrees with one of them, his authority is frequently sufficient to determine the true reading; and there is also some considerable interest in perceiving what words and phrases were falling into desuetude in Caxton's time, even though some of them be used by the poets, by Spenser in particular, in times much posterior to Caxton.

The Harleian translation.

The Harleian MS., n. 2261, which contains the more recent English translation, now for the first time printed in this edition, is a moderate-sized quarto, on paper, and containing 449 leaves, having lost at the commencement two or three leaves, viz., that part of the tabula which contained the letter A. Each page contains from 30 to 40 lines, neatly written in a hand of the 15th century. The capital letters and headings of chapters and sections are rubricated, and various

---

[1] See pp. 261, 313, 331, 333, 335, 349, 355, 359, 361, 363, 369, 371, 373, 375, 379, 381, 387, 391.

[2] Caxton, it has been very justly observed, "exercised the part of "editor of his various publications, "by no means after the fashion of "Madden and Forshall. Lollard "works were not patronized by "the Royal Caxton press; or the "Wycliffe Bible, the greatest au-"thority for the history of old "English, would have represented, "as it came from his hands, the "spelling and even the grammar "of the reigns of Edward IV. and "Henry VII. *He cared nothing "for philology;* his books were "printed for the sake of their "matter, and he was not willing to "allow the interest of the subject "to suffer from the presence of in-"stances of obsolete spelling, *though "he is strangely inconsistent in his "orthography.*"—*Christian Remembrancer* (vol. 48, p. 220). These words suggest a true notion of his treatment of Higden.

[3] Such, for example, as that at Glasgow, which Mr. Hardwick has called in his MS. memoranda "the "finest in existence." The Harleian MS. (n. 1900), and another in the Bodleian, are also very fine.

ornamentations occur at the ends of books, &c. A few remarks are added in later hands. The chronicle ends, fol. 445, with an account of the spoliation of the shrine of Hayles, and of St. Edward at Westminster. This appears to have taken place in the same year as the death of Edmund Langley, duke of York, and the expedition of Henry IV. to Wales, and the battle with the Scotch (A.D. 1401), which are mentioned just before.

The last words of the chronicle are: "And soone " after the shryne of Seynte Edward at Westmonastery " was spoylede of grete rychesse and iewells, and " specially of oon table of golde."

After this follows, in the same hand, some verses on the kings of England since the conquest, Henry VI. being the last named. It is evident, from the following lines, that they were composed in his reign.

In speaking of Henry VI., he says:

" The sixte Henry, brouȝte furthe in alle vertu,
" By iuste titulle borne to enheritaunce,
" Afore provided by Criste Jħu,
" To were ij. crownes, of Ynglonde and of Fraunce,
" To whom God hathe ȝiffe souereigne sufficiaunce,
" With vertuous life and chose hym to his knyȝhte,
" Longe to reioyce and reigne here in his ryȝhte.
" Amen."

After mentioning the exactions of Pope Benedict and the Statute of Provisions (1342), "that noo man " scholde brynge suche prouisions in to his realme fro " the pope in peyne of prisonment and of hongynge," the translator adds, "The cōpilator of this booke wrote " vn to this tyme" (fol. 389. b).

From this point the Harleian additions are much fuller than those of Trevisa, which occupy only two pages and a half, whereas those in the Harleian MS. go on to the time of Henry IV., filling 55 leaves (fol. 390–445).

The name of "Jacobus Ravenscroft" occurs on fol. 1.

Of the author of this translation I know nothing, and therefore will say little. It would appear that he executed his translation some time in the reign of Henry VI., between 1432 and 1450, and therefore some years before Edward IV. was raised to the throne.[1]

In this MS., as well as in both the MSS. of Trevisa, the ȝ and *z* are expressed by the same character. The þ also occurs, but less frequently. (See facsimile.)

This translator, like Trevisa, follows the longer form of the chronicle; numerous omissions, however, occur, and for some of these we need, I believe, seek no more profound explanation than this, that when he could not construe a sentence he passed on to the next. Thus he has wholly omitted to translate the verses quoted at p. 236, which occur in every MS. collated for this edition; and it must be owned that the temptation so to act was in this case not easy to overcome. The translation itself is often bombastic, and can hardly represent the spoken English of any period, being, in fact, frequently unintelligible to persons unacquainted with Latin. It seems scarcely necessary to dwell upon it at greater length.[2]

Archdeacon Hardwick's labours on Higden.

After the death of my lamented friend, Archdeacon Hardwick, the task of editing the *Polychronicon* was committed to me by the Master of the Rolls in terms very kindly expressed, and his MS. notes were placed in my hands by our common friend, the Rev. F. Procter, M.A., who did all in his power to facilitate my operations. The Rev. G. E. Corrie, D.D., Master of Jesus College, Cambridge, also liberally allowed me to keep a copy of

[1] Henry VI. was crowned in Nov. 1431 at Notre Dame; and by 1450 his power in France was completely broken.

[2] As only one MS. of this translation seems to be known, I have been unable to correct its readings, except occasionally by conjecture. But I suspect it to be corrupt in many other places, where I have neither guessed nor said anything.

Macray's *British Historians*, full of MS. notes by the Archdeacon. He had proceeded but a little way, as far as p. 39, with the text and versions; and as the sheets were not struck off, I made such corrections and additions as seemed desirable, and must consequently be held responsible for any errors which may be discovered. It must be borne in mind that I have taken in two MSS. in addition to those which he used; viz. E. for the Latin text, and *a*. for Trevisa. All the MSS. which he, after an inspection of a great number, selected, have been used for the present edition.[1]

It now remains that I should express my thanks to the Senate of the University of Cambridge for permitting me to take out of the University Library MSS. A. and E.; to the Master and Fellows of Caius College, Cambridge, for granting me the like privilege with respect to their MS. B.; to the President and Fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford, for allowing me to take out their MS. C., and to retain it for a long time till the collation was completed; to the

[1] A word or two may here be said in explanation of the mode of editing. In the Latin text the orthography has been freely corrected in accordance with common use, and false spellings are but occasionally recorded. In the English, except in the case of proper names, I have been very unwilling to change the text or orthography from conjecture; wherever letters or words are in brackets the reader will at once be apprised they do not occur in the standard MS., but are usually added from *a*. or Cx., or both. The proper names in the versions have given me much trouble and perplexity. Whenever the word has been changed into an English dress, as Alisaundre, the MS. reading has of course always been retained, and when it is in a manner naturalized, like Affrica and Babiloun, it has been half reluctantly allowed to stand; in the case however of a Latin word merely barbarised, the MS. reading has been changed into the classical form, except that diphthongs are excluded, which I could wish were banished from the language altogether. Thus, in the English, I write (following the MSS.) "Cesar, Phenicia," &c. both of which are sanctioned by the authorized version of the Bible. Still in many cases it was difficult to judge what course was best to be followed, and the reader is informed in the notes what the MSS. read in all cases where it seemed necessary to mention their orthography.

Master and Fellows of St. John's College, Cambridge, for allowing me to retain in long continued possession their MS. D., as well as the standard MS. of Trevisa, and their fine copy of Caxton's edition; also to the Rev. J. B. Lightfoot, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity, and Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, for allowing me free access to MS. G.; and, in fine, to the Right Hon. S. H. Walpole, M.P., for calling my attention to the valuable Winchester MS. (W.); and to the Rev. G. Moberly, D.D., Head Master of Winchester College, for politely collating, at my request, certain portions of that MS.

Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the alleviation of my labours by S. A. Moore, Esq., of the Public Record Office, by whom the collation of MSS. B. and C. for the latter part of this volume, and for the remainder of the work, has been made, and who, in conjunction with T. Duffus Hardy, Esq., has much assisted me in various other ways. To E. A. Bond, Esq., of the British Museum, I am also under obligations for the ready aid of his great paleographical knowledge. In conclusion, I must beg the indulgence of the reader, who may detect errors and oversights which are in some degree unavoidable in the execution of a difficult and laborious undertaking.

St. John's College, Cambridge,
October 21, 1864.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST.

The Map of the World.

Cap. I.

The Prologue.

Praise of the writers of history. Letters alone keep alive the memory of great actions in past times, and sustain laws and arts in our own. Emperors, philosophers, and apostles would be almost unknown but for written monuments. Of all kinds of writing, history is the noblest, and brings the most honour to its professors. Accordingly the author proposes to hand down the praises of his native land to posterity in a treatise culled from the labours of various historians. His friends urge him to enlarge his work into a general history of the world in regular chronological order. He distrusts his own powers and attainments. However, he will endeavour to be a gleaner after the reapers, through following them at a humble distance. Readers who may not have access to large libraries may at least be instructed by this compendium. Equal certainty in all its parts cannot be looked for in a history. At the same time all wonderful accounts are not to be discarded as incredible. Consequently the author cannot guarantee the accuracy of every statement, but only faithfully reports what he finds in his authorities. At the same time he makes their labours his own, by expressing their meaning in his own words. Their names precede the sentences which are derived from them; when the compiler himself speaks, he prefixes his own name. - - pp. 2–20.

Cap. II.

The names of the authors alleged in this book.

Catalogue of the writers and their works. - - pp. 20–26.

CAP. III.

The division of the work into seven books.

The title *Polychronicon* indicates its character. Its sevenfold division follows the example of the work of Creation. The first book contains a map of the world, being a description of its principal divisions and countries, ending with Britain. The second book contains a brief summary of universal history from the Creation of man, till the destruction of the Jewish temple. The third book continues the history from the return from Babylon to the advent of Christ. The fourth book goes on to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth thenceforward to the invasion of the Danes. The sixth thenceforward to the Norman conquest. The seventh proceeds from the conquest till the author's own time in the reign of Edward the Third. - - - pp. 26–28.

CAP. IV.

Preliminary observations useful to readers of the present work.

On the descriptions of places, of which more hereafter; also on the states of the world; on the distinctions of dispensations; on the successions of empires; on the forms of religions; on the courses of ages; and on the qualities of actions; and on the various modes of computations of years. Modes of computing years among the Hebrews, Greeks, Romans, and Christians. The chronological systems of Dionysius Exiguus, and Marianus Scotus. Errors of Dionysius. The method of noting dates adopted in the present work. - pp. 30–40.

CAP. V.

On the dimensions of the world.

The survey and description of the world undertaken by command of Julius Cæsar. The length and breadth of the habitable world. The diameter of the earth; distance of hell from the earth's surface. - - - - pp. 40–46.

CAP. VI.

On the divisions of the Earth.

Boundaries of Europe, Asia, and Africa. - - pp. 46–48.

CAP. VII.

Description of the parts of the Earth.

Population, temperature, and extent of Europe, Asia, and Africa. Some geographers reckon only Europe and Asia as the divisions of the world, counting Africa as a part of Europe. - - - - - - pp. 48–52.

CAP. VIII.

The Mediterranean Sea.

Description of the limits and extent of this sea; names of its bays, straits, and other parts. On the Euxine, Propontis, and Hellespont. - - - - - - pp. 52–58.

CAP. IX.

The Ocean.

The ocean encompasses the earth like a circle. The tides most felt near the shores. The probable causes of this. The three great bays of the ocean are the Mediterranean, the Caspian, and the Red Sea. The red dye of that sea derived from the shore. The Caspian gates; legendary stories about them. On whirlpools in the Mediterranean and in the Atlantic. pp. 58–64.

CAP. X.

The provinces of the Earth, and first of Paradise.

Three points to be considered concerning Paradise; its existence, situation, and character. The four rivers of Paradise. Paradise is not, as some suppose, a region elevated above the surface of the globe. Astronomical considerations disprove this. Paradise is with probability placed in the extreme bounds of the east, and considered to be a large tract of country, not less than India and Egypt. Its name signifies a garden of delights; there beauty and loveliness, salubrity and security are perpetual. The waters of Noah's flood did not reach it. A fiery wall and cherubim above it guard Paradise against the approach of men and evil angels. - - - - - - pp. 66–78.

CAP. XI.

Asia and its provinces.

Asia, whence so called. India; its natural productions, climate, tribes. Habits of the people; institutions of caste. Monstrous and strange kinds of men: Pigmies, gymnosophists, cynocephali, &c. Trees of the sun and moon; they forbid Alexander to enter Babylon. - - pp. 78–84.

CAP. XII.

Parthia.

Extent of Parthia. Signification of *Parthi*. The Parthians originally exiles from Scythia. Their history obscure till the Macedonian period. Manners of the Parthians. Dynasty of the Arsacidæ. The Parthian mode of warfare. pp. 84–90.

CAP. XIII.

Assyria and the adjacent regions.

Etymology of Assyria, Media, and Persia. Their boundaries. Babylonia. Description of Babylon. Chaldea. Description of the Tower of Babel. Arabia, its boundaries and natural productions. Description of Mount Sinai. Mount Libanus described; its natural productions. Syria, its etymology and boundaries; notice of Damascus. - - pp. 92–102.

CAP. XIV.

The region of Judea.

Judea, whence so called. Different significations of the word. Its extent; its length and breadth; its boundaries. Natural productions of Judea. Jerusalem, anciently called Salem. Also called by Solomon Jerosolima, and by poets Solyma. Afterwards called Ælia by Hadrian. St. Jerome thinks however, that Salem is Scythopolis or Bethshan. Situation of Jerusalem. Has no fountains. Mount Sion. Church of the Holy Sepulchre. The miracle of the Holy Fire. Ornamentation and fortification of the city by Solomon. The Mount of Olives. The brook Cedron. Gethsemane. Mount Calvary. The Dead Sea; its qualities. Pentapolis. Apples of Sodom. - - - - - pp. 102–118.

CAP. XV.

The region of Canaan.

Canaan, whence so called. Palestine, its limits. Idumea, its limits; the fountain Jobyn. Samaria formerly included in Palestine. It lies between Judea and Galilee; signification of *Samaritæ, i.e., keepers.* Sichem, now Neapolis. Historical notices of the city. Galilee lies between Judea and Palestine. Upper and Lower Galilee. Lake of Galilee. Ptolemais or Acre. Cedar, its position: seat of the Ishmaelites. Otherwise known as Hagarens or Saracens. Their habits. Phenicia; its boundaries. Phenicians the inventors of letters. - - - - - pp. 120–128.

CAP. XVI.

Egypt.

Egypt, whence so called; its limits; its natural productions. The Nile. Cause of its overflowing. Various opinions on this subject. - - - - - pp. 130–134

CAP. XVII.

Scythia and the adjacent regions.

Scythia partly in Europe, partly in Asia; its boundaries. Habits of the Scythians. They conquer Egypt, Persia, and the army of Alexander. They found the empires of Parthia and Bactria, and their women that of the Amazons. Their three conquests of Asia. The servile insurrection, and its suppression. Boundaries of Bactria. Description of Mount Caucasus. Boundaries of Hyrcania; its inhabitants and productions. Boundaries of Hiberia and Albania. The men and dogs of Albania. Boundaries of Gothia. Character of the inhabitants; their descendants in Europe, Asia, and Africa. Origin of the Armenians. Boundaries and extent of Armenia. Mount Ararat. - - - pp. 134–146.

CAP. XVIII.

Cappadocia and Asia Minor.

Limits of Cappadocia. Definition of Asia Minor. The provinces of Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia Minor or Dardania,

Lydia, Pamphylia or Isauria, Cilicia, including Lycia or Lycaonia. Amazonia partly in Europe, partly in Asia. Habits and government of the Amazons. Queen Thalestris and her correspondence with Alexander. - - pp. 146–154.

CAP. XIX.

Africa and its inhabitants.

Etymology and definition of Africa. Its provinces enumerated. Ethiopia described; character and habits of its monstrous inhabitants; the Garamantes, Troglodytæ, &c.; the animals of Ethiopia; its fountains. Limits and etymology of Libya. Boundaries of the Tripolitana. Gætulia. pp. 154–162.

CAP. XX.

The same, continued.

Boundaries of Numidia. History of the foundation of Carthage. Chronological difficulties about Virgil's account of Eneas and Dido. Dimensions of Carthage. Etymology of Mauretania. Its two divisions, Cæsariensis and Tingitana. Description of Mount Atlas. - - - pp. 162–168.

CAP. XXI.

Europe and its provinces.

Europe, whence named. Its boundaries. The river Tanais. Boundaries of the lower Scythia. Short notices of Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia, and Pannonia. - - pp. 168–174.

CAP. XXII.

Greece and its provinces.

The ancient and modern names of the inhabitants of Greece. Degeneracy of the later Greeks. Enumeration of the provinces of Greece. Description of Thrace or Epirus, and of its metropolis, Constantinople. The churches erected by Constantine and Justinian. Reliques of the Saints preserved there. Notice of the Lacedemonians or Spartans; they found Tarentum. Boundaries of Macedonia. Description of Mount Olympus and Mount Athos. Boundaries of Dalmatia. De-

scription of Achaia, with notices of Corinth. Description of Arcadia, and notices of its products. Thessaly; its inhabitants and natural curiosities. The Lapithæ and Centaurs explained. Mount Parnassus. Tempe. Deucalion's flood. Helladia, whence so called. Comprises Attica, Bœotia, and Peloponnesus. Cecrops founded Acte, afterwards called Athens. Contest of Minerva and Neptune. Notice of the Hellespont. Early civilization of Athens. Notices of her kings. Etymology of Bœotia; its natural curiosities. Notice of Thebes. - - - - - pp. 174–196.

CAP. XXIII.

Italy and its provinces.

Italy, anciently called Magna Græcia, Hesperia, Saturnia, and Ausonia. Why afterwards called Italy. Its boundaries; its rivers and natural curiosities. Enumeration of its provinces. Notice of Apulia, and its metropolis, Brundusium. Notices of Campania Major and Minor. Capua, Neapolis, and Virgil's baths. Ancient inhabitants of Italy before the Lombards enumerated. Origin and progress of the Lombards. pp. 198–206.

CAP. XXIV.

The city of Rome.

Modern writers on Rome. Legendary accounts of the building of various parts of the city by Noah, Janus, Saturn, Italus, Hercules, and Evander. Romulus confined them all within the walls of one city. Date of his foundation. Enumeration of the city gates; circumference of the walls. The palaces of Rome. The central palace; the palace of peace, built by Romulus; the palace of Diocletian; the palace of sixty emperors. The Pantheon; the arch of Augustus; the arch of Scipio; the holovitreum destroyed by St. Sebastian. The temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. Origin of the word *flamen*. The magical wonders of the House of Gold. The statue of Bellerophon suspended in mid air. Notices of theatres, aqueducts, and baths. The giant Pallas and his epitaph. Statues of Jupiter and Venus in Rome. Pyramids of Romulus and of Julius Cæsar. The marble horses. Legend of Praxitellus and Fibia (Praxiteles and Phidias). Account of the statue variously said to represent Theodoric, Constantine, Marcus, and Quintus Curtius. Account of the Colossus removed from Rhodes. Its magical properties. How de-

stroyed by pope Gregory. Statue of the City of Rome; its miraculous destruction. Palace of Vespasian, and verses inscribed on a tablet hard by. - - - pp. 206–238.

CAP. XXV.

On certain institutions of the Romans.

A Roman triumph; the ceremonies observed; the licence permitted. Ceremony at an imperial coronation. Mode of proclaiming war among the Romans. The different kinds of toga worn by different persons. On the *dies fasti* and *nefasti*. The *Quinquatria*. The division of the Roman people into two classes by Romulus. Subsequent division into four classes. On the ides, kalends, &c. On the *milites emeriti*. *Nonariæ*, why so called. The Proletarii. Origin of divorce among the Romans. Character of the Roman emperors and people. - - - - - - pp. 238–252.

CAP. XXVI.

Germany and its parts.

Limits of Germany, according to Isidore. Upper and Lower Germany. Their various provinces enumerated. The northern regions more populous and hardy than the south; hence the vast swarms of barbarous tribes that have poured down from them, Huns, Goths, Vandals, Saxons, &c. Limits of Bohemia. Its natural productions. The Bison. Limits of Thuringia, of Franconia, of Bavaria, of Westphalia, of Suevia, of Saxony. Character of the Saxons. Natural productions of Germany. Ancient government of the Saxons. Limits of Frisia. Manners and government of the Frisians. Limits of Seland. Character of the country and its inhabitants. The Scribonii, a people of north-west Germany. The Seven Sleepers. - - - - - - pp. 254–266.

CAP. XXVII.

Gaul, or France.

Gallia, why so called. The Galli, the priests of Cybele, not named from Gallia, but from the river Gallus. Character of the Gauls. Limits of Gallia. Its divisions in the time of Julius Cæsar. Rivers of France. Its minerals; plaster of Paris. Praises of Paris. The Franks, like most nations of

Europe, took their origin from Troy. Antenor, their ancestor, founded the city of the Sicambri in Pannonia. Their leaders after his death, Trogotus and Franco; whence the nation took their name. Another account makes Charlemagne the author of the name; he released slaves throughout Gaul in honour of St. Denys, and made them freemen or Franks of the saint. From that time Gallia was called France. Others say that the emperor Valentinian called the Sicambri *feranci*, from the ferocity of their manners. The succession of the French kings. The Merovingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Charles Martel; Pepin; Charlemagne. The Carlovingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Hugh Capet, duke of Burgundy, and his successors reign in France. Charlemagne's successors reign in Italy and Germany till the time of Conrad. Enumeration of the tribes who successively occupied Gaul. The provinces of France recounted. - - pp. 266-286.

CAP. XXVIII.

Description of the Provinces of France.

Brabant, famous for its wool. The waters of England not so favourable for dyeing; Lincoln however and London produce good scarlet. Flanders, how bounded; its inhabitants and natural productions. The limits of Picardy; Upper and Lower Picardy. Normandy, peopled by Danish and Norwegian sailors; its capital city Rouen. Britanny, twice occupied by Britons, once in the time of Belinus, and again in Vortigern's reign; how bounded. A marvellous fountain in Britanny. Poitou and Poictiers, how peopled; the character of the inhabitants. Aquitaine or Guienne, its boundaries defined. Anjou, its situation. Gascony, formerly counted to Guienne; the Vascones formerly located there by Pompey the Great; the inhabitants now known by the name of Basques. Burgundy, why so called; its inhabitants suffer from *goître*. - - - - - pp. 288-298.

CAP. XXIX.

Spain.

Limits of Spain defined. Hispania Citerior and Ulterior; formerly called Hesperia and Hiberia. Provinces of Spain enumerated. Notice of Carthago Spartaria. Occupation of Spain by the Carthaginians, Goths, and Saracens. The last now confined to the eastern districts of Spain. pp. 298-302.

CAP. XXX.

The Islands of the Mediterranean.

Gades or Cadiz described. Signification of the name. Columns of Hercules. Majorca and Minorca. Notice of Sardinia; its marvels. Corsica, its situation described; its extent; named from a woman Corsa; fertility of its soil. Aradus, near Tyre, famed for its sailors. The Cyclades, why so called. Among them are Rhodes and Delos. Derivation of Delos; formerly called Ortygia. The island of Samos; historical notices. Samian ware. Cyprus described. Crete described; its natural productions, arts and sciences; the Labyrinth.

Sicily described; anciently called Trinacria and Sicania; formerly joined by land to Italy at Rhegium; derivation of Rhegium. Scylla and Charybdis. The plough first used in Sicily; comedy invented there. The country abounds in volcanic rocks. Description of Mount Etna; supposed by St. Gregory to be the place of tormented souls. Marvellous wells in Sicily. Crickets, which sing best when dead and without their heads. The city of Palermo. Sal Agrigentinus. The Æolian Islands.

Other islands in the Euxine, which is a part of the Mediterranean, as Colchos and Patmos. - - - pp. 302–318.

CAP. XXXI.

The Islands of the Atlantic.

The Canaries or Fortunate Islands; considered by the heathen to be Paradise by reason of their extraordinary fertility. Denmark (Dacia) peopled by Goths; character of the inhabitants; Britain and Gaul invaded by them; they introduced habits of drunkenness into Britain. Wyntland, character of its inhabitants; they sell wind to sailors. Iceland, its situation described; its natural productions; character and occupation of its inhabitants. Island of Thule (Tile), or Island of the Sun; its climate described; six days' sail distant from Britain. Tilis not the same as Tile. Norway described; its climate and natural productions; its inhabitants hunters and pirates. - - - pp. 320–328

CAP. XXXII.

Ireland.

Ireland largely described by Giraldus Cambrensis, the principal authority for this account, which embraces the following subjects: the position and character of the island; its productions and defects; its inhabitants, ancient and modern; its miracles and saints. Ireland, the last island of the West, called Hibernia from Hiberus, brother of Hermon (Hermonius), a Spaniard, or from Hiberus the river. Also formerly called Scotia. Position of Ireland defined. The Irish sea rough and almost impassable. From the Brendan hills to St. Columba it contains eight days' journey in length, of forty miles each, and from Dublin to Connaught four days'. Mountainous and marshy character of the country. Great fertility of its pastures. Salubrity of the climate. Beef wholesome there, pork unwholesome. No poison produced there. The beasts, birds, and fishes of Ireland. The bernacle goose; its strange production from firwood; eaten on religious men on fasting days, as not being properly flesh. This opinion refuted. Errors of Bede and others respecting the natural productions of Ireland. The precious stones and pearls of Ireland. The defects of the country. The wheat produces very small corns; and in general most animals, man excepted, are smaller here than elsewhere. Freshwater fish for the most part wanting. Certain kinds of falcons and of game and other animals also wanting. Venomous beasts said to have been expelled by St. Patrick. More probably the island never had any. Poisonous creatures die in Ireland; and poison as it approaches the Irish coast loses its force. Irish earth-mould kills venomous creatures. Irish cock-crowing. - - - pp. 328–338.

CAP. XXXIII.

Ireland, continued. The original inhabitants.

Inhabitants of Ireland before the Deluge. Casera and her company. Arrival of Bartholanus, descended from Japhet, three hundred years after the Deluge. His family increased to nine thousand men, all of whom, except Ruanus, died from the stench of the carcases of the giants whom they slew. He lived for fifteen hundred years, till St. Patrick's time, and related to him the history of the nation. Scythian colony under Nimeth; its destruction by war and pestilence

after two hundred and sixteen years. Ireland without inhabitants for two centuries. Greek colony under five generals of Nimeth's posterity. They divide the land into five parts, and set up a pillar in the centre of the country; Slanius at length becomes the sole governor of the island. Spanish colony under Hiberus and Hermon, sons of king Milesius. Hermon kills his brother and becomes sole monarch. A hundred and thirty-one kings reign from his time to the arrival of St. Patrick. From the arrival of the Spaniards to the death of St. Patrick are eighteen hundred years. The Irish also called Gaitels and Scots. Gaytelus, a grandson of Phenius, married Scota, Pharaoh's daughter. Came to Ireland after the Confusion of Tongues, and composed the Irish, or Gaelic language. Afterwards Gurgentius, son of Belinus, king of Britain, introduced some Basques of Spain, whom he found in the Orkneys without a habitation, over whom he placed a governor. Consequently Ireland belongs, of right, to Britain. From the time of St. Patrick to Fedlimidius, thirty-three kings reigned in four hundred years. Turgesius, a leader of Norwegian pirates, then invaded and conquered the country. They construct many fosses and castles. This Turgesius was sent over from Britain by Gurmund, who reigned there by right of conquest. Gurmund known in England as the only conqueror of Ireland. Turgesius, in like manner, in Ireland. After Gurmund's death, Turgesius fell in love with the daughter of the king of Meath. The king murders him by stratagem, after he had reigned thirty years. Soon afterwards other Norwegians come to Ireland for trading purposes; they build Dublin, Waterford, and Limerick. They at length quarrel with the Irish. They introduce the *Sparth*. Seventeen kings in Ireland, from Turgesius to Rotherick, the last king of Connaught, whom Henry the Second conquered. From Hermon to Rotherick, eighty-one kings reigned, not crowned nor consecrated, but raised to the throne by lawless violence.

pp. 340–350.

Cap. XXXIV.

Ireland, continued. The manners of the natives.

The ancient Irish, according to Solinus, lawless, brutal, and idle barbarians. Their manners in the time of Giraldus Cambrensis not much better. Their dress, arms, music. Their dissolute habits; they refuse to pay tithes; their cowardice, perfidy, &c. In Ireland and Wales old hags change themselves into hares. Some Irish conjurers can change

dead matter into live swine; if they cross water, they revert to their original substance, and in no case last more than three days. Marvels always abound most in the extremities of the world; and for that reason in Ireland also.
pp. 350–360.

CAP. XXXV.

Ireland, continued. The Marvels of the country.

The island of immortality. Other marvellous islands. Island in a lake of Ulster containing the Purgatory of St. Patrick. Marvellous fountains in Ireland. Round towers visible below the surface of a lake in Ulster (Loch Neagh). In Ossory every seven years a man and woman are changed into wolves. Petrifying and other wonderful lakes. St. Colman's birds. Large account of the Purgatory of St. Patrick, and of the ceremonies observed by those who do penance therein.
pp. 360–376.

CAP. XXXVI.

Ireland, continued. The Saints of the country.

Irish saints more vindictive than others. Character of the Irish clergy; chaste, but deep drinkers. Their bishops almost wholly taken from the monastic orders; hence they are more given to contemplation than to the active duties. Many confessors, but no martyrs, in Ireland. The bishop of Cashel's satirical explanation of this. Bells and pastoral staves much venerated in Ireland. The staff of Jesus at Dublin, by which St. Patrick expelled snakes. Various ways of accounting for the appearance of animals in islands.
pp. 376–382.

CAP. XXXVII.

Albania, or Scotland.

Scotland, its boundaries. Anciently called Albania, from Albanactus, son of Brutus, or from Albania, a province of Scythia, whence the Scots also derive their name. Then called Pictavia, from the Picts, and then Hibernia. Its connexion with the Irish the reason of this designation. Proofs from Bede that Scotland is called Hibernia. Barbarous habits of the Scotch. Their soil and climate. Their kings not crowned. St. Andrew their chief saint. His his-

tory. Legend of his appearance to Ungus, king of the Picts, at Carcenan, and of the monastic foundations of Regulus in the same place. - - - - - pp. 382–394.

Cap. XXXVIII

Cambria, or Wales.

The reason of the name. Cambria derived from Camber, son of Brutus, who reigned here; afterwards called Wales, from Gwalae, daughter of king Ebrancus, who was married here. The praises of the country. It abounds in meat, fruit, and fish; horses, oxen, and sheep; all kinds of grain; metals, coal, minerals; honey, milk, meath, ale, &c. In a word, Wales is the pantry of the earth. Geographical and political divisions: Demetia, Venedocia: the three courts of Caermarthen, Anglesey, and Pengwern. The manners of the natives: their clothing, arms, food. Their character: fickle, intemperate, lazy, predatory, dirty. Their music, clan customs, superstitions. Their state improved of late by intercourse with the English. They now acquire property, and apply themselves to agriculture, and live in towns. The marvels of the country. A pool at Brechnock has strange sounds and forms of buildings below its surface. Birds sing in honour of the prince of the country, at his bidding. Goldcliff near Caerleon. The island of Barry, near Cardiff; strange sounds heard there in a crevice. Pembroke; its earthquakes produced by demons. A wonderful tumulus at Crucmaur. The island of Bardesey, its salubrity. Merlin Silvestris, who lived in Arthur's time, buried there. There was another Merlin, named Ambrosius, the son of a goblin, as it is said, in the time of Vortigern. Various particulars about the two Merlins. Snowdon and its lakes, a floating island in one of them; one-eyed perch and trout live in the other. The spring of Tegengil. Miraculous stone in Anglesey. The rock of Hearing, so called by the rule of contrary. An island near it, where mice eat the viands of discordant monks. Bells and staves here venerated as in Ireland. The spring of Basingwerk. The well of St. Winifrid. - - - - pp. 394–430.

ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Introd. p. xvi., note 4. Add: It is remarkable that Bale, in the earlier edition (1549) of the *Illustr. Scriptores*, does not mention Roger of Chester at all, and in his account of Hugo Vyrley (fol. 141 b.), says that he makes use of 'Ranulphus Cestriensis,' for whom in his later edition (1559) he substitutes 'Rogerus de Cestria.' I now very much doubt whether Virley ever quotes Roger *by name*, though he doubtless uses the shorter form of the *Polychronicon*.

Page 2, line 2, *quo adviverent*] This is the reading of the MSS., and, except that *advivo* seems to be a new word, might well stand; but there is very little doubt that *quoad viverent* is the true reading. Compare p. 374, note 1. In Gale's MS. (G.) a later hand has joined *quo-ad*. Compare Trevisa's translation.

Page 6, line 14. The various reading *quadrivialis*, supported also by G., is better, and should be read in the text.

Page 8, last line, *Provide*] Read *Proinde*; both words make sense, and are usually undistinguishable in the MSS., but *proinde* is doubtless right, and is very distinct in G.

Page 9, line 11, for *unwralle* read *vnwralle*; and similarly in note 11 for *unwynde* read *vnwynde*.

Page 11, line 14, *ich*] Add in a note *I.*, Cx.

Page 13, line 9, *the*] Read (with MS.) *þe*, and so at p. 15, l. 14; p. 17, l. 7; p. 29, l. 11. But *the* at p. 29, l. 1; p. 41, l. 6; p. 59, l. 16, is correct. Our MS. is not constant in the use of the letter.

Page 18, line 1, *veri*] Read (with the MSS.) *ubi*; the contraction $\left(\frac{i}{v}\right)$ was misrendered.

Page 24, *Wilhelmus*] I could wish that here and everywhere else the word were printed *Willelmus*, which is supported by most MSS., when given at length. In this edition it is sometimes (p. 178, &c.) printed *Willielmus*. All three forms are more or less supported by authority. Coins decidedly preponderate in favour of *Willelmus*.

Page 44, line 16, *Ptolomæum*] Read *Ptolemæum*. (The barbarous reading retained *per incuriam*.)

Page 54. Cancel note 13, and insert: The true reference is to Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. iii. c. 20, p. 131. Ed. Brewer.

Page 64. These absurd stories about Alexander are told also by Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. b. iiii. Ed. Basil, 1504.

Page 80. The reference to Pliny is correct according to the capitulation of some; but in Harduin's edition the chapter is numbered xxii.

Page 84. Below cap. xii. insert in italics *De Parthia*.

Page 93. Here and afterwards the marginal notes in the Harl. MS. had better be cancelled, except when they are in English.

Page 106, l. 1, *hii*] Read *hi*. The same barbarous orthography occurs at p. 126 (bis).

Page 120, *Capitulum quintumdecimum*] This should have been printed uniformly with the other headings in the *Latin* text, CAP. XV.

Page 121, line 10, *ȝerof*] Read *þerof* (typ. error).

Ibid., note 12, *Philisti*] Read *Philistym*.

Page 126, line 11. See Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. d. ii. The following reference (p. 128) to Methodius is erroneous: the information is substantially contained in Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3.

Page 162, line 4, for xxi. read xx.; and at p. 168, for xxii. read xxi; and at p. 174, for xxiii. read xxii.; at p. 206, for xxv. read xxiv.; and at p. 266, for xxv. read xxvii. The capitulation in the versions is correct in each case. The numbers of the chapters of the text are given correctly in the summary of contents.

Page 166, note 10, add: Orosius also (lib. i. c. 2, p. 31, Hav.) has *Malua*.

Page 174, last line (compare the versions), add this note on *Giraldus*, cancelling note 13 at p. 175): The true reference is to Girald. Cambr *De Instr. Princ., lib.* (or *dist.*) iii. c. 19, p. 129. Ed. Brewer. See also c. xii.

Page 178, note 9, cancel *most probably*. See Will. Malm. *De Reg.*, lib. iv. p. 548, where the reference to Virgil shows that his text should be *Mysiæ*, not, as Mr. Hardy edits it, *Mœsiæ*.

Page 183. Cancel note 11; *sede* is quite right, being the rendering of *sedem*.

Page 197. Harl. version, line 7, Boetia] Correct the MS. reading to Beotia.

Page 208, line 2. For 'secundum *Estodium*,' Martinus Polonus (lib. ii. c. 4.) has 'demonstrat *Methodius*.'

Page 210, line 9. The true number, according to Martin, is not 454, but 432. See Mart. Pol., lib. i. c. 2, and c. 4. The omission of a line drawn at an angle to three others makes the difference when written in Roman numerals (cccccliiij., ccccxxxij.)

Page 222, line 10, *Ranulphus*] Taken from Mart. Pol. s. a. 1041.

Page 292, note 3, add: Here, as usual, C.D. agree better with the original authority. Compare Girald. Camb. *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8. See c. 7 for the latter part of Higden's article.

Page 300, line 1, add a comma after *plana*.

Page 314, line penult., *septimo*] Higden should have written *octavo*.

Page 316, *Giraldus in Topographia*] Made up from *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8 and lib. i. c. 16.

Page 362, note 4, add: In Camden's edition of Giraldus, *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 5, the same error occurs.

Page 384, line 13, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: See Giraldus *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.

Page 388, line 10, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 13.

Page 398. Cancel last sentence of note 6. *Tiwy* in the text is right. See Girald. *Descr. Cambr.* c. 5.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS.[1]

LIBER PRIMUS.

Cap. I.

Prologus.[2]

1. Post præclaros artium scriptores, quibus circa rerum notitiam aut morum modestiam dulce fuit, quo adviverent, insudare, illi merito, velut utile dulci commiscentes, grandisonis sunt præconiis attollendi, qui magnifica priscorum gesta[3] beneficio scripturæ posteris derivarunt.[4]

---

[1] The title varies in the MSS. See the *Introduction*.
[2] This word is wanting in A.C.D.
[3] *gesta*] om. A.
[4] The whole of this sentence wanting in C.D.

Translacion of Ranulphus of Chestre's Bookes of Cronykes by Sir Iohan Treuisa, Chapelayn vnto Lord Thomas of Barkley.[1]

Trevisa.

1. After solempne and wise writeres of arte and of science, þat hadde swettnesse and lykynge al hir[2] lyf tyme to studie and to trauaille aboute konnyng and knowleche of kyndeliche[3] þinges and aboute sobernesse and redinesse of þewes, þey be worthy to be[4] hiȝeliche and solempliche[5] i-preysed,[6] as þey it were putting and medlynge to gidre profiȝtes[7] and swetnes, þat[8] write and left vs write[9] merualles and wondres, greet berynge and dedes of oure forme fadres,[10] of stalworthe wyt,[11] wise and worthy, and of dyuerse manere men þat were in olde tyme.

Ranulphus, Monke of Chestre, compilede this presente Werke and Cronicle.

MS. Harl. 2261.

The Firste Prolog bigynnethe here in to þis Story of mony Cronicles.

1. After the nowble wryters of artes, to whom hit was a pleasure in this life presente to fixe theire studies and laboures abowte the knowlege of thynges and virtues moralle, thei ar to be enhaunsede and exaltede by merite with grete preconyes, as makenge a commixtion of a thynge profitable with a swetenesse mellifluous, whiche haue deriviede to men succedenge thro the benefite of scripture thexcellent gestes of men precedenge.

---

[1] No title to Trevisa's translation in MS. or *a*. The title given above is supplied by parts of Trevisa's Dedicatory Epistle, printed by Cx.

[2] *her*, *a*., Cx.

[3] *kyndley*, Cx. (not *a*.)

[4] *ben*, Cx. where the same use of *n* is frequent, both in the infinitive and indicative.

[5] *and solempliche*] Wanting in Cx.

[6] *i-preysed*] *I preised*, MS., and *a*.; and similarly elsewhere. The prefix wanting in Cx., both here and generally.

[7] *profiȝt*, *a*.

[8] *þat*] Wanting in Cx, and placed in our MS. and *a*. immediately after 'þey' (theugh), just preceding.

[9] *i write*, *a*.

[10] *forn-faders*, Cx.

[11] *wight*, Cx.

2. In historico namque[1] contextu chronographorum nobis[2] diligentia[3] delegato relucet clarius[4] norma morum,[5] forma vivendi, probitatis incentivum, trivium quoque[6] theologicarum virtutum et quadrivium cardinalium trabearum, quorum notitiam apprehendere seu[7] vestigium imitari nostra modicitas non sufficeret, nisi sollicitudo scriptorum nostræ transfunderet imperitiæ memoriam transactorum. Siquidem vita brevis, sensus hebes, animus torpens, memoria labens, inutilis demum occupatio nos impediunt multa scire, novercante semper oblivione memoriæ inimica. Sed et[8] in præsentiarum artes et jura prorsus ruerent, spectabilium actionum exemplaria[9] non paterent, loquendi quoque tropi et schemata penitus deperirent, nisi in remedium imperfectionis humanæ litterarum usum divina miseratio providisset.[10]

3. Quis, quæso, Cæsares hodie sciret, philosophos miraretur, apostolos sequeretur, nisi eos insignirent

---

[1] *namque*] Wanting in C.
[2] *nobis*] After *diligentia* in C.D.
[3] *diligentia*] om. E.
[4] *planius*, E.
[5] *norma morum*] norma, (only) D.; both words wanting in C.
[6] *que*, E.
[7] *seu*] aut, C.D.
[8] *et*] Wanting in B.C., added above the line in D.
[9] *actionum exemplaria*] actionum exempla, B: gestorum exempla, C. D.; but in C. *exempla* is corrected into *exemplaria*.
[10] *prævidisset*, A.

2. For in þe makynge and[1] bookes of stories, þat is to vs i-sent and byqueþe by grete besynesse of þe writers of cronicles,[2] blaseþ and schyneþ clerliche þe riȝt rule of þewes, ensaumple of leuynge, clensynge[3] of goodnes, þe metynge of þe þre waies of þe þre vertues of deuynyte, and þe metynge of foure weies of þe foure chief[4] vertues of þewes of real cloþynge. Of þe whiche þinges our litel konnynge myȝte nouȝt take knowleche, noþer[5] folwe þe foure,[6] but besines of writers to oure vnkunnynge hadde i-holde and i-streyned[7] mynde of olde dedes. For why schort lyf, dul witte, and slowe vnderstondynge, and ydel occupacioun letteþ vs to knowe many þinges; forȝetingnes all wey kypinge þe craft of a stepdamme, he[8] is enmy of mynde. Also now, in our tyme, art, sciens and lawe al were i-falle, ensample of noble dedes were nouȝt i-knowe; nobilite and faire manere of spekynge were all i-lost; but þe mercy of God had i-ordyned vs of lettres in remedie of[9] vnparfiȝtnesse of mankynde. TREVISA.

3. I praye who schulde now knowe emperours, wonder of philosofres, oþer[10] folwe þe apostles, but hir[11] noble dedes and hir wonder werkes were i-write in stories and so i-kept

2. For in the contexte historicalle the rewle off lyvenge and forme of vertues moralle, and the incentiue of manhode, ȝiffe grete resplendence thro the diligence of croniclers. Also the triuialle of the vertues theologicalle and quadriuialle of the cardinalle vertues, to comprehende the knowlege of whom oure insufficience sufficethe not, withowte the sollicitude of writers scholde transfude to vs the memory of thynges of antiquite. For schort lyfe, a slawe sawle, and a slipper memory lete vs to knowe mony thynges, obliuion schewenge helpe, an enmye alleweies and a steppe moder to the memory. For in this tyme presente artes and lawes scholde falle vtterly, thexemplares of acciones spectable scholde not be patent, the ornate eloquence scholde peresche, but that diuine miseracion hath prouided vse of letters in to the remedy of the imperfeccion of man. MS. HARL. 2261.

3. What man scholde haue perfecte knowlege of emperoures, meruaile of philosophres, and folowe thapostles, but that the actes of writers made theym nowble? There-

[1] *of*, Cx.
[2] *cronykes*, Cx. *a.*
[3] *knowyng*, Cx.
[4] *principal*, Cx.
[5] *ne*, Cx.
[6] *fourth*, Cx.
[7] *shadde and stremed*, Cx.
[8] *he*] wanting in Cx. (not *a.*).
[9] *of þe*, *a.*
[10] *or ellys*, Cx.
[11] *theyr*, Cx., here and frequently; *here*, *a.*

monumenta scriptorum? Quis denique Lucilium cognosceret, nisi eum Seneca suis epistolis illustrasset?[1] Plus profecto scripta poetarum[2] Cæsareis laudibus addiderunt quam omnes mundi divitiæ quas tulerunt. Historia igitur, cum sit testis temporum, memoria vitæ, nuncia[3] vetustatis, dotes possidet præminentes, suosque quam plurimum prærogat professores. Historia namque quadam famæ immortalitate peritura renovat, fugitiva revocat, mortalia quodammodo perpetuat et conservat.

4. Cur[4] igitur,[5] inter cæteros trivialium tramitum protritores ac sesquipedalium verborum efflatores, qui non minimum[6] stadii[7] sui bravium sunt adepti, nostri non erunt laude digni[8] orbis quadrifidi dimensores, quadriviales[9] historiæ descriptores; immo proculdubio, velut[10] tetragoni, sine vituperio triumphalis erunt laureæ comprehensores?

5. Horum nempe merito provocatus et exemplo, non mea jactanter jaculans nec aliena joculanter jugulans,[11] decrevi, ut potui, geniale solum meum profusioribus extollere laudum titulis, ac sic[12] tractatum aliquem, ex variis auctorum decerptum[13] laboribus, de statu insulæ Britannicæ ad notitiam cudere futurorum.

---

[1] *Quis . . . illustrasset*] Wanting in C.D.

[2] *scripta poetarum*] After *laudibus* in B.; *scriptura prophetarum*, E.

[3] *nuncius*, C.D.

[4] *Cur*] Et ut, D.

[5] So B.C.D.; *ergo*, A.E.

[6] *minimi*, A.

[7] *studii*, B.

[8] *digni laude*, B.

[9] *quadriviali*, B.; *quadrivialis*, C.D.

[10] *velut*] Wanting in A.

[11] *jáciens*, C., but *jugulans* written above; *joculans*, A.

[12] *ac sic*] et sic, C.D.; ac si, B.

[13] *excerptum*, C.D.; but corrected to *decerptum* in the former.

in mynde? Who schulde knowe Lucilium, but Seneca in his pistles hadde i-write his dedes? Writinge of poetes is more worthy[1] to preisynge of emperoures þan[2] al þe welþe of þis worlde, and riches[3] þat þey welde[4] while þey were alyue. For storie is wytnesse of tyme, mynde of lyf, messager of eldnesse;[5] story weldeþ passyng doynges, storie putteþ forþ hire[6] professoures. Dedes þat wolde be lost storie ruleþ;[7] dedes þat wolde flee out of mynde, storye clepeþ[8] aȝen;[9] dedes þat wolde deie, storye kepeþ hem euermore.[10] TREVISA.

4. Wherfore, among opere noble trauaillours of þe þre pathes[11] and faire florischers and hiȝteres[12] of wordes and of metre, þat haueþ of here trauaille gret pryse i-gete, we mowe nouȝt ful preyse hem, þat in stories[13] meteþ and discryueþ all þe worlde wyde. But wiþoute eny drede þey schulleþ fonge[14] her mede of hym þat rewardeþ and quyteþ al þat wel worcheþ.[15]

5. By þe worþynesse and ensaumple of so worþy writeris i-spiȝt and i-egged,[16] nouȝt bostynge of myn owne dedes noþer skornynge ne blamynge of[17] oþer men dedes, I haue y-kast and y-ordeyned, as I may, to make and to write a tretes, i-gadered of dyuerse bookes, of þe staat of þe ylonde of Britayne, to knowleche of men þat comeþ after vs.

---

fore a story is the testimony of tymes, the memory of life, hauenge in possession dowerys preeminent, renewenge as thro immortalite thynges like to peresche, beynge as in a maner a conseruatiue perpetualle to thynges mortalle. MS. HARL. 2261.

5. Wherefore y, wyllenge to folowe the descriptores of the storye quadriuialle, and as provocate thro thexemple of theim, intende to compile a tretys of the state of the yle of Breteyne, excerpte of diuerse labores of auctores.

---

[1] *worth*, Cx., *a.*
[2] þat, MS.; *than*, Cx.
[3] *rychesses*, Cx.
[4] *welded*, Cx.
[5] *oldnesse*, *a.*
[6] *her*, Cx.
[7] *reneweth*, Cx.; *renweth*, *a.*
[8] *callith*, Cx.
[9] *aȝe*, *a.*
[10] *for euermore*, *a.*
[11] Cx. here inserts instead of 'and' the clause 'arne mooste worthy to ben praysed;' thus altering the construction of the sentence.
[12] *embelysshers*, Cx.
[13] *historyes*, Cx, here and frequently.
[14] *schulleþ fonge*] shall resseyue, Cx.
[15] *werke*, Cx.
[16] *so worþy . . . i-egged*] noble wryters that herto fore haue wreton, Cx.
[17] *of*] om. *a.*

6. Quod[1] dum sodalibus meis innotesceret, quibus familiare fuit semper[2] facta majorum[3] speculari, importuna eorum instantia sum pulsatus, ut etiam de famosioribus orbis historiis ab initio macrocosmi usque ad nostram ætatem non solum juxta temporum seriem,[4] verum etiam juxta singulorum annorum supputationem congruentem aliqua compilarem.[5]

7. Cujus negotii, velut Dædalini labyrinthi,[6] inextricabilem attendens intricationem, rogata sum veritus attemptare. Nam, præter id quod soleat[7] grandia cogitantibus desidia quædam et segnities obrepere, animadvertebam tamen ad tantum involucrum evolvendum ingenii mei disparilitatem, necnon et flagitatæ materiæ vastitatem, scribentium quoque in hac[8] materia numerum et auctoritatem, ac potissime subsecutam exinde modernorum saturitatem; qui devotionis obsequium minus, ut assolet, attendentes super isto cibo levissimo facile nausearent, quinetiam ad renovata seu reculcata, æmulorum more, linguas acuerent, supercilia arcuarent. De quibus Gregorius loquitur Nazianzenus, quod "aliena facillime carpunt, sed bona difficilius " imitantur." Provide verebar plane ego[9] vir videns

---

[1] The rest of this chapter is, in C. and D., compressed into four short sentences, thus :—"Si quid vero a " fide dissonum aut a moribus alie- " num hic reperiatur, hoc tempori " potius quam viro ascribatur. " Quamobrem in hac assertione . . . " communico," (as at p. 18). After which : " Et quamvis . . . . præ- " scribitur," (as at p. 20). The first part is rendered in the Harl. MS.

[2] *semper fuit*, E.

[3] *majoris*, A.

[4] *temporum seriem*] These words transposed in B.

[5] *computarem*, B.

[6] *Dædali in laberintho*, B.

[7] *solebat*, B.

[8] *hac*] om. B.

[9] *ego*] ergo, A.

6. Þan special frendes [1] þat knewe myn entent [and] [2] had likynge [3] to knowe greet men dedes, prayed me besiliche, þat I schulde also write þe famous stories and acounte þe ȝeres from þe bygynnynge of þe world anon [4] to oure tyme. TREVISA.

7. Þoo toke I hede þat þis matir, as [5] laborintus, Dedalus [6] hous, haþ many halkes and hurnes, wonderful weies, wyndynges and wrynkelynges, þat wil nouȝt be vnwarled, [7] me schamed and dradde to fynde [8] so grete and so gostliche [9] a bone to graunte. For ydelnesse and sleuþe letteþ grete werkes þat men wolde worche; my witt is ful luyte [10] to unwralle [11] þe wrappyinges of so wonder [12] werkes: þe matire is large, writers þerynne beþ [13] many, and greet for fulnesse þerof; now men beþ [14] al sad and takeþ þe lasse hede and liȝtliche wolde flaterie [15] vppon þis symple foode, [16] and, as enemyes, whette her tunges and bende hire browes. Of suche men spekeþ Gregory Nazianzenus, þat willeþ liȝtliche blame defauȝtes of oþere men, and goodnesse nouȝt soþelich [17] folwe. Al þis ich hadde in mynde, and also I

---

6. Whiche labore expressede to my felawes hauenge inopinable appetite to beholde gestes of antiquite, y was movede thro the importune instance of theyme to compile somme thynges of the famose storyes of the worlde from the creacion of man vn to oure age, not oonly after the ordre of tymes, but also after the supputacion of euery yere congruent. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 17 b.

7. Attendenge the intricacion inextricable of this labor presente as of the mase of Dedalinus [y] am preyede to attempte hit withowte drede; aduertenge ofte tymes slawthe to mete men thenkenge grete thynges, and the insufficience of my wytte, and the obnubilous and clowdy processe of this mater y-desirede, perauenture men in these dayes attendenge but litelle the obsequy of deuocion as thei be wonte, scholde take disdeyne of this liȝhte meyte. Of whom Gregorius Naz[i]anzen spekethe, seyenge, "Suche men reprove liȝhtely "straunge thinges, but vnnethe with grete difficulte thei "folowe goode thynges." Wherefore y seenge the poverte

---

[1] *lordes*, Cx.
[2] Added from Cx. and *a*.
[3] *desyre*, Cx.
[4] *worlde vnto*, Cx.
[5] *as*] *was*, MS. and *a*.; corrected from Cx.
[6] *his hous*, *a*.
[7] *be unwarled*] lyghtly be opened and shewed, Cx.
[8] *fynde*] take on me, Cx.; founde, *a*.
[9] *ferdful*, Cx.
[10] *lytil*, Cx.
[11] *unwynde*, Cx.
[12] *wonderful*, Cx.
[13] *beeþ*, *a*.
[14] So also *a*.
[15] *wolde flaterie*] wolde fynde fawte, Cx.; flatþe, *a*.
[16] *werke*, Cx.
[17] *so liȝthliche*, *a*.

paupertatem meam, post tantos tubicines, cum sterili eloquio "rancidulum quiddam balba de nare"[1] proferre, aut certe sycomoros[2] vellicans uvam acerbam proponere delicatis.

8. Quis enim non rideat, seu[3] potius irrideat, si post Herculeos labores, si post Olympicos agones plene consummatos, pygmæus se præparet[4] ad conflictum? Et me certe fragili modulantem avena quis non derideat, si, post tam grandisonos Boanerges, qui in tanto facundiæ cataclysmo præfixerunt satiræ periodum, stridulo soni sibilo decolorarem tantæ materiæ majestatem? Sed scio quid dixit Booz ille clemens paterfamilias ad Ruth verecunde colligentem spicas post terga metentium remanentes. "Nemo," inquit, "tibi "sit molestus." Et iterum ait ad messores, "Etiamsi "vobiscum metere voluerit, ne prohibeatis; et colli- "gentem nemo corripiat." Poeta quoque Mantuanus, Maro Virgilius, ut ait[5] Isidorus Etymol.,[6] lib. x.,[7] sive Flaccus ille Horatius, ut vult Hugo[8] Pisanus in suis Derivationibus, capitulo prævisо;[9] "Cum sibi "improperaretur ab æmulis, quod versus quosdam

---

[1] Pers. Sat. i. v. 33.

[2] *sicomores*, B.

[3] *sed*, A.

[4] *præparat*, A.

[5] *vult*, B.

[6] *Etymol.*] added from B.E.

[7] xi°, E. (wrongly). See § 44.

[8] *Hugucio*, E.

[9] Perhaps *prævio* is the true reading; E. has *proviso*; Cx. prints *perviso* at length.

knewe myn owne pouert, and schamede and dradde after so noble spekers, þat sownede as trompes, to putte forþ my bareyn speche, hosnes[1] and snochynge, as who so[2] roteþ[3] vp moolberyes and serueþ likerous men, þat lyueþ in likynge, wiþ soure grapes. TREVISA.

8. ȝif[4] after þe trauaille[5] of Hercules, and after þe strif, ioustes, and turnementis[6] of Olympy, a pigmey boskeþ hym to bataille and array hym to fiȝte, who myȝte þanne leue to laughe? Also who wolde schoute to skorne, ȝif I pipe wiþ an otene reed, and vnhiȝte so noble a matire wiþ grisbaitinge,[7] gruntynge and whistelynge, after so noble spekers þat sownede at þe beste; and of hem faire facounde and resonable[8] speche, folowed and streynede[9] all her lyf tyme? But ich haue wel in mynde what Booz seide to Ruth þat was schamefast, and lase[10] vp þe eeres after his ripe men, "No man," he seide, "þe schall wraþþe;" and to his ripe men he seide, "ȝif ȝe[11] wole wiþ ȝow rype, "forbedeþ hir nouȝt; and here fore to lose[12] no man schal "lette." Þe poet, also, Mantuanus Maro Virgilius, as Isidorus seiþ, Eth. libro decimo, and Horatius, as seiþ Hugutio Pysanus, In derivationibus[13] suis, capitulo peruiso: "Whan "enemyes despised Horacius and bere hym an[14] honde þat he

and insufficience of my connynge after so splendidious laboures dredde to proferre a raw thynge with bareyne eloquence and to purpose as a thynge bytter to so mellifluous delices. MS. HARL. 2261.

8. What man wolde not laȝhe and also haue in derision, if that a pigmei scholde make him redy to conflicte after the labores of Hercules and after the actes Olimpicalle plenerly finischede? What man wylle not haue me in derision intendenge to decoloure the maieste of soe highe mater after so nowble wryters? Neuerthelesse y remembre the dicte of Booz to Ruth gedrenge cornes remaynenge behynde the backes of men scherenge, seyenge, "Noo man schalle be gre-"vous to the." Also the Poette Mantuan Maro Virgilius, as Isidorus rehersethe, Eth. li° decimo, or elles Flaccus Horatius, as Hugo Pisanus wylle in his Derivationes (capitulo perviso), when hit was seyde in obprobry to hym of his enmyes and aduersaries, that he scholde take some versus of that nowble

[1] *hoose*, Cx.
[2] om. *a*.
[3] *recheth*, Cx.
[4] *For yf*, Cx., *a*.
[5] *laboure*, Cx.
[6] *tourneyes*, Cx.
[7] *mowing*, Cx.; om. *a*.
[8] *renable*, Cx., *a*.
[9] *folowed and streynede*] flowed and stremed, Cx. (stremed also in *a*.)
[10] *leese*, Cx.; *laas*, *a*.
[11] *she*, Cx. (not *a*.), probably rightly.
[12] *leese or gleyne*, Cx.; *lese*, *a*.
[13] *diuinacionibus*, Cx.
[14] *on*, *a*.

" Homerianos transferens suis immiscuisset[1] carminibus, " et ex hoc compilator veterum diceretur, respondit: " Magnarum esse virium clavam de manu Herculis " extorquere."

9. Nullus igitur[2] me majorum[3] exulcetur,[4] quæso, si sabuli cinerisque vicem gero, quæ, quamvis luce carentia fuerint et impura, subjectas tamen attritu materias puras solent reddere et fulgentes, sicut et quædam alia, quæ[5] in se non habent, aliis[6] solent ministrare. Unde[7] poeta satiricus ait:—

" fungar vice cotis, acutum
Reddere [quæ] ferrum [valet]."[8]

Et Gregorius in suo Pastorali ait:—"Depinxi pulchrum " hominem,[9] ego pictor fœdus." Præsumens igitur de illa caritate, quæ, secundum Gregorium in Homilia,[10] vires ministrat, quas imperitia denegat, messuram aggrediar lucubratione plenam, fastidiosis forsan despicabilem, sed, ut arbitror, non[11] inutilem studiosis. Intrabo, inquam, in agros priscorum, metentes subsequens si

---

[1] *immiscuisset suis*, B.
[2] *ergo*, F.
[3] *me majorum*] majorum me, B.
[4] *exulceretur*, A.; *exulceret*, B.
[5] *quod*, B.
[6] *alii*, B.
[7] *Vnde et*, B.
[8] Horat. Ars Poet. 304. The words in brackets are omitted by Higden, who thus falsifies the construction.
[9] *ymaginem*, B.
[10] B. adds *s* (=sua ?).
[11] *non*] om. A.

" hadde i-take som of Omeres [vers],[1] and i-medled among his TREVISA.
" and cleped[2] hym a gaderere of old wrytynges, he answerde
" and seide, 'It were wel[3] greet strengþe to wreste a mace
" 'oute of Hercules honde.' "

9. Þerfore I pray þat no man me blame, þei ich[4] fare as sonnd and askes;[5] þat[6] þouȝ þei beeþ[7] dym and foule hym self, other þinges þey clenseþ and makeþ schyne[8] ful briȝt; and meny oþer þinges þat þey haueþ not in hem self, ȝeueþ[9] to oþere. So saiþ the prophete[10] Satiricus, "I fare " as the whetston[11] þat makeþ yren sharpe and kene." Item, Gregorius in suo Pastorali seiþ, "I haue peynt a wel faire " man, and am my self a foule peyntour." Þerfore I truste on þat charite þat Gregorie spekeþ of in his Omelye, þat wiþ[12] vertues and strengþe, þat vnkunnynge denyeþ; and auntre me in to þe rype,[13] þat is ful of trauaille and wakynge, oute caste,[14] despised of envious men and proude, and ȝit I hope profitable[15] to good[16] studiers and meke. I schal entre in to þe feeldes of oure forme fadres,[17] and folwe

[1] *Homeres versis*, Cx.; *vers* added from *a*.
[2] *called*, Cx.
[3] *right*, Cx.
[4] *þeiȝ*, *a*.
[5] *asshes*, Cx.; *askeþ*, *a*. (and MS. originally).
[6] *for*, Cx. The true reading is probably 'for þat.'
[7] *be*, *a*.
[8] *schene*, *a*.
[9] *ȝeueþ*] yet yeuen, Cx.
[10] *poet*, *a*.
[11] *as a weston*, *a*.
[12] *wytte*, Cx. The sense requires *ȝeueþ*.
[13] *þe rype*] repyng, Cx.
[14] *in caas*, Cx.; *oncas*, *a*., probably rightly.
[15] *profitable*] it shall be prouffytable, Cx.
[16] *goode*, *a*.
[17] *forn-faders*, Cx.

and laureate poete callede Homerus, and adde or inmixte theym vnto his werkes and labores, and callede by that a compilator of olde thynges, he ansuerede seyenge that hit was a signe of grete strenȝhte to take the mace from the honde of Hercules. MS. HARL. 2261.

9. Preyenge that noo man haue indignacion thauȝhe y bere asches or sonde, whiche semenge as thynges impure and wontenge lyȝhte be wonte to yelde pure materes and fulgent, lyke as somme thynges be wonte to ministre to other thynges that thei haue not in theyme selfe. Whereof the poete Satiricus seythe "I schalle vse to make " a knyfe scharpe in the maner of a whetteston." And Seynte Gregory in his Pastoralles, " Y a fowle peynter haue " made a feyre man in picture." Wherefore y presumenge of that charite, whiche, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an Omely, ministrethe strenȝhtes, schalle prosecute my processe, perauenture contemptible to fastidious men, but as y iugge not vnprofitable to goode studentes. Makenge an entre in to f. 18 a. the feldes of olde men, folowenge the scherers after my

potuero, quoquomodo colligens[1] mihi spicas remanentes, vel saltem micas cadentes de mensa dominorum, qui quondam saturati dimiserunt reliquias suas parvulis suis. Sed etiam[2] de fragmentis cophinorum, quæ superfuerunt prandentibus, minutias[3] recolligens, quippiam adjiciam laboribus auctorum, nanus residens in humeris giganteis, unde non solum minores ad rudimentum sed et majores ad exercitium provocentur, ut qui spatiosa illa materiæ hujus volumina tam[4] late digesta nondum[5] attigerunt, præsenti saltem compendio instruantur; ubi non dico sententiæ subtilitas neque[6] verborum venustas, sed devotionis sinceritas materiæ[7] militabit. In quo quidem compendio universa pæne problemata majorum sunt dicta; nonnulla vero, quæ in libris auctorum minime reperi, ex usu quotidiano et rerum experientia, quasi de quadam morum historia excerpsi. Enim[8] vero multorum notitia gestorum partim violentia hostilitatis, partim desidia scriptorum

---

[1] *colligans*, B.
[2] *et*, E.
[3] *micas*, B.
[4] *tam*] om. B.
[5] *non bene*, B.
[6] *aut*, E.
[7] *maxime*, B.
[8] *Quum vero*, A.

TREVISA.

þe rype men, ȝif ich may any wyse leese and gadre me som eres þat rype men schedeþ and skapeþ of here hondes; oþer, nameliche, ȝif I myȝte[1] gadre somwhat of þe crommes þat falleþ of lordes bordes, þat somtyme were fulfilled and left hir[2] relif to hir children. And also ȝif I myȝt gadre eny scrappes of þe releef of þe twelf cupes,[3] and somwhat putt to and eche[4] writinge of auctours, as a dwerf sittynge on a geauntis nekke; wher þoruȝ ȝongelynges[5] mowe be brouȝt to lore and gretter men to vse[6] and to besynesse i-spyed,[7] þat þey mowe be enformed and i-tauȝt by þis schort tretys, þat haueþ nouȝt i-seie þe grete volyms and large, þat beeþ of stories i-write, nouȝt sotilte of sentence, noþer faire florischynge of wordes, but swetnesse of deuocion of þe matire schal[8] regne in þis book. In the whiche book and tretys wel nyh al problemys and questiouns of þe wiseste men þat[9] beeþ[10] i-planted; alsó many þinges þat beþ nouȝt i-write in oþer bookes, ich haue i-gadered of þe comyn, as þey it were of a storye, and i-write in þis tretis, for me[11] schulde hem knowe after oure time. For somdel by malice of enemys, somdele by slouþe[12] of writeres, know-

MS. HARL. 2261.

power, gedrenge the eres of cornes remanent, or elles cromes fallenge from the table of lordes, whiche replete lefte fragmente to theire childre and successores, gedrenge the litelle partes to men hungre of the fragmentes of the cophinnes remanent, schalle adde somme thynge to the labores of auctores. Thro whiche labour lytelle men schalle not be inducede oonly to doctrine but also grete men schalle be prouocate to exercise, that men whiche haue not seen so large volumes of this mater may be instructe by this compendious labor, where y say not that subtilite of sentence or mellifluous eloquence schal be expressede in hit, but sinceritie of deuocion schalle schewe obsequy to the matere. In whom allemoste alle the problemes of grete men be seyde, and mony other thynges not founde in the bokes of auctores whom y have excerpede, as in a maner as a story by vse quotidian and experience of theyme; in parte thro[13] the knowlege of mony thynges, parte thro the violence of hostilite, and parte

[1] *and gadre me . . . . I ȝif myȝte*] wanting in Cx.
[2] *here*, *a.* (and so often.)
[3] *vij. kipes or lepes*, Cx.
[4] *eche*] encrece, Cx. (not *a.*)
[5] *þorw ȝong peple*, *a.*
[6] *vse*] So Cx.; *vice*, MS.; *vys*, *a.*
[7] *i-spyed*] sette, Cx.
[8] *that*, Cx. (typ. error for *that shal?*)
[9] *þat*] wanting in Cx. The true reading is, perhaps, 'þat beeþ, beeþ i-planted.'
[10] *beþ*, *a.* (but also *beeþ* elsewhere.)
[11] *for me*] by cause men, Cx. (not *a.*)
[12] *þe sleuþe*, *a.*
[13] The text is corrupt.

est adempta, ita ut vix hodie nuda locorum nomina sint salvata.

Quod si figmenta gentilium, si dicta ethnicorum, si miranda locorum in hoc opusculo interdum inserantur, Christianæ tamen religioni famulantur. Licuit enim Virgilio aurum sapientiæ in luto Ennii poetæ quærere, et filiis Israel ad Terram Promissam [1] proficiscentibus Ægyptios spoliare. In quibus pæne cunctis aliunde membratim excerptis, sed hic lineamentaliter concorporatis, ita seriosis ludicra,[2] ita religiosis [3] ethnica vicissim sunt admixta, ut succinctis tritis laxatisque exoticis [4] processus series [5] observetur, et integra pro posse veritas non vacillet; æqualis tamen utrobique per [6] omnia teneri non poterit certitudo. Nam divina miracula, secundum Augustinum, De Civitate Dei,[7] admiranda sunt et veneranda, non disputatione discutienda: mirabilia vero non sunt omnino discredenda; cum dicat Hieronymus, "Multa " incredibilia reperies et non verisimilia, quæ nihilomi- " nus vera sunt. Nihil enim contra naturæ Dominum [8]

---

[1] *promissionis*, B.
[2] *ludibria*, B.
[3] *reliosis*, A.
[4] *exitiis*, B.
[5] *cereos*, A.
[6] *per*] *et per*, E.
[7] *Dei*] Added from B., wanting in A.E.
[8] *Dominum naturæ*, A.

leche of greet dedes[1] is so nyh loste and forȝet, þat skarsliche bare names of places we haueþ now[2] in mynde. TREVISA.

10. Þey feynynge and sawes of mysbileued and lawles[3] men, and wondres and merueillis of dyuerse contrees and londes be i-planted in þis book, suche seruеþ and is good to be knowe of Cristen men. Virgile souȝt gold of wit and wisdom in the fen of Ennii þe poete, and þe children of Israel, in hire goynge into þe londe of byheste, spoilled þe Egipcians. Þat is in oþer bookes i-write welwyde and parcel mele i-plaunted, here it is i-putte togidre in rule and in ordre; so merþe to sadnesse and heþen to Cristen, euerich among oþere, þat straunge stories beeþ so abregged, schorted and i-lengþed þat þe storie is hool,[4] in sooþnesse nouȝt i-chaunged. Neuerþeles[5] more certeyn som is i-holde þan oþir. For Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, seith: "We "schul trowe and worschippe þe miracles of God and nouȝt "hem despreue by despitusoun."[6] Wondres beþ not al to be vntrowed: for Hieronymus seiþ,[7] "Meny wondres þow "schalt fynde þat þou woldest nouȝt bileue,[8] and ȝit þey "beeþ ful sooþ: kynde may not doo aȝenst God, Lord of

is adempte and loste þro the slawthe of wryters, so that vnnethe the bare names of places be saluede. Thauȝhe the figmentes of gentiles and dictes of ethnikes be inmixte to this werke thei do seruyce to the Cristen religion and feythe. For it was lawefulle to Virgille the nowble poette to seche the golde of sapience in the cleye of Ennius the poete, and to the childer of Israel goenge in to the londe of promission to spoile men of Egipte. In whom alle thinges excerpte of oþer men ar[9] broken in to smalle membres, but concorporate here liniamentally; thynges of disporte be admixte with saddenes, and dictes ethnicalle to thynges religious, that the ordre of the processe may be obseruede, that to my power the integrite of trawthe schalle not feynte. For egalle certitude may not be holden by alle thynges and in alle thynges. For after Seynte Austyn, de Civitate Dei, diuine miracles ar to be meruailede and to be worschipped, not worthy to be discussede by disputacion. Thynges to be meruaylede be not in alle maneres to be taken to discredence, sythe Seynte Ierom seythe, "Thow schalle[10] fynde mony thynges incredible "and not lyke, and neuerthelesse thei be trewe. Truly there "is noo thynge more preualent ageyne the dominy of nature MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.*; *dredes*, MS.
[2] *not*, Cx.
[3] So Cx. and *a.*; *lawes of*, MS.
[4] *and*, Cx.; *hool and sobnesse*, *a.*
[5] *notheles*, *a.*
[6] *disputicion*, Cx.; *despitesoun*, *a.*
[7] *Hieronymus seiþ*] somme telle, Cx.
[8] So Cx.; *i leue*, MS.
[9] *ar*] as, Harl. MS.
[10] So Harl. MS.

" prævalet ipsa natura." In multis quoque veri certitudo nullatenus vacillare videretur, probabiliter tamen dubitatur. Dicit enim Isidorus, Etymol. [lib.] XV°. : " Si " de constructione urbis Romæ certa ratio non appareat,[1] " non est mirum si in aliarum opinione dubitetur." Unde nec historicos nec commentarios [2] varie loquentes condemnare debemus, quia antiquitas ipsa creavit errorem. Illorum igitur dictis, secundum Hieronymum, quorum religio fidei [et] moribus non [3] præjudicat, nec veritati agnitæ contradicit, fidem convenit adhibere.

Quamobrem in hac assertione historica periculum veri statuendi per omnia mihi non facio, sed quæ apud diversos auctores legi[4] sine invidia communico. Nam et apostolus non, " Quæcunque scripta sunt vera " sunt," ait ; sed, " Quæcunque scripta sunt, ad nostram " doctrinam scripta sunt," inquit. Et quamvis alienum sit quod assumo, meum tamen facio quod meis ali-

---

[1] *apparet*, E.
[2] *conjectarios*, B.
[3] *nec*, A.
[4] *lege*, A.

" kynde." Also of many þinges that seémeþ ful sooþ, nopeless skilfulliche me douteþ.[1] Isidorus, Eth., quinto decimo, seiþ: "ȝif resoun is vncertayne of þe buildynge of " the citee of Rome, what wonder þey men be vncerteyn of " the buldynge of oþer citees and townes? Wherfore we " schulle not blame[2] makeres and writeres of stories, þat " dyuersliche spekeþ and writeþ; for longe passynge of tyme " and elde of dedes makeþ hem vnknowe and writers to " erre." Þerfore Hieronymus seiþ, "It is semeliche to trowe[3] " her sawes þat wiþseiþ[4] nouȝt oure byleue noþer sooþ- " nesse that is knowe." TREVISA.

Wherfore in þe writynge of þis storie I take nouȝt vppon me to aferme for sooþ[5] all þat I write, but such as I haue seie[6] and i-rad in dyuerse bookes, I gadere[7] and write wiþ oute envie, and comoun to oþere men. For þe apostel seith nouȝt, "All þat is write[8] to oure lore is sooþ," but he seiþ " Al þat is i-write to oure lore[9] it is i-write." And þei I take it of oþer menis, I clepe þis storie myn; and for þat

" then that nature." Neuerthelesse a dubitacion may be movede probably in mony thynges, where certitude dothe not appere to be variaunte. Isidorus seythe, Ethi. libro xv°, " If that certeyne reason appere not of the construccion of " the cite of Rome, hit is not mervayle if a dubitacion be " movede in the oppinion of theyme. Wherefore we awe not " to condempne commentatores and wryters of storyes spekenge " diuersely, for the antiquite þer of causethe erroure. For hit " is conueniente to ȝiffe feithe and credulite to the dictes of " those men, after Seynte Ierom, the religion of whom schew- " ethe not preiudice to vertues neiþer seythe contrary to " the trawthe y-knowen."[10] If eny thynge be founde disso- naunte to feithe auþer diuerse or straunge to vertues in this werke, hit schalle be ascribede raþer to the tyme then to man. Wherefore y make not to me by alle thynges perelle of trawthe to be ordeynede in this spekenge of storyes, but takenge parte withowte envye thynges of diuerse auctores whom y haue redde. For Seynte Paule seythe, " That alle thynges wryten be not trewe, but alle thynges " wryten be wryten to oure doctrine." And thauȝhe y take the wordes of other men, y make hit myne that y pro- MS. HARL. 2261. f. 18 b.

[1] *me douteþ*] it is to be doubted, Cx.
[2] *make blameres*, α.
[3] *beleue*, Cx.
[4] So α.; *wiþ seiþ*, MS.; *gaynsaye*, Cx.
[5] *trouthe*, Cx.
[6] *y-seie*, α.
[7] So α, and Cx.; *gadered*, MS.
[8] *y-write*, α.
[9] *to oure lore*] for oure doctryine and loore, Cx. (α has various words omitted.)
[10] *y knowen*, Harl. MS., and similarly elsewhere; here always printed *conjunctim*.

quando verbis antiquorum sæpe [1] sententias [2] profero, adeo ut quos auctores in capite libri præscripsero,[3] illis utar pro clypeo contra sugillantes. Quum [4] vero compilator loquitur, sub hac figuratione [R] littera [5] præscribitur.[6]

Cap. II.

Nomina auctorum in hoc opusculo allegatorum.[7]

Recitantur hic [8] auctorum nomina de quibus hæc [9] potissime abstracta [10] est Chronica:

Josephus Judæorum historicus [11] insignis,[12] qui ab initio sæculi usque ad XIV^m^. annum Domitiani libros antiquitatum XX., necnon et de subversione urbis Hierosolymæ [13] gentisque suæ [14] captivitate VII. libros [15] conscripsit.

Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, quem transtulit Ambrosius.[16]

Plinius, in XXXVII. libris de Naturali Historia.

Trogus Pompeius, in XLIV. libris de cunctis pæne Orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus [17] Justinus.

Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus XI. sunt libri.

Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus tres sunt

---

[1] *semper*, D.

[2] *sententias*] So B. (where the word *profero* is written twice); *sententiis*, A.E.

[3] *scripsero*, B.

[4] *Quum*] Quando, E.

[5] *littera*] om. D.

[6] *præscribetur*, D.

[7] Heading (here and usually) as in B. *Præfatio secunda ad historiam*, E. In A.C.D. is no heading.

[8] *Sunt autem hæc*, C.D.

[9] *hic*, B.

[10] *extracta*, C.D.

[11] *historiographus*, C.D.

[12] *insignis*] om. E.

[13] *Hierosolymæ*] So D.E.; *Hierosolymitanæ*, A.B.

[14] *suæ*] om. C.

[15] *libros* 7, B.

[16] D.E. add *doctor*.

[17] *suus*] Added from B.D.E. In C. the reading is *ejus*.

I write oþer whiles myn owne wordes and sentens of olde men, þe auctores þat[1] in the firste bygynnynge of þis book I take for schelde and defens, me for to saue and schilde[2] aȝenst enemyes þat me wolde despise strongly[3] and blame; first for my self and for myn owne name I write þis letter [R]. TREVISA.

Capitulum secundum.

HERE I write and reherse þe auctours names of þe whiche þis cronycle is nameliche[4] i-gadered and i-drawe: Josephus Judeorum historicus insignis, qui ab initio sæculi usque ad quartum decimum annum Domitiani libros Antiquitatum viginti, necnon et de subversione civitatis Hierosolymæ, gentisque suæ captivitate septem conscripsit. Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis quem transtulit Ambrosius. Plinius in XXXVII. libris, de Naturali Historia. Trogus Pompeius, in XLIV. libris, de cunctis pene orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus Justinus. Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus XI. sunt libri. Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus

---

ferre other while of the sentence of olde men by my wordes, vsenge the auctores whom I schalle wryte in the begynnenenge of the booke as a schelde and defense ageyne men movenge contrarious thynges. When the compilator spekethe, the letter shall be proscribede in this forme folowenge [R]. MS. HARL. 2261.

Explicit Præfatio prima.

Capitulum Secundum.

THE names of the auctores been rehersede here, of whom thys presente cronicle is abstracte. Iosephus, the nowble wryter of storyes of the Iewes, whiche dide wryte xx^{ti} bookes of antiquite, and vij. bookes of the subuersion of the cyte of Ierusalem and of the captiuite of the peple þer of, from the begynnenge of the worlde vn to the xiiij^{the} yere of Domician themperoure. Also Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, whom Seynte Ambrose translate. Plinius, in hys xxx^{ti} vij. bookes of Naturalle Storyes. Trogus Pompeius, in hys xl^{ti} iiij. bookes, allemoste of alle the storyes of the worlde, whom Iustinus his disciple did abbreuiate. Eusebius, in his Story Ecclesiasticalle, in whiche story xj. bookes be conteynede. Also the Ecclesiasticalle Story tri- f. 19 a.

---

[1] *I sette*, or something similar, seems to be omitted.
[2] *hepe*, Cx.
[3] *strangely*, Cx.
[4] *special*, Cx.

auctores, *sc.*[1] Eusebius, Hieronymus, et[2] Theodorus episcopus.

Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, potissime in XVII^mo.[3] et[4] XVIII^mo.

Orosius Hispanus, Terraconensis presbyter,[5] in libro de Ormesta[6] Mundi.

Isidorus Hispalensis episcopus, in libro Etymologiarum.

Solinus, de Mirabilibus Mundi.

Eutropius, in Historia Romana.

Paulus Diaconus, in Historia Longobardorum.

Cassiodorus,[7] de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum.

Methodius martyr et episcopus,- cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio,[8] et fine.[9]

Suetonius, de Gestis Romanorum.

Valerius Maximus, de Gestis Memorabilibus.[10]

Macrobius, in Saturnalibus.

Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia.[11]

Petrus Comestor,[12] in Historia Scholastica.

Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ.[13]

Beda, de Gestis Anglorum.

Item, Beda, de Naturis Rerum.

Item, Beda, de Temporibus.[14]

---

[1] Added from D.

[2] *et*] Added from C.D.

[3] 16. D., which places *De C. Dei* at the end.

[4] *et*] et in, E.

[5] C. and D. add *et discipulus beati Augustini.*

[6] In all the MSS. Respecting the orthography and probable import of this title, see Smith's *Dict. of Greek and Roman Biogr.*, vol. iii. p. 59, Lond. 1849.

[7] C. and D. add *Senator et historicus.*

[8] *principio*] Added from B.E.: *in principio*, C., but *in* is cancelled: *a principio*, D.

[9] C. and D. insert, at this point, *Herodotus, Quintilianus, Agellius* (*i.e.* '*Aulus Gellius.*' D. has *Augelius.*)

[10] A. adds, here also, *et fine*, but the words are run through by some corrector of the MS.

[11] *sua*, add C.D.; *in Cosmographia* om. B.

[12] *Trecensis* (*f*) *presbyter*, add C. D., which last has *Cretensis.*

[13] *Magister Gregorius in libro de*, C.D.

[14] The two last works of Bede are omitted in D., and added in C. by a later hand.

TREVISA.

tres sunt auctores, Eusebius, Hierònymus, et Theodorus episcopus. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, potissime XVII. et XVIII. Orosius Hispanus Terraconensis presbyter, in libro de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis in libro Etymologiarum. Solinus de Mirabilibus Mundi. Henricus Huntyngdonensis [1] archidiaconus. Eutropius [in.] [2] Historia Romana. Walterus archidiaconus Oxoniensis. Paulus Diaconus in Historia Longobardorum. Alfridus Beverlacensis thesaurarius. Cassiodorus de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum. Galfridus Monamutensis, in Historia Bretonum. Methodius etiam [3] martyr et episcopus, cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio et fine. Willelmus [4] Ryvallensis. Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione. Suetonius, de Gestis Memorabilibus. [5] Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Johannes Salisburiensis in suo Polycraticon, quem intitulavit, de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum. Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia. Petrus Comestor in Historia Scholastica. Hugutio Pisanus episcopus in Magnis Derivationibus [6] suis. Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ. Vincentius Belluacensis, in Speculo Historiali. Beda, de Gestis Anglorum. Ivo Carnotensis episcopus. Beda, de Naturis Rerum. Historia Francorum. Beda, de Temporibus. Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.

MS. HARL. 2261.

partite of whom be iij. auctores, Eusebius, Ierom and Theodorus the byschoppe. Seynte Austyn de Civitate Dei, and specially in the xvij^{the} and xviij^{the} books. Orosius Hispanus, in his booke de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis, in his Ethimologies. Solinus, of the Meruayles of the Worlde. Eutropius, in his story of Romanes. Paulus Diaconus in his Story of Longobardes. Cassiodorus, of the Gestes of Emperoures and Byschoppes. Methodius, martir and byschoppe,[7] to whom, beenge in prison, an angelle schewede of þe state of the worlde, begynnenge and ende. Suetonius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Valerius Maximus, of the Gestes of Memorye. Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Pricianus Grammaticus, in his Cosmographye. Petrus Comestor, in his Storye Scolasticalle. Gregorius, of the Meruailes of Rome. Bede, of the Gestes of men of Englonde; also, Bede, of the Natures of Thynges; also, Bede, of Tymes.

[1] *Hontingdon*, α.
[2] *in*] Added from α, and Cx.
[3] *etiam*] om. Cx.
[4] *Willmus*, MS., and so a little below.
[5] *Romanorum, Valerius Maximus de gestis memorabilibus*, α.
[6] *diuinacionibus*, Cx.
[7] *byschoꝑ*, Harl. MS.

Gildas,[1] de Gestis Britonum.[2]
Marianus Scotus.
Wilhelmus[3] Malmesburiensis monachus, de Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum.[4]
Henricus Huntindonensis[5] archidiaconus.
Walterus Oxoniensis[6] archidiaconus.
Alfridus Beverlacensis[7] thesaurarius.[8]
Galfridus Monemutensis[9] in Historia[10] Britonum.
Wilhelmus Rievallensis.[11]
Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et Vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione.
Johannes Salisburiensis,[12] in suo Polycraticon,[13] quem[14] intitulavit de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum.
Hugo[15] Pisanus episcopus, in Magnis[16] Derivationibus.
Vincentius Beluacensis, in Speculo Historiali.
Ivo Carnotensis episcopus.
Historia Francorum.[17]
Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.
Martinus pœnitentiarius domini papæ in Chronicis suis de Imperatoribus et Pontificibus.[18]
Et Florentius Wigornensis monachus, quem in

[1] *Item Gildas*, B.
[2] C. and D. add *Nenninius* (*Nenninus*, C.) *Brito Eldugi* (read *Elvodugi*) *discipulus, presbyter*.
[3] *Wilhelmus*] So B. Variously written and abbreviated in the MSS.
[4] C. and D. omit the title of the book. B. has *de regibus Angliæ et pontificibus*.
[5] *Hunteyngdonien.*, B.
[6] *Exon.*, C.D.
[7] *Bleuerlacen*, B.
[8] *thesaurius*, A.
[9] *Munemutensis*, D.
[10] *historiis*, B.
[11] *Rivalensis*, D.
[12] *Salesbur*, D.
[13] *Polychronicon*, B. (*Polycraticon* in marg. in later hand), E. A confusion of names which is often repeated in the titles of the present work.
[14] *qui*, A.
[15] *Hugutio*, B. (*Hugo* in marg.), C.D.E. Both forms are good.
[16] *Magnis*] *suis*, C.D.
[17] The allusion is most probably to the work of Gregory of Tours, although in some MSS. the punctuation seems to imply that the writer intended the *Chronicon de Regibus Francorum* of Ivo of Chartres. (Hardwick's note.) C. has '*Ivo* '*Carnotensis Episcopus, Historia* '*Francorum, T. Livius*,' all in the margin. D. omits them entirely.
[18] *in cronicis de pontificibus*, C.D.

Gildas, de Gestis Britonum. Martinus pœnitentiarius domini papæ, in Chronicis suis de Imperatore et Pontifice.[1] Marianus Scotus. Willelmus Malmesburiensis Monachus de Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum. Florentius Wygor- TREVISA.

Gildas, of the Gestes of Briteynes. Marianus Scotus. Willelmus[2] Malmesburiensis monachus, of the Gestes of the Kynges of Englonde and of the Byschoppes. Henry, Archidiacon of Huntyngedon. Waltere, Archidiacon of Oxford. Alfride, Treasurer of Beuerlaye. Galfridus Monomutensis, in his Story of Britones. Willelmus[2] Riuallensis. Giraldus of Wales, which describede Topographie of Irlonde, Itinerary of Wales, and the Lyfe of Kinge Henry the Secunde, under a triuialle distinccion. Iohannes Salesburiensis, in his Policraticon, whom he intitlede de Nugis Curialium. Hugo Pisanus Byschoppe, in his Deriuaciones. Vincentius Beluacensis, in his Myrrour Historicalle. Ivo Byschoppe Carnotense, of the Storye of Frensche men. Titus Liuius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Martinus, the penitentiary of the Pope, in his Cronicles of Emperoures and Byschoppes. Also Florentius, monke of Wurcestre, whom MS. HARL. 2261. f. 19 b.

---

[1] *de Imperatoribus Pontificibus*, Cx. [2] *Willms*, Harl. MS. (twice).

annorum supputatione una [1] cum Mariano Scoto [2] potissime sum secutus.

Cap. III.

Divisio hujus Opusculi in septem libros.[3]

Et quia præsens chronica multorum temporum continet gesta, idcirco eam *Historiam Polychronicam,*[4] a pluralitate temporum quam continet, censui nuncupandam. In cujus negotii pertractatione, exemplo primitivi Opificis sub senario cuncta condentis et in septimo [5] quiescentis, cujus actio nostra est [6] instructio, subtractum opus in septem libellulos [7] subdistinxi. Quorum primus describit orbis loca, reliqui sex orbis gesta juxta [8] numerum sex ætatum. In primo tamen [9] hujus operis[10] libro, more divisi generis in species,[11] mappa mundi describitur. Deinde, orbis in suas partes [12] principaliores dividitur. Tertio, provincia quæque partialis percurritur, donec perveniatur ad omnium novissimam[13] Britanniam, tanquam ad speciem [14] specialissimam,[15] cujus gratia tota præsens lucubrata est historia.[16]

[1] *una*] om. B., which arranges the words of the sentence differently.

[2] C. and E. omit *una cum Mariano Scoto*. D. omits all after *monachus*. The *order* in which this catalogue of authors appears is not quite the same in all the Latin MSS. The text is as A.B.E.

[3] *Præfatio tertia ad historiam*, E.

[4] *Policraticam*, C., (not D.) : and similarly in the colophon of the same MS.

[5] *septenario*, B.

[6] *est*] sit, B.

[7] *libellos*, B.E.

[8] *juxta*] secundum, B.

[9] *etiam*, C.D.

[10] *hujus operis*, om. C.D. ; *hujus partis*, E.

[11] *more . . . species*] om. C.D.

[12] *partes* interlineated in later hand after *principaliores* in A.

[13] *omnium novissimam*] So B.C.E. ; *omnium novissima*, A. ; *omnem novissimam*, D.

[14] *spem*, A.

[15] *tanquam . . specialissimam*] om. C.

[16] *l. p. h.*, C. (omitting *est*).

nensis, quem in annorum supputatione, una cum Mariano, potissime sum secutus. TREVISA.

Præfatio secunda ad Historiam.

AND for þis cronicle[1] conteyneþ berynges and dedes of meny tyme,[2] þerfore I clepe[3] it *Pollicronicon*, þat is þe[4] cronicle of meny tymes. In þe whiche work, by þe ensaumple of þe firste Worchere, þat wrouȝhte alle his werkes in sixe dayes and reste in þe seuenþe (for his doynge is oure lore[5]), þis werke I departe and dele in seuene bookes. Þe firste book descryueþ placis and contrees and londes and alle þe worlde wyde.[6] Þe opere sixe bokes, by þe noumbre of vi. ages, þat conteyneþ berynge and dedes from þe bygynnynge of þe world vnto oure tyme. Neþeles in þe firste book of þis werk, as who[7] descriueþ general, comoun and special, mappa mundi is purtrayed and i-peynt, þat is þe cloþe þat þe schap of þe worlde wide is i-peynted ynne. Þanne in his cheef parties þe world is i-deled; and for þis storie is bytrauailled[8] by cause of Brytayne, eueriche prouince and londe is descryued for to me[9] come to Britayne þe laste of alle, as most special; and þere ynne is i-conteyned y folowe specially with Marianus Scotte in the supputacion of yeres. MS. HARL. 2261.

The secunde Preface vn to the storye. Capitulum tertium.

AND for cause that this cronicle presente conteynethe the gestes of mony tymes, I haue studiede that hit schal be called *Policronicon* of the pluralite of tymes whom it dothe conteyne. In whiche werke y haue subdiuidede in to vij. bookes, after the exemple of the firste Maker makenge alle thynges vnder the nowmbre of vj. and restenge in the vij[the]. The firste boke of whom describethe the places of the worlde, other vj. bookes describe the gestes of the worlde after the nowmbre of vj. ages. Mappa mundi is describede in the firste boke of this werke, in the maner of a diuision genericalle in to a diuision specificalle. After that the worlde is diuidede as in to his partes principalle. In the thrydde euery parcialle province is discussede, till hit be commen to Breteyne the last prouince, as vn to a specialite moste specialle for

[1] *for as moche as this cronkye*, Cx.
[2] *tymes*, Cx. (not α.)
[3] So Cx. and α.; *cleped*, MS.
[4] So Cx. and α.; *in*, MS.
[5] *doctryne*, Cx.
[6] *wyde world*, Cx., and so just below, with other slight variations.
[7] So Cx.; *first who*, MS.; *first as who*, α.
[8] *is trauaylled*, Cx.
[9] *for to me*] vntil we, Cx.

Quo[1] in loco quindecim contexta[2] sunt capitula, summariam[3] quidem sed necessariam insulæ Britannicæ notitiam continentia, velut isagogæ quædam[4] primæ ad majores categorias in libris reliquis subsequentes, ut cui fortassis plenam ponendorum cœnam gustare non libuerit, his saltem[5] præviis acruminibus[6] delectetur. Deinde[7] secundus liber aggreditur[8] gesta sæculi, cum descriptione minoris mundi; verum quia gesta uniuscujusque ætatis non sunt æque multa et librorum quilibet[9] æquilibratam portionem vendicat in contentis, ea propter secundus liber quatuor ætatum sæculi[10] continet gesta, a plasmatione scilicet protoplasti usque ad[11] incensionem templi Judaici. Tertius a transmigratione populi usque adventum Christi. Quartus a Christo usque adventum Saxonum. Quintus abinde usque adventum Dacorum. Sextus abinde usque adventum Normannorum. Septimus abinde[12] usque ad ævum nostrum, quod est sub regno Edwardi Tertii post Conquæstum. Et sic, juxta vaticinium Isaiæ præloquentis, immensitas historiæ profluentis percussa est in septem rivis, ut jam[13] per eam transeant calceati, pateatque via residuo populo Dei.

---

[1] *Quo . . . delectetur*] om. C.D.

[2] *contexta*] om. B.

[3] *non summariam*, Gale's MS.(G.), (but *non* is interlineated), and so the Winchester MS. (W.) and Harl. version; badly.

[4] *ysagoge quidam*, A.; *isagoge quædam prima* is probably the true reading. See Trevisa.

[5] B. adds *descriptionibus*.

[6] *acruminibus*] So B., apparently, and G., quite distinctly; compare p. 404; *a criminibus*, A.E.W.; and so Trevisa, absurdly.

[7] Thus abridged in C.D.: *Deinde secundus liber gesta seculi cum descriptione minoris mundi aggreditur: quatuorque* (*secundus liber quatuor*, C.) *ætatum continet gesta, sc. ab Adam usque incensionem templi.*

[8] *aggreditur* before *secundus* in B.

[9] *quilibet*] queliter, A. (without sense.)

[10] *sæculi*] om. B.

[11] *ad*] om. B.

[12] *abinde*] om. B.

[13] *ut jam*] ita quidem ut, C.D.

xv. chapitres nedful to þe knowleche of the ylond of Britayne, as þeiȝ it were an[1] in-bryngynge to gretter knowleche in oþer[2] bookes þat foloweþ; þat who þat may nouȝt come to ful knowleche of þe ful storie, mowe by such forledynge haue [lykynge][3] to leeue schrewednes and synne. Þe secunde book auntreþ[4] forto telle berynge and dedes wiþ descripcioun of the lasse world; and for þe ages of þe world beeþ nouȝt all euene of beryng and of dedes, and euery book is euene and conteyneþ i-liche; þerfore þe secounde book conteyneþ þe berynge and dedes of the foure ages from the makynge of oure formest fader to þe brennynge of þe temple of Iewes. Þe þridde book from þe transmygracioun of þe peple to the comynge of Crist. Þe fourþe from Crist to þe comynge of Saxouns. Þe fifte from Saxons to þe Danes. Þe sixte from þe Danes to þe Normans.[5] Þe seuenþe fro Normans to oure tyme, þat is, reignynge[6] of kyng Edwarde þe þridde after þe Conquest. And so by þe prophecie of Isay, þis grete storie is departed in seuene streemes, so þat boþe i-hosed and i-schod Goddes peple may passe þerby.

Trevisa.

---

whom his present storye was made. In whiche place xv. chapitres bene contexte, not as summary, but as conteynenge necessarily the knowlege of the yle of Bryteyne. The secunde boke tretethe of the gestes of the worlde, with a descripsion of the lesse worlde. Sythe the gestes of euery age be not egalle in multitude, and euery booke chalangethe his particion in contentes, þerfore the secunde boke conteynethe the gestes of the iiij. ages of the world, from the plasmacion of Adam vn to the incension of the temple of the Iewes. The thrydde boke conteynethe from the transmigracion off the peple to the commenge of Criste. The iiij^{the} from Criste to the commenge of Saxones. The v^{the} from theym to the commenge of Danes. The vj^{the} from that to the commenge of Normannes. The vij^{the} from theyme to our age. And soe this presente story is smyten in to vij. ryuerers, after the prophecy of Ysay that men y-schoede may goe by hyt, and þat the weye may be patente to the residu peple of God.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *and*, MS.; txt, Cx.
[2] *þe obere*, α.
[3] Added from Cx. and α.
[4] *quentureth*, Cx.
[5] *fram* (sic) *Danes to Normans*, α.
[6] *vnder þe reignynge*, α.; *vnder the regne*, Cx.

Cap. IV.

De quibusdam præambulis utilibus ad opus subsequens.[1]

Satagentibus[2] igitur plenam historiæ notitiam apprehendere utile foret[3] octo scire, videlicet descriptiones locorum, status rerum, distinctiones temporum,[4] successiones regiminum, variationes rituum, decursiones ætatum, qualitates actionum; et[5] in his[6] omnibus varias prorsus supputationes annorum.

Primum istorum in primo libro, reliqua in reliquis sunt expressa.

Quoad secundum est notandum, quod[7] duo sunt status; unus ab exordio mundi usque ad Christum, qui dicitur[8] *deviationis;* secundus, a Christo usque in finem, qui dicitur[9] *reconciliationis.*

Quantum ad tertium, nota[10] quod tria sunt tempora; unum ante legem scriptam, secundum, sub lege scripta, tertium, sub gratia.

Quantum ad quartum, nota quod licet quatuor fuerunt aliquando[11] regna principalia, Assyriorum, scilicet,[12] Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum, tamen,[13] quoad mundi cursum et Sacræ Scripturæ seriem,

---

[1] *Præfatio quarta ad historiam*, E.
[2] *Satagentibus*] cupientibus, C.D.
[3] *utile foret*] necessarium erit, C.D.
[4] *temporum*] om. A.
[5] *et*] om. B.
[6] *his* added from C.D.; om. A.B.
[7] *est notandum quod*] om. C.D.
[8] *qui dicitur*] et hic fuit, C.D.
[9] *est*, C.D.
[10] C.D. om. *nota quod*, and so below.
[11] *aliquando fuerunt*, B.
[12] C. om. *scilicet.*
[13] *tamen*] After *mundi* in C.D.

Præfacio Tertia ad Historiam. TREVISA.

To hem þat will haue ful knowleche of stories nedeþ [1] eyþte þinges [to knowe: descrypcions of places, states of thynges],[2] distinccion [3] of tymes, aftir followynge of kyngdoms, dyuerste of liuynge, passynge of ages, maner of doynge, and in all þese verray acountynge of ȝeres.

Þe firste of þese in þe firste book, and þe oþere in þe oþer bookes beeþ oponliche i-write.

Touchynge þe secounde take hede of tweie states, oon from þe bygynnynge of þe world to Criste, and is i-cleped [4] þe staat of mysgoynge; the secounde staat from Criste to þe worldes end, and is i-cleped [5] þe state of grace and of mercy.

For þe þridde, take hede of þre tymes, oon to fore lawe i-write, þe secounde vndir þe lawe i-write, and þe þridde vnder grace and mercy.

For þe fourthe, take hede þat somtyme þere were foure principal kyngdoms [6] Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, Romanorum. Neuerþeles touchynge the [7] cours of the worlde and þe processe of Holy Writt, þe firste kyngdom was

The thrydde Preface to the storye. Capitulum quartum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Truly viij[the] thynges be profitable to men willenge to haue plenerly knowelege of this story presente, that is to say, descripciones of places, states of thynges, distincciones of tymes. Successiones of gouernaunce, variaciones of customes, decursiones of ages, qualites of acciones and trewe supputaciones of yeres in alle these thynges. The firste of these is in the firste booke and oþer [8] in other [8] books be expressede. As vn to the secunde hit is to be attendede that þer be ij. states; oon state from þe begynnenge of the worlde to Criste, whiche is the state of deuiacion. The secunde is from Criste to the ende of the worlde, whiche is the state of reconsiliacion. As vn to the thrydde hit is to be attendede that there be iij. tymes; oon afore the lawe y-wryten. The secunde vnder the lawe wryten. The thrydde vnder grace. As vn to the iiij[the]. hit is to be attendede, thauȝe þer were oþer while iiij. principalle realmes, as men of Assiria, of Persia, Grekes, and Romanes, neuerþelesse as after the course of the worlde and ordre of Holy Scripture the firste gouernayle was from Abraham f. 20 a.

[1] *it nedeth*, Cx.
[2] [. . .] added from Cx., and α.
[3] *distinccō̄*, MS.
[4] *i-cleped*] called, Cx.
[5] *i-cleped*] named, Cx.
[6] Cx. has "that is to wete of the "Assyryens, Perces, Greeks, and "Romayns."
[7] So the MS. See p. 63, note.
[8] *oþer, other*] See p. 63, note.

primum regimen fuit sub Patribus ab Adam usque ad[1] Moysen; secundum sub Judicibus[2] a Moyse usque ad Saulem, tertium sub Regibus a Saule usque ad Zorobabel, quartum sub Pontificibus, a Zorobabel usque ad Christum.

Quoad quintum, nota quod quinque ritus fuerunt: primus in prima ætate[3] sub lege naturæ communis erat omnium hominum;[4] secundus in secunda ætate inolevit ritus gentilium, quando sub Nino orta est idolatria: tertius in tertia ætate sub lege scripta surrexit[5] ritus Judæorum, quando lex et circumcisio Judæos a cæteris distinguebat gentibus:[6] quartus sub Christo ritus cœpit Christianorum, quando fides et gratia sacramentorum informabat vitam eorum: quintus[7] sub Machometo ritus cœpit Saracenorum, sicut inferius in quinto libro, post tempora Heraclii imperatoris, plenius ostendetur.[8]

Quoad sextum, nota quod sex sunt ætates, prima ab Adam usque ad Noe, secunda a Noe usque ad Abraham, tertia ab Abraham usque ad David, quarta a David usque ad transmigrationem Babylonis,[9] quinta a transmigratione Babylonis usque ad Christum, sexta

---

[1] C. omits *ad* after *usque* in each case, except before *Christum*.
[2] *judicibus*] ducibus, B.
[3] *fuerunt; a prima ætate*, B.
[4] *hominum* added from C.D.E.
[5] *erat*, C.D.
[6] *gentibus*] om. C.D.
[7] *quinto*, A.
[8] *plenius ostendetur*] *plenius* wanting in B.C.D.; *tempore Heraclii continetur*, C.D.
[9] *Babylonis*] om. C.D.E., and so below.

vnder oure fore fadres from Adam to Moyses; þe secunde vnder iuges[1] from Moyses to Saul; þe þridde vnder kynges from Saul to Zorobabel; þe fourthe vnder bisshoppis from Zorobabel to Crist. TREVISA.

For þe fifte, take kepe of fyue manere of lyuing, þe firste was in•þe firste age vndir þe lawe of kynde comyn to alle men; þe secounde in þe secunde age [was][2] þe leuynge of mysbyleued men, whan mametrie bygan in Nynus tyme, kyng of Nynyue; þe [þridde in þe][3] þridde age vnder lawe i-write, whan circumsisioun and lawe departed þe children of Israel from laweles[4] and mysbileued men: þe fourþe lyuynge of Cristen men bygan vnder Crist, whan byleue and grace of sacramente halwed hir lyf.[5] þe fifte leuynge of Sarazynes bygan vndir Makomete as it is in þe fifte[6] book, and after þe tyme of Heraclius þe emperour, openliche i-schewed.

For þe sixte, take hede of sixe ages; oon is from Adam to Noe; þe secounde from Noe to Abraham; þe þridde from Abraham to Dauid; þe [fourþe][7] fro Dauid to þe transmygracioun, þat was whan Israel was i-brouȝt into þraldom of Babiloyne; þe fifte from þe transmygracioun to Criste, þe sixte from Criste to þe worldes

to Moysen. The secunde was vnder Iugges from Moyses to Saul. The thrydde vnder Kynges from Saul vn to Zorobabel. The iiij^{the} vnder byschoppes, from Zorobabel vn to Criste. As vn to the v^{the}, hit is to be attendede that þere were v. rytes. The firste was in the firste age vnder the lawe of nature commune to euery man. The secunde rite began in the secunde age, that was the rite of gentiles, when ydolatrye spronge vnder Nino. The thrydde ryte did aryse in the thrydde age vnder the lawe wryten, when þe lawe and circumcision made a distinccion betwene the Iewes and other folke. The iiij^{the} ryte is of Cristen men that began vnder Criste, when feithe and grace of sacramentes informede the life of theyme. The v^{the} rite is of Saracenys, whiche began under Machomete, as hit schalle be schewede after the tyme of Heraclius themperoure more plenerly. As vn to the vj^{the}, hit is to be attendede that there be vj. ages; the fyrste from Adam to Noe; the secunde from Noe to Abraham; the thrydde from Abraham to Dauid; the iiij^{the} from Dauid to þe transmigracion; the v^{the} from the transmigracion to Criste; the vj^{the} from MS. HARL. 2261.

Of v. rytes.

Of vj. ages.

[1] *under iuges*] wanting in Cx.
[2] Added from Cx. (not in *a*.)
[3] Added from *a*, and Cx.
[4] *lawes*, Cx.
[5] *self*, Cx.
[6] So *a*, and Cx.; *firste*, MS.
[7] Added from *a*, and Cx.

a Christo usque ad finem mundi.[1] Ubi est sane advertendum quod ætates sæculi non distinguuntur penes æqualitatem annorum, sed penes aliquod mirabile contingens in principio ætatum;[2] utpotè quod prima ætas incipit a creatione mundi, secunda ab inundatione diluvii, tertia a circumcisione mirabili, quarta ab inchoatione regni, quinta a transmigratione populi, sexta ab Incarnatione Christi.

Quoad septimum, nota quod septem leguntur personæ, quorum gesta[3] crebrius in historiis memorantur, videlicet, principis[4] in regno, militis[5] in bello, judicis[6] in foro, præsulis[7] in clero, politici in populo, œconomi in domo, monastici in templo. Ex quibus proradiant[8] correspondenter septem famosa actionum genera, quæ sunt constructiones urbium, devictiones hostium, sanctiones jurium,[9] correctiones criminum, compositio rei popularis, dispositio[10] rei familiaris, adquisitio meriti salutaris,[11] et in his jugiter[12] relucent præmiationes proborum et punitiones perversorum.

Quoad octavum, est sciendum quod octo fuerunt

---

[1] The whole of the following sentence occurs lower down in B.; and is omitted altogether in the shorter class of chronicles, represented by C. and D.

[2] *ætatis*, E.

[3] *facta*, C.D.

[4] *principes*, B.

[5] *milites*, B.

[6] *judices*, B.

[7] *præsules*, B.

[8] *corradiant*, B.

[9] *virium*, E.

[10] *dispositio rei familiaris*] om. C.D.; *depositio*, B.

[11] *singularis*, E.

[12] *jugiter*] om. D.

ende. And here take hede, þat ages of þe world beeþ nouȝt to-deled[1] by euenes of ȝeres, but by meruayles þat byfel in her bygynnynge; as þe firste age bygan from þe bygynnynge of the wor[l]de;[2] þe secounde from Noes flood; þe þridde from þe circumsicioun; þe fourþe from þe bygynnynge of kynges; the fifte from þe transmigracioun; þe sixte from the Incarnacioun of Crist. TREVISA.

For the seuenþe, take hede of seuene persones whos dedes me writeþ[3] in stories, þat beeþ,[4] kyng in his rewme, knyȝt in bataile, iuge in plee, bisshop in clergie, lawefulman in þe peple, housbond in hous, religious man in chirche. Of þe whiche springeþ out seuen manere of famous doynge, buldynge of citees, victorie of enemyes, makynge of lawes, correccioun[5] of trespas, help of þe comyn profiȝt, gouernynge of meyny[6] and of householde, getynge of blisful mede, in þe whiche blaseþ and schyneþ rewardynge of gode men and punyschynge of euel men.

For the eyȝte, take hede of eyȝte dyuerse manere of

Criste to the ende of the worlde. Hyt is to be attendede that the ages of the worlde be not diuersificate as anendes the equalites of yeres, but anendes somme merMS. HARL. 2261.

uellous thynge happenge in the begynnenge of that age; as the firste age began from the creation of man; the secunde of a meruellous invndacion of water; the thrydde of a meruellous circumcision; the iiij^{the} from the begynnenge of reigne of kynges; the v^{the} of the transmigracion of peple; the vj^{the} of the incarnation off Criste. As vn to the vij^{the} hit is to be attended that vij. persones be redde whose gestes be remembrede oftetymes in storyes; that is to saye, the person of a prynce in his realme, of a knyȝte in batelle, of a iugge in his seete, of a byschoppe in the cleregye, off a politike man in the peple, of a howsebonde man in a howse, of a contemplatif man in the chirche. From whom vij. generalites of acciones doe procede corespondent to theyme, whiche be construcciones of cytes, victoryes of enmyes, sancciones of lawes, correcciones of crymes, composicion of a commune thynge, the disposicion of a thynge familier, the adquisicion of a hollesom merite in whom the rewardes of goode men schyne, and the peynes of ylle men. As vn to the viij^{the} hit is to be attendede f. 20 b.

---

[1] *delid*, Cx.
[2] *world, a.*
[3] *me writeþ*] ben wreton, Cx.
[4] *beeþ*] is to wete, Cx.
[5] In this and in other places *correccioun* or *correctioun* suits the MS. equally well.
[6] *meyne*, Cx.

modi annos calculandi, tres apud Hebræos, tres apud Græcos, unicus apud Romanos, et unicus modo[1] apud Christianos. Hebræi namque tripliciter annum sumunt: est enim apud eos annus usualis a[2] Januario incipiens, quo utuntur in contractibus:[3] est et annus legitimus a Martio incipiens, quo utuntur in cæremoniis suis: est et apud eos annus emergens, a Maio incipiens, quando egressi sunt de Ægypto, quo utuntur in chronicis et calculationibus. Græci quoque tripliciter annos notaverunt: primo enim ad gloriam victoriæ suæ annos connotaverunt[4] a captivitate Trojæ; deinde, incepta Olympiade, notaverunt annos[5] juxta numerum Olympiadum[6] earundem: tertio, quando cœperunt super orbem dominari, notaverunt isto modo,[7] anno regni[8] Græcorum tali vel tali, sicut patet[9] in libris[10] Machabæorum. Demum Romani florentes ab urbe condita quotaverunt. Novissime vero Christiani ab Incarnatione Domini annos supputarunt.[11]

Ubi erit advertendum cum ad id[12] loci ventum[13] fuerit, quod calculatio[14] secundum Dionysium Exiguum,[15]

---

[1] *modo*] om. B.
[2] *in*, C.D.
[3] *contractionibus*, A.
[4] So A.; *cotaverunt*, B.; *quotaverunt*, C.E. (which is perhaps the true reading); *notaverunt*, D.
[5] *annos*] om. D.
[6] *Olympiadum*] om. C.D.
[7] *isto modo*] *sic*, C.D.
[8] *regni*] om. D.
[9] *patet*] om. B.
[10] *libro*, C.D.
[11] *supputaverunt*, B.C.D.
[12] *id̄*] illud, C. (in marg.); *cum id loci fuerit*, B.
[13] om. A.B.
[14] *computatio*, C.D.
[15] *Exiguum*] om. C.D.

acountynge of ȝeres. Þre Þe Iewes vseþ, Þre Þe Grees, oon Romaynes, and Cristen men oon. For Þe Iewes in tretys and couenauntes haueþ a ȝere vsual, and byginneþ in Ianuarie.[1] In deuocioun and sacrifice Þei haueþ a ȝer[2] laweful, and byginneþ in Marche. Also Þey haueþ a ȝere of apperynge Þat Þey vseþ in calculynge and in cronicle, and bygynneþ in May, whan Þey passed out of Egipte. Also Þe Grees in Þre manere wise acounteþ hir ȝeres; first, for ioye of Þe victorie Þey accounteþ hir ȝeres from Þe takynge of Troye; afterward Þei accounted here ȝeres by Olympades, Þat beeþ Þe tymes of here iustes and tornementis; but after Þat Þey reignede, Þei accounted here ȝeres by here reignynge, in Þis manere "anno regni Græcorum, quinto vel tertio, tali vel tali," sicut patet in libro Machabæorum. Whan Þe Romaynes wax[3] in hir floures Þey acounted hir ȝeres by here reignynge in Þis manere, from Þe buldynge of citee,[4] "ab "urbe condita." But Cristene men from Þe[5] Incarnacioun of Crist acounteþ her ȝeres. TREVISA.

But whan me comeþ to Þat place, me mote[6] take hede

---

that Þer were viij. maneres to calcle yeres; iij. anendes men of Ebrewe, thre anendes the Grekes, oon at the Romanes, and oon now at Cristen men. Men of Ebrewe take theire yere in thre maneres. The vsualle yere is begynnenge from Ianuary anendes theyme whom thei vse in contractes. Also a lawefulle yere begynnenge from Marche, whom thei vse in cerimonyes. Also there is a yere emergente as anendes theyme begynnenge from May when thei wente from Egipte, whom thei vse in cronicles and calculaciones. The Grekes note theire yeres in thre maneres:—In the firste they cotede yeres at the glory of their victory from the captiuite of Troye. After that Þe Olimpias begunne, thei assignede the nowmbre of Þeire yeres after the nowmbre of theyme. In the thrydde maner, when thei began to haue dominacion, thei notede their yeres in thys maner:—In suche a yere in the reigne of men of Grewe, or in suche a yere, as hit is expressede in the bookes of Machabes. At the laste Þe Romanes floryschenge ascribede theire yeres from the begynnenge of theire cite y-made. But nowe laste Cristen men suppute theire yeres from the Incarnacion of Criste. Wherefore hit is to be aduertisede that the calculation of MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Ianuere, a.*

[2] *aȝer*, MS., and similarly elsewhere the article and noun are sometimes written *conjunctim.*

[3] *waxed*, Cx.

[4] *Þe citee, a.*

[5] *Þe*] om. *a.*

[6] *me mote*] men muste, Cx.

quem communiter sequitur Gallia et Anglia minus habet quam computatio[1] Hieronymi secundum evangelicam veritatem numero XXII.[2] annorum. Refert enim Wilhelmus Malmesburiensis, lib. IV. de Pontificibus, quod Marianus Scotus et monachus,[3] apud Mogenciam,[4] urbem Germaniæ, inclusus circa annum gratiæ[5] MLX.,[6] sub longo solitudinis suæ otio chronographos sit scrutatus, dissonantiamque cyclorum Dionysii Exigui contra evangelicam veritatem vel solus vel primus animadvertit. Nam ab initio sæculi annos singulos recensens XXII. annos,[7] qui cyclis prædictis deerant, superaddidit, magnam et diffusam chronicam commentatus. Cujus quidem[8] librum Robertus[9] Herefordensis[10] episcopus splendide postmodum defloravit. Inde est quod vulgares chronicæ, quæ Dionysium prædictum[11] sequuntur, titubant tota die. Nam, teste Hieronymo in transferendo chronicam Eusebii, decem anni deficiunt inter passionem Domini et tempora[12] Vespasiani, et[13] iterum[14] quatuordecim anni deficiunt circa tempora Decii,[15] sicut inferius patebit sub sexta seculi ætate. Hunc autem errorem plurimum adauget,[16] quod

---

[1] *habet a computatione*, C.D.
[2] *xxv.*, B.
[3] *Scotus et*] wanting in C.D.
[4] *Magontiam*, D.; *Mogonciam*, E.
[5] *Domini*, C.D.
[6] 1068, C.
[7] *annos*] annis, B.
[8] *quidam*, A.
[9] *i.e.* Robert Lorrayne, who died in 1095.
[10] *Herfordensis*, B.
[11] *prædictum*] om. B.D.
[12] *tempora*] tempus, B.
[13] *et*] om. C.
[14] *iterum*] item, C.D.
[15] B. adds *Cæsaris*.
[16] *adauget*] auget, C.D.

TREVISA.

þat þe calculynge of Denys, þat Engelond and Fraunce folweþ, haþ lasse by xxii. ȝere þan þe calculynge of Ierom, þat folweþ þe gospel. William Malmesbury, libro quarto de Pontificibus,[1] seiþ þat Marianus, Scotus and monok,[2] i-prisoned in Maguncia, a towne of Almayne, aboute þe ȝere of grace a þowsand and þre score and sixtene, loked besiliche in bookes and acounted[3] þat Dionysius Exiguus acordeþ nouȝt with þe Gospel in acountynge of ȝeres. For þis Scot, Marianus, acounted all þe ȝeres from þe bygynnynge of þe worlde, and putte hit[4] to xxii. ȝere, þat lakkede of Dionysius acountes, and wroot a grete cronicle and huge;[5] þe whiche book Robert Bisshop of Herforde deflorede, and þerfore[6] hit is þat þe comyn cronicles þat folweþ[7] Denys failleþ al day. For[8] Ierom, in transferendo chronicam Eusebii[9] seiþ þat ten ȝeres[10] lakkeþ be tweyne Cristes passioun and Vespasianus tyme. And also xij.[11] lakkeþ aboute Decius Cesar his[12] tyme as it is i-schewed in þe sixte age. Þis errour byfalleþ,

---

[1] *Pontificis*, MS. and *a*.
[2] *and monok*] and the monke, Cx.
[3] *acountede and fonde*, *a*.
[4] *hit*] wanting in Cx. and *a*.
[5] *an huge*, Cx.
[6] *that for*, Cx.
[7] *foloweden*, Cx.
[8] So Cx.; *From*, MS.
[9] *in translatyng the cronyke of Eusebii*, Cx.
[10] *that yeres*, Cx.
[11] *xij. ȝeres*, *a*.
[12] *Cezars*, Cx.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Dionysius, whom Englonde and Fraunce doe folowe, hathe lesse then the computacion of Seynte Ierom by the nowmbre of xx^{ti}ij. yere. Also William Malmesburye dothe reherse in his booke of byschoppes the iiij^{the} that Marianus a Scotte and a monke, included at a cyte callede Mangotia in Allemeyne, abowte the yere of grace m^{l}lxxvj., serchede cronicles thro grete study and labour, aduertenge firste or sole the dissonaunce of the cicles after the calculation of litelle Dionise ageyn the trawthe of the Gospelle, whiche accomptenge euery yere from the begynnenge of the worlde addede to the foreseide cicles xx^{ti}ij. yere, makenge a harde and a diffusede cronicle, whose booke Roberte Byschoppe of Herefforde onornede splendidiously; wherefore commune cronicles folowenge Dionysius fayle and stumble alle day, Seynte Ierom wyttenes in the translacion of the cronicle of Eusebius, where x. yeres wonte betwene the passion of Criste and tyme of Vaspasian, and also xiiij. wonte abowte the tymes of Decius themperoure, as hit schalle be schewede under the vj^{the} age of the worlde. That erroure is moche encreased in so moche, that dayes

f. 21 a.

frequenter prætermittuntur dies et menses quibus super integros annos reges regnaverunt. Negliguntur etiam intervalla temporum inter fines regnantium et primordia subsequentium. Quapropter unumquodque, qualiter[1] suo contigerit anno, notabo pro viribus in hoc scripto. Ita sane quod columnarum margines juxta gestorum capita aliquando cum duplici nonnunquam cum triplici annorum serie purpurabo. Ab Abraham etenim usque ad urbem conditam, annus ætatis sæculi et ducis conferetur. Ab urbe vero[2] usque ad Christum, annus ætatis et urbis[3] inseretur. A Christo autem[4] in antea, annus gratiæ et principis pariter[5] conscribetur.[6]

Cap. V.

De orbis dimensione.[7]

Priscianus in Cosmographia. Ex senatus consulto censuit[8] Julius Cæsar, dum consulatus sui fasces ageret, omnem orbem per prudentes viros dimetiri.[9] Igitur

---

[1] *qualiter unumquodque*, B.E.

[2] *vero*] *Romana condita*, added in C.D.

[3] *ætatis urbis et ducis*, B.C.D.

[4] *autem*] vero, D.

[5] *pariter*] om. C.

[6] After this follows in C. a paragraph of nineteen lines, which is wholly out of place here, beginning :—"Servitia quinque portuum " domino regi per mare debita. " Villa de Hastyngge 3 naves. " Aqua de Peuenesse 1 navem." Curiously enough, a space of 16 lines is left blank in D.

[7] Title wanting in A.; added from B.E.; C. and D. begin thus :—*De orbis divisione.* Julius Cæsar divinis humanisque rebus singulariter instructus cum consulatus, etc.

[8] *censuit*] fecit, C.

[9] *admetiri*, D.; *demetiri*, B.

for dayes and monthes were vnrekened þat kynges reignede ouer ful ȝeres. Also dayes and monþes þat voydede bytw[e]ne tweie kynges were forgendred.[1] Wherfore in þis book I schal marke as I may how and in what[2] ȝeres such defautes fille; so þat I schal hiȝte þe margyns by þe hedes of the stories som wiþ double and som wiþ treble rewes ȝeres.[3] From Abraham to þe citee i-bulde, I sette to gidres þe ȝere of þe age of þe worlde and of þe ledere; from þe cite i-bulde to Crist, I sette to gidre þe ȝere of[4] þe citee and of þe ledere; and from Crist forwarde, I write to gidre þe ȝere of grace and of þe prince þat regneþ.[5] TREVISA.

De orbis dimensione. Priscianus in cosmographia. Capitulum quintum.

IVLIUS CESAR, by counsaile of þe senatoures and elder men[6] of Rome, lokede[7] and serchede stories[8] and bookes of his ȝeres of doynge and dedes, [and][9] ordeyned wyse men and monethes be ouerskippede in whom hit is seyde kynges haue reignede by holle yeres; and also other spaces of tymes be neglecte betwene or amonge the endes off men reignenge and begynnenges of men folowenge. Wherefore y schalle ascribe how euery thynge hathe bene in the yere þer of after my powere in this presente wrytenge. In so moche that y schalle purpulle the mariantes nye the hedes of þe gestes with a dowble ordre of yeres. From Abraham vn to the cite off Rome y-made, the yere of the age of the worlde and of the duke and gouernoure schalle be wryten. From the cite y-made to Criste, the yere of the age of the cite and of the transmigracion schalle be wryten. From Criste, the yere of grace and of the prynce reignenge that tyme schalle be wryten to gedre. MS. HARL. 2261.

Priscian in his Cosmographie of the Dimension of the Worlde. Capitulum quintum.

Iulius Cesar ordeneide by the cownselle of the senate sette in pomposite alle the worlde to be dimencionate by men discrete and prudente. Wherefore messangers were sendo

[1] *forgoten*, Cx.
[2] *and what*, Cx. *a.*
[3] *treble ȝeres*, *a.*
[4] *þe ȝere of the age of*, *a.*
[5] *regned*, Cx.
[6] *aldermen*, Cx.
[7] *sought*, Cx.
[8] *historyes*, Cx.
[9] Added from Cx.

à consulatu Julii usque ad consulatum Saturnini per triginta duos annos missi sunt legati[1] dimensores, viri docti, arte gnomonica periti, per omnem terram ad præsides, duces, et judices provinciarum; ut describerent et mensurarent[2] terras, aquas, nemora, plana, concava, montes, colles atque[3] itinerarium maritimum, quæ etiam[4] loca navigaturi tangere deberent.[5] Et si forte aliquod prodigium in his[6] locis occurreret, illud senatui reipublicæ scripto nunciarent. *Ranulphus.* Hoc attestatur Hieronymus in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo secundo, ubi dicit quod Pilatus præses Judææ nunciavit Tiberio Cæsari de mirabilibus quæ fecit Jesus in terra Judææ, et Tiberius nunciavit senatui, verum quia talia non fuerant senatui prius nunciata,[7] illa respuerunt.[8] *Priscianus.* Et sic repertum est per tales præsidum denunciationes[9] quod omnis orbis habet famosa maria triginta, insulas septuaginta duas, montes famosos quadraginta,

---

[1] *legati sunt*, B.
[2] *et mensurarent*] om. B.
[3] *atque*] om. D.
[4] *etiam*] om. A.
[5] *deberent*] debuerunt, C.D.
[6] *his*] om. B.
[7] *senatui prænunciata*, B.
[8] *Hoc . . . respuerunt*] om. A. C. D.; added from B.E. See also the versions.
[9] *per . . . denunciationes*] om. A. B.C.D.; added from E.

and redy to mete and discreue all þe worlde aboute. Þan from Iulius his tyme to Saturnus tyme, two and þritty ȝere, messangeres, wise men and wel i-tauȝt[1] in þe practike of gemetrie,[2] konnynge and profitable to mete[3] and to gesse hiȝenesse and lowenesse, lengþe and brede and depnesse also, were rediliche i-sent into[4] euery londe aboute to iuges and[5] to cheueteynes,[6] to lederes[7] of londes, for þey schulde mete[8] and discreue londe and water, woodes and landes, valeies and pleynes, downes and hulles,[9] and þe see stronde and euery place where eny man myȝt goo oþer[10] ride oþer[10] schip seily; and write and certifie þe senatoures where and what wondres were i-founde. Ꝑ. Þis witnessith Hieronymus, in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo secundo. Þere, he seith, þat Pilatus, iuge of Iewerye,[11] certefied Tiberius Cesar of meruayles and wondres þat Criste wrouȝte in þe Iewerie, and Tiberius certefied þe senatoures, but þe[12] senatoures trowed[13] nouȝt, for þey had nouȝt herd [afore][14] of so wonder werkes. *Priscianus.* And so, by warnynge and certefienge of cheueteynes[15] of londes, it was i-founde and i-knowe þat al þe worlde aboute haþ name kowthe[16] sees[17] þritty, ylondes þre score and twelue, famos

TREVISA.

---

from the consulate of Iulius Cesar vn to the consulate of Saturnius, by xxxij^{ti} yere, þro alle the worlde, to presidentes, dukes, and iuges of prouinces, that thei scholde describe and measure londes, waters, woodes, playnes, concauites, hilles, and the itinerary of the see to whiche places thei scholde sayle, and towche hyt if they myȝhte fynde eny meruellous thynge there that myȝhte be schewede to the senate. Ꝑ. Seynte Ierom testifiethe that in the translacion of þe cronicle of Eusebius, libro ij°, capitulo secundo, where he saythe that Pilatus presidente of the Iewery schewede to Tiberius themperour of the meruayles whom Iesus did amonge the Iewes. And Tiberius schewede theyme to the senate, whiche despisede theyme in that thei were not schewede a fore to the senate. *Priscian.* And soe hit is founde by the denunciaciones that alle the worlde hathe xxx^{ti} famose sees, lxxij^{ti} yles, xl^{ti} famose hilles, lxx^{ti} and

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 21 b.

---

[1] *tauȝht*, *a*. (not Cx.)
[2] So MS. and *a*; *geometrye*, Cx.
[3] *mesure*, Cx.
[4] *redyly sente to*, Cx.
[5] *a* omits *and*.
[6] *capytayns*, Cx.
[7] *gouernours*, Cx.
[8] *mesure*, Cx.
[9] *montaynes and downes*, Cx.
[10] *or*, Cx.
[11] *þe Iewery*, *a*.
[12] *a* omits *þe*.
[13] *byleued*, Cx.
[14] Added from Cx.; not in *a*.
[15] *capytayns*, Cx.
[16] *couth*, *a*.
[17] *hath sees of dyuerse names*, Cx.

provincias septuaginta octo,[1] urbes insignes trecentas septuaginta, flumina quinquaginta septem, gentes centum viginti quinque. Cujus orbis ambitus est trecenties[2] quindecies centena millia passuum. Longitudo vero terræ habitabilis ab ortu[3] usque ad occasum, id est, ab India usque ad columnas Herculis in Gaditano freto habet[4] octies quinquies centena septuaginta octo milliaria. Cujus quidem longitudinis dimensio compendiosior est per mare quam per terras. Latitudo autem terræ ab[5] australi littore oceani Æthiopici usque ad ostium Tanai fluminis in septentrione pene dimidio minor est quam prædicta longitudo, et continet quinquagies[6] quatuor centena sexaginta duo milliaria. Repertum est etiam quod profundissimus locus maris[7] Mediterranei continet spatium quindecim stadiorum in perpendiculo.[8] *Ranulphus.* Secundum Ptolomæum circulus continet quantitatem diametri ter, et septimam partem tertiæ partis; unde proportio circuli ad diametrum est sicut proportio XXII. ad VII. Ex quo colligitur quod rotunditas circuli terræ continet viginti millia et quadraginta milliaria; quæ quidem summa, cum divisa fuerit per tria et septimam partem unius tertii, quantitas diametri terræ erit, sex millia quingenta fere

---

[1] *septuaginta octo*] 68, C.D.

[2] So E.; *trecentas*, B.

[3] *ab ortu . . .*] est ab ortu et habet, C.

[4] *et habet*, C.D.

[5] *ab*] est ab, C., which places a full stop after *septentrione*. So also D., punctuation excepted.

[6] *quinquagies*] quinquagesies, C.D.

[7] *profundissimum mare*, C.D.

[8] *perpendiculo*] The remainder of the chapter (Secundum . . . terræ) is omitted in A.B.C.D.; added from E.

hullys [1] fourty, prouinces þre skore and ey3tene, noble citees þre hundred þre skore and ten, grete ryueres seuene and fifty, dyuers naciouns sixe skore and fyue.[2] Þe roundenesse of þe worlde aboute is þre hundred sipes and fiftene sipes an hondred þowsand paas. Þe lengþe of þe erþe þat men woneþ[3] ynne from þe est to þe west, þat is from Ynde to Hercules is[4] pilers in þe see Gaditan is ey3ti sipes and fyue sipes an hundred þre score and ey3tene mile. But þe wey from oon[5] ende to þat oþer is wel[6] lasse by water þan by londe. Þe brede of þe erþe from þe souþe to þe north, þat is from þe clyue[7] of occean in Ethiopia, þe londe of Blomen[8] to þe mouþe of þe ryuer Thany wel nyh haluendel lasse þan þe lengþe, and conteyneþ foure and fifty hundred and two and sixty myle. Also it was i-founde þat þe deppest place of þe see of myddel erþe conteyneþ doun ri3t fiftene furlonge depe. [R.][9] Tholomeus seiþ þat þe roundenesse of a cercle[10] aboute conteyneþ þre[11] so moche as þe brede [and the seuendele of the brede],[12] so þat þe proporcioun of þe roundenesse aboute of a cercle is[13] to þe brede as is þe proporcioun of two and twenty to seuene. So it is acounted þat þe roundenesse of þe erþe aboute conteyneþ twenty þowsand and fourty myle. 3if we deleþ[14] þe[15] somme on þre and þe seuenþe parte of þe þridde, þe þiknesse of þe erþe þorw oute is almest sexe þousand and fyue[16] hondred

Trevisa.

viij. prouinces, nowble cites ccclxx., floodes l^ti^vij. The compasse of whiche worlde is iij^c^. tymes xv. tymes a c.m^l^ of passes. The longitude of the erthe habitable from the este to the weste, that is from Ynde to the Pillers of Hercules in the see Gaditan, hathe viij^the^ tymes v. tymes a clxx^ti^ myles and viij^the^. The dimension of the longitude of whom is more compendious by the see then by the londe. The latitude of the erthe from the este syde of the occean of Ethioppe vn to the durre or begynnenge of a floode callede Thanay in the northe is lesse in the halfe then the longitude a foreseyde, and hit conteynethe l^ti^ tymes iiij^c^. lxij. myles. Also hit is founde that the depeste

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *montaynes*, Cx.
[2] *an c. and fyfe and twenty*, Cx. (Similar variations of expressing numbers occur elsewhere often.)
[3] *dwelle*, Cx.
[4] So also *a*; *pylers of H.*, Cx.
[5] *that oon*, Cx.
[6] *moche*, Cx.
[7] *clyf*, Cx.
[8] *blak men*, Cx.
[9] Added from *a*.
[10] *acercle*, MS., and similarly in many other places.
[11] *thryes*, Cx.
[12] Added from *a* and Cx. (There is some variation in expressing the words following.)
[13] *a*, MS., but cancelled by a dot.
[14] So also *a*; *departe*, Cx.
[15] þat, *a*.
[16] *and fyue*] foure, *a*.

milliaria, quia novem ad minus desunt de hoc numero. Et sic erunt sex millia quadringenta nonaginta unum. Proinde si hoc diametrum dimidiaveris, erunt a centro terræ usque ad superficiem ejus tria millia ducenta quadraginta quinque milliaria et quædam minuta. Ex quo liquet quot sunt milliaria a superficie terræ usque ad infernum, secundum quod infernus dicitur esse in medio terræ.

Cap. VI.

De orbis divisione.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro xvi. *cap.* viii. Nota[1] quod orbis terrarum universus oceano cinctus in tres dividitur partes, Asiam, Europam et[2] Africam. Quem si in tres partes[3] dividas, Asia secundum numerum erit tertia, secundum magnitudinem erit dimidia; quæ tendens a meridie per orientem usque ad septentrionem oceano undique clauditur,[4] sed ab occidente mari magno finitur. *Beda, de Naturis rerum.*[5] Suntque[6] termini ejus ostium Nili fluminis in austro et

---

[1] C. begins thus: — [O]rbem igitur si in tres partes dividas, Asia secundum numerum, &c. So also D., omitting *igitur*.

[2] *et*] om. B.

[3] *partes*] om. B.

[4] *clauditur*] concluditur, C.D.

[5] *rerum*] wanting in A.B.; added from E. The whole extract from Beda wanting in C.D.

[6] *que*] So E.; *quia*, A.

myle,[1] for nyne myle lakkeþ at þe leste of þat somme. So þere schal be sexe þowsand foure[2] hondred four[3] score and elleuene myle. Þan half þe þiknesse of þe erþe inward and doun riȝt is þre þowsand two hundred and fyue and fourty myle and somwhat ouer, as it were half a myle. So ȝif helle is in[4] myddel of þe erþe doun riȝt, me myȝte knowe how meny myle is[5] to helle. TREVISA.

De orbis divisione. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto-decimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.

FOR þe delynge[6] of þe worlde take hede þat þe grete see of occean byclippeþ al þe erþe aboute, and þe erþe is i-deled[7] in þre[8] grete parties. Asia is þat oon,[9] Europa þat oþer, and Affrica þe þridde. But þese[10] þre parties beeþ[11] not alle euene and yliche moche ;[12] for Asia, oon of þe þre, conteyneþ half þe erþe, and strecche þ from þe south by þe est anon to þe[13] north, and is i-closed aboute with þe see of occean ; but he[14] endeþ westwarde at þe grete see. *Beda, de Naturis.*[15] His endes beeþ þe mouth of þe ryuer

Of the diuision of the worlde. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.

ALSO hit is to be attendede that alle the worlde cincte to the occean is diuided in to iij. partes, Asie, Europe, and Affryke ; whiche diuidede in to thre partes, Asia after nowmbre schalle be the thrydde part, and after magnitude the halfe, whiche goenge from the meridien or sowthe by the este vn to the northe, is compassede on euery syde with the occean, and in the weste hit is finischede with the grete see. *Beda, de Naturis.* The termes of whom be the begynnenge and durre of a floode callede Nilus in the sowthe, descendenge by the northe occean and water MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *fyve honderd four score and enleuen myle,* Cx. (also he omits all that follows, till *Thenne half, &c.*)
[2] *fyue,* Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *nyne,* MS.
[4] *in þe, a.*
[5] *it is,* Cx.
[6] *departing,* Cx.
[7] *departed,* Cx.
[8] *aþre yn þre, a.*
[9] *Asia that is oon part,* Cx.
[10] *the,* Cx.
[11] *ben,* Cx., and similarly elsewhere.
[12] *euen lyke moche,* Cx.
[13] *eeste vnto,* Cx.
[14] *it,* Cx.
[15] *nature,* MS.

amnis Tanais in aquilone. *Isidorus, libro quarto-decimo, capitulo quarto.* Altera pars, Europa, a fluvio Tanai descendens per septentrionalem oceanum in fines Hispaniæ porrecta ab oriente et meridie, mari magno jungitur, et in Gades insula finitur. *Item, Isidorus, capitulo quinto.* Tertia pars, Africa, protenditur ab occidente in meridiem usque in finem Ægypti. Et hæ[1] duæ partes, Africa et Europa, inter se marino brachio distinguuntur. *Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* Cujus marini brachii[2] fauces originales[3] quindecim millia passuum habent in longitudine, et quinque millia passuum in latitudine,[4] a quibus faucibus mare mediterraneum exoriens per varia brachia introrsus versus terram distenditur.

Cap. VII.

De partium orbis descriptione.[5]

Plinius, libro sexto. Tenendum[6] est quod Asia sit[7] quantitate maxima,[8] Europa[9] minor, sed par est[10] in populorum numerosa generositate; Africa vero et situ

---

[1] *Ægypti. Et hæ*] Ægypti protenditur. Hæ, &c., C.D.

[2] *marini brachii*] om. D.; interlin. in C.

[3] *originales*] om. C.

[4] B. omits *et quinque ... latitudine.* C. reads thus after *latitudine*:—"*Idem.* Mare mediterraneum sur-"gens per varia brachia distendi-"tur." D. has *indeque* for *idem.*

[5] The title added from E.

[6] C. and D. begin thus:—"Asia "quantitate maxima, Europa minor, "&c."

[7] *sit*] partium terræ, add. B.

[8] *magna*, E.

[9] *Europa*] vero, add. B.

[10] *est*] om. C.D.

Nilus in þe souþ, and of þe ryuer Thanays in þe norþe. [That other parte, Europa, stretcheth dounward fro the riuer Thanays by the northe][1] occean to þe costes of Spayne, and ioyneþ to þe grete see by este and by south, and endeþ in þe Ilond Gades. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, capitulo quarto.* Affrica, þe þridde parte, strecchеþ from the west to þe southe, anon to[2] þé coste of Egipte, and þese tweie parties, Affrica and Europa, beþ departed atweyne[3] by þe[4] arme of þe see. *Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* Þe mouthes of þe[5] arme conteyneþ fiftene þowsand paas in lengþe, and fyue þowsand paas in brede; and of þilke mouþes, þe[6] see of myddel erþe bygynneþ, and by dyuers armes spredeþ and wexeþ inward the londes. TREVISA.

De partium orbis descriptione. Plinius, libro sexto; Priscianus in Cosmographia. Capitulum septimum.

ASIA is most in quantite, Europa is lasse, and pere[7] in noumbre of peple; bot Africa is lest of alle þe þre of Thanais in the northe. *Isidorus, libro* 14, *capitulo quarto.* Europa, that other parte, from the floode callede Thanay, descendenge from the northe ocean extendede from the este and meridien in to the costes of Speyne is ioynede to the grete see and finischede in an yle callede Gades. *Isidorus, capitulo quinto.* The thridde parte, which is Affrica, is protendede from the weste in to the meridien in to the coste of Egipte. And these partes, Europe and Affrike, be dividede a sundre thro an arme of the see. *Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* The chekes and begynnenges of those armes of the see haue in longitude xv. m[l] of passes, and v. m[l] passes in latitude, from whom the see mediterranye begynnenge by diuerse armes is distendede towarde londes. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 22 a.

Of the Descripcion of Partes of the Worlde. Plinius, libro sexto. Capitulum septimum.

HIT is to be holden that Asia is moste in quantite, Europa lesse in quantite, but egalle in the numerous generosite of peple. Affrike is leste in quantite of partes in

[1] The words within brackets are added from Cx. and α, which latter reads *the oþer.*
[2] *southe vnto,* Cx.
[3] *a sounder,* Cx.
[4] *an,* Cx.
[5] *that,* Cx. and α.
[6] *of þe,* MS. α; txt, Cx.
[7] *lyke,* Cx.

et populis[1] partium est minima. *Priscianus, in Cosmographia.* Idcirco[2] qui res humanas evidentius agnoverunt duas tantum orbis partes accipiendas censuerunt,[3] scilicet Asiam solummodo[4] et Europam; Africam vero censuerunt Europæ finibus deputandam, quia et[5] spatio latitudinis eget et[6] malo climati subjacet, laborat quoque corrupto aere, feris, et venenis. Idcirco[2] qui eam tertiam orbis partem posuerunt,[7] non spatiorum mensuras sed divisionum rationes secuti sunt, et tanquam situ pessimo languidam partem ab optimis resecarunt. Itaque[8] Africa[9] natura sui[10] minus habet spatii, et inclementia cœli plus habet deserti. Et cum Africa sit modica, plus tamen[11] terræ in ea solis ardore quam in Europa frigoris rigore manet inhabitata. Cuncta namque animantia sive germinantia tolerabilius ad summum frigoris quam ad summum ardoris accedunt. *Item, Plinius, libro sexto.* Inde est quod Europa corpore majores, viribus fortiores, animo audaciores,

---

[1] *et situ et populis*] at the end of the sentence in C.D., which also omit *est.*

[2] *Idcirco*] ideo, C.D. (twice.)

[3] *censuerunt*] suaserunt, C.D.

[4] *solummodo*] tantummodo, C.D.

[5] *quia et*] et quia, D.

[6] *et*] om. D.

[7] *qui eam orbis terræ posuerunt tertiam partem*, B.

[8] *Itaque*] Ita, B.

[9] *Africa*] om. D.; added in later hand in C.

[10] *sui*] sua, A.

[11] *tamen*] om. B.

parties bope in place and in noumbre of peple; and perfore somme men, þat knowe[1] men and londes, acountede but tweie parties of þe erþe onliche, Asia and Europa; and þey acountede þat Affrica longeþ to Europa, for Affrica is narwe in brede; and yuel doers, corrupte ayre, wylde bestes and venemous woneþ[2] þerynne. Þerfore þey þat acounteþ Affrica þe þridde part acounteþ not by space and mesure of lengþe and brede, bot by dyuerse disposiciouns better and worse, and departeþ Affrica from Europa and Asia, as a sore membre þat is nouȝt from membres þat beeþ hole and sounde and in good poynt at þe beste. Also Affrica in his kynde haþ lasse space, and for þe sturnesse of heuene he haþ þe more wildernes. [And though Affryca be lytil, it hath more wyldernes][3] and waste londe, for grete brennynge and[4] hete of þe sonne, þan Europa, for all þe chil and greet colde þat ofte[5] is þerynne. For why all þat lyueþ and groweþ may bettre endure wiþ colde þan wiþ hete; bote mesure rule[6] bope. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Þerfore it is þat Europa norischeþ and bryngeth forþ men huger and gretter of body, myȝtier of strengþe, hardier and bolder of herte, and fairer[7] site and in peple. *Priscianus, in his Cosmographye.* Therefore men that hade euidente knowlege perceyvede ij. partes of the worlde to be taken, that is to say, Asia and Europa, deputenge or ordeynenge the partes of Affrike to be added to the costes off Europa. For Affrike hathe nede to the space of latitude, subiecte to an ylle coste and laborenge with a corrupte aier, with wilde bestes, and venom. Þerfore men puttenge hit the thrydde parte of the worlde folowede not the measures of spaces but reasones of diuision, departenge hit as a wailenge parte in the wurste site and ordre from the beste places. Also Affrike of his nature hathe leste space and moste of deserte in the clemency of heuyn. And with owte dowte thauȝhe Affrike be leste in quantite, ȝitte þer is moore grownde inhabitable in hyt thro the heete of the sonne then is in Europe thro rigornesse of colde. Truly alle thynges lyffenge or groenge accede moore tollerably to the hieste colde then to the hieste heete. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Þerfore the cause is that men in Europe be more grete in body, more myȝhty in strenghte, moore bolde in herte, more feire in beaute, then

TREVISA.

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *knewe*, α.
[2] *dwellen*, Cx.
[3] The words in brackets added from Cx. and α, which latter has *he* for *it*.
[4] *of*, Cx.
[5] Omitted in Cx.
[6] *ruleth*, Cx. (not α.)
[7] So Cx.; *faire*, MS.

specie pulchriores efficit populos quam Africa.[1] Nam radius solaris per continuam permanentiam super Afros exhauriendo[2] eorum humores efficit corpore breviores, cute nigriores, crine crispiores, et per evaporationem spirituum facit animo defectiores.[3] E contra est[4] de septentrionalibus populis, in[5] quibus frigore exterius[6] poros oppilante pinguescunt humores; et inde fiunt homines corpulentiores, candidiores, et[7] interius calidiores, ac per hoc[8] audaciores.

Cap. VIII.

De mari magno sive Mediterraneo.[9]

Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Est itaque[10] maris magni origo in[11] occidente apud Herculis columnas, ubi oceanus Atlanticus irrumpens[12] in terras facit Gaditanum fretum; (cujus longitudo in quindecim millia passuum[13] extenditur; latitudo vero in quinque millia expanditur;)[14] ad sui dexteram habens Africam,[15] ad lævam vero[16] Europam; indeque in maria interna diffunditur,[17] cujus termini sunt amnis[18] Tanais ad boream

---

[1] *Africa*] aut Asia, add. C.D.
[2] *exhauriendo* after *humores* in C.D.
[3] *animo defectiores*] sicciores, C.
[4] *est*] om. C.
[5] *de septentrionibus in*, C.; *de septentrionalibus in*, D.
[6] *exterius* after *poros* in C.D.
[7] *et*] om. C.D.
[8] *ac per hoc*] et per consequens, C.D.
[9] Title added from E.
[10] *Est itaque*] om. C.D.; *ita*, B.
[11] *in*] est in, C.D.
[12] *irrumpens*] So, C.D.E.; *erumpens*, A.B.
[13] *millia passuum*] milliaria, C.D.
[14] *latitudo ... expanditur*] om. C.D.
[15] *Africam habens*, C.D.
[16] *vero*] om. B.
[17] *infunditur*, D., and so C. originally, it would seem.
[18] *amnis*] amnes, C.D.

of schap, þan Affrica. For þe son beme al wey abideþ vppon þe men of Affrica, and draweþ oute þe humours, and makeþ hem schort of body,[1] blak of skyn, crips of heer, and by drawing oute of spirites makeþ hem coward of herte. Þe contrarie is of norþeren[2] men, in þe whiche[3] colde wiþ oute stoppeþ smale holes and poorus, and holdeþ the hete wiþ ynne; and so makeþ hem fatter, gretter, and whitter and hatter[4] with inne, and so hardier and boldere of herte. TREVISA.

De mari magno medio, sive Mediterraneo. Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.

THANNE þe grete see of myddel erþe bygynneþ in þe west at Hercules pilers; þere þe see of occean of Athlant brekeþ out, and makeþ the see Gaditan. Þe lengþe of þat see is fiftene þowsand paas, and þe brede fyue þowsand paas, and haþ in þe riȝt side Affrica, and in þe lefte side Europa; and þerof springeþ þe ynnere sees. Þe endes þerof is þe water Thany an þe norþ side, and Nilus in

in Affrike. For the beame of the sonne beenge continually by contynualle permanence on men of Affrike consumenge theire humores, causethe theyme to be more schorte of body, more blacke of skynne, more crispedde in heire, also more feynte in herte by the euaporacion of spirites: hit is in contrary wyse of men beenge in þe northe partes; for colde causenge opilacion and stoppenge the poores exterially causethe humores to be fatte, that makethe men more of body, moore whyte, and moore hoote interially, and by that moore bolde. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the grete see or Mediterranye. Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.

THE begynnenge of the grete see is in the weste, at the pyllers of Hercules, where the occean Atlantyke brekenge vp to londes makethe the see Gaditan. The longitude of whom is protendede in to xv. m^l^ of passes. The latitude of hit is extente in to v. m^l^ passes, hauenge at the ryȝhte parte of hit Affrike, at the lyfte parte Europe: after that hit is diffusede in to sees internalle. The termes of whom be the water of Thanays at the northe, f. 22 b.

[1] *bodyes*, Cx.
[2] *norþrene, a.*
[3] Omitted in Cx. (typ. error.)
[4] *and hatter*] omitted in Cx.

et Nilus ad austrum.[1] *Isidorus, libro nono, cap.* vi.[2] Mare magnum fluens ex oceano vergit in meridiem, deinde in aquilonem,[3] cujus primus sinus Balearis funditur in Hispanias. Deinde sinus[4] Gallicus alluit[5] provinciam Narbonensem, mox Ligusticus urbem Januam. Post hoc[6] Tyrrhenus sive Ionius Italiam attingit; inde[7] Siculus, qui a Sicilia ad Cretam vadit; deinde Creticus, qui in Pamphyliam et Ægyptum tendit; inde Hellespontus, qui versus septentrionem magnis anfractibus retortus; sed juxta Græciam apud Bosporum[8] in angustiam septem stadiorum restringitur, ubi rex Xerxes pontem fecit de navibus, ut Græciam invaderet.[9] *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.* Ibi tam strictum est mare inter orbes Asiæ et Europæ, ut alitum[10] cantus et[11] canum latratus, nisi ventus impediat,[12] invicem audiantur. *Giraldus, distinct. prima, capitulo decimo.*[13] Mare illud strictum dicitur brachium Sancti Georgii quod urbem Constantinopolim præterfluit[14] ac

---

[1] *austrum*] lævam, C.D.

[2] Sic E.; lib. xiv., A.B.C. The true reference is to Isid. *Orig.* lib. xiii. c. 16.

[3] *in aquilonem*] ad septentrionem, C.D.

[4] *sinus*] om. D.; added in later hand in C.

[5] *alluit*] ambit, B.

[6] *hoc*] hæc, D.

[7] *inde*] deinde, B.

[8] *Bosporum*] Bosforum, A. &c., intending the incorrect form *Bosphorum*.

[9] *invaderet*] ingrederetur, C.D.

[10] *alitum*] hominum, E.

[11] *et*] ad, B.

[12] *nisi ventus impediat* after *audiantur* in C.D.

[13] *quarto*, B.C.D. The passage does not occur in the excerpts from either chapter, edited by Mr. Brewer. See Girald. *De instr. Princ.* pp. 186, 194. (Lond. 1846.) Unfortunately, the first book or *distinction* is not printed entire.

[14] *præterfluit*] præterluit, E.; prævaluit, B.

þe souþ side. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto.* þe grete see flowynge oute of occean[1] turneþ into þe souþ, and þan into þe north. Balearis, þe firste greet hauen and passage of þat see,[2] schedeþ into Spayne. þan þe oþer mouth Gallicus passeþ by þe prouince of Narbon; þan Ligustius by Ianua, a citee; þan Tyrrhenus to Ytaly areche þ;[3] þan þe hauen of Sicilia passeþ to Creta; þan þe passage of Creta strecche þ in to Pamphylia and Egipte. þere han þe streen[4] of þe grete hauene and mouþe Hellespontus breke þ oute abrode in greet wawes and stremes, and torne þ norþwarde. But bisides Grees at Bo[s]forum, he[5] wexeþ narwe and strai3te as þe space of seuen forlonge;[6] and þere Xerxes[7] þe kyng made ouer a brigge[8] of schippes for to passe in to Grees and werre þere ynne. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.* þere þe see is so narwe bytwene Europa and Asia, þat me[9] may hire in eyþer side oute of oþer houndes berke, and foules synge, but[10] weder and wynde lette. *Giraldus, distinct. prima, capitulo decimo.* þat narwe see[11] is i-cleped[12] Seint Georges Arme, and strecche þ forþ by Constantinopolim, and Nilus at the sowthe.

TREVISA.

Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. The grete see flowenge from the occean turnethe in to the sowthe, after that in to the northe, the fyrste end of whom is in to Speyne; after that hit floethe in to the prouince Narbonense; after that the bosom of þe water Ligusticus watrethe the cite callede Ianua; after that the see Tyren atteynethe to Ytaly. Then Siculus goethe from Sicille to Crete. Then the water callede Creticus in to Pamphyliam and to Egipte. Then the see Elesponte retorte with grete passage turnethe to the northe, but abowte Grece, nye a place namede Bosforus, hit is restreynede in to the streytenesse of vij. forlonges where kynge Xerxes[7] made a brigge off schippes that he my3hte goe in to Grece. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.* The see is so streyte þer betwene the costes of Asia and of Europe, that the singenge of bryddes and berkenge of dogges may be herde to gedre, with owte the wynde cause resistence. *Giraldus, distinct. prima, capitulo decimo.* That streyte see is callede the arme of seynte George, whiche flowethe abowte Constantinople,

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *the occean*, Cx.
[2] Cx. adds *and*.
[3] *archeth*, Cx.
[4] Sic MS.; *streem, a. and frothens the streme*, Cx.
[5] *Bofornit*, Cx.
[6] *furlonges*, Cx.
[7] *Exerces*, MS. and *a.*; *Xerses*, Harl. MS. Here and elsewhere the classical orthography is restored, when the word does not appear to be in a manner anglicised, *e.g.*, *Affrica*.
[8] *brydge*, Cx.
[9] *men*, Cx.
[10] *but yf*, Cx.
[11] *place*, Cx.
[12] *named*, Cx.

orbis gemini[1] discrimen faciens tam Asiam quam Europam delambit. Ibi quoque est Insula Abydos.[2] *Isidorus, libro nono.*[3] Indeque pontus diffusus versus septentrionem facit Propontidem. Inde etiam stringitur[4] in secentos passus et fit Thracius; inde[5] Ponticus sinus amplissimus qui[6] ab aquilone allambens[7] Thraciam et Mœsiam[8] extenditur versus[9] Mœotides paludes; ibique recipit fluvium Tanaim,[10] inde versus orientem expansus transit juxta Asiam minorem usque ad fines Iberiæ et Armeniæ, quod quidem mare dicitur Euxinum. *Isidorus, libro nono.*[11] Et est illud mare dulcius, brevius, nebulosius propter accurrentia undique[12] flumina. In quo quidem amplo[13] sinu sunt insulæ Colchos,[14] Patmos et aliæ.[15] *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo quinto.*[16] Nec refluit Ponticus sinus sicut[17] cætera maria, sed semper fluit in Propontidem et Hellespontum. *Ranulphus.*[18] Cujus rei causa poterit esse quod impetus fluminum a tergo labentium[19] urgent[20] pontum Euxinum[21] ad continuum fluxum. Nec valet æstus Helles-

---

[1] *gemini*] om. B.

[2] *Insula Abydos*] This is clearly Higden's text, whose error is due to Isidore (*Orig.* xiv. 6). C. and D. have *Aludos*, by a clerical error.

[3] B. does not notice that a new quotation begins.

[4] *etiam stringitur*] et constringitur, C.

[5] *inde*] Sic C.D.E.; *unde*, A.

[6] *qui*] Sic C.D.E.; *quia*, A.

[7] *aquilone*] occidente gyrans, C.D.

[8] *Mœsiam*] Misiam, or Missiam, MSS., and similarly the versions.

[9] *extenditur versus*] ad aquilonem tangit, D., and so probably C. originally, in which corrections are made in a later hand.

[10] *et fluvium Thanay recipit*, C.D.

[11] The title of the extract is omitted in C.D.E. B. has 14°. Neither the 9th nor 14th book seems to be had in view.

[12] *undique*] om. C.D.

[13] *amplo*] om. C.D.

[14] *Chalcia* is probably intended. Trevisa has *Calchos*. Nothing in Isid. lib. ix. corresponds to this.

[15] *aliæ*] quædam aliæ, C.D.

[16] The book only (not the chapter) cited in A.B.C.D.

[17] *sicut*] ut, C.D.

[18] C. and D. omit *Ranulphus*.

[19] *lambentium*, D.

[20] *urget*, C.D.

[21] *Euxinum*] om. C.D.

and bytwene Europa and Asia; and in þat see is þe Ilond Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þanne þe see schedeþ norþward, and makeþ þe see Propontides. Þenne he narweþ to þe narwenesse of sex hondred paas, [and][1] is þe se[2] Trach. Þanne þe grete see[3] Ponticus þat passeþ by north by Thracia and Mœsia, strecchеþ to þe wateres and marys of Mæotides, and fongeþ[4] þere þe ryuer Thanays. Þenne he strecchеþ estward, and passeþ by þe lasse Asia, anon to[5] þe endes of Iberia and Armenye. And þat see is i-cleped[6] Euxinum. *Isidorus, libro nono.* And þat see is swetter, schorter, and more mysty, for fresshe ryueres al aboute turneþ and falleþ[7] þerto. In þat grete mouthe and baye[8] beþ ilondes Calchos, Patmos,[9] and oþere. *Plinius, libro sexto.* And þe see Ponticus floweþ not noþer[10] turneþ aȝen as oþere sees dooþ, but euere turneþ[11] into þe see Propontidem and Hellespontum. Ry. Þe cause þere of is myȝte and strengþe of ryueres and bakwateres, þat renneþ þerto, dryueþ forþ þe see Euxinum alway in oon cours. And þe strengþe and þe flood of þe see Hellesponticus, þat is fer from occean, Trevisa.

compassenge abowte also as welle Affrike as Europe. There is an yle callede Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* The see callede Pontus, diffusede from þens towarde the northe makethe the see callede Propontides. And from thens hit is streynede also into vj^{c} passes a[nd] causethe a water named Thracius.[12] Then the see Pontike compassenge abowte from the northe the londes of Thracia and Mœsia is extendede towarde Mæotides Paludes where hit receyvethe a floode named Thanay, which extendede towarde the este goethe towarde Asia the lesse to the costes of Hiberia and of Armeny, whiche is callede the see Eusyne. *Isidorus, libro nono.* That see is moore swete, more schorte for floodes, accurrente on euery side. In the grete arme of whom be yles callede Colchos, Patmos,[9] and oþer. *Plinius, libro sexto.* The see Pontike reflowethe not as other sees, but hyt dothe floe alle weies in to that see Propontides and Elesponte. Ry. The cause may be assignede that impetuosites of floedes in the backe of hit constreyne the the see Eusyne to floenge continualle, and Elesponte deriuate MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] Added from Cx., and *a.*
[2] *þese*, MS.; *the see*, Cx.
[3] *the see*, Cx.
[4] *receyueth*, Cx.
[5] *Asia vnto*, Cx.
[6] *named*, Cx.
[7] *renne and fullen*, Cx.
[8] So Cx.; *þay*, *a.*; *þey*, MS., which adds *and baye* after *oþere* in the line following.
[9] *Patmos*] *Pathmos*, MS. and Harl. MS.
[10] *ne*, Cx., who omits *as oþere sees dooþ*.
[11] *renneth*, Cx.
[12] *Tracheus*, Harl. MS. Trevisa has also mangled the word.

ponticus, tanquam longius ab oceano derivatus, tam validum[1] impetum retorquere. *Isidorus, libro nono.*[2] Et sicut terra cum una sit pro diversis tamen locis et causis variis appellatur vocabulis, ita hoc mare magnum[3] pro diversis regionibus, insulis, oppidis, gentibus, quas allambit,[4] et eventibus diversimode nominatur.

Cap. IX.

De Oceano.

Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.[5]

Molem[6] terræ ambit oceanus in modum circuli oras terrarum circumplectens, alternisque æstibus accedit et recedit; respirantibus enim in profundum ventis aut revomit maria aut absorbet. *Plinius, libro secundo, cap.* xcix. Æstus oceani intumescit super Britanniam octogenis cubitis. Et magis deprehenduntur hi motus circa[7] littora maris[8] quam in alto pelago; quin et in[9] extremis corporum partibus[10] pulsus venarum magis sentiuntur quam in[11] medio corporum.[12] Omnis autem[13] æstus

---

[1] *tam validum*] tantum, C.D.

[2] 14°. B. The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 16.

[3] C. and D. add *sive Mediterraneum.*

[4] *quas allambit*] om. C. D.

[5] *quarto decimo*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 15.

[6] C. and D. begin thus:—"Ocea-"nus in circuli modum ambit orbem "oras," etc.

[7] *circa*] juxta, B.

[8] *maris*] om. C.D.

[9] *et in*] om. A.; added from C. D.E.; *et*, om. B.

[10] *partibus*] om. B.

[11] *in*] om. A.

[12] *quam in medio corporum*] om. C.D.

[13] *autem*] etiam, E.; quoque, C.D.

may nou3t wiþstonde þe course and þe strengþe of þe strong stremes þat renneþ[1] þat course. *Isidorus, libro nono.* As þe erþe þat is oon haþ dyuerse names by cause of dyuers [places, so the[2] grete see by cause of dyuerse][3] kyngdoms, ylondes, peple, citees, and townes þat he[4] passeþ by, and happes þat falleþ þerynne is dyuersliche i-nempned[5] and haþ dyuers names. TREVISA.

De oceano. Isidorus, libro decimo tertio. Capitulum nonum.

THE see of occean byclippeþ al þe erþe aboute as a garlond, and by tymes comeþ and gooþ ebbynge and flowynge, and swelloweþ[6] in sees, and casteþ hem vp; and wyndes bloweþ þerynne. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo* 99. þe hi3e flood of occean ariseþ vp[7] þe costes of Bretaine foure score cubitis hi3e. And þat risynge and depnesse is better i-knowe by þe cleues þan in the hi3e see; for betynge of veynes is bettre i-knowe in þe vttre parties of bodies[8] þan ynward and[9] in þe myddel wiþynne. Euerich flood arist[10] more in occean

so ferre from the occean may not returne ageyne that huge impetuosite. *Isidorus, libro nono.* And neuerthelesse, sythe the erthe is oon or londe, and callede in diuerse names thro diuerse causes and diuerse places, soe in lyke wyse the grete see is namede in diuerse maners for diuerse regiones, yles, cites, and peple that hit compassethe. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 23 a.

Of the Occean. Isidorus Eth. libro tertio decimo. Capitulum nonum.

THE occean compassethe the erthe in the maner of a cercle, foldenge abowte the regiones of londes, commethe to, and retedethe; the wyndes respirenge and restenge in the profundite of hit, auþer hit flowethe furthe or retractethe the sees in to hit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo* 99. The heete and feruence of the occean swellethe on Breteyne viij^{c}[11] cubites and moore, the movenges be deprehendede raþer abowte the sides of the sees then in an oþer hie see. For the pulses of the veynes be felede moore in the extremites than in the myddes of the body. Euery heete and feruence hathe more invndacion in the

[1] *corneþ*, *a*.
[2] *þis*, *a*.
[3] Added from Cx. and *a*.
[4] *it*, Cx.
[5] *named*, Cx.
[6] *floweth*, Cx. (typ. error.)
[7] *vpon*, Cx., *a*.
[8] *the body*, Cx.
[9] Om. Cx.
[10] *aryseth*, Cx.
[11] A blunder for 80.

magis inundat in oceano quam in mari magno, sive quia totum in universitate sua[1] animosius est quam in parte, sive quia magnitudo patens efficacius sentit vim sideris lunaris quam angustia[2] coarctata. Quamobrem nec lacus nec amnes eo modo moventur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo.*[3] Oceanus in varios sinus infusus versus terram plerisque in locis interna maria pene tangit, adeo ut sinus Rubri maris qui Arabicus dicitur centum quinquaginta millibus passuum vix distet ab Ægyptio mari; Caspius vero sinus trecentis septuaginta quinque millibus a ponto distet[4] Euxino.[5] *Beda de Naturis.* Inter omnes sinus quos oceanus versus terras procreat, tres sunt famosiores. Primus est fretum Gaditanum sive Atlanticum, quod ab occidente erumpens[6] marè magnum in medio terrarum facit. Secundus sinus dicitur[7] mare Caspium, quod a Vulturno ingrediens dividit borealem partem Indiæ a Scythia, ac versus Euxinum mare tendit.

---

[1] *sua*] om. D.; interlineated in C.

[2] *angustia*] in angus. (*i.e.* angustum ?), C., which as well as D. arranges the words in this clause otherwise.

[3] The true reference is to lib. ii. c. 68.

[4] *distet* at the end of the sentence in C.D.

[5] C. and D. omit the extracts from Bede, Solinus, and Ranulphus, beginning again from Paulus: — *Sunt plures aquarum voragines.*

[6] *erumpens*] irrumpens, B.E.

[7] *Secundus est*, B.

Trevisa.

þan in þe grete see; þat is, for þe hoole to gidre is myȝtier and strenger þan any partie by hem[1] self, oþer for þe hole occean is grete and huge and fongeþ[2] more worchynge of þe mone þan eny partie by hym self þat is smallere and lasse. Þerefore lakus, ryueres, pondus, and oþere fresche wateres noþer[3] ebbeþ ne floweþ as occean doþ. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo sexto.*[4] Occean spredeþ and schedeþ in to dyuers mouthes and costes toward þe lond, and in many places wel nyh toucheþ þe ynner sees so nygh þat þe mouþe [þat is cleped Arabicus, and is þe mouþ][5] and þe coste of þe Rede see [is fro the see of Egypte; but fifty thousand paas; also the mouth and see][6] þat is i-cleped[7] Caspius is but þre hundred þre score and fiftene myle from þe grete see þat is i-cleped[7] Euxinus. *Beda, de Naturis.* Amonge alle þe mouthes and sees þat comeþ toward þe londe and out of occean,[8] þre been most famous i-holde. Þe firste[9] mouthe and see haþ tweie names, and is i-cleped[7] Gaditanus and Atlanticus also. Þe secounde is i-cleped[7] Caspius, and entreþ toward þe norþ est,[10] and departeþ by twene þe norþside of Inde[11] and Scythia þat londe, and so[12] strecchoþ towarde þe grete mouþe and see þat is i-cleped

MS. Harl. 2261.

occean then in the grete see. The cause is for euery thynge is of more animosite and audacite in his vniversalle then his parte parcialle. And also for the patente magnitude felethe by more efficacite the strenȝhte of þe moone then a see coartate; wherefore a lake and other waters be not y-movede in that maner. *Plinius, libro 2°, capitulo 7°.* The occean infusede in to diuerse places towarde londes towchethe alle moste the entiere sees in mony places, in so moche that a parte of the Redde see whiche is callede Arabicus is vnnethe distante from Egipte a c. l^{ti} m^{l} of passes. The see callede Caspius is distante by ccc. lxxv. m^{l} passes from the see callede Eusyne. *Beda, De Naturis.* Amonge alle the armes of the occean, that hit dothe cause, thre be of moste nowble fame. The firste is the see Gaditan, or Autlantike, whiche brekenge vp from the weste makethe the grete see in the myddes of the erthe. The secunde see is callede the see of Caspius, whiche goenge from the sowthe este, diuidethe the northe parte off Ynde from Scythia, and goethe from that to the see Eusyne. The thrydde is

[1] *him*, α.
[2] *receyueth*, Cx.
[3] *ne*, Cx.
[4] *septimo*, α. See the Latin text.
[5] Added from α.
[6] Added from Cx. and α.
[7] *called*, Cx.
[8] *the ocean*, Cx.
[9] Om. Cx.
[10] *out of north east*, Cx.
[11] So α.; *Inda*, MS.
[12] *that*, Cx.

Tertius sinus dicitur mare Rubrum, quod ab euro orbis intrans dividit australem partem Indiæ ab Æthiopia et Ægypto, indeque progrediens in duos sinus scinditur, quorum Persicus sinus aquilonem petit, Arabicus vero versus mare magnum petit occidentem. Hoc autem mare Rubrum nomen suum a roseo colore trahit, quem tamen non naturaliter habet, sed a vicinis littoribus, quæ sanguineo colore rubent, inficitur; ideoque minium acutum[1] et rubræ gemmæ inde leguntur. *Solinus.* Juxta mare Caspium sunt montes Caspii habentes in longum[2] VII. millia passuum, in lato[3] vix plaustro permeabiles; laterum saxa, liquentibus inter se salis venis, exundant humorem[4] affluentem. Qui constrictus vi caloris velut in æstivam[5] glaciem corporatur, et ita labes nimia accessum vetat.[6] Prætereà viginti octo millibus[7] passuum spatio tractus omnis peragitur. Humus arida sine præsidio sitit, et tunc serpentes undique confluunt,

---

[1] B. adds *est.*

[2] So A.B.E. Perhaps *longo* or *longitudine* (see Harl. MS.) may be the true reading.

[3] *latitudine*, B.

[4] A. has *et* before *humorem.*

[5] *æstivum*, A.E.

[6] *vetat*] negat, E.

[7] *millibus*] milia, E. *Millium* would be a better reading. See Trevisa.

Euxinus. þe þridde mouþe and see is þe Rede see, and comeþ of þe north est, and departeþ þe south side of Inde from Ethiopia and Egipte from þilke tweye londes. Þan þe Rede see strecchеþ forþ, and departeþ in tweie mouthes and sees. Þat oon is i-cleped [1] Persicus, and strecchеþ norþward, þat oþer is i-cleped [1] Arabicus, and strecchеþ westward and toward þe grete see. Þe [2] Rede see is nouȝt rede of kynde, but aflascheþ [3] and wascheþ oon [4] rede clyues and stones, and so is i-died rede as a rose. Þerfore of þe clyues and strondes of þe Reed see is i-gadered vermylon and rede precious stones. *Solinus.* By þe see þat is i-cleped [5] Caspius beeþ hulles, þat beeþ i-cleped þe hilles of Caspi,[6] and haueþ in lengþe seuen þowsand paas, and in brede vnneþe þe space of a cart wey. In þe sides of þe hulles of Caspii salt veynes mulleþ [7] and woseth oute humours, and moysture i-dried and i-clunge by hete of þe sonne ioyneþ and cleueþ to gideres, as is oþere [8] glas; and somme [9] may nouȝt clymbe on þe hilles, þe wey is so slider. Also euerich drauȝt is ful drawe in þe space of eyȝte and twenty þousand paas; þe londe is drie wiþoute socoure, and adders and serpentes falleþ

Trevisa.

callede the Redde see, which entrenge from the este parte of the worlde diuidethe the sowthe parte of Ynde from Ethioppe and Egipte, which takenge his progresse from thens is departede in to ij. armes, of whom the [10] arme Persicalle, or of þe [10] cuntre of Perse, dothe aske the northe. The see of Araby askethe the weste towarde the grete see. That Redde see, takenge his name of a redde color whom hyt hathe not naturally, but of nye places to hyt, whiche be redde like to the colour of bloode, where redde precious stones be founde. *Solinus.* The hilles callede Caspii be nye the see callede Caspius, as longenge to them, hauenge in longitude vij. m^l^ of passes, in latitude vnnethe permeable with oxen, the stonys of whom as meltenge thro the veynes of salte mixte amonge theyme causethe an humor affluente; whiche compacte and constructe thro the heete of the sonne, is incorporate as in to yse, and soe the slipper waye deneyethe commenge to theyme. That drye grownde thurstethe as with owte presidye. Then the serpentes take

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 23 b.

[1] *i-cleped*] named, Cx. (twice.)
[2] *þis, a.*
[3] *it flassheth,* Cx.
[4] *on the,* Cx.
[5] *called,* Cx.
[6] *Caspii, a,* and so MS. below.
[7] *melte,* Cx.
[8] *as yse or,* Cx.
[9] *so men,* Cx.
[10] *þe . . . the*] So Harl. MS., and similarly the MS. of Trevisa on this page has *mulleþ* and *woseth*; whence the inconstancy of the use of þ clearly appears, when they were written. See also p. 31.

ita ut nisi in hyeme accessus omnia negatur.[1] *Ranulphus.* Et secundum Marcianum portæ Caspiæ ferreis trabibus sunt obseratæ, quæ verno tempore serpentibus obcluduntur;[2] et secundum Magistrum in historiis[3] ad preces Alexandri Magni, hi montes invicem[4] cohæserunt.[5] *Paulus, in Historia Longobardorum, libro primo.*[6] Sunt etiam plures aquarum voragines sive vortigines juxta marium margines[7] e quibus duæ sunt in mari mediterraneo inter Italiam et Siciliam, Scylla scilicet et Charybdis, de quibus Virgilius loquitur —

Dextrum Scylla latus, lævum implacata Charybdis.[8]

Sunt et aliæ voragines in oceano, quarum una in occidentali littore Britanniæ minoris[9] umbilicus[10] maris dicitur; alia quoque inter Britanniam et Galliciam,[11] quæ bis in die naturali fluctus sorbere et rursus evomere navesque attrahere et rejicere tanta velocitate dicuntur, ut sagittarum lapsum imitari videantur.

---

[1] So A.B.E. The syntax requires *negetur*; but the error may be Higden's own.

[2] *obscinduntur*, B.

[3] *Magistrum historiarum*, B.

[4] *ad invicem*, B.

[5] So B.E.; *sunt* (for *sibi*?) *adheserunt*, A.

[6] The extract from *Paulus* is wanting in A.; down to *Charybdis* added from E.; B. omits the title of the extract, and begins it (after Charybdis) thus: Sunt et aliæ, &c.

[7] *juxta marium margines*] om. D.

[8] *implicata*, E. (*Obsidet* governs these accusatives, *Æn.* iii. 421.)

[9] *minoris*] om. C.D.

[10] Sic C.; *umbilicum*, A.B.D.E.

[11] So the MSS.

Trevisa. þerto; so þat, but it be wynter, þere may no man come þerynne. Ꝑ. Martianus seiþ þat þe[1] ȝates of Caspij beeþ i-steke[2] wiþ yren barres, and in springyng tyme faste i-barred for serpentes and addres; and þe Maister[3] of þe stories sayth,[4] þat at þe prayeres of kyng Alisaundre Caspij hulles were i-closed and ioyned to gidres. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Þere beeþ many swolwynges and whirlynges of wateres by þe see brynkes; tweyne beeþ in þe see of myddel erþe bytwene Itali and þe londe[5] Sicilia. Þilke tweie swolwes beeþ i-cleped[6] Scylla and Charybdis; of þe whiche speketh Virgil, and seiþ: Scylla is perilous in þe riȝt side, and Charybdis in þe lift side. Oþere swelowes and periles of wateres[7] beeþ in occean; oon is in þe west clif of litel[8] Bretayne, and is i-cleped[9] þe nauel of þe see; þe toþer[10] is bytwene Bretayne and Gallicia, and it is i-seide þat þese swelowes twyes in þe nyȝt and day sweloweþ ynne stremes and flodes, and casteþ hem vp aȝe.[11] Also he[12] draweþ in schippes, and casteþ hem vp aȝen,[13] as swiftliche as an arwe to a manis sight.[14]

MS. Harl. 2261. theire confluence to hyt on euery syde, in so moche that commenge to theyme is denyede, but in wynter. Ꝑ. And after Martian the ȝates of theyme be lockede with cheynes of yrne, whiche be stopped in the somer tyme with serpentes. And after the Maister in storyes, those hilles wente to gedre at the preyers of kynge Alexander. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Also there be monye deipe places of waters nye to the sydes of the sees, of whom tweyne be in the grete see betwene Ytaly and Sicille. Also there be other swaloes of the see in the occean. Oon of theym is in the weste side of Briteyne the less, y-namede the navelle of the see. That oþer is betwene Briteyne and Fraunce, whiche be seyde to deuoure waters and evomette theyme twyes in a day, drawenge to theyme schippes and puttenge theyme aweye with suche a swiftenesse, that thei appere to folowe the schote of an arowe.

---

[1] *a.* omits *þe.*
[2] *faste shette*, Cx.
[3] So Cx., (who has *of historyes*); *maistres*, MS.
[4] *sayth*] Added from Cx. and *a.*
[5] *ilonde*, Cx.
[6] *called*, Cx.
[7] *water*, Cx.
[8] Om. Cx.
[9] *called*, Cx.
[10] *other*, Cx.
[11] *agayn*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[12] *it*, Cx.
[13] *casted hem agayn*, Cx.
[14] So the MS. (not, as usually, *siȝt.*)

Cap. X.

De provinciis Orbis. Et primo de Paradiso.[1]

Circa notitiam Paradisi terrestris tria potissime sunt advertenda; primo namque quoad ejus existentiam seu conditionem quæritur an sit; secundo quoad ejus positionem quæritur ubi sit; tertio quoad ejus descriptionem quæritur qualis sit. De primo notandum est quod ejus existentiæ[2] attestantur quatuor; videlicet narrationes historiarum,[3] quæ comparant Paradiso loca Sodomæ antequam subverteretur. Secundo, testimonia expertorum, qui se vidisse locum illum scripserunt.

Quatuor flumina Paradisi.

Tertio, quatuor flumina inde exeuntia, quorum origo in nostro habitabili nec in mari nec in fonte uspiam reperitur, cum tamen circa hoc per reges Ægypti et alios frequenter fuerit elaboratum. Idcirco, teste Isidoro,[4] xiii. Etymolog., Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum quam auctores tradi-

---

[1] *Paradiso*] E. adds in the title: —"Et opinionibus circa ipsum locum." C. omits all after *Orbis*, and all the early part of the chapter (see below); and the rest also is so much transposed that its readings can be but imperfectly represented. D. agrees exactly with C. in its arrangement, and has not a single various reading of importance, and, indeed, very few deviations of any kind.

[2] *existentiam*, B.

[3] *historiarum*] Om. B., which has also *loca Sodomæ* before *Paradiso*.

[4] This extract from *Isidore* is substantially the same in C.

De prouinciis orbis; primo de Paradiso. Capitulum decimum. TREVISA.

FOR þe knowleche of erþelyche Paradys þre poyntes moste be i-knowe. Wherfore þre questiouns beeþ i-axed: þe firste questioun axeþ,[1] ȝif eny suche place is on erþe? þe secounde axiþ,[1] Whiderwarde or where is Paradys in erþe? þe þridde askeþ,[1] What contraye or what place[2] is Paradys in erþe? For þe firste, foure manere witnesses we haueþ þat Paradys is in erþe; first stories þat likneþ Sodom, or[3] hit were ouertorned, to Paradise; þe secounde witnes is of[4] hem þat assaiede and[5] write and seide, þat þey had i-seie[6] þat place; þe þridde witnesse beeþ[7] þe foure ryueres, þat renneþ out of Paradyse; for þe heed of þilke ryueres beeþ nouȝt i-founde in see, noþer in fresche water, noþer in londe þat men woneþ[8] ynne, þeyȝ kynges of Egipt and many oþer trauailled wel ofte and souȝte þereafter. Þerfore Isid[ore], xiii. Eth., seiþ þat Hieronymus[9] toke hede þat ouþer vnderstondynge bihoueþ of þe ryueres of Paradys, þan auctours writeþ;

Of the Prouinces of the Worlde, and firste of Paradise. Capitulum decimum. MS. HARL. 2261.

THRE thynges ar to be aduertisede principally as abowte the knowlege of Paradise. Fyrste hit is inquirede as vn to the existence of hit other[10] condicion whe þer hit be. In the secunde hit is inquirede as vn to the posicion of hyt where hit is. In the thrydde hit is inquirede in what maner hit is. Of the fyrste, hit is to be attendede that iiij thynges bere wyttenesse to the beenge of hit, that is to say, narraciones of storyes, the whiche do comparate the places of Sodomye to Paradise afore the subuersion of theyme. In the secunde, the testimonies of men experte whiche haue writen theyme to haue seen that place. In the thrydde, iiij. waters flowenge from hit, the begynnenge of whom was not founde in oure partes habitable, neiþer in the see, neither in eny other welle whiche hathe be laborede by diuerse kynges of Egipte and other men ofte tymes. Therefore, Isidorus wyttenesse xiij°. Eth., Seynte Ierom perceyvethe other wise of the floodes of Paradise then other auctores

[1] *a.* has the same variations of spelling; Cx. has *axeth* in all three places.
[2] *contray and place*, Cx.
[3] *er*, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *witnessiþ of*, MS.
[5] *and*] om. Cx., who has *wrote*.
[6] *seen*, Cx.
[7] So *a.*; *wytnes ben*, Cx.; *witnessiþ that beeþ*, MS.
[8] *dwelle*, Cx.
[9] *Ieronimus*, MS., and so often; *Iherom*, Cx.
[10] So the MS., but *or the* is probably the true reading.

derunt. Dicit[1] enim Basilius in Hexaemeron et Isidorus Etymolog., libro xiv., et Josephus, libro primo, quod de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ lacum efficiunt, de quo velut de fonte quatuor flumina nascuntur. *Petrus,*[2] *capitulo quartodecimo.* Quorum primus Phison qui interpretatur *inundatio* educitur in Indiam trahens secum aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangaro rege Indiæ, quod interpretatur *caterva;* eo quod decem flumina recipiat. Secundus fluvius dictus est Gyon, qui et Nilus, circuitque[3] Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius fluvius Tigris secundum Josephum dicitur Diglath,[4] quod sonat *acutum,* eo quod velox sit ut tigris, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus fluvius Euphrates, quod sonat *frugifer,* vadit contra Chaldæos.[5] *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*[6] Salustius auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauniis[7] montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasi montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum flu-

---

[1] These extracts are more fully exhibited in C. and D., thus: *Basilius Hexaem.* Igitur de paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum, ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isid. lib.* 4 (sic). De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat; dividitur quoque in quatuor flumina nascentia. *Josephus* li. 1. Nam Phison educatur in Indiam, Euphrates et Tigris in mare rubrum feruntur. Gihon vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit.

[2] The extract from *Petrus* is contained in C. and D., but abbreviated. B. has 4 for 14.

[3] *que*] So B.; om. A.E.; *et circuit,* C.D.

[4] *Diglath*] Dilath, E.; Diglat, C.D.

[5] The MSS. of text and versions omit *h* in the first syllable. In the former it is corrected.

[6] *quarto decimo,* E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 21. s. 10. This extract is also contained in C., but much altered.

[7] *Cerauneis,* MSS.

also Basilius, in Hexaemeron, Ysid[ore], Eth. lib. quarto decimo, and Iosephus, libro primo, seiþ þat wateres fallynge of þe hiȝest[1] hille of Paradys makeþ a grete ponde, and out of þat ponde (as it were of a welle) þe foure ryueres springeþ. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* Of þe whiche foure ryueres þe firste is Phison, and is to menynge *ful wexynge of plente;* þat ryuer Phison passeþ into Inde, and draweth wiþ hym golden grauel. Phison haþ anoþer name, and is i-cleped Ganges of a kynge[2] of Ynde þat was i-cleped Gangarius; but Ganges[3] is to menynge[4] *felawschippe and companye*, for he fongeþ ten greet ryueres þat renneþ þerto. Þe secounde is i-cleped Gyon and Nilus also, and gooþ aboute Ethiopia and Egipt. Þe þridde is Tigris, and, as Iosephus seiþ, Diglath also, þat is to menynge,[4] *scharp*, for he[5] is swift as tigris, þat is a wel[6] swift best; and Tigris passeþ toward Assyria þat londe. Þe fourþe is Euphrates, þat is to menynge *fructuous and fruit berere*, and goþ toward Caldea þat londe.[7] *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Þe moste certeyn auctor, Salustius, seiþ, þat þere comeþ a welle oute of Cerauneys, þe hulles of Armenye, and springeþ out at[8] þe foote of þe hulle þat is i-cleped Caucasus; and þat welle is

TREVISA.

---

have diffinede. Basilius in his Hexaemeron and Isidorus, libro quartodecimo Eth., and Iosephus, libro primo,[9] that waters fallenge from Paradise make a lake, from whom iiij. flowedes hathe theire begynnenge as of a welle. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* The firste floode of whom is calledde Phison, the invndacion of whom is educede in to Ynde, drawenge with hit grauelle of golde, whiche is callede Ganges off a kynge some time in Ynde Gangarius by name, whiche is called a cumpanye by interpretacion, in that hit dothe receyve x. floedes. The secunde is callede Gyon or Nilus, whiche compassethe Ethioppe and Egipte. The thrydde floode is callede Tigris, after Iosephus hit is called Diglath, whiche sowndethe scharpe, in so moche that hit is swifte as a tigre, and goethe ageynes Assiriones. The furthe is callede Euphrates, that sowndethe as plentuous of corne, whiche goethe ageyne men of Calde. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Salustius, the moste certeyne auctor, seythe that a welle is spronge from the highe hilles of Armenye, at the foote of the hille callede Caucasus, whiche welle is the hede

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 24 a.

---

[1] *of heyȝeste, a.*
[2] So *a.*; MS. *askynge.*
[3] So Cx.; *Gangus*, MS.
[4] *to say*, Cx., who has, howcver, *to menynge* above.
[5] *it*, Cx. (and so often).
[6] *ryght*, Cx.
[7] *þe fourþe . . . þat land*] om. Cx.
[8] *of*, Cx.
[9] *seicn*, or some such word, has been omitted.

minum Tigris et Euphratis ; qui [1] aliquotiens separantur, aliquotiens inter se commiscentur.[2] Sæpe a terra [3] absorbentur, et iterum emergunt ;[4] et tandem post longum circa Mesopotamiam circuitum descendunt in mare Rubrum. *Ranulphus.*[5] Et Nilus licet legatur [6] a Paradiso procedere, quidam tamen asseverant ipsum oriri in occidentali parte Æthiopiæ non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam descendit per Ægyptum. De cujus proprietate vide infra, capitulo *Ægyptus.* Quarto existentiæ [7] Paradisi attestatur fama diuturna. Nam famæ diuturnæ et illesæ multum est credendum. Sed fama de paradiso stetit inconcussa per sex millia annorum et amplius, quia a principio mundi usque ad dies nostros. Fama autem de re falsa cadere consuevit aut per oblivionem aut per contrariam opinionem. De secundo, quod est ejus situatio seu positio ubinam sit, non est putandum secundum quosdam brevis intellectus et paucæ experientiæ Paradisum esse regionem longo-

---

[1] *quia*, A.

[2] So B.C.E. ; *intercommiscentur*, A.

[3] *a terra*] terræ, B.

[4] *et iterum emergunt*] et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt, C.D.

[5] The whole of this long extract from *Ranulphus* is omitted in C. and D., except so much as is contained in the following sentence, which closes the chapter : "Inde est quod "de ortu eorum varia leguntur ; "quod Ganges dicitur nasci in locis "Caucasi montis ; Nilus non pro-"cul ab Atlante monte ; Tigris et "Euphrates in Armenia."

[6] *licet legatur*] legitur, B.

[7] *existentiam*, B.

TREVISA.

þe hede of tweie ryueres [of Tigris and of Euphrates, þe whiche tweie ryuers][1] somtyme beeþ i-deled atwynne[2] and somtyme i-melled[3] to gidres, and ofte tyme þey beeþ i-swelewed into þe erþe, and efte[4] springeþ up aȝen, and longe after gooþ aboute Mesopotamia[5] þat londe, and dounward into þe Rede see. R. And þey me[6] rede in bookes þat Nilus comeþ out of Paradys, ȝit som men affermeþ and seiþ[7] þat Nilus springeþ in þe west side of þe londe of Ethiopia, nouȝt fer from þe hil þat is i-cleped Atlas,[8] and goþ aboute Ethiopia and dounward by Egipt. Loke[9] þe propurte of Nilus in þe chapitre Egiptus. Þe fourþe witnesse and preef, þat suche a place is in erþe þat is i-cleped Paradys, is olde fame and longe durynge; for me schal trowe[10] olde fame, þat is nouȝt wiþseide; but fame of Paradys haþ i-dured[11] wiþoute wiþseienge[12] sexe þowsand ȝere and more; for from þe bygynnynge of þe world anon to oure dayes [it haþ endured. And][13] fame þat is false dureþ nouȝt so longe, for it falliþ out of mynde, oþer is despreued by soþenesse i-knowe. Of þe secounde questioun, þat axeþ in whiche side of þe worlde and in what place Paradys schulde be; þey[14] schort witted men and litel of

MS. HARL. 2261.

of tweyne waters, that is to saye, of Tigris and Euphrates, whiche be other while separate and oþerwhile commixte, oftetyme dévourede of the erthe; and at the laste thei descende abowte Mesopotamy in to the Redde see. R. And thauȝhe men say that Nilus dothe procede from Paradise, some men afferme hit to haue his begynnenge in the weste parte of Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche compassenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, of the properte off whom beholde with in the chapitre Egiptus. In the iiij^{the}, the olde fame berrethe testimonye to the existence of Paradise. But trewely the fame of Paradise hathe stonde as inconcussede by vj. mł. yeres and more. The fame of a false thynge is wonte to falle auþer by obliuion, other by oppinion contrarious. Of the secunde, where it is, hit is not to take to credence after some men of pover and breve intellecte, and also of lytelle experience, Paradise to be a

Paradisus.

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx. Here, and commonly, the versions write *Eufrates.*
[2] *departed a sonder,* Cx.
[3] *medlid,* Cx.
[4] *after,* Cx.
[5] *Macepotanea,* MS. and *a.*; *Mesopotonya,* Cx.
[6] *men,* Cx., and so in many other places, where MS. and *a.* agree in reading *me, aȝe,* &c.
[7] *affermen and saye,* Cx., to whom this plural seems unknown.
[8] *Athlas,* MSS. and Cx.
[9] *Seche,* Cx.
[10] *bileue,* Cx.
[11] *endured,* Cx., and *endureth* for *dureþ,* below.
[12] *gayn sayeng,* Cx., but *withseyde* above.
[13] Added from Cx. (not in *a.*)
[14] *though that,* Cx.

maris tractu a nostro habitabili distantem ac[1] usque ad lunarem circulum elevatum; quia hoc nec natura patitur nec ratio; quia, si separaretur a nostro habitabili, nec aqua nec aer tantam molem sufferre posset. Item cum elementum ignis occupet[2] totum intermedium spatium inter aereum circulum et lunarem,[3] constat ibi non esse Paradisum; cum nihil vegetabile ibi vivere posset. Item hoc dato locus ille sic elevatus induceret aliquando eclipsim lunarem, maxime in partibus terræ orientalibus;[4] sed de tali eclipsi nihil audivimus hucusque. Item si Paradisus separaretur a nostro habitabili, quomodo[5] tunc pervenirent ad nostrum habitabile illa quatuor flumina prædicta per tam vastum mare vel per aerem intermedium? Si autem dicatur quod Paradisus sit aliquantulum contigua[6] nostro habitabili, videtur quod terra non sit sphærica, sicut communiter descripta est a doctis; immo tunc foret oblonga. Sed hoc stare

---

[1] *ac*] et, B.

[2] *occupet*] So A.; *occupat*, B.E.

[3] So B.E.; *aerem et circulum lunarem*, A.

[4] *in terris or.*, E.

[5] So B.E.; *qualiter*, A.

[6] *contigua*] So the MSS. A.B.E. (C. and D. do not contain the passage). Either the text should be altered to *contiguus*, or, more probably, *regio* should be added after *sit*. It is possible, however, that Higden himself may have regarded *Paradisus* as a feminine noun.

assay seie þat Paradys is longe seillynge out of erþe[1] þat men woneþ ynne, and also departed from þe erþe and[2] hiȝe as þe mone,—hit is not to trowynge;[3] for kynde[4] and resoun boþe wiþseieþ.[5] For ȝif Paradys were departed atwynne from þe erþe þat men woneþ ynne, noþer[6] water noþer[6] aier myȝte bere suche a burþen. Also þe fuyre[7] occupieþ al þe myddel space bytwene the aier and þe mone, þan Paradys is nouȝt þare; for þan noþing myȝte lyue þerynne. Also ȝif Paradys were so hiȝe, somtyme it schulde byneme[8] þe liȝt, and make þe clips[9] of þe mone; but of suche[10] eclipse herde we neuere. Also ȝif Paradys were so hiȝe, and departed in sonder[11] from euery oþer[12] lond and erþe, how schulde þe foure ryueres þat springeþ out of Paradys passe by þe aier and þe wide see and come in to londes þat men woneþ ynne? And ȝif me seith þat Paradys is so hiȝe and in oon[13] place contynued[14] to þe erþe þat men woneþ ynne, þan þe erþe is euen longe[15] and nouȝt rounde al aboute, as wise men descryueþ hit; bot þat may not stonde: for it is i-knowe by experience

TREVISA.

region in grete distaunce from this worlde habitable, eleuate vn to the cercle of the moone. For nature wylle not suffre that, neither reason. For if hit were separate in that maner from this worlde habitable, neither the aier, neither the water, myȝhte susteyne suche a burdon and hevynesse. Also sythe the elemente of fyre occupyethe alle the mydelle place betwene the cercle of the aier and of the moone, where- f. 24 b. fore hit may be concludede Paradise not to be there, sythe noo thynge vegetable may haue lyfe þer. That grauntede, that place scholde induce otherwhile the eclipse of the moone, and specially in the este partes of the erthe; but we haue not herde of such eclipse vn to this presente tyme. Also if Paradise were separable from oure places habitable, how scholde the iiij. flowedes aforeseyde atteyne to oure habitacles by so grete a see other by the aier intermediate? If hit be seyde that hit is in a maner contiguate to oure place habitable, then hit scholde appere that the erthe were not rownde, as hit is describede of discrete men, but longe, and by consequent hit scholde yelde a schado inegalle in

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *þe erþe, a.*, Cx.
[2] Cx. adds *is.*
[3] *to be bileued*, Cx.
[4] *nature*, Cx.
[5] Cx. adds *it.*
[6] *ne*, Cx., twice.
[7] So *a.* and Cx.; *ferþe*, MS. (clerical error.)
[8] *bynyme, a.*; *take away*, Cx.
[9] *make eclips, a.*, Cx.
[10] Cx. adds *an.*
[11] *asonder, a.*, Cx.
[12] Om. Cx.
[13] *oo* and *one*, Cx.
[14] *it contynueth*, Cx.
[15] *is enlong*, Cx. (typogr. error ?).

non potest, cum constet per juge experimentum, quod umbra terræ in omni eclipsi lunari faciat pyramidem rotundam; quare liquet quod terra cum suis partibus sit rotunda. Unde concludunt docti quod Paradisus terrestris sit in extremis finibus orientis, et quod sit magna portio corporis terræ, non minor quam India[1] aut Ægyptus, utpote locus toti[2] generi humano, si non peccasset, deputandus. [3]De tertio, quod est ejus descriptio, qualis sit,[4] sciendum est[5] secundum Isidorum, libro xiv°. capitulo tertio, quod Paradisi vocabulum de Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ*, quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum*. *Ranulphus.* Nec mirum; habet enim locus ille quicquid vitæ congruit. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Habet[6] enim salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus sentit nec æstum, in tantum quod quicquid[7] ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui[8] attestatur quod Enoch et Helias adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus.*[9] Habet etiam[10] locus ille

Paradisus in extremis finibus orientis situatur.

---

[1] *Iudea*, A.

[2] *toti*] om. B.

[3] C. and. D. begin the chapter thus:—*Isid. li.* 4 (sic), *cap.* 3. Paradisus locus est in oriente longo maris tractu à nostro habitabili segregatus; cujus vocabulum à Græco in Latinum versum dicitur hortus, etc.

[4] *sit*] est, B.

[5] *est*] om. A.; added from E.

[6] This citation from *Isidore* occurs near the beginning in C. and D.

[7] *æstum; et quicquid*, C.

[8] *Cui*] quod, B.; *cui rei*, C.

[9] This extract from *John Damascene* is contained in C. almost verbatim. B. omits the title of the extract.

[10] *etiam*] So B.C.D.; *et*, A.E.

and assay, þat in euery eclips of þe mone þe erþe makeþ a rounde schilde. Þerfore þe erþe, wiþ alle his parties, mote[1] nedes be rounde. And so wise men concludeþ þat Paradys is in þe vttermest ende[2] of þe est, and þat it is a grete contray[3] of þe erþe no lasse þan Ynde oþer[4] Egipte;[5] a place large and couenable for al mankynde to wone ynne, ȝif mankynde had nouȝt i-synned. Of þe þridde þat axeþ of Paradys, What manere place[6] it schulde be, Isid[ore] seiþ, libro quarto decimo, capitulo tertio, þat þis name *Paradys* i-turned out of Grew in to Latyn is to menynge[7] *an orcheȝerde.* But Paradys in Hebrewe[8] is i-cleped *Eden*, þat is to menynge[9] *likynge;* þe whiche tweyne i-putte[10] to gidres makeþ *an orcheȝerde of likynge.* Ꝑ. No wonder, for in þat place is al þyng þat accordeþ to lyf. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Þere is helþe, for þe aier is in tempre[11] noþer to hote noþer[12] to colde, so þat no þyng þat leueþ may deie þerynne: þat witnessiþ Ennok and Ely, þat ȝit beeþ þere on lyue.[13] *Iohannes Damascenus.* TREVISA.

---

euery eclipse; but that may not stonde, sythe hit is provede by experience that the schado of the erthe in euery eclipse of the moone makethe a rownde schado. Wherefore hit is schewede that the erthe with his partes is rownde. Wherefore prudent men conclude that Paradise terrestrialle is in the extreme partes of the este, and that a grete porcion of the erthe is þer, not lesse then Ynde or Egipte, as a place deputate to alle mankynde if Adam hade not synnede. Of the thrydde, that is the discripsion of hit, what maner a place hit is, hit is to be attended that after Isidor, libro 14°, capitulo iij°, that this worde *Paradisus* turnede from Grewe in to Latyn, is callede *a yorde* or *a gardyn.* In Ebrewe hit is callede *Eden*, that sowndethe *delites*,[14] whiche coniuncte makethe *a gardyne off delites.*[14] Ꝑ. And noo meruayle, for that place hathe euery thynge that is congruente to lyfe. *Isidorus, libro* 14°. Hyt hath salubrite and wholsomnesse, for hit ioyethe in temperaunce, felenge neither coldenesse ne heete, in so moche that a thynge lyffenge there may not dye. A testimony þerof Enoc and Helias lyve ȝitte there incorrupte. *Magister Iohannes Damascenus, libro quarto decimo.* That place hathe also MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *muste*, Cx.
[2] *endes*, Cx.
[3] *contrey*, Cx.; *contrary*, MS.
[4] *or*, Cx.
[5] Cx. adds *and.*
[6] *place*] Added from α. and Cx.
[7] *is as moch to say as*, Cx.
[8] *Hebrewe*] Added from α. and Cx.
[9] *to say*, Cx. (and so generally).
[10] Cx. here, contrary to his custom, retains *y put.*
[11] *is attemperat*, Cx.
[12] *ne*, Cx. (and so often).
[13] *a lyue*, Cx.
[14] The reading of Harl. MS. may be *delices.*

amœnitatem, nam universæ pulcritudinis erat promptuarium, ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Habet et jocunditatem, cui[1] attestatur fructuum dulcedo, sicut in Genes. secundo dicitur:[2] Omne lignum pulchrum visu[3] et ad vescendum suave. Habet et[4] securitatem cui attestatur loci altitudo.[5] *Ranulphus.* [6]Ubi secundum Petrum, capitulo xiij°, aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt; quod autem aliqui dicunt Paradisum attingere lunarem circulum, hoc dicit Alexander, non esse secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sic ejus incomparabilis altitudo et eminentia respectu nostri habitabilis excellens ostenderetur. Sed[7] heu quia, sicut dicit Isidorus, libro xiv.[8] capitulo tertio, loci illius aditus per peccatum primi hominis interclusus est. Septus est enim[9] undique rumphea flammea, id est,[10] muro igneo; ita ut ejus cum cœlo pene jungatur incendium ad

---

[1] *cui*] rei, add. C.D., and so below.

[2] In A., *dicitur* follows *pulchrum*, which gives a different construction. The versions agree with the text as printed.

[3] *visu*] om. B.

[4] *et*] om. A.

[5] C. and D. add here, *Beda.* Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum.

[6] The following sentence is much altered in C. and D. B. omits the title *Ranulphus.*

[7] This and the following sentence are placed almost at the head of the chapter in C. and D., and very much altered.

[8] So B.E. This is the true reference. See lib. xiv. c. 3. A. and the versions give *ix.*

[9] *enim*] om. A.

[10] *id est*] So E. (and also C.); *et*, A.

Þat place haþ faire weder and merþe, for it was þe celer and place of all fairenesse: no manere of[1] tree leseþ þere his leues; no floures þere welkeþ;[2] þere is merþe and swetnesse; of fruyt and trees þat groweþ þere, Genesis, secundo capitulo, it is i-write: Euerich tree þerynne is swete to ete and faire to siȝt. Þerynne is sikernesse and suerte, for þe place is hiȝe. Þ. Petrus, capitulo tertio decimo, seiþ þat þe water of þe greet flood com[3] nouȝt in Paradys. Þei som men seie þat Paradys is hiȝe as þe mone, þat is not sooþ in wordes and in dede; but þat speche is i-saued by an excusacioun of spekynge, þat is i-cleped yperbolica: so þat þei þat so speke þ wolde mene, þat Paradys in heyȝt passeþ all oþer londes. *Treuisa.* So we preiseþ a worldely[4] man Iordan or Iohan, and seiþ þat he was þe beste man þat euere was; and ȝit he was neuere so good as Crist. So in wordes þat sotil men wole[5] deuyne, his menynge[6] trewe and good. But allas, as Isidre[7] seiþ, libro nono, capitulo primo: Oure wey to Paradys is faste i-stopped by cause of þe synne of oure forme[8] fader; it[9] is i-closed al aboute wiþ a firen[10] wal, so þat þe brennynge þerof areche þ to heuene, as som men

TREVISA.

[1] *a.* and Cx. omit *of*.
[2] *welwoþ, a.*; *fade*, Cx., who has *ne* for *no*.
[3] *cometh*, Cx.
[4] *erþe*, MS.; *erthly*, Cx.
[5] *wel*, Cx.
[6] *the menyng is*, Cx.
[7] *Ysidorus*, Cx.
[8] *forn*, Cx.
[9] *a.* omits *it*.
[10] *brennyng*, Cx.

amenite. For hit is the pantre or place of alle pulcritude, where the trees of euery kynde loose not theire beaute, floures fade not, hauenge in hit pleasaunte frute. As hit is schewede in the secunde chapitre of Genesis, where hit is seide, Paradise hathe in hit every tre feyre to siȝhte and swete to eyte. Also hit hathe securite, to the whiche seyenge the altitude of the place berrethe testimonye. Þ. Where, after Petrus, capitulo xiij°, the waters of Noe floode atteynede not to hyt. That somme men seyde Paradise to atteyn to the cercle of the moone, Alexander seythe that not to be trawthe, but after a locucion iperbolicalle, that the altitude and eminence scholde be schewede excellente, and incomparable in the respecte of oure places habitable. But allas, for as Isidorus seythe, lib. ix°, cap. iij°, the entre in to that place was schut by the synne of Adam, whiche is compassede abowte with a walle off fyre; in so moche that the heete of hit is ioynede allemoste with heuyn, to remove

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 25 a.

arcendum homines; supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni, ad arcendum angelos malos.[1]

Cap. XI.

De Asia et ejus provinciis.

Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Refert[2] Isidorus quod Asia ex nomine cujusdam mulieris Asiæ[3] illam quondam inhabitantis denominata sit. Continet[4] plures provincias de quibus hic per ordinem. India ab oriente ortu solis, ab austro oceano, ab occidente Indo flumine, a septentrione Monte Caucaso terminatur. In anno bis habet fruges, gignit homines tincti coloris, avem habet[5] psittacum, et elephantes,[6] piper, ebenum, ebur;[7] et lapides pretiosos, beryllos, chrysoprasos, carbunculos, adamantes,[8] et montes aureos,[9] quos tamen adire propter dracones et griphones et immensorum hominum monstra quasi impossibile est. Est autem India inter omnes

De India.

---

[1] C. and D. add, *rumphea autem arcet homines.*

[2] C. and D. begin thus:—Asia . . . denominata plures continet, etc.

[3] *Asiæ*] om. B.

[4] *Continet*] quæ continet, B.

[5] *habet*] om. C. D.

[6] Elephantes, gestantes ebur et lapides, etc., C.; elephantes, piper et calamum aromaticum, ebur, D.; elephantos, E.

[7] *ebur*] om. B.

[8] *adamantos*, A.

[9] C. and D. stop here till the extract from *Pliny* begins.

wolde wene. Paradys is i-closed wiþ þat wal to holde out mankynde; aungelles stondeþ on þat wal to kepe wel Paradys, þat none euel goostes mowe come þerynne. TREVISA.

De Asia et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum undecimum.

ISIDORUS seiþ þat Asia haþ þe name, and is i-cleped after a womman þat woned þerynne, þat was i-cleped Asia. In Asia beeþ many prouinces and londes, þe whiche I schal descriue and rekene al arewe,[1] and bygynne wiþ Ynde. Inde haþ in þe est side þe sonne risynge, in þe south þe see occean, in þe west þe ryuer of Inde, in þe north þe hulle þat is i-cleped Caucasus; and so Ynde is i-ended. In Ynde beeþ men of colour and hewe i-died. In Ynde is a brede þat is i-cleped phitacus, elephantis, peper, and a tree þat is i-cleped hebanus, euery, and precious stones,[2] beriles, crisoprassus, charbunculus,[3] adamantis, and goldene hulles, to þe whiche it is ful harde for to come for dragouns and grypes, and for dyuers manere of[4] men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Among alle þe londes of þis worlde Ynde is þe[5]

men, that thei comme not to hit, where cherubyn and other goode angelles be putte to remove ylle angelles from thens. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Asia, and of the Prouinces of hit. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum undecimum.

ISIDORUS rehersethe that Asia toke that name of the name of a woman, somme tyme inhabitenge in hit, whiche conteynethe mony prouinces, of whom hit schalle be expressede by ordre. Inde is terminate from the este with the rysenge of the sonne, of the sowthe with the occean, of the parte weste with the floode of Ynde, and of the northe with the hille callede Caucasus. That lond berrethe twyes corne in oon yere, bryngenge furthe men of a spottede colour, hauenge in hit nyȝhtengales, elephauntes, pepir, precious stones, berilles, crisoprassus, carbuncles, adamantes, and hilles of golde. Neuerthelesse hyt is as impossible to go to theyme for dragones and grifynnes and other diuerse wonders of men. Ynde is moste amonge alle oþer regiones Of Ynde and of [the] mervayles of h[it].

[1] *al along*, Cx.
[2] *stones*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] *charbonicles*, *a.*; *carbunclis*, Cx., who has *crisopassis* (sic) just before.
[4] *a.* and Cx. om. *of*.
[5] *a.* and Cx. om. *þe*.

regiones orbis major, opulentior, potentior, populosior, et in stupendis mirabilior. Ibi enim ficus est tam expansa, ut sub unius fici latitudine multæ hominum turmæ possint[1] discumbere.[2] Hoc autem facit ubertas soli, temperies cœli, et abundantia aquæ. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo nono decimo.*[3] India multos habet reges et populos, quorum alii terram excolunt, alii merces evehunt, alii militiam[4] componunt. Alii sapientiæ et disciplinæ intendunt. Ibi sunt[5] arbores tam proceræ, ut cacumen[6] earum a jactu sagittæ vix pertingatur; internodium quoque arundinis in alveo navigabili ternos fert homines. Sunt et ibi homines quinque cubitorum,

De monstruosis hominibus et pigmæis.

qui nec expirant[7] nec languescunt. Sunt[8] ibi satyri et homines monstruosi; sunt ibi et[9] homines cubitalis mensuræ,[10] pigmæi nuncupati, qui in quarto anno ætatis generant et in quinto[11] canescunt. Hi collecto agmine sedentes super arietes pugnant contra grues, quorum[12] nidos et ova confringunt, ne hostes contra se nimis

---

[1] So E.; *possunt*, A.

[2] *Ibi . . discumbere*] placed in C. and D., with alterations, in the latter part of the extract from *Pliny*, ending thus: ut turmas hominum sub se recipiat.

[3] C. and D. contain first the extract from *Pliny*, as far as *intendunt*; then the extract from *Cicero*, then the remainder of the *Pliny* here given, a little altered and abbreviated. The authors of the extracts are not properly distinguished.

[4] *militiam*] A. adds *earum*.

[5] *sunt*] om. B.

[6] *cacumen*] acumen, C.D.

[7] *expirant*] aspirant, B.

[8] *sunt*] sunt et, B.; sed ibi, D.

[9] *sunt ibi et*] So C. and D. (the latter omtting *ibi*); *quia sunt ibi*, A.B.E.

[10] *mensuræ*] staturæ, C. D., which have also other small variations.

[11] *quorum*] om. C.D.

[12] *quinto*] sexto, D.

grettest and most richest,[1] strengest and most ful of peple, yn wonder and meruayles most wonderful. In Inde a crop of a figge tree is so huge[2] and so wide i-sprad, þat meny companyes of men may sitte at þe[3] mete wel i-now þere vnder. Þat makeþ[4] goodnes of þe lond, temprure[5] of wedir and plente of watir. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo decimo nono.* In Ynde beeþ many kynges and peples; som of hem tilieþ[6] londe, som vseþ chaffare and marchaundise, som kny3thode and chyualrie, and som beeþ grete clerkes. In Ynde beeþ trees, þat haueþ coppis[7] as hi3e as me schal schete wiþ an arwe. Also of a gobet bytwene tweie knottes of a rede in Ynde me makeþ a boot, þat ouer depe watres[8] bereþ þre men at ones. In Ynde beeþ men of fyue cubites[9] long, þat eueleþ nou3t,[10] noþer[11] 3ildeþ vp þe breeþ. Also þere beeþ Satyri and oþer dyuers men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Þerynne beþ men of a cubite longe, and beeþ i-cleped Pigmei; þese Pigmei geten children and gendreþ[12] in þe fourþe 3ere, and horeþ[13] in þe fifte 3ere;[14] þei gadereþ a greet hoost and rideþ vppon wetheres and rammes to fi3te wiþ cranes, and destroyeþ her nestes and her eyren;[15] for þe cranes þat beeþ hir enemyes schulde not encrese and wexe to many. Þere beeþ

TREVISA.

moste plentuous, moste in peple, hauenge in hit moste meruayles and wondres. There is a figge tre soe expande, that mony multitudes of peple may sytte vnder the latitude of oon figge tre. The plente of the sonne, the temperaunce of heuyn, and habundaunce of water do cause that. *Tullius de Tusculanis quæstionibus.* Ynde hathe mony kynges and peple. Somme peple tylle the erthe, somme vse marchandise, somme cheuallery, somme intende to sapience and discipline. There be trees of so semely stature that vnnethe the altitude of theym may be atteynede by the schote of an arowe, the space betwene ij. knottes of a reede makethe a bootte for iij. men. There be men also of v. cubites, whiche dye not, neither waile. Also there be men of the measure of a cubite callede pigmeis, whiche gendre in the iiij^{the} yere of theire age, and wexe hoore in the v^{the}: these men gedrede in a multitude, syttenge on wedres, fi3hte ageyne cranes, whose nestes and egges thei breke leste their enmyes be multipliede ouer hugely

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *ryche*, Cx.
[2] *grete*, Cx.
[3] Cx. omits þe.
[4] *causeth the*, Cx.
[5] So also α.; *temperure*, Cx.
[6] *tylleth the*, Cx.
[7] *toppis*, Cx., which may be right.
[8] *a depe water*, Cx. (after *at ones*).
[9] *cubyte*, Cx.
[10] *wexe not seke*, Cx.
[11] *ner*, Cx.
[12] *engenderen*, Cx.
[13] *wexe hore*, Cx.
[14] α. and Cx. om. *3ere*.
[15] *egges*, Cx.

multiplicentur. Sunt[1] ibi gymnosophistæ philosophi, qui per diem[2] quasi immobiles irreverberatis oculis solem contemplantur. Alii quoque capita canina habentes dicti Cynocephali;[3] latratus edunt potius quam voces; ferarum pellibus vestiti, dentibus et unguibus armati venatu et aucupio vivunt. Alii sine ore frondium lanugine tecti solo odore narium vivunt.[4] Alii in juventute canescunt et in senectute nigrescunt. In quibusdam[5] Indiæ montibus sunt homines adversas plantas habentes et digitos octonos in manibus.[6]

Uxor sepelietur cum marito.

Tullius, de Tusculanis quæstionibus. Est quædam gens in India, ubi cuilibet viro licitum est plures habere uxores; sed mortuo marito conveniunt[7] omnes conjuges, et quæ ex illis comperta[8] est a vivente marito plus dilecta fuisse[9] illa cum marito mortuo sepelietur viva,[10] et hoc habet[11] pro solatio et præconio.

De arboribus Solis et Lunæ.

Petrus, capitulo cxcvj^to.[12] Arbores solis et lunæ sunt in India, de quarum pomis vescentes sacerdotes per quingentos annos vivebant. Dicebantur autem arbores solis, quia quamcito radius solaris sum-

---

[1] *Sunt*] sunt et, B.

[2] *diem*] totum diem, C.D., which add *et* after *immobiles*.

[3] *Et alii cum caninis capitibus dicti Cynocephali*, C.D.

[4] *Alii sine ore ... vivunt*] Wholly omitted in C.; D. only omits *narium*.

[5] *quibusdam*] B. adds *vero*.

[6] *In quibusdam...manibus*] Wholly omitted in C.D.

[7] So A.B. (but the latter omitting *conjuges*), and D. (but omitting *omnes*); *convenient*, E.C.

[8] *comparata*, A.; *probata*, C.D.

[9] *a vivente plus dilecta extitisse*, C.D.

[10] *cum marito viva sepelietur*, B.

[11] *habet*] om. A.

[12] The extract from *Petrus* is omitted in C.D.

besy philosofres þat byholdeþ on þe sonne al þe day long. Also somme haþ hedes as it were houndes, and þe voys þat þey makeþ is liker to an [1] houndes berkynge þan to a [1] manis voys; þey beeþ i-cloþed in wylde bestes skynnes and i-armed wiþ hir owne teeþ and nayles, and lyueþ by huntynge and haukynge. Oþere þere beeþ þat haueþ no mouth, and lyueþ by odour and smelles, and beþ i-cloþed in mosse and hery tuftes þat groweþ out of treen.[2] Oþer horeth in ȝonþe, oþer[3] wexeþ blak in elde. In som hulles of Ynde beeþ men þat haueþ[4] soles of hir feet ouertorned and eyȝte fyngres in oon honde. *Tull. de Tusc.* 90.[5] In oo contray of Ynde euerich man haþ many wyfes; but whan þe housbond is deed, þe wyfes schulle goo to gidres, and loke whiche of hem was best i-loued of þe housbonde; and sche schal be beried wiþ hym and putte[6] on erþe[7] quyk[8] alyue; and in þat contray þat is acounted þe fairest hap and [fortune, and also][9] worschippe þat eny wyf myȝte haue. *Petrus*, 196.[10] In Ynde beeþ trees þat beeþ i-cleped þe trees of þe sonne and of þe mone; preostes þat ete of þe apples of þilke trees lyued[11] fyue hondred ȝere. Þey were i-cleped þe trees of þe sonne, for euerich of hem quaked

TREVISA.

on theyme. Also there be men hauenge hedes lyke dogges, whiche be callede Cynocephali,[12] berkenge more like to dogges then to the voices of men, clothede with skynnes of wylde bestes y-armede with teithe and talaundes, lyffenge by hawkenge and huntenge. Also somme men lyve there oonly by odour. Also somme of that cuntre wexe hoore in yowthe and blakke in their age. Also in somme partes of Ynde be men hauenge holowe fyngers in their hondes. *Petrus, capitulo* 196.[5] There is a peple in Ynde to whom hit is lawefulle to haue mony wyfes; but, the man dedde, alle his wifes comme to gedre, that wife that was luffedde beste of hym schalle be buryede with hym, hauenge that for a grete solace. *Petrus*, 196. The trees of the sonne and of the moone be in Ynde, by the apples of whom prestes lyffede by v^c. yeres. Thei were namede the trees of the sonne and of the moone, for as soone as the sonne sende

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 25 b.

[1] *a.* om. *an* and *a*; Cx. has *to berkynge of houndes.*
[2] *trees*, Cx., and so elsewhere.
[3] *and*, Cx.
[4] Cx. adds *the.*
[5] The reference should be to Cic. *Tusc. Quæst.* lib. v. c. 27.
[6] *i-put, a.*
[7] *in the erthe*, Cx.
[8] Cx. adds *and.*
[9] Added from Cx., who places *acounted* after *fortune.*
[10] 19°, 6, MS. and Cx.
[11] *lyuen*, Cx.
[12] *Cenophali*, Harl. MS.

mitatem alicujus earum tangebat, statim tota tremebat et responsa dabat circumstantibus. Similiter et de arboribus lunæ fiebat. Per has arbores interdictum fuit Alexandro Magno, ne aliquando intraret Babylonem. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Ophir[1] est insula Indiæ, ubi est auri copia, ad quam de mari Magno[2] transitur per mare Rubrum.[3]

Cap. XII.

Isidorus libro quartodecimo, capitulo octavo.[4]

Ostendit Isidorus quod[5] Parthia regio propter invictam Parthorum virtutem, qui nomen suum Assyriis et Medis diffuderunt, solebat continere totam terram Assyriæ, Mediæ, Persidis,[6] Carmaniæ; quæ extenditur in longitudine a mari Caspio usque ad mare Rubrum, et in latitudine ab Indo flumine usque ad flumen[7] Tigris, quod est principium Mesopotamiæ. *Trogus,*

---

[1] *Ophir*] Offir, A.B.D.; Offyr, E.; Ofir, C.—C. and D. omit the *est* following.

[2] *Mediterraneo*, C.D.

[3] *navigio*, add. C.D.

[4] The text and versions are both erroneous. The true reference is to Isid. lib. xiv. c. 3. § 8. (Op. vol. iv. p. 145. Ed. Arev.)

[5] The first three words omitted in B.C.D.

[6] *Persidis*] Persidæ, A.C.E. This barbarous form occurs elsewhere in the MSS. of the text and versions, but is corrected in the text.

[7] So B.C.D.E.; *fluvium*, A.

and schoke as sone as þe sonne beem touched his cop,[1] and answered men þat stood aboute. Þe same doynge was of þe trees of [þe][2] mone. By þese trees þe grete kyng Alexander[3] was forbode, þat he schulde neuere come in Babylon. *Isidorus libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an ylond of Ynde; þerynne is greet plente of golde, and þe passage þerto out of þe grete see[4] is by þe Rede see. TREVISA.

De Parthia. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum duodecimum.

ISIDORUS schewe þ þat Parthia[5] þat kyngdom, for myȝt and strengþe of men of þat lond, þat her name spredde into þe londes Assyria[6] and Media, and[7] was i-woned[8] to conteyne al þe lond of foure contrees, of Assyria, of Media, of Persida,[9] and of Carmania; þe which lond Parthia strecche þ in lengþe from þe see þat is i-cleped Caspius anon to þe[10] Rede see; and in brede from the ryuer of Ynde to þe ryuer þat is i-cleped Tigris. Þat is þe byginnynge of þe lond þat is i-cleped Mesopotamia. *Trogus, libro decimo, capitulo*

furthe his beames and towchede the altitude of eny of theyme, alle the tre movede and ȝafe answeres to men stondenge abowte. Hit was doen in lyke wyse to the trees of the moone. Hit was interdicte by those trees to kynge Alexander, that he scholde not entre in to Babylon. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an yle off Ynde, where is plente of golde, to whom hit is goen from the grete see by the Redde see. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Parthia. Isidorus, libro 14°. *Capitulum duodecimum.*

ISIDORUS schewethe that the region callede Parthia for the vertu invincible of men of that region, whiche diffusede theire name to men of Assyria and of Media, was wonte to conteyne alle the londe of Assyria, of Media, of Persida, and of Carmania, whiche is extendede in longitude from the see Caspius vn to the Redde see, and in latitude from the floode of Inde vn to the floode of Tigris, whiche is the begynnenge of Mesopotamye. *Trogus, libro quinto.* Men of Parthia be

[1] *toppe*, Cx. (and possibly this may be the MS. reading.)
[2] *þe*] Added from α. and Cx.
[3] *Alysaundre*, Cx.
[4] *þe grete see*] *Grece*, Cx. (confusing *c* and *t*.)
[5] The MS. looks like *Parchia*, and so Cx. prints it; but *c* and *t* are identical (or nearly so) in MSS.
[6] *of Assiria*, Cx.
[7] *and*] Added from Cx.
[8] *woonte*, Cx.
[9] Cx. omits *of* before *Media* and *Persida*.
[10] *Caspius vnto the*, Cx.

Parthi. *libro xlj°*.[1] Parthi Scythico[2] sermone *exules* dicuntur; nam in primis Scytharum exules fuerunt, et regno a Medis ad Persas translato quasi præda victorum extiterunt. Unde et inter orientales populos usque ad Macedonicum regnum obscuri mansere. Deinde triumphato per Macedones oriente Macedonibus servierunt, sed tandem cum Romanis imperium orbis[3] diviserunt. Hi mores Scytharum, de quibus pulsi fuerant, contraxerunt; unde et illis sunt arma plumea,[4] ingenia tumida, seditiosa, fraudulenta. Quippe viris violentiam, mulieribus mansuetudinem deputant. Semper aut in domesticos aut in externos motus eorum sunt inquieti. Natura sunt taciti, ad faciendum magis quam ad loquendum prompti. Proinde secunda[5] sicut adversa silentio tegunt, principibus metu non pudore parent; in libidinem projecti varia uxorum libidine delectantur. Singuli plures uxores habent; nullum[6]

---

[1] 44, A.; 45, D. The versions again differ from these. The text is correct. See Just. xli. 1, *sqq.*

[2] *Scythico*] Scitice (*i.e.* Scythicæ, for Scythiæ), A.

[3] *orbis imperium*, B.

[4] *plumea*] plumbata, C.D. (Justin, xli. 2, has *loricæ plumatæ sunt.*)

[5] *secunda*] prospera, C.D.

[6] C. and D. insert before this word, *Girald., d.* 17.

quinquagesimo primo.[1] Parthi,[2] þe men of Parthia, in þe langage of þe contrey Scythia, beeþ i-cleped outlawes;[3] for in the byginnynge of men of Scythia Parthi, þat beeþ men of Parthia, were outlawes; and whan þe kyngdom was i-take from þe men of Media to þe men of Persida, þan were þe Parthi as it were pray to þe victores, and were as it were vnknowe amonge men of the est londes, and anon[4] vnto þat[5] tyme þat men of Macedonia bycom[6] kynges and lordes of londes. Þan afterward þey serued þe Macedonyes, when þe Macedoynes were victours in þe est londes. But at þe[7] laste þey were partyners wiþ the Romayns, and deled lordschipe wiþ hem. Þese Parthi vseþ[8] þe maneres of men of Scythia, þat put[9] ham ouȝte som tyme; þerfore her armes and wepene beeþ verray[10] swellynge wittes, gileful aspies. Men þey acounteþ violent and wommen mylde, and euere þei beeþ vnesi to hir [owne][11] neiheboures oþer to[12] strong men. Þey beeþ comounliche stille and litel of speche, more redy for to doo þan for to speke. Þerfore þey holdeþ pryue good happes and boonchief, as wel as yuel[13] happes and meschief. Þey beeþ buxom[14] to here lordes for drede and not for schame. Þei beþ al i-cast[15] to leccherie wiþ hire owne wifes; eueriche

TREVISA.

callede owtelawe after the speche of men off Scythia. For thei were firste owtelawes in the realme translate from men of Media to men of Pers[i]a, beenge to theyme as a pray of victores. Wherefore thei dwellede obscurely amonge men of the este vn to the realme of Macedony inhabitate. After that, the victory hade by Macedones, thei did seruyce to theyme; but at the laste they diuidede the empire of the worlde with the Romanes. Thei exercisede the maneres and consuetudes of men of Scythia, from whom thei were expellede, the wittes of whom be timorous, fulle of fraude, deputenge violence to men and mansuetude to women, whiche be other in malice amonge theyme selfe, other with oþer men. Stylle in nature, moore prompte to do ylle than to speke, couerenge thynges aduersaunte with silence, proiecte in the lustes of lechery, [þei] haue grete delectacion in women. Euery man hathe

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 26 a.

[1] *quinto*, Cx.
[2] *Perchii*, Cx.
[3] *of Scicia*, Cx., who omits all following till *were outlawes* (by clerical or typogr. error). The MSS. of both versions usually write *Scicia*.
[4] *and anon*] om. Cx.
[5] *þat*] the, Cx.
[6] *bycam*, Cx.
[7] Cx. omits þe.
[8] *vseden*, Cx.
[9] *put*] Added from α. and Cx.
[10] *fethery*, Cx., probably rightly; the text, with which α. agrees, is corrupt; perhaps *þei ben* has been omitted.
[11] *owne*] Added from α. and Cx.
[12] So α.; þe, MS.; *to straunge*, Cx.
[13] So α. and Cx.; *of yuel*, MS.
[14] *buxom*] obedient, Cx.
[15] *disposed*, Cx.

delictum adulterio gravius puniunt. Quamobrem fæminis suis consortia, aspectus, et convivia virorum[1] interdicunt. In cibis[2] sunt parci, nulla carne nisi venatica vescuntur. *Giraldus distinctio xvij.* Gens illa postquam a Seleuco Rege defecit sub Arsace mansit, a quo et Arsacidæ dicti sunt, qui illos primum legibus informavit,[3] milites[4] legit, castra munivit, urbes firmavit. Tandem Arsaces præfatus regnum Hyrcanorum suo adjecit imperio. Inter quos, succedentibus aliquot post hoc[5] regibus, Mithridates filius Mithridatis post interfectionem Crassi Romani consulis regnum per quadraginta tres[6] annos tenuit; in quibus multas claras victorias habuit,[7] sicut infra suo loco dicetur. *Trogus, libro xlj°.*[8] Parthorum gens inter Scythas et Medos media est; inter quos servi plurimum[9] abundant, quia nunquam manumittuntur; liberi eorum omni tempore

---

[1] *virorum*, om. B.; *consortia virorum, convivia et aspectus*, C.D.

[2] *cibo*, C.D.

[3] *instruxit*, B.

[4] *milites*] militem, C.E.

[5] *hæc*, D.

[6] So A. (and the versions); lxiij., B.; xlvj., C.D.E.

[7] *habuit*] After this word E. adds *Ranulphus*.

[8] 14, C.D., wrongly. See Just. xli. 2.

[9] *plurimum*] om. C.

of hem haþ many wifes; no trespas among hem is i-pun[i]sched so grevousliche as spouse breche [1] by here lawe. [Þerfore] [2] þey forbedeþ hire wifes [3] siȝt festes and companye of oþer men; þei leueþ scarsliche and by litel mete, and eteþ no flesche but venysoun. *Giraldus, dist.* 17. Þilke men, after þey lefte þe kyng Seleucus,[4] woned vnder þe kyng Arsaces; and þerfore þey were i-cleped Arsacide. Þat kyng Arsaces tauȝt hem first lawes; he gadered knyȝtes and bulde castelles, citees, and strong walled townes; and at þe [5] laste Arsaces þe kyng ioyned þe kyngdom of Hyrcania to his emperie, and so men of Hyrcania longed to his empere. Among þe whiche aftirward among oþer kynges come Mithridates. Mithridates [6] sone after þe slauȝter of Crassus, consul of Rome,[7] regned and helde þe kyngdom þre and fourty ȝere, in þe whiche tyme he dede many viage, and [8] many faire victories hadde, as hit is declared ynnere yn þis place.[9] *Trogus, libro quadragesimo primo.*[10] Parthi, þe men of Parthia, beeþ in þe myddel bytwene þe Scitis,[11] men of Scythia, and Medes, men of Media. That londe of Parthi haþ [12] many bonde men amonge hem, for þey beeþ neuere i-made fre; here fre men alwey rideþ on hors,[13] and hir

Trevisa.

---

mony wifes. They punnysche noo synne more than advoutery, therefore thei enterdite to theire wifes felawschip and festes of men. Whiche be of litelle meyte, eitenge noo flesche but that is geten with huntenge. *Giraldus, d.* 17. After that peple failede vnder kynge Seleucus thai dwellede vnder kynge Arsace, of whom thei be callede Arsacides; informenge theym firste with lawes he gedredde a companyee of knyȝhtes, makenge castelles and citees. At the laste the foreseide Arsaces adiecte to his empyre the realme of Hircanes. Amonge whom, somme kynges succedenge after that, Mithridates the sonne of Mithridatis holdede that realme by xliij. yere after the dethe of Crassus, consul of Rome; in whom he hade mony clere victories, as hit schalle be schewede in his propre place. *Trogus, libro* 41. The peple of Parthia is betwene the men of Scythia and Medes, amonge whom seruauntes be habundante, for thei haue not their manumission; the fre men of theym

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *aduoultrye,* Cx.
[2] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] *open,* add. Cx.
[4] *Soleucus,* MS.
[5] þe] om. Cx.
[6] *Mithridates*] Added from *a.* and Cx. The MSS. of both versions write *Metridates* or *Mitridates.*
[7] MS. adds *he.* The scribe has misunderstood the sense.
[8] *viages and had,* Cx.
[9] *within forth in his place,* Cx.; *þis* (in text) seems a clerical error for *his.*
[10] 14, Cx. See note on text.
[11] *bytwene Scitas,* Cx.
[12] *that londe. And Parchii haue,* Cx.
[13] *riden alway on horsbak,* Cx.

equis vectantur; servi pedibus[1] incedunt. Et in equis quidem[2] bella peragunt; conviviaque[3] publica et[4] officia privata adeunt. Liberos suos equitare, sagittare[5] summa cura docent. Ut quisque eorum locuples[6] est, ita plures in bello equites[7] regi suo repræsentant. Cominus præliari aut urbes obsidere nesciunt; pugnant enim[8] procurrentibus equis aut terga dantibus. Sæpe enim in ipso fervore certaminis fugam simulant, et cito post pugnam repetunt, ut incautius insequentes vulnerent. Signum illis in prælium[9] non tuba sed tympanum.[10] Nec diu pugnare possunt; intolerabiles quippe forent, si tanta illis esset vis et perseverantia quantus est impetus. Sepultura illis est bestiarum laniatus, et[11] ossa sola sepeliunt.

---

[1] B. omits *pedibus*.
[2] *quidem*] quidam, B.
[3] B. omits *que*.
[4] *et*] om. E.
[5] *et sagittare*, B.C.
[6] *locuples*] locuplex, A.C.D.E.
[7] B. omits *equites*.
[8] B. omits *enim*.
[9] *prælium*] So B.C.D.E.; *prælio*, A.
[10] A.C.D. add *est*.
[11] *et*] unde et, E.

bonde men goop on foot.[1] And in bataile þey fiȝtep on hors. Þey goop to priue offis and to comyn feestes, but þey techip besiliche here children to ride and to schete,[2] and euerich of hem by his richesse and power fyndep to hir power[3] horsmen[4] in bataile for to fiȝte. Þei konnep nouȝt fiȝte in no[5] comyn manere, noþer þei konnep nouȝt bysege castelles noþer strong walled townes; þey fiȝtep on hors rennynge[6] in ful cours and turnynge aȝe, and ofte in hardest and strengest fiȝt þey feynep for to flee and sodeynliche turnep and risep[7] aȝen, þat þey mowe þe slyloker[8] here enemyes wynne and slee. In bataile þei vsep taboures and no trompe, and þey mowe not dure[9] longe for to fiȝte. No men schulde hem awelde and wiþstonde,[10] and[11] þey were as stronge and stalworþe to dure, as they beep angry[12] to rese;[13] hire burienge is wonderful; for bestes [al] to halep and terep and etep þe[14] flesch; and [þey] buriep onliche þe bones.

Trevisa.

---

ryde alleweies on horses, the seruauntes goe on foote, vsenge horses in batayles, goenge to commune festes and priuate offices, techenge the childre liberalle with grete attendaunce to ryde and to schote, amonge whom euery man schalle presente to the kynge certeyne men of armes in batelles after the extent of his rychesse. Whiche can not fiȝhte and put seges to cites, for thei fiȝhte theire horses rennenge, other elles fleenge and schewenge theire backes, feynenge oftetymes theym to flee, and after that repetenge fiȝhte, that thei may hurte men folowenge theym indiscretely. A tympan is a melody to theyme in batelles, and not a claryon, whiche may not fiȝhte longe. For thei scholde be intollerable and invincible, if they myȝhte haue the vertu of perseueraunce after theire impetuosite. The deuourenge of bestes is a sepulture to theyme, and after that they do take theire boones to sepulture or beryenge.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *a foote*, Cx.
[2] *schote*, Cx.
[3] *king*, *a.*; *kynde*, Cx.
[4] *horsmen men*, MS., by mere clerical error; (not *a.* or Cx.)
[5] *more*, *a.*; *in comyn*, Cx.
[6] *ernyng*, *a.*
[7] *fyght*, Cx.
[8] *slylyer*, Cx., who places *theyr enemyes* after *slee*.
[9] *endure*, Cx., and so usually.
[10] *wiþ stonde* (and so frequently), MS.
[11] *yf*, Cx.
[12] *and hasty*, added in *a.* and Cx.
[13] *fyghte*, Cx.
[14] *for beestes teren, eten, and al to halen theyr flessch, and they burye only but the bones*, Cx., from whom the words in brackets, wanting also in *a.*, are supplied.

Cap. XIII.

De Assyria et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.

Assyria. Notandum est quod[1] Assyria ab Assur filio Sem dicta est, qui eam post diluvium primum inhabitavit. Hæc ab ortu habet Indiam, ab austro Mediam, ab occidente Tigrim fluvium, a septentrione montem Caucasum ubi

Media. sunt portæ Caspiæ. *Trogus, libro xlij°.* Media[2] condita est a Medo filio Ægei, regis Athenarum, qui æmulans virtutes Jasonis vitrici sui Mediam[3] urbem in honorem Medeæ matris suæ constituit caput regni Medorum. Hæc Media ab aquilone tangit Parthiam, ab ortu Indiam, ab occasu Chaldæam, ab austro Per-

Persia. sida.[4] *Isidorus, libro xiiij°.* Persis a Perseo nominatur qui[5] eam conquisivit et nobilem ex ignobili fecit.[6] Quæ habet ab ortu Indos, ab occasu sinum maris Rubri, ab aquilone Mediam; ab austro Carmaniam tangit. In qua

---

[1] *Notandum est quod*] om. C.D.; *est* only omitted in E.

[2] *Media*] Medea, A.B. In C. and D. the following sentences are compressed as follows: "Media et Per-" sida a regibus Medo et Perseo " cognominatæ sunt, qui illas pro-" vincias bellando aggressi sunt. E " quibus Media ad occasum Par-" thiam tangit, a septentrione Ar-" meniam, a borea Caspios, a meridie " Persidam videlicet. Persida autem " (D. omits *autem*) ab ortu tangit " Indos, &c." as in text.

[3] *Mediam*] So E.; *Medam*, A. Justin (xlii. 4. Ed. Grævv.) has *Medeam.*

[4] *Persida*] Persidam, MSS., and Persida for Persis below. See note on c. 12.

[5] *quia*, A.

[6] *fecit* after *nobilem* in B.

De Assyriis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum tertium decimum. TREVISA.

TAKE hede þat Assyria haþ þe name of Asur Sem his sone, for he was þe firste þat woned þerynne after Noes flood. Þis londe Assyria haþ in þe est side Inde, in þe south Media, in þe west þe ryuer Tigris, and in þe north þe hille þat is i-cleped Caucasus. Þere beþ þe ȝates of Caspy; þere þe hilles beeþ longe and narwe. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.* Egeus was kyng of Athenis; Medus was Egeus[1] sone, and folowed þe dedes of Iason þat was his owne stepfader, and belde[2] þe cheef citee of Media, and cleped þe citee Media also, in worschippe of his moder þat was i-cleped Media. Þat londe Media haþ in þe north side Parthia,[3] in þe est Inde,[4] in þe west Caldea, in þe south Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persida is i-nempned and haþ þe name of Perseus þat conquered þat londe, and made it a worþy lond þat was raþer[5] vnworþy. Persida haþ in þe est syde[6] Inde, and[7] in þe west þe Rede see, in þe norþ Media, and[8] in þe south Carmania.

Of Assyria, Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum tertium decimum. MS. HARL. 2261.

HIT is to be aduertisede that Assyria toke his name of Assur the sonne of Sem, whiche inhabite firste hit after Noe floode. Assyria hathe on the este parte of hit Ynde, of the sowthe Media, of the weste parte the floode of Tigris, of the northe the grete hille callede Caucasus, where be partes of Caspius hilles. *Trogus, libro* 42. Media was made of Medo son of Egeus kynge of Atheynes, which, folowenge the vertu of Iaso his victrix, made that cite callede Media in to the honor of Medee his moder, whiche cite he made the hede and principalle place of that realme. That cuntre of Media towchethe Parthia of the northe parte, and of the este Ynde, of the weste Caldea, and of the sowthe parte Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persia was namede of a man callede Persius, that conquerede hit, whiche hathe of the este parte to hit men of Ynde, of the weste side parte of the Redde see, of the northe parte Media, towchenge Carmany of the sowthe parte: in

Assyria. Media. f. 26 b. Persia.

---

[1] *his*, add. in *a*. (not Cx.)
[2] *buylt*, Cx.
[3] *the see*, Cx.
[4] So *a*. and Cx.; *ende*, MS.
[5] *rather*] to fore, Cx.
[6] *syde*] om. Cx.
[7] *and*] om. Cx.
[8] *and*] om. *a*.

Perside exorta est primum[1] ars magica sub Nemproth gigante, qui post confusionem linguarum terram illam adiens docuit Persas ignem colere et solem,[2] qui lingua eorum El dicitur. Hujus[3] terræ metropolis aliquando[4] fuit Elam sic dicta ab Elam filio Sem, quæ postmodum[5] dicta est Elymais,[6] et nunc vocatur Persepolis;[7] de qua fit mentio in libro Machabæorum.[8] Et ab isto Elam Persæ[9] vocabantur Elamitæ, sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum.[10] Mesopotamia jacet inter Tigrim ab ortu et Euphraten ab occasu. Incipit autem a septentrione inter Montem Taurum et Caucasum quam a meridie sequitur Babylonia.[11] *Isidorus, libro xv.* Babylonia, quamvis[12] postmodum diceretur pars Chaldææ, primitus tamen tam insignis fuit[13] ut Chaldæa, Assyria, Mesopotamia, in ejus nomen transirent. Cujus caput fuit urbs Babylon, quam Nemproth gigas fundavit. Sed Semiramis regina[14] eam postmodum[15] ampliavit. *Petrus, c. xxxvij°.*[16] Babylon est proprium[17] nomen civitatis; Babylonia est[18] nomen regionis, quamvis[19] unum pro

Mesopotamia.

Babylonia.

---

[1] *primo*, B.

[2] *qui post . . . . dicitur*] qui docuit Persas colere ignem et solem, C. and D., which wholly omit from *Hujus . . . . Apostolorum*.

[3] *hujus*] So A.B. (and Trevisa); *cujus*, E. (and Harl. version).

[4] *aliquando*] quondam, E.

[5] *postea*, B., and so below.

[6] *Elymais*] Elamaida, A.B.E.

[7] *P. vocatur*, A.B., which latter omits *in* before *libro*.

[8] A. adds *cap. vj.* See 1 Macc. vi. 1.

[9] E. adds *quondam* after *Persæ*.

[10] *sicut . . . Apostolorum*] om. A.B.; added from E.

[11] *Babylonia*] A.C.D. add *deinde Chaldea, deinde Arabia*.

[12] *quamvis*] licet, C.D.

[13] C.D. add *regio*.

[14] *regina*] A. and C. add *Assyriorum*.

[15] *eam postmodum*] om. E.

[16] A. does not notice that a new citation begins. C. has *Petrus, cap.* 174.

[17] So A.; *Babilon proprie*, B.C.D.E. See Harl. version. Both readings are good.

[18] *est*] om. E.B., which last also omits *nomen*.

[19] *quamvis*] licet, D.

In þat Persida bygan first wicchecraft in Nemproot[1] þe geauntes tyme, þat after þe spredinge of þe tyme[2] of many langage[3] and tonges went into Persida, and tauȝt men of þat londe to worschippe þe fire and þe sonne, þat is i-cleped in her langage El. Þe cheef citee of þat londe was i-cleped Elam, after Elam Sem his[4] sone; þat citee was afterwarde i-cleped Elamaide, and is now i-cleped Persipol.[5] Of þat citee speke þ Holy Writt in libro Machabæorum, and of þat citee þey hadde þe name, þat[6] were sometyme i-cleped Elamyte in Actibus Apostolorum. Mesopotamia lyth bytwene Tigris in þe est side and Euphrates in þe west side, and bygynneþ out of þe north bytwene the tweye hulles Taurus and Caucasus, and haþ Babylon[7] in þe south side. *Isid. libro quinto decimo.* Þei Babylonia were afterward i-cleped a parte of Caldea; hit was first so solempne þat it conteyned[8] Assyria, Caldea, and Mesopotamia, þre londes. Þe cheef citee of Babylonia was Babylon, þe citee þat þe geant Nemprot[9] bulde;[10] and Semiramis þe quene aftirward made þat citee more. *Petrus, capitulo* 37. Þe citee is i-cleped Babylon, and þe londe Babylonia; þey þat oon be wel ofte i-take for

Trevisa.

---

[1] *Nemprot, a.*; *Nembroth,* Cx.
[2] Cx. om. *of þe tyme.*
[3] So MS. and *a.*; *langages,* Cx., probably rightly.
[4] *Sem his*] Semmes, Cx.
[5] *Persipolis, a.,* Cx.
[6] *they,* Cx.
[7] The MSS. of both versions usually have *Babilon* and *Babilonia.*
[8] *conteyneth,* Cx.
[9] *Nemport, a.*; *Nemproth, the geant,* Cx.
[10] *buylded,* Cx.
[11] *Persipolis,* Harl. MS.
[12] *Babilionia,* Harl. MS.

whiche Persia wycche crafte began firste under Nemproth the gigante, whiche goenge to that londe after the confusion of tonges tauȝhte men of Persia to worschippe fire and the sonne, which is callede El in the langage of theyme. The chiefe place of whom was callede Elam somme tyme, of Elam the sonne of Sem whiche was callede afterwarde Elamadia, now callede Persepolis,[11] of whom mencion is made in the booke of Machabees. And of this Elam men of Persia were callede Elamites, as hit is schewede in the Actes of Apostles. Mesopotamy lyethe betwene Tigris of the este and Euphrates of the weste, begynnenge from the northe betwene the hilles Taurus and Caucasus, whom Babylon folowethe from the meridien. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Thauȝhe Babylon was callede afterwarde a parte of Calde, fyrste hit was so nowble that Caldea, Assyria, and Mesopotamia wente into the names of hit, the hede of whom was that cite callede Babylon whom Nemproth the gigante made, but the qwene Semiramis made hyt more large. *Petrus, capitulo* 37°. Babylon is the propre name of the cite, and Babylonia[12] the name of the region, thauȝhe the oon be put ofte for that other,

MS. Harl. 2261.

Ars magica incipit.

Mesopotamia.

Babylon.

altero sæpe ponatur; sed Babel[1] nomen est turris. *Orosius,*[2] *libro ij°.* Babylon more castrorum fuit mænibus paribus per quadrum disposita; quorum latitudo fuit quinquaginta[3] cubitorum, altitudo quater tantum. Longitudo muri ab angulo ad angulum sexdecim[4] milliaria tenuit, ambitus murorum quadringentorum octoginta[5] stadiorum fuit, hoc est sexaginta quatuor milliaria. Materia muri fuit ex cocto latere et bitumine interstrato,[6] ita quod neque igne neque aqua dissolvi posset. Portæ urbis centum, fossa extrinsecus late patens; fluvius[7] Euphrates per medium urbis fluxit;[8] quam tamen cepit et destruxit Cyrus rex Persarum, sicut infra dicitur.[9] *Ranulphus.* De hujus[10] urbis reliquiis, secundum Hieronymum, ædificatæ sunt duæ urbes in Perside;[11] et[12] locus Babylonis nunc desertus est[13] et feris plenus.

Chaldæa. Chaldæa, quasi Cassidæa, a Caseth filio Nachor fratris Abrahæ sic dicta,[14] regio est magna juxta Euphraten, in cujus campo Sennar ædificabatur[15] turris Babel. *Josephus, libro primo.*[16] Cujus altitudo ducentos sep-

---

[1] *Babel autem*, C.D.; *Babel est nomen*, B.

[2] So C.D.E.; *Oracius*, A.; *M. Orosius*, B. This extract is much compressed and in part transposed in C.D. In A. and B. there is some trifling variation and transposition, but little compression.

[3] 15, C.D.

[4] *xlij.*, A.

[5] B. omits *octoginta*; and (with A.) has *quinquaginta et unius* for *sexaginta quatuor* just afterwards, where C. and D. have 15. The text is right. See Oros. lib. ii. c. 6.

[6] *interstructo*, C.

[7] *amnis*, B.

[8] *fossa . . . fluxit*] Omitted in C., which also omits *cepit et.*

[9] The last part of the sentence stands thus in A. and B.: "Verun- "tamen hanc urbem demum de- "struxit Cyrus rex Persarum." Similarly C.D., omitting *veruntamen.*

[10] *hujus*] cujus, A.B.C.D.

[11] The MSS. here have the correct form (not *Persida*).

[12] *et*] ita quod, E.

[13] So A.C.D.; *est* after *plenus* in B.E.

[14] *sic dicta*] dicta est (after *Cassidæa*), E.

[15] *ædificatur*, C.

[16] *secundo*, B.; no number attached in C.D. See Joseph. *Ant.* lib. i. c. 4. § 3.

þat oþer; bote þe tour is i-cleped and hatte [1] Babel. *Orosius,*[2] *libro secundo.* Babylon was i-buld as a castel, and i-walled wiþ foure walles square al aboutes ;[3] eueriche wal was fifty cubites in brede, and foure tyme[4] so moche in heiþe ; þe lengþe of euery[5] wal from oon corner to anoþer was sixtene myle. Þe walles were all aboute foure hondred and foure score forlong, þat is foure and fourty[6] myle. Þe walles were i-made of brend tile and of glewe in stede of morter, so þat [noþer][7] water noþer fire myȝte ham to schifte noþer to dele.[8] In þe[9] citee were an hondred ȝates and a diche wiþ oute, þat was fer i-seie; þe ryuer Euphrates ran by þe myddel of þe citee þorwoute. Neuerþeles Cyrus, kyng of Persida, tooke þat citee aftirward and destroyed hit, as it is inner more[10] i-write. Ierom seiþ þat of þe releef of þis citee were i-buld two grete citees in Persida, and þe place of Babylon is now wildernesse and ful of[11] wylde bestes. Caldea, as Cassidea, haþ þe name of Casseth, Nachor his sone. Nachor was Abraham his broþer. Caldea is a grete kyngdom bysides Euphrates; in Sennaar,[12] a hile[13] of þat kyngdom, þe toure Babel was i-buld. *Josephus, libro primo.* Þe[14]

TREVISA.

but Babel is the name of the towre. *Orosius, libro secundo.* Babylon was disposede as with egalle walles after the maner of castelles by a quadrante, the latitude of whom was of l^{ti} cubites, the altitude in iiij. tymes so moche, the lenghte of the walle from cornelle to corner holdede xvj. myles. The compasse of the walles was of iiij^{c}. and lxxx^{ti} forlonges, whiche dothe make lj^{ti} myles. The mater of whiche walle was made of sodde tyle stones mixte with pycche, in so moche that thei myȝhte not be dissoluede with fire or water. Thro the myddes of whiche cite the floode Euphrates did flowe. Whom Cyrus kynge of Perse toke and destroyede, as hit schalle be expressede in his place. Þ. Off the levenges of whiche cite, after the seyenge of Seynte Ierom, ij. cites were made in Persida, so that the place of Babylon is nowe deserte, and fulle of wilde bestes. Caldea is seyde as Cassidea, of Casethe the sonne of Nachor broþer of Abraham, whiche is a grete region nye to Euphrates. In the filde of Sennar the towre of Babelle was edifiede. *Josephus, libro primo.*

MS. HARL. 2261.

Caldea.

Turris Babellæ. f. 27 a.

[1] *called and mamed,* Cx.
[2] *Orocius, α.* ; *Oracius,* MS. and Cx.
[3] *aboute,* Cx.
[4] *tyme*] added from Cx.
[5] So also *α.* ; both forms occur in both MSS.
[6] *fifty, α.*
[7] *noþer, α.* ; *nether,* Cx.; om. MS.
[8] *myghtè hem schyfte ne departe,* Cx.
this, Cx.
[10] *inner more*] afterward, Cx.
[11] *ful of*] om. *α.*
[12] *Semaar,* MS., *α.*, and Cx.
[13] So *α.* ; *hild,* MS., apparently ; *felde,* Cx.
[14] *þat, α.* and Cx.

septuaginta duo[1] passus tenet, latitudo vero tanta erat ut prope eam aspicientibus longitudo videretur minor. *Ranulphus.* Secundum quosdam hæc turris habuit in altitudine tria milliaria,[2] sed secundum Ivonem Carnotensem in chronica sua habuit in altitudine quinque milliaria et pene ducentos passus, in latitudine[3] quatuor milliaria.[4]

De Arabia. Arabia ad austrum Chaldææ posita, ab ortu habet Persida,[5] ab occasu sinum maris Rubri. Terra quidem thurifera, myrrham habens, cinnamomum, et avem phœnicem; cujus terræ portio versus Eurum dicitur Saba, quæ[6] a Saba filio Chus sic[7] nuncupata est, quam[8] a tribus lateribus mare Rubrum cingit. *Josephus, libro*

Mons Sina. *secundo.* In hac Arabia in partibus Madian est Mons Syna, cujus pars est mons Oreb; mons quidem pabulosus[9] et excelsus, sed propter scopulos præruptos pene inaccessibilis. Illuc primus omnium Moyses greges duxit. Dicitur etiam mons terroris et fœderis; quia populo Israel,[10] circa radices ejus commoranti, Deus in-

---

[1] So B. (and the versions); 270, A.; *duo millia centum lxxij.* (so written), E.; 2272 *passus continet,* C.D.

[2] *milia,* A.

[3] A. adds *vero.*

[4] The whole of the previous sentence is omitted in C.D.

[5] *ad austrum habet Persidem,* C.D., omitting the rest of the sentence.

[6] *quia,* A.

[7] *sic*] om. C.D.

[8] *hanc autem Sabam,* C.D.

[9] *babilosus,* B.; *scopulosus,* C.D.

[10] *Israel*] om. C.D.

toure Babel was i-buld two hondred þre score and twelf paas hiȝe, þe lengþe somdel þe[1] lasse to hem þat byhelde it nyh, for þe brede was so moche. Ꝑ. Som men seiþ þat þis[2] tour was þre myle hiȝe, but Iuo Carnotensis seiþ in his cronicle þat þis toure was fyue myle and almost two hundred paas hiȝe and foure myle brode. Ꝑ. Arabia is i-sette by south Caldea, and haþ in þe est side Persida, and in þe west side þe Rede see. In Arabia is store, mir, and canel; and a brid,[3] þat hatte[4] fenix. Þe norþ est porcioun of Arabia hatte[5] Saba, [and is i-cleped[6] Saba][7] after Sabacus[8] his sone. Þis Saba is i-clipped[9] in þre sides wiþ þe Rede see. *Josephus, libro secundo.*[10] In þis Arabia, in þe contray [of][11] Madyan, is þe hil[12] Syna. Þe mount of[13] Oreb is a partie of þe mounte of Synay, and is hiȝe, and haþ grete plente of gras and of lese; but hit is harde to come þerto for hiȝe rokkes and skarres. Moyses was þe firste man þat ladde þyder bestes. Hit is i-cleped also þe mount of couenaunt and of drede: for God all myȝty þere vppon made ponderynge and liȝtnynge, and ȝaf þe lawe to þe folk of Israel, þat were at þe hulle

TREVISA.

The altitude of whom was cclxxij. passes, the latitude of whom was so huge that hit apperede to men beholdenge hit that hit was more brode than longe. Ꝑ. After somme men that towre hade iij. miles in altitude. But after Iuo Carnotense, in his cronicle, hit hade v. miles in altitude and allemoste ij^{c}. passes, and iiij. myles in latitude. Araby, y-sette at the sowthe parte off Caldea, of the este parte hathe Persida, of the weste parte the[14] Redde see. A plentuous londe of encense, hauenge myrre, cinamome, and a brydde callede fenix. *Josephus, libro secundo.* The mownte of Synay is in that Arabye in the partes of Madiam, a parte of whom is callede Oreb, a plentuous hille and highe, but now hit is allemoste inaccessible for schrubbes and broken stones. Moises brouȝhte his schepe to þat place firste of men: hit is callede also the mownte of fere and of luffe; for oure Lorde apperede to Moyses in hit with thundre and liȝhtenge, the peple of Israel taryenge at the foote of hit where oure Lorde ȝafe lawe. Wherefore men hade not

MS. HARL. 2261.

Fenix.

Montes Syna et Oreb.

[1] þe] om. Cx.
[2] *the*, Cx.
[3] *byrde*, Cx., who writes *phenyx*.
[4] *that is called*, Cx.
[5] *is named*, Cx.
[6] *called*, Cx.
[7] [...] added from *a*. and Cx.
[8] *Saba Chus sone*, Cx.
[9] *byclipped*, Cx.
[10] *primo*, Cx.
[11] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[12] *the mount of*, Cx.
[13] *of*] om. Cx.
[14] *the*] *of the*, Harl. MS.

tonuit, coruscavit,[1] legem dedit. Unde non nisi mundi et purificati[2] accedere audebant.

Mons Libani.

In finibus etiam Arabiæ, versus circium, est mons Libani qui distinguit abinvicem[3] Arabiam, Judæam,[4] Phœnicem;[5] mons quidem summæ altitudinis, ita ut juges nives ex aliqua sui parte continens[6] navigantes in mari magno ad varios portus dirigat. Est etiam mons[7] salubritatis et fecunditatis; nam cypressi, cedri, arbores, et herbæ ibidem crescentes thus et gummi[8] distillant, redolentiam exhalant, quibus morbidi sanantur, venena[9] fugantur.

Syria unde dicitur.

Syria, a quodam Siro inhabitatore nepote Abrahæ sic vocata, jacet inter fluvium[10] Euphraten ab oriente et mare magnum ab occasu; habetque a septentrione Armeniam et Cappadociam, ab austro sinum Arabicum, et continet in se multas provincias, scilicet Commagenam, Palæstinam, Phœnicem,[11] Canaan, Idumæam, Judæam.[12] Hujus provinciæ caput quondam fuerat Damascus quam ædificavit Eleezer[13] servus Abrahæ, cujus

---

[1] *coruscans*, A.
[2] *ibidem*, add. C.D.
[3] *abinvicem*] om. C.D.
[4] *Judæam*] om. B.
[5] *et Phœniciam*, C.D.
[6] *continens*] in se tenens, C.D.
[7] C. and D. add *summæ*,
[8] *gummi*] gummam, C. (not D.)
[9] *venena*] et venenosa, C.D.
[10] *flumen*, C.D.
[11] *Phœniciam*, C.D.
[12] The chapter in A.C.D. ends here.
[13] *Eleazer*, B.

foot; so þat no man durste neyhe,[1] but he were purified and i-made all[2] clene. *Trevisa.* Fenix is a wonder brid, for of[3] al þat kynde is but oon alyue. R. In þe contray of Arabia toward Circius is þe hil þat is i-cleped Mons Libani. Þat hille departeþ þre londes atwynne,[4] Arabia, Iude, and Fenix.[5] Þat hul is ful hiȝe, so þat snowe[6] lyeth all wey in som side of þat hille. [And it][7] is certeyn merk and token to schipmen þat seileþ in þe grete see and ledeþ hem to dyuers moupes and hauenes. Hit is an hille of helþe and of[8] plente; for cipres, cedres treen, and herbes groweþ þeron, þat droppeþ gom and smelleþ swetely;[9] by þe whiche treen, gom, and swetnesse seke men beeþ i-heled and venyme destroyed. Syria haþ þe name of Cirus Abrahams neuew, and lieth bytwene þe ryuer Euphrates[10] in þe est side and the grete see in the west side, and haþ in þe norþ side Armenia and Cappadocia, and in þe soupe side þe see þat is i-cleped Arabicus, and conteyneþ many prouinces þat beeþ Commagena, Palestina, Fenys, Canaan, Idumea, Iudea þat is þe Iuerie. Damascus was somtyme þe chief citee of þat prouince.[11] Eleezer[12] Abraham's seruaunt

TREVISA.

audacite to attempte to goe to hit, but men devoute and clene in theire conscience. The mownte of Libanus is in the costes of Arabye abowte the sowthe weste, which dividethe a sundre Araby, Iewery, and Fenicea. Whiche is an hille of excellente altitude, in so moche that hit, counteynenge grete habundaunce of snawe, directethe men saylenge in the see to diuerse portes. Hyt is also an hille of whollesomnesse and of fecundite. For trees of cipres, cedre trees, and oþer yerbes groenge there, distille encense and gumme ȝiffenge mellifluous redolence, þro whom seke men be healede, and venomes be expellede. Syria, callede by that name by Sirus the inhabitator of hit, lyethe betwene the floode Euphrates[10] of the este parte, and the grete see on the weste parte, hauenge in the northe parte Armenye and Cappadocia,[13] on the sowthe parte the see of Arabye, conteynenge in hit mony prouinces, Commagena, Palestina, Fenices, Canaan, Idumea, and the Iewery. The principal place of that province was Damascus, whom Eleezer the seruaunte of Abraham edifiede. Rasyn,

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mons Libani.

Syria.

[1] *approche to it*, Cx.
[2] *all*] om. Cx.
[3] *of*] added from α. and Cx.
[4] *a sonder*, Cx.
[5] So also α.; *Fenys*, Cx., which is better; and so MS. below.
[6] MS. repeats *þat* (clerical error).
[7] Added from Cx
[8] *of*] om. Cx.
[9] *swete*, α., Cx.
[10] *Eufrates*, MSS., as usual.
[11] So Cx.; *prouinces*, MS. and α.
[12] *Eleuser*, Cx.
[13] *Capodocia*, Harl. MS.

rex Rasyn semper præbuit opem decem tribubus[1] Israel contra reges Juda. Et interpretatur Damascus *fundens sanguinem*, quia ibi Cayn occidit Abel et abscondit eum in sabulo fluminis.

Cap. XIV.

De regione Judææ.[2]

Judæa regio est Syriæ, sed pars[3] Palæstinæ, a Juda, filio Jacob, sic dicta; quæ tamen prius dicebatur Cananea,[4] a Cham, filio Noe, sive a decem Cananæorum gentibus per Judæos expulsis seu contritis.[5] *Petrus.* Judæa diversis modis accipitur. Quandoque pro tota terra promissionis, et tunc dicitur a Judæis, non a Juda; sub hoc sensu intelligitur[6] quod "Pompeius magnus "fecit Judæam tributariam." Quandoque sumitur pro regno Juda; ut ubi,[7] "Audiens autem quod Archelaus

---

[1] *tribibus*, E.

[2] The Latin title is found in the English versions and Cx.; but there is no heading to the chapter in B. C.D.E.; A. has *De Judæa.*

[3] A. adds *est.*

[4] *Canaan*, A.

[5] *seu contritis*] om. C.D.

[6] *intelligatur*, A.

[7] *ubi*] So E., distinctly; but the other MSS. seem to have *ibi*; *ut ibi, Audivit Joseph quod Archelaus*, C.D.

bulde and made þat citee Damascus. Rasyn kyng of Damascus[1] helpe[2] awey þe tenþe lynage[3] of Israel aȝenst the kynges[4] of Iuda. Damascus is to menynge[5] *schedynge blood*, for þere Caym slowh Abel and hyd hym in þe sonde. TREVISA.

De regione Iudææ. Capitulum quartum decimum.

IVDEA is a kyngdom of Syria a party of Palestyna, and haþ þe name of Iudas Iacobus[6] sone, and was somtyme i-cleped Cananea of Cam Noe his sone, [o]þere[7] of þe ten manere of[8] peple þat þe Iewes putte oute of þat londe. *Petrus.* Iudea is i-take in many manere; oþer whiles[9] for all þe lond of byheste, and þan he[10] haþ þe name of þe Iewes and not[11] of Iudas; and so it is i-take in þis speche: "þe grete "Pompeius made Iudea tributaries;" and oþer while it is i-take for þe kyngdom[12] of Iuda; and so it is i-write of Ioseph, þat "whan þey[13] herde þat Archelaus regnede in

---

[1] *Damaske*, Cx., but *Damascus* below.
[2] *halp*, *a.* (not Cx.)
[3] *ten lynages*, Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *kyng*, MS.
[5] *as moche to saye as*, Cx. (who makes similar alterations everywhere).
[6] *Iacobs*, *a.* Cx.
[7] *oþer*, *a.*; *eyther*, Cx.
[8] *a.* om. *of*.
[9] *while*, Cx., who omits *all*.
[10] *it*, Cx., and similarly often.
[11] Om. Cx. (typ. error?)
[12] *royamme*, Cx.
[13] *þey*] he, Cx.

the kynge of whom, ȝafe helpe alle weies to the x. tribus of Israel ageyne the kynges of Iuda. And Damascus is callede by interpretacion, *schedenge bloode*. For Caym did slee Abell þer, and hidde hym in the sonde of the floode. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Region of the Iewery. Capitulum quartum decimum.

IUDEA, whiche is callede the Iewery, is a region of Syria, but a parte of Palestine, callede Iudea of Iuda the sonne of Iacobe, whiche was callede afore Cananea of Cham the sonne of Noe, other elles of x. peple of Chananees expulsede and contrite by the Iewes. *Petrus.* Iudea is taken in diuerse maneres; hit is taken other while for the londe of promission, and then hit commethe of this worde, Iudeus, and not off this worde, Iuda; and so hit is vnderstonde in that sense that Pompeius Magnus made the Iewery tributary to hym. Other while hit is taken for the realme of Iuda, as Ioseph herenge that "Archelaus reignede in the Judea. f. 27 b.

" regnaret in Judæa,"[1] &c. Quandoque sumitur pro sola sorte Judæ, ut ibi,[2] "Judæa et Jerusalem, nolite timere." *Giraldus, distinctione tertia.* In hac Judæâ est terra promissionis, cujus longitudo ad litteram intellecta[3] est a Dan usque[4] Bersabe,[5] et secundum Hieronymum in epistola ad Dardanum[6] vix continet centum sexaginta[7] milliaria terræ illius. Latitudo vero est a Joppen usque Bethleem, et vix continet quadraginta sex milliaria terræ illius.[8] Sed secundum librum Numerorum Judæa habet hunc ambitum; ad meridiem mare Salinarum quod Mortuum dicitur, et inde per Syna et[9] Cadesbarne usque torrentem Ægypti qui fluit in mare magnum[10] versus occidentem; inde ad aquilonem habet montem Taurum; ad orientem montem Libani et principia Tiberiadis et Jordanis, qui[11] ad radices montis Libani oriuntur. Inde Jordanis fluens in mare Mortuum facit limitem inter Judæam et Arabiam. Hæc autem terra Judæa fuit patribus nostris promissa, sed non omnino[12] possessa, teste Apostolo ad Hebræos, qui

Ambitus Judææ.

---

[1] *Juda*, A.

[2] So the MSS., but *ubi* would be a better reading. See above.

[3] *intellecta*] om. B.

[4] C.D. add *ad*; and so below.

[5] E. has *Daan* and *Bersabee*, but trivial variations of this kind will not always be noticed.

[6] *secundum..Dardanum*] om. C.D.

[7] C.D. omit *centum*.

[8] *terræ illius*] om. C.D.

[9] *Syna et*] om. C.D.

[10] The text proceeds thus in C.D.: *Habet autem terra promissionis ad orientem montem Libani et flumina Tiberiadis et Jordanis, quæ*, &c.

[11] *qui*] So A.B.E.; *quæ*, C.D., which seems better.

[12] *omnino*] om. B.

" Iudea he dredde[1] for to goo þider;" and somtyme it is i-take onliche for þe lot of[2] þe lynage of Iudas, and so spekeþ Holy Writt and seiþ: " Iudea and Ierusalem drede " ȝow[3] nouȝt." *Gir.*[4] *Dist. tertia.* In þis Iudea þe lond of byheste þe lengþe þerof is from[5] Dan to Bersabe, and Ierom seiþ, in epistola ad Dardanum, þat it is scarseliche an hondred and sixty myle in lengþe, and þe brede is from Ioppen to Bethlem scarsliche sixe and fourty myle of þat lond. Bote, secundum librum Numerorum, Iudea is byclipped in þis manere aboute, and haþ in þe souþe side[6] þe Dede se. And þan he strecchef forþ by Syna and Cades-barne noon[7] to[8] þe streem of Egipte þat ȝerneþ[9] westward in to þe grete see, and in þe norþ side þe hulle þat hatte mons Taurus,[10] and in þe est þe hille[11] mons Libany [and the byginnynge of the see Tiberiadis, and of þe streem Iordan þat springeþ at þe foot of mont Libany],[12] boþe Tiberiadis and Iordan. Þan Iordan renneþ in to þe Dede see and departeþ Iudea and Arabia.[13] Þe[14] londe Iudea was byhote[15] to oure forme[16] fadres, but nouȝt al i-had, as Poul seiþ, ad Hebræos, "Al

TREVISA.

" Iewery." *Gir. Dist. tertia.* The londe of promission is in the Iewery, the longitude of whom is vnderstonde after the letter, From Dan to Bersabe; and after Seynte Ierom, in his epistole to Dardanus, hit conteynethe vnnethe clx. myles of that cuntre. The latitude of hit is from Ioppen vn to Bethleem conteynenge vnnethe xlvj. myles of that region and cuntre. And after the boke of Nowmbres the Iewery hathe this circuite; at the meridien the Dedde see, and after that by Sina and Cades Barnee vn to the ryuer of Egipte, whiche flowethe in to the grete see. The londe of promission hathe the grete see to the weste parte of hit, and an hille callede Taurus at the northe, and on the este parte the mownte callede Libanus, and the begynnenges of that water callede Tiberiades, and of the water off Iordan, whiche haue their originalle principle at the foote of the mownte callede Libanus. Then that floode of Iordan floenge in to the Dedde see makethe admision betwene the Iewery and Araby. This londe of Iuda was promisede to oure faderes, but not utterly possessedde,

MS. HARL. 2261.

Jordanus fluvius.

[1] *drad*, Cx.
[2] So *a.* and Cx.; *for*, MS.
[3] *ye*, Cx.
[4] *Gregor.*, MS.
[5] *from*] fro, Cx., and so below.
[6] *side*] om. Cx.
[7] *anon*, *a.*
[8] *Cades berne vnto*, Cx.
[9] *corneþ*, *a.*; *renneth*, Cx.
[10] *is named mount*, Cx.
[11] *þe hille*] om. *a.*
[12] Added from *a.*; and so Cx., nearly.
[13] *Arabie*, Cx.
[14] *þis*, *a.* Cx.
[15] *byhoote*, Cx.
[16] *forn*, Cx.

dicit, quod "hii omnes mortui sunt, non acceptis pro-"missionibus." Ex quibus liquet aliam esse terram promissionis, in qua est cœlestis Jerusalem; et aliam in qua terrestris Jerusalem, per quam cœlestis est figurata.[1] Hæc itaque terra Judæa opulenta est, frugifera, vinifera,[2] aromatica; cedris, cypressis, balsamis, olivis, malogranatis, palmis, ficubus,[3] melle et lacte abundans, quæ in medio sui velut in umbilico terræ[4] urbem habet Jerusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo*

Jerusalem. *primo.*[5] Hanc urbem asserunt Judæi Sem, filium Noe, id est, Melchisedech, post diluvium fundasse, et Salem nuncupasse,[6] quam postmodum tenuerunt Jebusæi; ex quibus sortita est vocabulum Jebus, sicque ex duobus vocabulis copulatis, Jebus et Salem, composita est Jerusalem, quæ postmodum a Salomone dicta Jerosolima.[7] Hæc etiam[8] a poetis corrupte vocata est Solima. Et

---

[1] *quæ figura est cœlestis*, C.D., which have other trifling variations.

[2] *vinifera*] om. C. (not D.)

[3] *ficubus*] om. C.D.

[4] *terræ*] om. C.D.

[5] D. (not C.) omits the heading of the extract.

[6] *nuncupasse*] vocasse, C.D., which also arrange some words differently, and contract the whole period.

[7] In this place the orthography of the MSS. (which fluctuate, however, as usual between *Ierosolima* and *Ierosolyma*), is preserved in order to exhibit Higden's views respecting the derivation of the different forms of the word *Jerusalem*. For the matter itself, see Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 17. The ordinary Latin orthography (*Hierosolyma, Hierusalem*) arises from an error which is as old as the time of St. Jerome, if not of Josephus.

[8] *autem a poetis corrupta*, B., which is perhaps better.

"þey beeþ [1] deed and fenge [2] nouȝt þe byhestes." And so it moot [3] be, þat þere be tweye [4] londes of byheste, erþeliche and goostlyche. In þe [5] oon is heuenly Ierusalem; and in þe [5] oþer, erþely Ierusalem; [by the whiche erthly Iherusalem] [6] þe heuenliche [7] is bytokened. Þis lond Iudea is riche and fruitful, and haþ plente of wyne and of spicerie, of cedres, of [8] cipres, of baume, of olyues, of pomgarnet, of palmes, of figes, of mylk, and [9] of hony; and haþ in þe myddel, as it were in þe nauel of þe erþe, þe cite Ierusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* Þe Iewes seiþ þat Sem, Noes sone, þat is i-cleped Melchesedek,[10] also made and bulde [11] þe citee Ierusalem after Noes flood, and cleped [12] hit Salem, but aftirwarde a peple þat were i-cleped Iebusei woned [12] þerynne and cleped [12] þe citee Iebus. Of [13] þilke tweye names Iebus and Salem is i-made oo [14] name Ierusalem. Afterward Salamon cleped þe [15] citee Ierosolyma,[16] and poetis þat spekeþ [17] schortliche clepeþ þe citee Solyma

TREVISA.

thapostle testifienge, that "thei diedde alle, the promissiones " not accepte;" by the seyenge of whom hit may be concludede an other londe to be the londe of promission in whom hevenly Ierusalem is, and an other in whom terrestrialle Ierusalem is, by whom heuenly Ierusalem is figurede. Also that londe of Iuda is plentuous of cornes, of wynes, of thynges aromaticalle, of cedre trees, cipre trees, bawmes, oliues, pomegranardes, palme tres, figge trees, habundaunt in hony and mylke, whiche hathe the cite off Ierusalem in the myddelle parte of hit. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* The Iewes afferme and say, Sem the sonne of Noe, other wyse called Melchisedech, to haue made that cite after the floode of Noe, whom the Iebuseis kepede after that tyme, by whom hit hade this name, Iebus; and so these ij. wordes, Iebus and Salem, copulate to gedre, this worde, Ierusalem, resultethe by composicion; whiche was callede afterwarde of Salomon, Ierosolima; callede also

MS. HARL. 2261.

Jerusalem.

[1] *ben*, Cx.
[2] *receyueden*, Cx.
[3] *muste*, Cx.
[4] *two*, Cx.
[5] *that*, Cx. twice, and so often.
[6] Added from Cx., who modernises a little.
[7] *þe*] *a.* and Cx. add *Ierusalem.*
[8] *of*] So *a.* and Cx.; *and*, MS.
[9] *a.* omits *and*, (not Cx.)
[10] *Melchisedech*, Cx. (quid ?), but *Melchisedech* below.
[11] *buylded*, Cx.
[12] *cleped, woned, cleped*] Replaced in Cx. by *called, dwellyd, named*, and so often.
[13] *So of*, *a.* and Cx. (which is perhaps better).
[14] *one*, Cx.
[15] *þat*, *a.*
[16] *Iherosolyma*, Cx., who also always prints *Iherusalem.*
[17] *a.* adds *þerof.*

postea ab Imperatore Aelio Hadriano vocata est Ælia,[1] quam majori murorum ambitu ampliavit et dilatavit; ut sic locum Dominici sepulcri, quod olim extra urbem fuerat, includeret. *Ranulphus.* Verumtamen Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelum[2] presbyterum, videtur velle quod urbs Salem vel Salim quam incolebat Melchisedech, sit alia quam Jerusalem, ubi dicit Salem esse oppidum juxta Scythopolim, quod usque hodie dicitur Salem; et ostenditur ibi[3] palatium Melchisedech. De qua dicitur in fine Genesis quod transivit Jacob in Salem, civitatem Sichem, quæ est in terra Canaan. *Willelmus de Regibus.* Fons intra urbem nullus,[4] sed cisternis, ad hoc preparatis, latices colliguntur. Nam urbis ipsius situs ab austro[5] montem Syon habens, molli clivo versus boream[6] descendens,[7] sic disponitur ut pluvia stillans nequaquam lacum[8] faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cisternis excipiatur,[9] vel saltem, per portas

---

[1] After this, C. and D. omit all before *Habet quoque in se regio*, which occurs near the end of the chapter. The MSS. have *Helio*, *Helia* (or *Helyæ*), and *Adriano*. Compare the English MSS.

[2] So B.E., rightly; but the name is blundered in E. and the versions.

[3] *ubi ostenditur*, B.

[4] B. adds *est*.

[5] *aquilone*, A.B. (and both the versions). These variations are instructive, and show that we have a later and better text in E., which seems to be made from the author's final corrections. On the even now disputed point of the position of Sion, see Williams in Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 1009, who maintains in common with most modern writers that "Sion "proper is the S.W. hill of Jeru- "salem."

[6] *austrum*, A.B. (and the versions).

[7] *ascendens*, B.

[8] *lutum*, B. (and so Harl. version).

[9] *excipitur*, B.

in her schort speche. And after þat Aelius[1] Adrian þe Emperoure cleped þat citee Aelia,[1] and walled hit, and made it more aboute; so þat oure Lordes sepulcre, þat was somtym wiþ oute þe citee, is now[2] wiþ ynne. R. Neuerþeles[3] it semeþ þat Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelium[4] presbyterum, wil seie, þat Salem oþer Salim, þat Melchisedek made and woned ynne, was anoþer citee þan Ierusalem. Þere he seiþ þat Salem is a toun beside Scythopolim,[5] þat ȝit hat[6] Salem; and þerynne is i-seie þe paleys of Melchesedek and þerof spekiþ Holy Writt, Genesis; and seiþ þat Iacob wente into Salem þe citee of Sichem, þat is in þe londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* No welle is wiþ ynne Ierusalem, but watres be i-gadred, and i-kept in cisternes; for þe citee is so i-sette þat he haþ in þe north side þe mount[7] Syon, and is disposed þat þe water, þat falleþ dounward and soupward wiþ þe pendaunt[8] toward Ierusalem, takeþ no defoul,[9] but is clene i-now, and renneþ into þe citee, and no fen makeþ, and[10] renneþ into cisternes, as[11] it were lakes and welle stremes. And somme

Trevisa.

---

corruptely of poetes Solima; and afterwarde callede Aelya[1] by Aelius[1] Adrian themperoure, whom he amplifiede with more circuite of walles, in so moche that he includede the place and sepulcre of oure Lorde, whiche was somme tyme withowte the walles of that cyte. R. But truly Seynte Ierom in his epistole to Eugenius expressethe, seyenge that the cyte callede Salem or Salim, in whom Melchisedech dwellede, to be an other cite from Ierusalem, nye to Scythopolis,[12] whiche is callede Salem vn to this tyme presente, where hit is schewede the palice of Melchisedech, of whom hit is seyde in the ende of Genesis that Iacob wente in to Salem, a cite of Sichen, whiche is in the londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* There is noo welle within the cite, where waters be collecte, but in cestrens and veselles ordeynede þerfore. For the site of that cyte, hauenge the mownte of Syon of the northe descendenge towarde the sowthe with a softe dependence, is so disposede that þe reyne reynenge makethe not clay, but as lytelle ryuers, whiche is receyvede in cestrens, or elles

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 28 a.

---

[1] *Helius*, and *Helia*, MSS. and Cx.
[2] *nowe closed*, Cx.; *now i-closed*, a.
[3] *Netheles*, Cx.
[4] *Evangelistum*, Cx. See note on text.
[5] *Sitopolym*, MS.; *Sicopolim*, Cx. a.
[6] *hat*] is called, Cx. (as usual).
[7] a. and Cx. add *of*.
[8] *dependaunt*, Cx.
[9] *fylthe*, Cx.
[10] *and maketh no fylthe, but*, &c., Cx.
[11] *as þey*, a.; *as though*, Cx.
[12] *Sitopolis*, Harl. MS.

effluens, torrentem Cedron adaugeat.[1] Igitur in ipso vertice montis Syon[2] fuit arx seu turris pro decore et defensione. In declivo montis fuit templum quasi medium inter arcem et inferiorem urbem. Ideo[3] sæpe Scriptura vocat Jerusalem filiam Syon, quia sicut filia protegitur a matre et ei subditur, sic civitas inferior subdita fuit templo et arci. Constantinus magnus erexit aliquando in ea ecclesiam Sancti Sepulcri, quæ nunquam ab hostibus fidei[4] tulit injuriam; quod creditur contigisse pro igne cœlesti, qui quolibet anno in vigilia Paschæ[5] lampades ibidem illuminat; quod quidem miraculum, quando inceperit, incertum habetur. Hanc urbem cinxit aliquando rex Salamon muro triplici non solum ad munimentum, sed etiam ad distinctionem inhabitantium; ita ut infra primum murum circa montem

---

[1] *adauget*, B.
[2] *Syon*] om. B.
[3] *Unde*, B.
[4] *fidei*] om. B.
[5] B. adds *ibidem videtur et.*

Trevisa.

þerof renneþ into þe brook þat is i-cleped torrens Cedron, and makeþ þe brook torrentem Cedron wexe and bewel[1] þe more. In þe top[2] of mont Syon was a real[3] toure[4] for feiren[e]s[5] and defens. In þe side of mont Syon was þe temple as it were in þe myddel bytwene the toure and þe citee; þe citee was lower þan þe toure, and þerfore ofte Holy Writt clepeþ[6] Ierusalem þe douȝter of Syon. For as a[7] douȝter is meynteyned and defended by þe moder and sogett[8] to the moder; so þe citee was lower and sogett to þe temple and to þe tour. Also[9] þe grete Constantinus arered þere somtyme þe chirche of þe Holy Sepulcre. Mysbyleued men mysdede neuere þat chirche; and þat is, as me troweþ,[10] for euery ȝere an[11] Ester eue comeþ fire from[12] heuene, and tendeþ and liȝteþ þe lampes þerynne; but whan þat miracle bygan first, hit is vncertayne and vnknowe.[13] Salamon þe kyng wallede þis citee somtyme wiþ þre walles al aboute; neuerþeles nouȝt onliche for strengþe, but for distinccioun[14] of dyuers manere men þat woned þere; þe[15] preostes and clerkes þat serued in þe temple, also[16] þe kyng

---

MS. Harl. 2261.

the water descendenge by the ȝates of the cite increasethe the ryuer of Cedron. Therefore þer was a towre in the altitude of the mownte of Syon for worshippe and defence. In the dependence of whiche hille was a temple, as in the mydde part betwene the towre and the cite under hit, wherefore Scripture callethe ofte tymes Ierusalem the doȝhter of Syon; for like as a doȝhter is protecte of the moder, and subiecte to her, soe the cite inferior is subiecte to the temple and to the towre of Syon. The nowble and grete Constantyne made in hit a chirche off Seynte Sepulcre, whiche hathe not suffrede iniury vn to this tyme of enmyes of the feithe, whiche men suppose to be causede for heuenly fyre, whiche dothe illumyne the lampes there of on the vigile of Pasche or Ester, whiche miracle is incerteyne as to the begynnenge off hit. Kynge Salomon compassede that cyte with a threfolde walle not oonly for defence, but for the distinccion of men inhabitenge hit, soe that the temple of

De cœlesti igne Jerusalem in vigilia Paschæ.

---

[1] *be wel* (divisim), MS. and Cx. and *a*.
[2] *toppe or sommet of the*, Cx.
[3] *ryal*, Cx.
[4] *a*. adds *y-made*.
[5] *fayrenes*, Cx.
[6] For this once Cx. has left *clepeth* in his own text.
[7] *a*. omits *a*. (not Cx.)
[8] *subgette*, Cx., and so below.
[9] *Also*] Given as the last word in the previous sentence in *a*. and Cx.
[10] *as men suppose*, Cx.
[11] an] *on*, Cx., who has *euen*.
[12] *fro*, Cx.
[13] *vnknowen*, Cx.
[14] So *a*. and Cx.; *destruccioun*, MS.
[15] *þe*] So Cx.; *þat*, MS.; *a*. has some omissions here.
[16] *and also*, Cx.

Syon esset templum Domini, mansiones quoque hebdomadariorum[1] sacerdotum ac ministrorum, domus etiam regia[2] cum mansionibus domesticorum. In secundo ambitu habitabant potentes viri et prophetæ, unde legitur in libro Regum quod Olda prophetissa habitabat in Jerusalem in secunda, id est, in secunda distinctione. In tertio ambitu[3] habitabant opifices et plebes. *Ranulphus.*

Mons Oliveti.

Juxta[4] Jerusalem, ad orientem templi, erat mons Oliveti, propter abundantiam olivarum sic vocatus; qui ab Augustino super Johannem vocatus est mons chrismatis et unctionis, mons luminis et pinguedinis, mons refectionis et medicaminis, eo quod fructus olivæ sit unctuosus, luminosus, deliciosus. Signanter autem dicebatur mons luminis, quia[5] oriente sole recepit[6] lumen a sole per diem, a luminaribus templi per noctem. In quo quidem monte Salamon aliquando, mulierum amore infatuatus, erexit delubra et excelsa, sicut patet ij. Regum x°. De quo etiam monte Christus cœlos[7] ascendit, et in

---

[1] There is little doubt that this is the true reading, but the MSS. curtail the word strangely, thus: *ebd^{a}rio^{s}*.

[2] *et ministrorum ac domus regia*, B.

[3] *distinctione*, B.

[4] *Et juxta*, A.

[5] *eo quod*, B.

[6] *recipit*, B.

[7] *cœlos*] om. B.

and his mayne woneþ [1] wiþ ynne þe firste wal by þe mount [2] Syon. Wiþ ynne þe secounde wal woned prophetes and myȝty men and stalworþe; so spekeþ Holy Writt, þat Elda [3] prophetissa woned in Ierusalem in þe secounde distincciounn.[4] Wiþ ynne þe þridde woned þe comoun peple and craftes men [5] in þe wal.[6] [R.][7] Faste by Ierusalem, in þe norþ side of þe temple, is þe mount of Olyuete for plentee of olyues. Seynt Austyn super Iohannem clepeþ it þe hulle of crisma [8] and of vncciouu, þe hille of liȝt and of fatnes, þe hille of medicyne and of fedynge; for þe fruit [9] of olyue is ful of liȝt, likynge, and vnctuous; and it was specialiche þe hille and þe mont of liȝt, for it was beschyne wiþ [10] liȝt of þe sonne al day and wiþ liȝt of the temple al nyȝt. In þat hille Salamon, whan he wax [11] mad and al by schrewed for loue of wommen, he bulde temples in [12] hiȝe places for mametrie; so seiþ Holy Writ, secundo Regum, decimo capitulo.[13] Out of þat mount Crist steihe [14] vp into heuene; and in þat mount he schal

Trevisa.

---

oure Lorde was within the fyrste walle abowte the mownte of Syon, the mansiones also of the ebdomadaries, prestes, and minstres, the kynges palice, with mansiones for his men. Nowble men and prophetes inhabite within the secunde walle, as hit is redde in the boke of Kynges that Olda prophetissa dwellede in Ierusalem in the secunde distinccion. Men of crafte and commune peple dwellede in the thrydde distinccion and circuite of the walles. R. The Mownte of Oliuete is nye to Ierusalem, at the este parte of that temple, callede Oliuete for habundaunce of oliues, whiche is callede by Seynte Austyn on Iohan,[15] the hille of creme and of noy[n]tenge, the hille of liȝhte and of fattenes, the hille of refreschenge and of medicyne, in that the frute of oliues is vnctuous, luminose, and delicious. Whiche was callede significatiuely the mownte of liȝhte, for the sonne schynenge hit receyvede liȝhte of hit, and of the temple by nyȝhte. f. 28 b. In whiche mownte Salomon thro þe luffe of women made hie places and chirches in hit, as hit is expressede Regum x°. From whiche mownte Criste ascendede to heuyn,

MS. Harl. 2261.

Mons Oleveti.

---

[1] *dwelleden*, Cx. (the preterite seems right,) and similarly below.
[2] *mount of*, α. and Cx.
[3] *Olda*, Cx.
[4] So α. and Cx.; *destruccioun*, MS.
[5] *men of crafte*, Cx.
[6] α. and Cx. omit *in þe wal.*
[7] R. added from α. and Cx.
[8] *crisme*, Cx.
[9] *fruyȝt*, α.
[10] *wiþ*] *by*, α.
[11] *wax*] *wexe*, Cx.
[12] *in*] and, Cx.
[13] So MS. and α.; but Cx. absurdly has *Romanos* 2°, 1° *capitulo.*
[14] *steiȝ*, α.; *ascended*, Cx., who omits *vp.*
[15] *Iohñ.*, Harl. MS. (which elsewhere writes *Iohñes* for *Johannes.*

fine ibidem judicabit orbem. In hujus montis pede oritur torrens Cedron qui fluit in vallem Josaphat, inter cujus ripam et montem fuit hortus ille quem Christus totiens intravit ad orandum, in quo etiam[1] horto[2] captus fuit. Juxta quem fuerat aliquando villula Gethsemane,[3] et in ipso monte[4] erat viculus sacerdotum qui dicebatur Bethphage, et in latere montis erat urbs Lazari, Marthæ, et Mariæ, nomine Bethania. *Hugutio.* Ad septentrionalem plagam montis Syon est mons Calvariæ, ubi crucifixus est Christus, qui, lingua Syra, dictus est Golgotha,[5] quod interpretatum sonat Calvaria, quæ est pars frontis patens supra supercilia, pro eo quod ibi decalvabantur ossa latronum, damnatorum, et decapitatorum. Cætera de mirabilibus templi require in libro Regum.

De mari Mortuo.

Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.[6] Habet quoque in se regio Judæa mare solitudinis, quod dicitur[7]

---

[1] *etiam*] et, A.
[2] *horto*] om. B.
[3] *Gethsemany*, E.; *Gethsemani*, A. B.
[4] *monte*] om. B.
[5] *Golgatha*, MSS., and so also in the MSS. of both the versions.
[6] *secundo*, B. Both references are false, and possibly Isidore is not the authority for this statement at all.
[7] *quod dicitur*] sive, C.

deme þe worlde at þe laste.[1] At þe foot[2] of þe[3] mount springeþ þe brook torrens Cedron, and eorneth[4] in to þe valey of Iosephat. Bytwene þe brynke of torrens Cedron and þe mount was þe orcheȝerde þat Criste went ynne ful ofte[5] for to bidde[6] and praye; in þat orcheȝerde[7] Crist was i-take, by þe whiche was a þrope[8] þat hiȝt[9] Gethsemany. In þat mount was þe litel strete of preostes, þat heet[10] Be[th]phage.[11] In þe side of þe hille was þe yn[12] of Laȝarus,[13] of Martha, and of Marie Mawdeleyn; þat toun hiȝt[14] Bethania. *Hugo.* In þe norþ side of mount Syon is þe mount Caluerie;[15] (þar[16] Crist deide on þe rode;) and is i-cleped Golgotha in þe longage[17] of Syria. Golgotha is to menynge a baar scolle. For whan þeues and mysdoeres were þere byheded,[18] þe hedes were i-left þere, and so at þe laste þe sculles wexen al bare. Opre wondres of þe temple loke in libro Regum. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.* Also in þe reem[19] of Iuda is þe see of wildernesse þat is

TREVISA.

---

where he schalle iugge also euery man in the day of iuggemente. In the foote of whiche hille the ryuer of Cedron is spronge, whiche flowethe in to the vale of Iosaphath, betwene the brynke of whom and the mownte was that gardyn in to whom Criste entrede ofte tymes to prey, in whom he was taken, nye to whom was a litelle towne callede Gethesemani, in whiche mownte was also the strete of prestes, whiche was callede Bethfage, and in the side of the mownte was the cite of Martha, of Lazarus, and of Mary, Bethania by name. *Hugo.* The mownte off Caluarye is at the northe plage of the mownte of Syon, where Criste was crucifiede, whiche is callede, after the langage of men of Sire, Golgotha, soundenge by interpretacion, Caluaria, in hat the boones of men condempnede and hededе were made bare there. As for other meruayles of the temple haue respecte to the bokes of Kynges. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.* The region of Iuda hathe in hit

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mons Calvaria.

---

[1] *at laste*, Cx.
[2] *atte foote*, Cx.
[3] *that*, Cx.
[4] *renneth*, Cx.
[5] *wel ofte*, *a.*
[6] *bidda*, *a.*
[7] *orcherd*, *a.*
[8] *a thorpe*, Cx.
[9] *heet*, *a.* and Cx.
[10] *heyght*, Cx.
[11] *Bethfage*, *a.* and Cx.
[12] *toun*, *a.* and Cx.
[13] *Lazar*, Cx.
[14] *hiȝt*] was named, Cx.
[15] *mont of Caluary*, *a.* and Cx.
[16] So *a.*; þat, MS.; *there*, Cx.
[17] *langage*, *a.* and Cx.
[18] *byheueded*, *a.*
[19] *royamme*, Cx.

Mortuum, distans a[1] Jerosolimis stadiis ducentis, quæ reddunt[2] viginti quinque milliaria; dividitque Judæam, Palæstinam, et Arabiam. *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro xiij°.*[3] Extenditur autem lacus ille a finibus Judææ non longe a Jerico usque ad Zoros Arabiæ stadiis septingentis octoginta, quæ faciunt milliaria nonaginta quatuor. Latitudo[4] ejus[5] stadiorum centum quinquaginta, usque ad vicinia Sodomorum. Dicitur autem lacus ille Lacus Salinarum, quia sales ibi fiunt. Dicitur[6] et lacus asphalti, quod est bitumen tenax, eo quod locus ille sit bituminosus, qua[7] de causa ventis non movetur, resistente semper bitumine, quo omnis aqua stagnatur. Neque ullam navem aut aliam[8] materiam sustinet nisi bituminatam.[9] *Petrus, capitulo quinquagesimo.*[10] Cujus loci bitumen seu[11] gluten nihil potest dissolvere,[12] nisi duntaxat sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo.* Dicitur etiam mare Mortuum, quia nihil vivum gignit aut recipit. Nam neque pisces, neque aves mersiles admittit. Sed et[13] quæcunque viva im-

---

[1] *quod distat a*, C. D.
[2] *faciunt*, C.
[3] *xvj°.*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 19.
[4] C. and D. add *vero*; D. omits the preceding words.
[5] *ejus*] om. B.
[6] *dicitur*] om. C., D.
[7] *qua*] hac, C., D.
[8] *aliam*] om. C., which places *sustinet* at the end.
[9] *bituminata*, B.
[10] 20, B. Both references seem to be false. Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Gen.* c. 53) has much in common with this chapter, but not the clause for which his authority is cited. Josephus (*Bell. Jud.* lib. iv. c. 8. § 4) is the authority for the statement.
[11] *sive*, B.
[12] *dissolvere potuit*, C. D.
[13] *et*] om. B.

þe Dede see, and from Ierusalem two hondred forlonges; þat makiþ fyue and twenty myle, and departeþ Iudeam, Palestinam, and Arabiam.[1] *Isidorus, Eth. libro tertiodecimo.* Þat lake[2] strecheþ from þe endes[3] of Iudea noȝt fer from Ierico anon to þe Zores[4] of Arabia seuene hondred forlonges and foure score, þat[5] makiþ foure score myle and fourtene. Þat lake is[6] in brede seuene score forlong and ten,[7] and strecheþ nyh[8] to þe contrees[9] of Sodoma. Þat lake is i-cleped lacus Salinarum, for salt is i-made þere. Also þere is moche glew in þat contray; and þerfore it meueþ[10] nouȝt for wyndes, for þe glew wiþstondeþ alwey: for water þat haþ glew stondeþ stille, and þat lake susteyneþ no schip ne non oþere matere, but it be glewed. *Petrus, capitulo quinquagesimo.* Noþyng may vndo þe glewe of þat place, but onliche þe blood þat is i-cleped sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* It is[11] i-cleped also þe Dede see, for þat see bryngeþ forth no þing þat is quyk and on[12] lyue;[13] so þat he fongeþ noþer water foules, noþer fisshes; so þat what quik þing[14] þat it be[15] þat duppeþ þerynne, anon it

TREVISA.

the Dedde see, beenge from Ierusalem iic. forlonges, whiche do make xxvti. myles, diuidenge the Iewery, Palestine, and Araby. *Isidorus, Eth., libro* 13o. That place is extendede from the costes of the Iewery, not ferre from Ierico, to Zores of Arabye vijc. forlonges and lxxxti, whiche do make xc. myles and iiij. The latitude of hit is of clti. forlonges vn to nye places of Sodome. That place is callede the place of saltenesse, in that salte is made þer. Also that place is callede the place of pycche, for it is ful þer of; whiche water susteynethe not eny schippe, but if hit be welle pycchede, or enny other mater. *Petrus, capitulo quinquagesimo.* The pycche or glu of whiche place noo thynge may dissolue, but the bloode of a woman suffrenge the monethely infirmite: whiche place noryschethe not fysches or fooles; but whikke thynges caste in to that water lepe

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *Abraham*, MS.
[2] So Cx.; *lakes*, MS. and *a.*
[3] *ende*, Cx.
[4] *Ierico vnto ȝores*, Cx.
[5] *þat*] *the whiche*, Cx.
[6] So Cx.; *lakes is*, *a.* The MS. omits *is*, but has *lakes*.
[7] *an honderd and fyfthy furlonges*, Cx.
[8] *neyȝ*, *a.*
[9] *contrayes*, *a.*
[10] *moeueth not with*, Cx.
[11] *a.* and Cx. place *also* after *is*.
[12] *olyue*, *a.*; *a lyue*, Cx.
[13] *a.* adds *also þat se may fonge noþing þat is quyk and on lyue.* Cx. agrees with MS., except in having *it receyueth* for *he fongeþ*.
[14] *a.* omits *þing*.
[15] *þat it be*] om. Cx., who has *dippeth*.

mersàris statim prosiliunt, mortua vero absorbentur; adeo ut[1] lucerna accensa supernatet, extincta demergatur. *Josephus, libro primo.*[2] Hoc patuit in diebus Vespasiani principis de duobus hominibus qui, manibus post terga ligatis, ibidem projecti statim rejiciebantur.[3] *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo,*[4] *capitulo tertio.* Regio etiam[5] illa dicta est Pentapolis, a quinque urbibus[6] impiorum ibidem[7] submersis et incineratis. Terra quidem olim magis quam Jerusalem uberrima, (nam inter ejus lapides sapphiri et gemmæ pretiosissimæ inveniebantur, et aurum inter ejus glebas, sicut testatur Job xxiiij°.)[8] sed nunc species et umbra ignis in ipsis favillis et arboribus videtur.[9] Nam poma virentia sub tanta specie maturitatis nascuntur, ut desiderium edendi gignant; quæ, si carpas manu, fatiscunt in cinerem, fumumque exhalant quasi adhuc ardeant. *Ranulphus.* Est autem[10] et alia Pentapolis, regio in Africa.[11]

---

[1] *in tantum etiam ut*, C., D., which also have *supernatat*; C. (not D.) has *demergitur*.

[2] B. misplaces the extract from Josephus in the following chapter.

[3] *patiebantur*, B.

[4] *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. 3, § 24.

[5] *autem*, A.

[6] *civitatibus*, C.

[7] *ibidem*] om. B.

[8] *nam ... Job*] om. C., D. B. has after Job, *capitulo suo* 14. The passage intended is Job xxviii. 6.

[9] *videntur*, C. D.

[10] *tamen*, B.

[11] *Est alia tamen Pentapolis regio in Africa*, A.

lepeþ vp aȝen; and alle dede þinges it swelewith[1] so fer forþ, þat a lanterne wiþ lyȝt fleteþ and swymmeth aboue.[2] And ȝif þe liȝt is[3] i-queynt, it duppeþ doun and drencheþ. *Iosephus, libro primo.* Þat was assaied and i-knowe in þat grete princes tyme Vespasianus[4] be tweie men þat were i-bounde hir hondes by hynde hem and i-cast yn þere, but anon þey were i-cast vp aȝe. *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo tertio.* Þat kyngdom hatte[5] Pentapolis[6] also, for fyue wicked citees þat þere were a-dreynt and i-brent to asshes. Þat was[7] som tyme more riche and more plentevous þan Ierusalem; for saphire[8] and oþer wel precious stones and golde also were i-founde among þe cley of þat londe, as Iob witnessiþ, vicesimo quarto capitulo. But now þere semeþ somer schadue[9] and liknesse of fuyre boþe in vesselles[10] and in trees. For apples[11] þat þere groweþ semeþ so faire and so ripe, þat who þat hem seeþ hym wilneþ[12] for to ete; but þilke apples þat[13] falleþ to asshes[14] anon as þey ben[15] i-handeled, and smokeþ[16] as þei afire were. Ꝑ. But þere is anoþer Pentapolis in Affrica. TREVISA.

---

furthe anoon, dedde thynges be deuourede þer anoon; in so moche that a lawnterne y-lyȝhtede putte in to hit swymmethe above, and a lawnterne extincte is drownede in to hit. *Iosephus, libro primo.* Whiche thynge was experte, in the dayes of Vespasian prince, of ij. men, the whiche were caste in to that water, theire hondes y-bounde behynde theym, whom the water wolde not receyve. *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo tertio.* That region was callede Pentapolis, of the v. cites of wickede men drownede there. That londe was somme tyme more then Ierusalem in plentuousenesse; for saphires and other precious stones were founde amonge the stones of hit, and golde, as Iob testifiethe, capitulo xxiiij°. For now the similitude of fire apperethe in the trees. For apples be spronge þer vnder suche a similitude of ripenes, that thei move the appetite of man to eyte of theyme; whiche apples y-taken be redacte vn to esches, as if thei brente, to this tyme. Ꝑ. Also þer is an other region callede Pentapolis in Affrike. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 29 a.

---

[1] *he swolweþ, a.*
[2] *aboue*] om. Cx.
[3] *is*] be, Cx.
[4] *Vaspasianus*, MS., *a*, and Cx.
[5] *hatte*] is called, Cx.
[6] So *a.* and Cx.; *Pentapolus*, MS., and so below.
[7] *was*] were, Cx., who has no stop after *asshes*.
[8] *ȝaphires, a.*; *saphirs*, Cx.
[9] *schadowe, a.*
[10] *herbis*, Cx.
[11] *appolis, a.*
[12] *wylleth*, Cx.
[13] *þat*] to, *a.* Probably the word should be simply cancelled.
[14] *thylke appels fallen anon to asshes*, Cx.
[15] *beeþ, a.*
[16] So *a.*; *smoked*, MS.; *smoken*, Cx.

De regione Canaan.

Capitulum quintumdecimum.[1]

CANAAN regio est Syriæ[2] a filiis Canaan filii Cham post diluvium primitus possessa, septem in se continens nationes, quasi ex primo Cham filio Noe hæreditarie maledictas. Palæstina provincia est Syriæ, dicta quondam Philistea, cujus metropolis dicta est Philistiim, nunc vero[3] Ascalon, ex qua urbe tota illa provincia Palæstina seu Philistea vocata est, et incolæ ejus Palæstini seu Philistei, quia Hebreus sermo *p* litteram non habet sed pro eo utitur *ph;* inde Philistei, quasi Palæstini; qui tamen dicti sunt *allophyli,* id est *alienigenæ,* eo quod semper fuerint a filiis Israel alieni. Hæc regio habet ab austro Ægyptum, ab occasu[4] Tyrios, ab aquilone Ju-

---

[1] The descriptions of the provinces are thus arranged in C. and D.: Galilee, Palestine, Phenicia, Canaan, Cedar, Egypt.

[2] *Assyriæ,* C.

[3] *autem,* B.

[4] *ad occasum,* A.

De Canaa terra. Capitulum quintumdecimum. TREVISA.

CANAAN is a reem[1] of Syria[2] and hatte Canaan, for Canaanes[3] children were þe firste þat woned þerynne after Noes flood; and conteyned seuen[4] naciouns acorsed as it were by heritage of Cam,[5] Noes sone. *Treuisa.* Cham was Noes sone, and hadde his fader[6] cors; for he lowh[7] his fader to scorne, for he say[8] his priue harneys[9] al bare and vnheled, while he lay on slepe. Ꝑ. Palestina[10] is a prouince of Syria, and þat hiȝte somtyme Philistea; þe cheef[11] citee ȝerof hiȝte Philistim,[12] and now hatte Ascalon.[13] And after þat[14] citee is þe prouince i-cleped Palestina oþer Philistea. And men of þat contrey hatte Palestini and Philistei also; for in þe speche of Hebrewes[15] is no *p*, but instede of *p* þey useþ *ph*; þerfore Philistei and Palestini beeþ all oon, and beeþ also i-cleped *allophyli*, þat is to menynge *aliens* and straunge men, for þey were alwey aliens and straunge to the folk of Israel. Þat prouince haþ in þe south side Egipt, in þe west Tyrus, in þe north Iudea,

Capitulum quintumdecimum. HARL.MS. 2261.

Canaan is a region of Syria,[16] possessede firste of the childre of Canaan, sonnes of Chayin, after Noe floode, conteynenge in hit vij. naciones as cursede by enheritaunce of Cam the sonne of Noe. Palestina is a prouince off Syria, callede somme tyme Philistea, the chiefe cyte of whom was called Philistijm and now Ascalon, of whiche cite alle that prouince was callede Palestina or Philistea, and the inhabitatores of hit were callede Philisteis, for men of Ebrewe vse not this letter, *f*, but *ph* in the place of hit. Of whom the Philisteies were callede *alophili*,[17] that is to say *aliauntes*, in so moche that they were straunge alleweyes to the childer of Israel. That region hathe Egipte on the sowthe parte of hit and men of Tire at the weste, the Iewery at the northe, and Canaan. Palestina. Philistea.

[1] *royamme*, Cx.
[2] *Siria*, MS., which has also other slightly unclassical forms of proper names in this chapter.
[3] So *a.*; *Caanes*, MS.
[4] *vj.*, Cx., who has *alle* before *acursyd.*
[5] *þe Cham*, *a.*
[6] *faders*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[7] *lowȝ*, *a.*
[8] *sawe*, Cx.
[9] *membrys*, Cx.
[10] *oþer Phylistea*, added in *a.*
[11] *chif*, *a.*
[12] So *a.*; *Philisti*, MS.
[13] So *a.* and Cx.; *Ascelon*, MS.
[14] *þe*, *a.* and Cx.
[15] *Hebrew*, Cx.
[16] *Siria*, Harl. MS., and so throughout.
[17] The translator's orthography, who evidently thinks ἀλλόφυλοι is Hebrew, has been allowed to stand. Just before he has wrongly written *f* for *p*.

dæam, ab ortu Idumæam, sic dictam ab Edom qui et Esau, quæ quidem Idumæa terra est fortis, montuosa, et calida, extendens se ad mare Rubrum.[1] *Isidorus, libro nono.*[2] In hac Idumæa est fons Jobyn quater in anno colorem mutans, ternis scilicet mensibus tenens colorem pulvereum, aliis tribus sanguineum, aliis tribus viridem, reliquis[3] tribus limpidum et aqueum colorem.[4] Palæstina etiam solebat in se comprehendere[5] Samariam regionem cujus metropolis Samaria, sed nunc Sebaste.[6]

Samaria. Samaria siquidem, a Somer[7] monte dicta, jacet media inter Judæam et Galilæam; de qua ejectis aliquando et captivatis incolis introducti sunt Assyrii qui solam legem Moysis[8] admittunt, in ceteris vero a Judæis discrepant. Et dicti sunt Samaritæ, quod sonat *custodes,* quia populo terræ captivato ad custodiam deputabantur.[9] Sichem vel Sichima modica est terra in Samaria, a Sichem, filio Emor, qui eam incoluit, sic vocata. Et est Sichem urbs,

---

[1] *Palæstina provincia ...Rubrum*] C. and D. contract the text into one short sentence. A. omits *se* after *extendens.*

[2] 14, A., B., C., D. The place intended occurs at lib. xiii. c. 13. § 8. Isidore, however, has *Job* for *Jobyn.* The account of the Samaritans, indeed, a little below, is taken from lib. ix. c. 1. § 54., and that of Galilee from lib. xiv. c. 3. § 23.

[3] *et reliquis,* B.

[4] *colorem limpidum,* C. and D., in which other trifling variations also occur.

[5] *Palestina vero continet in se,* C.

[6] *sed nunc Sebaste*] om. in C., which adds *quondam vocabatur* before *Samaria.* D. has *et nunc ab Augusti nomine vocatur Sebasten* (sic).

[7] *Samar,* A.; *Samer,* B.

[8] *Moysi,* MSS.

[9] *Et dicti... deputabantur*] om. C., D., in which the whole description of *Sichem* is also omitted. For *deputabantur* (so A. and B.) E. has *deputantur.*

in[1] þe est Idumea. Idumea haþ þe name of Edom; Edom[2] and Esau is all oon, Iacobus broþer. Þat Idumea is a strong londe, hully and hoot, and strecchеþ to þe Rede see. *Isidorus, libro nono.* In þis Idumea is Iobus[3] welle. Þat welle chaunge[þ][4] hewe and colors foure siþes[5] a ȝere by þe monthes; þe firste þre monþes pale as asshes; þe secounde þre monþes reed as blood; þe þridde þre monþes grene as gras; and þe fourþe þre monþes cleer as water.[6] Palestina was i-woned to conteyne þe lond Samaria. Þe cheef[7] citee of þat lond was somtyme i-cleped Samaria, but now he is i-cleped and hatte Sebaste. Samaria haþ þe name of þe hille þat hatte Somer, and Samaria lieþ bytwene Iudea and Galilea. Men þat woned in Samaria were i-dryue oute, and Assyrii were i-brouȝt ynne. Assyrii holdeþ Moyses lawe, and in[8] oþer discordeþ from the Iewes, and hoteþ also Samaritæ, þat is to menynge *kepers*. For whan men of þe londe were i-take, þey were ordeyned wardeynes of hem.[9] Sychem, þat hatte Sichema[10] also, is a litel lond yn Samaria, and haþ þe name of Sichem, Emor his sone,

TREVISA.

Idumea on the este parte. That londe is myȝhty, fulle of hilles, and hoote, extendenge hit to the Redde see. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* The welle of Iobyn is in that Idumea,[11] chaungenge his colour .iiij. tymes in oon yere; in thre monethes holdenge the colour of duste, in other thre the coloure of bloode, in oþer thre monethes a grene coloure, and in other thre a clere colour of water. Also Palestine was wonte to comprehende Samaria in hit; the chiefe place of that region was callede Samaria, but nowe hit is callede Sebaste. Samaria toke the name of hit of the mownte callede Samer, whiche lyethe in the myddes betwene the Iewery and Galile; the inhabitatores of whom somme tyme eiecte and put in captiuite, men of Assyria were introducte, whiche admitte oonly the lawe of Moyses. In other thynges they discorde from the Iewes and be callede Samaritannes, whiche sowndethe *kepers*, for they were deputate to the kepenge of that londe, the peple of hit putte in captiuite. Sichen or Sichenia is a lyttelle grownde in Samaria, namede so of Sichem the sonne of Emor, whiche inhabite hit firste.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Fons Iobyn.

Samarias.

Sichen. f. 29 b.

[1] *and in*, Cx.
[2] *Edom*] added from Cx.
[3] *Jobyns, a.*; *Jacobs*, Cx.
[4] *chaungeth*, Cx.
[5] *a.* has some omissions here.
[6] *a.* and Cx. have some slight omissions in the foregoing sentence.
[7] *chif, a.*
[8] *in*] added from *a.*; Cx. has *but in somme thynges they discorde.*
[9] *ham, a.*
[10] *Sychima, a.*
[11] *Ydumea*, Harl. MS.

quæ nunc Neapolis dicitur, quam Jacob aliquando pecunia et labore gravi comparatam dedit filio suo Joseph super sortem, sicut dicit Hieronymus supra Genesim XVIII. Et fuit hæc aliquando urbs refugii cum suburbanis suis in finibus montis Ephraim,[1] sicut patet Josuæ XX. Nam et illa terra fuit de tribu Ephraim, et ibi sepulta sunt ossa Joseph, postquam translata fuerant de Ægypto, ut patet Josuæ ultimo. In quo loco fratres Joseph paverant greges suos; quem tamen locum postmodum destruxit Abimelech, filius Jeroboal. Et interfectis habitatoribus seminavit ibi sal,[2] ne terra illa[3] denuo germinaret, sicut habetur Josuæ IX. Ibi quoque fuit fons Jacob, super quem Christus fessus ex itinere requievit.

Galilæa. Galilæa regio est inter Judæam et Palæstinam, quæ[4] et duplex est, superior et inferior, ad invicem contigue adherentes Syriæ et Phœniciæ.[5] Utriusque Galilææ

[1] *Effraym* or *Effraim*, MSS.
[2] *ibidem salem*, A.
[3] *illa*] om. A.
[4] *quæ*] om. C. D.
[5] *Fenici*, B.; *Phenici*, D.

þat first woned þerynne. Also þere is a citee þat hatte Sychem, and now is i-cleped Neopolis. Þat citee Iacob bouȝte som tyme wiþ money and grete trauaille, and ȝaf it to Ioseph his sone ouer[1] his lotte, so seiþ Hieronymus,[2] Genesis, octodecimo capitulo. And þis was a cite of refute[3] and of socour, so it is i-write Iosuæ vicesimo capitulo. For þat lond[4] was de tribu and of þe lynage of Ephraym; and þere were Ioseph is[5] bones i-buried, after þat[6] þey were i-brouȝte ouȝt of Egipte; witnesse of Holy Writt, Iosuæ ultimo capitulo. In þat place Ioseph his[7] breþeren fedde and kepte flokkes[8] of bestes: but afterward Abymelech,[9] Ierobabel[10] sone, destroyed þat place, and slow þe men þat woned þerynne, and sewe salt þerynne, for þe lond schulde na more[11] bere fruit and corne; witnesse Iosuæ nono capitulo. Also[12] þere is Iacobus welle, þat[13] Criste reste by, whan he was wery of wey and of goynge. Galilea is a londe bytwene Iudea and Palestina, and is double, þe ouer Galilea and þe neþer Galilea, and ioyneþ to gidres, and also to Syria and to Phenicia;[14] in eyþer Galilea is good lond

Trevisa.

And Sichem was a cite whiche is callede now Neapolis, whom Iacob bouȝte for moneye and grete,[15] ȝiffenge hit to Ioseph his sonne, as Seynte Ierom seyethe on Genesim ca°. xviij°., whiche was somme tyme the cite of refute with the suburbarbes of hit sette in the costes of the mownte of Effraym, where the bones of Ioseph were buryede[16] after that thei were translate from Egipte, as hit is schewede Iosuæ ultimo capitulo. In whiche place the breder of Ioseph kepede bestes: whiche place Abimelech destryede after the son of Zorobabel, sawenge there salte, the inhabitatores of hit y-sleyne, that the londe scholde not be plentuous, as hit is schewede Iosuæ nono capitulo. Where the welle of Iacob was, on whom Criste beenge feynte of labor did reste. Galile is a region betwene the Iewery and Palestine, whiche is duplicate, the superior and inferior, drawenge to gedre as contiguate to Syria and to Phenicia;[17]

MS. Harl. 2261.

Fons Iacob.

Galilea.

[1] *aboue*, Cx.
[2] *Iherome*, Cx.
[3] *refuge*, Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; MS. adds *þat* (clerical error).
[5] *Iosephs*, Cx.; *Ioseph his*, *a.*
[6] *þat*] om. Cx.
[7] *Iosephs*, Cx.
[8] *droues and flockes*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *Abimaleche*, MS.
[10] *Ierobabels*, *a.* and Cx.
[11] *nomore*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[12] *and*, Cx.
[13] *þat*] where, Cx.
[14] *Fenicia*, MS. and Cx.
[15] The Harl. MS. has omitted *trauaille*, or some such word.
[16] The MS. had *translate* before *buryede*, but a pen is drawn through it.
[17] *Fenicea*, Harl. MS.

gleba est fertilis; lacus[1] utiles et salubres qui pro sui[2] magnitudine et piscium multitudine maria nuncupantur, sicut patet de lacu Tiberiadis et Genesareth.[3] Item[4] in occiduis partibus Galilææ inferioris versus mare magnum juxta Ptolemaida (quæ est Acon civitas)[5] est fons quidam, quo metalla injecta[6] mutantur in vitrum.

Cedar. Cedar est regio[7] in superiori parte Palæstinæ, quam incoluit Cedar primogenitus Ismaelis,[8] et post eum Ismaelitæ,[9] qui verius dicuntur Agareni quam Saraceni, quia[10] de Agar ancilla matre Ismaelis[11] sunt progeniti; sed nomen de Sara sibi[12] usurparunt.[13] *Methodius.* Hii domos non ædificant, sed per vastam solitudinem vagantes[14] tabernacula inhabitant, de prædis et venationibus victum[15] quærentes. Hii aliquando congregati exibunt de desertis et occupabunt[16] orbem terræ per octo hebdomadas annorum, urbes subvertent,

---

[1] *Utriusque gleba fertilis. Lacus habent, &c.*, C., D.

[2] *sui*] om. C. (not D.)

[3] So B.; *Genesar*, A., C., D., E.

[4] *Item*] om. C., D.

[5] *quæ est Acon civitas*] om. C., D.

[6] *injecta*] om. B.

[7] *nomen est regionis*, C., D.

[8] *Ismael*, A.

[9] *Cedar, filius Ismaelis, et postmodum Ismaelitæ*, B.; *hanc (tamen,* D.) *terram postremo (postmodum,* D.) *incoluerunt Ism.*, C., D.

[10] *qui*, A.

[11] *matre Ism.*] om. C., D.

[12] *ibi usurpant*, B.

[13] *sed ... usurparunt*] quasi usurpato nomine, C., D., which arrange the clauses differently.

[14] *vagantes*] om. B.

[15] *victum*] vitam, C., D.

[16] *occupabunt*] obtinebunt, C., D.

and greet plente of corne and of fruit, grete lakes and huge, profitable and heleful,[1] and som lake is so huge[2] and so ful of fische þat me clepeþ it a[3] see. So þe lake of Tiberiadis is i-cleped þe see of Tiberiadis, and Genosar þat lake is i-cleped also. Also in þe west side of þe neþer Galilea toward þe grete see fast by þat citee Ptolemaida,[4] þat hatte Acon[5] also, is a welle þat torneþ into glas[6] al metal þat is cast þerynne. Cedar is a londe yn þe ouerside of Palestina, and haþ þe name of þat Cedar þat wonede þerynne,[7] þat Cedar[8] was Ismael his eldest sone. Þe ofspringe of Cedar and of Ismael were afterwarde i-cleped Ismaelitæ, and also Agareni more riȝtfulliche þan Saraceni,[9] for þey come of Agar þat was Ismael his moder and serued Sarra, but afterward for pryde þey toke wrongfulliche þe name of Sarra and cleped hem Saraceni. *Methodius.* Þese men haueþ noon hous but walkeþ in wildernesse and woneþ in tabernacles and in teeldis,[10] and lyueþ by prayes[11] and by venysoun. Þese men schole[12] somtyme gadere to gidres and goo out of wildernesse and occupie the londes aboute eiȝt wekes of ȝeres, þat is eiȝte siþes seuene ȝere, and þey

TREVISA.

eiþer of hit is plentuous, hauenge profitable waters and wholsome, whiche be callede sees what for the magnitude of theyme and for the copious multitude of fisches, as the water of Tiberiadis and of Genazareth. Also there is a welle in to whom metalles caste be turnede in to glasse in the weste partes of the inferior Galile, towarde the grete see nye to Ptolemaida,[13] whiche is the cite of Achon. Cedar is a region in the superior parte of Palestine, whom Cedar the firste son of Ysmael didde inhabite; after hym callede more truly Agareni then Saraceni; for the progenye of theyme descendede from Agar, seruaunte and moder of Ismael, vsurpenge to theyme the name of Sara. *Methodius.* Theye edifie noo howses, but, goenge by a waste wildernes, inhabite tabernacles, gettenge theire meyte thro preyes and huntenges. These men somme tyme congregate schalle goe furthe from deserte, and schalle occupye alle the worlde by viij. wekes off yeres, subuertenge citees and defilenge holy

MS. HARL. 2261.

Cedar.

[1] *helþful*, *a.* and Cx.
[2] *grete*, Cx.
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *þe*, MS.
[4] *Ptholomaida*, MS., *a.*, and Cx.
[5] *Acres*, Cx.
[6] *aglas*, *a.*
[7] *þat wonede þerynne*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *Cedar*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[9] *Sareceny*, MS.
[10] *tentes*, Cx.
[11] *praye*, Cx.
[12] *schulle*, *a.*; *shal*, Cx.
[13] *Ptolomaida*, Harl. MS.

sacra loca polluent, sacerdotes[1] occident, ad sanctorum sepulcra ligabunt jumenta sua; et hoc pro nequitia Christianorum.[2] *Ranulphus.* Ista videntur impleri sub ultimis temporibus Heraclii Imperatoris, quando[3] Machometus pseudo-propheta Persas occupavit, Ægyptum et Africam subjugavit, nefariamque sectam Saracenorum commentavit,[4] sicut inferius post tempora Heraclii planum erit.[5]

Phœnicia. *Methodius.* Phœnicia est regio in qua Tyrus et Sidon comprehenduntur[6] habens ab ortu Arabiam, ab austro mare Rubrum, a septentrione montem Libani, ab occasu mare magnum. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Istis Phœnicibus tradidit Phenix filius Agenoris quasdam litteras vermiculatas, unde et color ille Phœnicius dictus est, et postmodum littera mutata Puniceus dicebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Phœnix.* Et quia Phœnices fuerunt primi litterarum inventores adhuc litteras capitales rubeo colore scribimus, ut sic repræsentemus eos fuisse litterarum repertores.

---

[1] B. adds *autem.*

[2] *nequitiis Christianorum quas faciunt,* added in C., D.

[3] *Hoc impletum est tempore Heraclii imperatoris quando, &c.,* C., D.

[4] *commentavit*] adinvenit, C., D.

[5] *sicut infra sub tempore Heraclii continetur,* C., D.

[6] *regio est in qua sunt Sidon et Tyrus,* C., D., which omit the remainder of the chapter after *mare magnum,* as does also B.

schulleþ [1] ouertorne citees and townes, and slee preestes, and defoule clerkes and holy places, and teie her [2] bestes to tombes of holy [3] seyntes; þat schal byfalle for wickednesse of euel lyuynge of Cristen men. R. Þis doynge semeþ fulfilde in þe laste tyme of Heraclius þe emperour, whan [4] þat false prophete Machometys [5] occupied Persida [6] and made Egipte and Affrica sogett,[7] and wroot and brouȝt yn þe false lawe and secte of Saracins, as it is innermore [8] pleyn i-write after Heraclius tyme. Phenicia [9] is a lond in þe whiche is conteyned tweye londes, Tyrus and Sidon, and haþ in þe est side Arabia, in þe souþ þe Rede see, in þe norþ þe hil þe mount Libany,[10] and in þe west þe grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Phenix, Agenoris sone, by toke rede lettres to þe Phenices, þat beeþ men of Phenicia, and þerfore þat colour was i-cleped *Phenicius;* and afterward þe lettre chaunged, and þan it was i-cleped *Puniceus*, þat is, *reed. Hugo, capitulo Phœnix.* For Pheniciens [11] were þe [12] firste fynderes of lettres, ȝit we writeþ capital lettres wiþ reed colour, in token and mynde þat Phenices were þe [12] firste fynders of lettres.

TREVISA.

places schalle sle prestes makenge faste theire bestes at the sepulcres of seyntes, and this schalle falle for the wickidnesse and synne of Cristen men. R. These thynges seme to have bene fullefillede in the tyme of Heraclius themperoure, when Machomete the false prophete occupiede Persa, Egipte, and made Affrike subiecte to hym, commentenge the wickede secte of Saracenys, as hit schal be expressede after the tymes of Heraclius. Phenicia is a region in whom Tyrus and Sidon be comprehendede, hauenge of the este parte off hit Araby, of the sowthe the Redde see, of the northe the mownte of Libanus, of the weste parte the grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Phenix the sonne of Agenoris toke to these Feniceonnes somme redde letters, wherefore that colour was callede *pheniceus,* and after a letter chaungede hit was *puniceus. Hugo, capitulo Phœnix.* And for cause men of that cuntre were the firste fynders of letters we wryte vn to this tyme the capitalle letters with a redde color, that we may represente theyme to be the firste fynders of letters.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Phenicia. f. 30. a.

[1] *shal,* Cx., as usual.
[2] *here, a.*
[3] *a.* omits *holy.*
[4] So Cx.; *what,* MS.
[5] *Machometes, a.*
[6] So Cx. and *a.*; *Persidia,* MS.
[7] *subgette,* Cx.
[8] *ynnere more, a.*
[9] *Fenicia,* MS., but *Phenyx* and *Phenisia* just below; and so *a.*, (nearly). Harl. MS. has *F* everywhere.
[10] Perhaps this is meant for the genitive; and if so should be edited *Libani,* as Cx. has it, who omits *þe hil; a.* agrees with MS.
[11] *Phenices, a.* and Cx.
[12] *a.* and Cx. omit *þe* (twice).

Cap. XVI.

De Ægypto.[1]

Ab Ægypto Danai fratre dicta est Ægyptus, quæ quondam[2] Aerea[3] vocabatur, ab ortu habens mare Rubrum, ab austro Nilum flumen et Æthiopes, a septentrione mare magnum et partem Syriæ superiorem, ab occasu Libyam. Est itaque Ægyptus regio imbri insueta,[4] a solo Nilo flumine irrigata et fœcundata, frugum et mercium copiosa. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.*[5] Ægyptus, contra naturam aliarum regionum, quando abundat frugibus,[6] sterilis[7] est in pascuis, et e contra. Nam diuturnior[8] mora Nili fluminis super terram tempora[9] culturæ[10] impedit vel sata extinguit, et tunc pascua nutrit. Ibi abundant cocodrilli,[11] et hippotauri, qui sunt equi fluviales.[12] Ægyptus ad ortum sui vastam habet eremum[13] varia monstra continentem, ad ejus oc-

---

[1] Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Egiptus* in margin.

[2] *Ægyptus ab Ægypto Danai fratre sic dicta quondam*, C.D.

[3] So the MSS. See Eus. *Chron. Can.* (vol. 2. p. 61., ed. Auch.) Isid. lib. xiv. c. 2. § 27., where it is written *Aeria*.

[4] *inconsueta*, C.; *mansueta*, D.

[5] 44, C. (not D.)

[6] *in frugibus*, B.

[7] *tunc sterilis*, C. (not D.)

[8] *Diuturnior enim*, C.D.

[9] *tempora*] tempore, E.; opus, B.

[10] *culturæ*] colendi, C.D.

[11] So all the MSS.

[12] *ypotauri* (sic) *et fluviales equi*, C.D.

[13] *Ad orientem sui vastum* (sic) *habet eremum*, C.D.

De Ægypti provinciis. Capitulum sextum decimum.

TREVISA.

EGIPTE haþ þe name of Egipt, Danay his broþer,[1] and hi3te[2] somtyme Aer[e]a,[3] and haþ in þe est side þe Rede see, in þe south þe ryuer Nilus and Blomen,[4] in þe north þe grete see and þe ouere partie of Syria, and in þe west Libya. Egipt is silde bereyne,[5] and haþ water and moisture onliche of þe ryuer Nilus, and is riche of corne and fruit and marchaundise.[6] *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* Egipte a3enst kynde of oþer londes haþ plente of corn; he is bareyne[7] of lesue,[8] and whan he haþ plente of lesue it[9] is bareyne of corn. For whan þe ryuer Nilus is vppe and ouer wexiþ and ouerfloweþ þe londe and abideþ longe in seed tyme, or[10] þe flood wiþdrawe, it letteþ sowynge and drencheþ[11] þe seed; and so corne is destroyed, and lesue and gras groweþ after in tyme. Þere beeþ cokkedrilly[12] and hippotauri[13] also, þat beeþ water hors.[14] Egipt haþ in þe est side a grete wildernesse and dyuerse manere bestes wonderliche

[1] *Danays broder*, Cx.
[2] *highte*, Cx., inconsistently. See p. 115.
[3] *Aerea*, *a.*; *Aeria*, Cx.
[4] So *a.*; *Blomem*, MS.; *Blac men*, Cx.
[5] *is sylde bereyne*, *a.*; *is zelde beraynd* (so), Cx.; *bareyne*, MS.
[6] *of fruyt and of*, Cx.
[7] *barayn*, *a.*
[8] *lese*, *a*; *pasture*, Cx., who omits two or three lines here.
[9] *he*, *a.* (more consistently.)
[10] *ar*, *a.*
[11] *adrencheþ*, *a.*
[12] *cocodrilly*, *a.*; *cocodrylly*, Cx.
[13] *ipotauri*, MS.; *ipotaury*, *a.*; *ypotamy*, Cx., which is nearer the truth, but may be his own correction.
[14] *hors*] horses, Cx. (not *a.*)
[15] *ypotauri*, Harl. MS.

Capitulum sextum decimum.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Ægyptus.

EGIPTE toke the name of hit of Egyptus, broþer off Danay, which was callede somme tyme Aeria, hauenge on the este parte to hit the Redde see, of the sowthe Nilus and men of Ynde, of the northe the grete see and the superior parte of Syria, of the weste parte the mownte of Libanus. This region of Egipte is not vsede to reyne, hauenge water oonly of that floode callede Nilus, plentuous of corne and copious of marchandise. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* When Egipte is plentuous of corne, hit is bareyne in pastures, ageyne the nature of other regiones and in contrary wyse; for the taryenge of þat floode callede Nilus on the londe lettethe the tymes of plowenge, other destryethe cornes and then hit noryschethe pastures. Cocodrilles be habundaunte there and horses of the floode, callede hippotauri.[15] Egipte hathe at the este parte of hit waste deserte, conteynenge

cidentem est regio Canopea, quæ quidem insula finis est Ægypti, et Libyæ príncipium. Ibique est ostium Nili fluminis, ubi cadit[1] in mare magnum. *Ranulphus.* Nilus tamen qui et Gyon,[2] quamvis[3] legatur de Paradiso procedere, asseritur tamen oriri[4] in occidentali[5] fine[6] Æthiopiæ, non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam, descendit per Ægyptum, cujus plana irrigat, atque ratione limositatis quam secum trahit terram fœcundat. Et sic, secundum Hieronymum super Amos prophetam, Nilus Dei dispositione totam Ægyptum irrigat. Cumulis enim arenarum claudentibus ostium ejus ne cito in mare magnum descendat, post irrigationem præfatam solutis arenis redit in alveum suum. Et[7] tandem ad[8] mare tendens juxta Canopeam et Libyam a mari magno absorbetur. Vult tamen Isidorus, libro tertio decimo, quod Nilus aquilonis[9] flatibus repercussus[10] aquis sic retro luctantibus intumescit.[11]

---

[1] *ubi cadit*] cadentis, D.
[2] *aut Gion*, B.
[3] *quamvis*] si, C.; licet, D.
[4] *oritur tamen*, C.D.
[5] *orientali*, D.
[6] *ad occidentales fines*, B.
[7] *Et sic*, C.D.
[8] *in*, B.
[9] *ab aquilonis*, A.
[10] *repercussis*, A.
[11] *intumescit*] intumescat, C.D.

i-schape,[1] and in þe west Canopea, þe whiche ilond is þe ende of Egipte and bygynnynge of Libya. Þere is þe mouþ[2] of Nilus, for þere Nilus falleþ into þe grete see. R. Þey me[3] rede in bookes, þat Nilus, þat hatte Gyon also, renneþ out of Paradys; ȝit it is i-seide þat Nilus springeþ vp in þe west[4] ende of Ethiopia nouȝt fer from þe hulle þat hatte Mons Atlas.[5] And þan Nilus gooþ forþ aboute Ethiopia and doun into Egipt, and ouerfloweþ þe pleyn contraies of Egipt, and bycause of slym þat renneþ þerwith, he[6] makeþ þe londe fatte and good to bere good[7] corne and fruit. So, seiþ Hieronymus vppon þe prophete Amos, by Goddis owne ordenaunce Nilus ouerfloweþ and watereþ al þe lond of Egipte, for hepes of grauel stoppeþ his cours, þat he may nouȝt anon[8] falle into þe grete see; but after þat he haþ so biflowe and i-watred þe lond, þe hepes of grauel to schedeþ and to falleþ;[9] and þan þe water falleþ into þe chanel aȝe, and so[10] renneþ into þe grete see. Neuerþeles[11] Isidre seiþ, libro tertio decimo, þat Nilus is i-dreue aȝe[12] and i-lette of his cours wiþ þe norþern wynde; and so þe water swelleþ, and[13] floweþ and wexeþ greet; but Beda in libro de

TREVISA.

diuerse wonders, at the weste parte of whom is a region callede Canopia, whiche yle is the ende of Egipte and the begynnenge of Libia, where the durre of the floode callede Nilus is, where hit fallethe in to the grete see. R. Nilus or Gyon thauȝhe hit be affermede to haue begynnenge from paradise, hit is seyde to haue his originalle in þe weste partes of the end of Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche compassenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, the pleyne cuntres of whom hit dothe watre and makethe the londe plentuous thro slycche that hit drawethe with hit. And so, after seynte Ierom super Amos prophetam, that floode called Nilus thro the disposicion of God, watrethe alle Egipte, the grete hepes of gravelle schuttenge the durre of hit, that hit scholde not descende soone in to the grete see: after the seyde waterenge, the hepes of the gravelle loosede, hit descendenge nye to Canopea and Libia is receyvede of the grete see. Neuerþelesse Isoder wille, libro 13°, that Nilus swellethe thro northe wyndes waters makenge grete stryvenge behynde hit; but Beda, de Naturis

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 30. b.

[1] *wrouȝt, a.*; *shape*, Cx.
[2] So *a.*; and Cx.; *money*, MS.
[3] *Though men*, Cx. (as usual); not *a.*
[4] *est, a.* (not Cx.)
[5] *Athlas*, MS., *a.*, and Cx. (as usual.)
[6] *he*] it, Cx. (and so often.)
[7] Cx. omits *good*.
[8] *anon*] lyghtly, Cx.
[9] *departe and befalle*, Cx., who prints, however, *to shedeth* below.
[10] *so*] om. Cx.
[11] *netheles*, Cx.
[12] *dryuen agayn*, Cx.
[13] *and*] om. Cx.

Sed Beda, in libro de naturis rerum, dicit quod Zephyrus flans in mense Maio arenas cumulat quibus[1] Nili ostia præstruuntur. Sicque Nilus, ex repercussione et præstructione[2] intumescens, plana terræ irrigat, cessante autem vento solutisque arenis redit in alveum, per quem in mare magnum descendit.[3]

Cap. XVII.

De Scythia.[4]

Memorandum est hic quod[5] Scythia duplex est, superior in Asia, inferior in Europa. Scythia ergo[6] superior regio magna est[7] in aquilone, plurimum inhabitabilis propter frigus. Ab ortu Indiæ,[8] a[9] septentrione oceano, a meridie Caucaso, ab occasu usque ad Germaniæ principium quondam[10] porrigebatur. Modo vero minor effecta ad sui occasum Hyrcaniæ copulatur. In qua terra sunt montes Hyperborei, griphes immanes, aurum, gemmæ, et smaragdi. *Trogus, libro secundo.*[11] Gentis illius agrorum[12] nulli fines distincti neque ex-

---

[1] *ex quibus*, B.

[2] So A.; *presticcione*, E. B. omits *et præstructione.*

[3] *Sed Beda . . . . descendit*] om. C.D.

[4] Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Scythia* (Scicia) in margin.

[5] *Memorandum . . . . quod*] om. C.D.

[6] *ergo*] So A.B.D.E.; vero, C.

[7] *est magna*, A. D. omits *est.*

[8] *Judeæ*, A.; *Judeam*, B., which has also *oceanum*, and *Caucasum* just afterwards.

[9] *in*, A.

[10] *quondam*] om. D.

[11] *primo*, B. (at length), wrongly. See Justin, lib. ii. capp. 1–5.

[12] *agrorum*] om. C. (not D.)

naturis seiþ þat þis[1] northerne wynde bloweþ in May, and stoppeþ[2] þe cours of þe water of Nilus wiþ hepes of grauel; and so þe water ariseþ and ouerfloweth þe londe; but whan þe wynde ceseþ, þe grauel to schedeþ and þe water falleþ in to þe chanel, and so turneth[3] dounward in to þe grete[4] see. T REVISA.

De Scythia.[5] *Capitulum septimum decimum.*

HERE take hede of tweie londes, eiþer hatte[6] Scythia; þe ouere is in Asia, þe neþere in[7] Europa; þe ouere Scythia is a grete londe in þe north, and haþ moche wildernes by cause of greet colde and chele, and strecche þ[8] somtyme estward anon to[9] Inde,[10] northwarde to[11] occean, southward to þe hille Caucasus, westward anon to Germania;[12] but now he is i-made lasse, and endeþ in þe west side to[13] Hyrcania. In þe whiche londe beeþ þe hilles Iperborey, greet grypes, gold and smaragdes, and oþer precious stones. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Þilke men destingeþ nouȝt noþer to

rerum, seyethe in this wise, that the sowthe wynde blawenge in the monethe of May makethe hepes of gravelle, þro whom the durres of that floode callede Nilus be stoppedde, þro whiche stoppenge the pleyne grownes of Egipte be replete with water; that wynde seasenge and the gravelles y-loosede hit returnethe in to his place, by whom hit descendethe in to the grete see. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum septimum decimum.

HIT is to be attendede that Scythia is duplicate, the superior in Asia, the inferior in Europa. The superior Scythia is a grete region moche inhabitable in the northe parte of hit for coldenesse, coplede of the este parte to Ynde, of the northe to the occean, of the sowthe the hille callede Caucasus, somme tyme porrecte in to the begynnenge of Germanye, now hit is made lesse, and copulate to the region of Hircany to the weste parte of hit. In whiche londe be the hilles Yperboreus, huge griphonnes, golde, gemmes, and smaragdis. *Trogus, libro secundo.* There be noo endes distincte of the

[1] *þis*] þe, Cx.
[2] *stopped*, Cx.
[3] *turneþ*] renneth, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *rede*, MS.
[5] Both MSS., *a.* and Cx. here and below give *Scicia* or *Sicia*; other proper names are also a little corrupted.
[6] *that eche of hem is named*, Cx.
[7] *is in*, Cx.
[8] *streiȝte*, *a.*
[9] *anon to*] vnto, Cx., and so below.
[10] So *a.* and Cx.; *þe ende*, MS.
[11] *to*] toward, Cx.
[12] *Iermania*, MS., and *a.*; but elsewhere (as p. 171) spelt correctly.
[13] So *a.*, Cx.; *of*, MS.

culti. Nulla illis[1] domus. Uxores et liberos in plaustris vehunt. Coriis ferinis tecti, laneis vestibus non utuntur. Lacte et melle pasti, aurum et argentum non curant. Nihil parant quod amittere timent. Nullum apud eos delictum furto gravius. Victores effecti[2] nihil præter gloriam concupiscunt. Nulli hominum unquam subacti,[3] Vesorem[4] regem Ægypti debellaverunt;[5] Darium regem Persarum fugarunt; Cyrum regem trucidarunt; Zephironem,[6] Alexandri magni ducem, cum suis copiis deleverunt, Asiam ter conquisierunt,[7] quæ eis postmodum per mille quingentos annos[8] vectigalis mansit.[9] Viri eorum Parthos et Bactrianos, feminæ eorum Amazonum regna condiderunt. Incertumque est apud illos quis sexus illustrior fuerit. In prima namque expeditione[10] Asiana, post Vesorem regem Ægypti fugatum, in

---

[1] *illis*] om. A. B has *eis*.
[2] *effecti*] om. C.D.
[3] *subacti*] subjecti, C.D.
[4] *Vesogem*, C.D. The name of this king is given as *Vexoris* in Grævius' edition of Justin (*u. s.*), where, however, the MSS. differ; Vossius conjectures *Sesosis*. B., by accident, has *victorie* here, but reads *Vesorem* below.
[5] So E., in full; *debellarunt*, A.B.D.
[6] *Zephironam*, A.B.C.D. The true form is *Zopyriona*. See Justin, lib. ii. c. 3.
[7] *conquesierunt*, MSS.
[8] *annos*] om. E.
[9] *quæ eis per multos annos vectigalis fuit*, C.D.
[10] *expeditione*] om. A.

sette her feeldes by boundes, noþer by meres;[1] þey haueþ non house yn for to wonye; her wyfes and here children þei ledeþ in cartes; and þey beeþ i-cloþed in wylde bestes skynnes. Wollen cloþes useþ þey nouȝt:[2] þey lyueþ by mekk[3] and by hony; þey recche þ nouȝt of gold, noþer of siluer;[4] þei greiþeþ[5] no þing þat þey dredeþ to lese, þey acounteþ no trespas gretter þan robberie; here werrioures[6] and victoures desireþ not[7] but worschippe: þey were neuere soget to no man.[8] Þey ouercome[9] Vesore þe kyng of Egipte in werre and batayle, Darius þe kyng of Pers[10] þey chasede and ferede, and made him flee. Cyrus þe kyng þey slowh. Also þei destroyed Zephirona and his riches; Zephirona was þe greet Alexander his ledere.[11] Þries þey conquered Asia, and Asia was afterwarde tributarie to hem a þowsand ȝere and fyue hondred. Þe men of þis peple be[12] by hem selue and þe[13] women by hem self. Also þey made[14] kyngdoms of dyuerse londes; þe[15] men made of Parthia and Bactria, and þe wommen[16] made of Amazonia kyngdoms myȝty and stronge, and so it is among hem vncerteyn and vnknowe wheþer is more worþy and more noble in kynde,[17] men or wommen.[16] In þe firste iourney in Asia after þat þey hadde i-dreue and i-chased and i-pursewed Vasore þe kyng of Egipt in to þe[18]

TREVISA.

feldes of that peple. Thei haue noo howses, caryenge theire wyfes and children in waynes couerede with the skynnes of wilde bestes and not clothes of wolle, fedde with mylke and hony, ȝiffenge noo attendence to golde and siluyr, whiche ordeyne not eny thynge that thei drede to lose. There is noo trespace to theym more grevous than thefte, whiche beynge victores desire no moore but glory; not subiecte to eny man, causenge Darius kynge of Persa to take fliȝhte, sleenge the kynge callede Cyrus, and Zephirona[19] the nowble duke of kynge Alexander with his hoste, conquerenge twyes Asia, whiche was tributary to theim by m^l. and v^c. yeres; the women of whom made the realmes of Amasonnes; hit is incerteyne to theym wheþer kynde be more nowble. In the firste expedicion Azian,[20] after Vesour the kynge of Egipte

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *nether marke her feldes by boundes, ne by dyches*, Cx.
[2] *none*, Cx.
[3] *melk*, α.; *mylk*, Cx.
[4] *selver*, α.
[5] *make*, Cx.
[6] *men of warre*, Cx.
[7] *nothing*, Cx.
[8] *subget yet to ony man*, Cx.
[9] *ouercame*, Cx. (not α.)
[10] *Regem Persarum*, α.; *fered Darius the kynge*, Cx., who has *sloughe Cyrus* below.
[11] *Alysaunders capytayn*, Cx.
[12] *be*] Added from Cx. (absent from α.)
[13] om. þe.
[14] *made*] Added from α. and Cx.
[15] So Cx.; þat, MS., α.
[16] *wymmen*, Cx. (bis).
[17] *nature and kynde*, Cx.
[18] *in the*, Cx.
[19] *Sirus and Zephizona*, Harl. MS.
[20] So Harl. MS. (z and ȝ are identical in this MS.)

redeundo circa Asiam pacandam quindecim annis viri immorati, querelis uxorum tantam moram non ferentium revocantur. In secunda expeditione, viris dolo interfectis, uxores debitam de hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. In tertia vero [1] expeditione, viris per quatuor annos absentibus, nupserunt conjuges serviis propriis ad custodiam pecorum domi relictis, qui simul vincti dominos suos post victoriam reversos bello excipiunt. Quibus vicissim [2] varia sorte sic bellantibus, monentur domini mutare genus pugnæ, tanquam non cum [3] hostibus sed cum servis conflicturi. Unde et depositis armis militaribus, flagella manu ferunt, et sic servos terrent [4] et abigunt. Qui vero capi poterant, una cum

---

[1] *vero*] om. B.

[2] *sic vicissim*, B., which has also the *sic* immediately following.

[3] *cum*] om B.; but which has it just afterwards.

[4] *terunt*, A. apparently.

tornynge aȝe, þey abede[1] fiftene ȝere for to make pees in Asia. But wyfes made grete pleyntes and sorwes[2] þat hire housbondes were so longe from home,[3] and so þe men were of sent[4] and torned home to[5] dwelle wiþ hir wifes. In þe secounde iornay þe men were by traisoun i-slawe, and þe wifes took greet wreche of þe enemyes. In þe þridde iornay[6] þe men were oute and absent foure ȝere to gidres, and [þe][7] wifes wedded hir owne seruauntes and bonde men þat were i-left[8] at home for kepynge of bestes. But whan here lordes and housbondes had þe victorie and torned home aȝen, þe wyfes and here[9] newe housbondes gadred hem to gidres and arrayed hem in a greet bataile to fiȝte aȝen hire olde lordes and housbondes þat were comyng home ;[10] and whan þey mette to gidres hap[11] was vnstable and vnstedefast ; ones[12] wiþ þat oon side, and eft wiþ þat oþer. Þanne[13] þe lordes byþouȝte hem, and toke hem to rede[14] oþerwise to fiȝte wiþ hir owne[15] bonde men þan wiþ[16] enemyes of straunge londes, and caste awey hire owne armure and wepene of knyȝtis, and bere whippes in hir hondes ; and so fered þe cherles,[17] and droof hem away, and made hem to fle. And afterward, al þat myȝte be i-take of þilke false cherles and of þe false wifes þat hadde

Trevisa.

y-putte to fliȝhte, taryenge xv. yere to make Asia to theire pleasure, were callede home ageyne thro the instaunces of theire wifes wyllenge not to suffre the taryenge of theyme. In the secunde expedicion, the men sleyne by treason and gyle, theire wifes toke dewe vengeaunce on theire enmyes. In the thrydde expedicion, the men beenge absent by iiij. yere, the wifes of theim were maryede to theire seruauntes lefte at home to kepe bestes, whiche ioinede to gedre receyved theire lordes with batelle returnede after þeire victory, whiche fiȝhtenge thro diuerse chaunce were movede at the laste to pútte aweye theire armor of cheuallery, vsenge not to conflicte as with theire enmyes but with theire seruaundes, takenge a flayle in theire honde, ferenge theire seruauntes and dryvenge theyme aweye. And somme of the seruauntes

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 31. a.

[1] *abode*, Cx.
[2] *sorwe*, *a*.
[3] So Cx. ; *hire*, MS.
[4] *sente fore*, Cx.
[5] *and dwellede*, *a*. and Cx.
[6] So *a*. ; *iorday*, MS.
[7] Added from Cx. ; absent from *a*.
[8] *left*, *a*., Cx.
[9] *the*, Cx.
[10] *homeward*, Cx.; *hoom*, *a*.
[11] *fortune*, Cx.
[12] So *a*. and Cx.; *unstedfastnesse wiþ*, MS.
[13] *that*, Cx. (typogr. error ?)
[14] *and toke hem to rede*] and concluded, Cx.
[15] *owne*] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[16] *with theyr*, Cx.
[17] Cx. omits some words which follow down to *false wifes*.

adulteris uxoribus, partim ferro, partim patibulo, sunt perempti. Post hæc apud Scythas pax fuit[1] usque ad tempora[2] Darii regis Persarum, qui ab illis contritus in redeundo Macedones perdomuit et Athenienses debellavit.[3]

De Bactria. Bactria, quam primum incoluit Cham,[4] filius Noe, jacet a mari Caspio usque ad Indum[5] fluvium protensa, habetque ab occidente montem Caucasum, ab austro Parthos.

De monte Caucaso. Hic autem Caucasus, inter omnes montes orientales prolixior[6] et formosior,[7] a finibus Indiæ[8] usque ad[9] montem Taurum[10] porrigitur. Unde[11] unus atque idem mons Taurus et Caucasus[12] reputatur. Sed volunt quidam[13] ut[14] occidentalis pars Caucasi versus Armeniam sit Taurus.[15] Habet autem Caucasus ab aquilone Caspium mare et Hyrcaniam,[16] ab austro Parthiam, Assyriam,[17] et Babyloniam.[18] Qui quidem mons pro varietate collimitantium[19] regionum variis appellatur nominibus. Itaque[20]

---

[1] *pax fuit apud Scythas*, B.
[2] *tempus*, B.
[3] *In prima namque . . Athenienses debellavit*] om. C.D.
[4] *Sham*, E.
[5] *Nylum*, C., distinctly (not D.); *Sulum*, B.
[6] A. and B. add *est*.
[7] *famosior*, C.D.
[8] *Judeæ*, B.
[9] *ad*] om. B.
[10] *Taurum montem*, C.D.
[11] *Unde et*, C.D.
[12] *mons cum eodem*, C.D.
[13] *quidem*, A.
[14] *quod*, B.
[15] *Sed volunt . . Taurus*] om. C.D.
[16] *Hispaniam*, C., distinctly (not D.)
[17] *Syriam*, B.
[18] *Babyloniam et Mesopotamiam tangit*, C.D.
[19] Sic A.B.E.; de proprietate habitantium, C.D.
[20] *Ita*, A.

i-broke spousaille hadde schenful[1] deth; for som were i-slawe with iren, and som were an honged ful hi3e. After þis phare[2] was pees in Scythia for to Darij his tyme[3] kyng of Persida. Þanne Darius was ouercome of þe Scytes[4] men of Scythia, and in þe tornynge homward he ouercome Macedones, þat beeþ men of Macedonia of þat londe, and werede vppon Athenienses men of Athenis. TREVISA.

Bactria is a lond[5] þat Cham, Noe[6] sone, woned first ynne, and strecchеþ from þe see Caspius anon to þe ryuer of Inde, and haþ in þe west side þe mount Caucasus, and in þe south Parthia. Þis hille Caucasus is lengest of alle þe est hilles, and most famous, and strecchеþ from þe endes of Inde anon to þe hille þat hatte Mount Taurus, so þat mont Taurus[7] and Caucasus is i-conteyned al oon hille; but som men seiþ þat þe westside of Caucasus, þat is toward Armenia, is and hatte mount Taurus. Þat mount Caucasus haþ in þe northside þe see þat hatte Caspius and Hyrcania þat londe, and in[8] þe southside Parthia and Assyria and Babylon.[9] Þat hil, for dyuerse contrees and londes þat strecchеþ and recheþ þerto, haþ[10] many and

taken with theire wifes in advoutery were hongede and somme sleyne with swerde. After that tyme peace was amonge theyme vn to the tyme of Darius kynge of Persa, whiche ouer commen of theyme in returnenge from theim hade victory of the men of Macedony and did fi3hte also ageynes men of Atheynes. MS. HARL. 2261.

Bactria, whom Cham, sonne of Noe, inhabite firste, lyethe from the see Caspy to the floode of Ynde protendede, hauenge of the weste parte to hit the mownte Caucasus, and of the sowthe men of Parthia. This hille callede moste nowble in fame amonge alle other mowntes of the este[11] to the mownte of Taurus from the costes of Ynde, where the hille callede Taurus and Caucasus be reputate oon. But somme men wille that the hille callede Taurus is made of the weste partes of Caucasus towarde Armenye. This hille Caucasus hathe of the northe to hit the see Caspy and Hircany, of the sowthe Parthia, Assyria, and Babylon, whiche hille is callede in diuerse maneres and name for the diuersite of Bactria. Mons Caucasus. Mons Taurus.

[1] *schendeful, a.*; *shameful*, Cx.
[2] *fare, a.*; *iourney*, Cx.
[3] *vnto the tyme of Darius*, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *Cytes*, MS.; *Cytees, a.*
[5] *and werede ... a lond*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[6] *Noes, a.*
[7] *so þat Mont Taurus*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *a.* adds *in*.
[9] *Babiloun*, MS. and *a.*
[10] *That hille, by cause it stretcheth to dyuerse contreys and londes, hath, &c.*, Cx.
[11] The verb (= *porrigitur*) is omitted.

versus orientem, ubi in celsiorem surgit[1] verticem, pro candore nivium ibidem jugiter morantium, Caucasus dicitur, quod sonat[2] candidum. Et, secundum fratrem Albertum, mons iste tantæ est altitudinis,[3] quod qui sub eo degunt vident super eum radios solis occidentis per tres horas infra noctem, et itidem[4] mane[5] per tres horas ante diem super orientalem partem montis.[6]

De Hyrcania.

Hyrcania regio[7] habet ab ortu mare Caspium, ab austro Armeniam, a septentrione Albaniam, ab occasu Hiberiam.[8] Jacet autem[9] sub jugo Caucasi montis, a sylva Hyrcania sic vocata,[10] regio quædam[11] feras fovens, tigrides et pantheras. Regio vasta et lata, habens gentes xliv., quarum quædam[12] terras colunt, quædam de[13] venatione vivunt, quædam humana carne[14] vescuntur. Ibi sunt aves Hyrcanæ, pennas habentes de nocte lucentes. Hiberia[15] est regio sub monte Tauro jacens, quæ[16] versus occasum et[17] juxta pontum jungitur Armeniæ.

De Albania.

Albania habet[18] ab ortu mare Caspium, descenditque per ora septentrionalis oceani usque ad Mæotides paludes; habetque[19] populum albo[20] crine nascentem cum

---

[1] *exsurgit*, C.

[2] *quod lingua eorum*, D.

[3] *mons ... altitudinis*] om. A. B. omits *mons iste*.

[4] So B.E., distinctly; *iterum*, A.

[5] *de mane*, B.

[6] *Et, secundum ... partem montis*] om. C.D. A. and B. have *montis partem*.

[7] *regio*] om. C.D.

[8] *Hiberniam*, E.

[9] *Jacet autem*] Est itaque regio, C.D.

[10] *sic vocata*] nuncupata, C.D., which omit *regio ... pantheras*.

[11] *quædam*] quidam, A.E.; quidem, B.

[12] *quidam*, A., and so below (twice).

[13] *de*] om. A.

[14] *carne humana*, C.D.

[15] E. has for rubric: *De insula Hiberiæ!*

[16] *quæ*] om. A.

[17] C. and D. omit *quæ* and *et*.

[18] after *ortu* in C.D.

[19] *huncque*, E. (misreading the copy); *habet*. D.

[20] *cum albo*, B.

dyuers names. Þat hille is hiȝeste in[1] þe est side, and for whiȝtnesse of snowe þat lieþ alwey þeron he is cleped[2] Mons Caucasus, þat is to menynge a[3] white hille. Albertus seiþ þat hil is so hiȝe, þat men þat woneþ þerby seeþ þe sonne bemes[4] in þe west side þre houres wiþ ynne þe[5] nyȝt, and so meny houres to fore þe day in þe est side of þat[6] hille. TREVISA.

Hyrcania þat londe haþ in þe est side þe see Caspius, in þe south Armenia, in þe north Albania, and in þe west Iberia þat lond; and lieþ beside[7] þe mount Caucasus, and haþ þe name of þat wode þat hatte Hyrcania. In þat londe beeþ dyuers wylde bestes and foules, tigris þat beeste,[8] and pantera also. Þat londe is wyde and large, and haþ foure and fourty manere men. Som tilieþ[9] lond, and som lyueþ by huntynge, and som eteþ manis fiesche. Þere beeþ briddes þat hatte[10] hircane, hire fetheres schyne by nyȝte.

Hiberia þat lond lieþ[11] vnder mont Taurus, and lith westward fast by Pontus, and ioyneþ to Armenye. Albania þat lond haþ in þe est side þe see Caspius, and strecche þ dounward by þe mouthes of þe North Occean anon to þe wateres þat hatte Meotides. And þe men of þat lond beeþ

---

men inhabitenge hit. For towarde the este, where hit dothe aryse in moste altitude, for the huge whitenesse of men that dwelle there, hit is callede Caucasus, whiche sowndethe whyte. And, after Alberte, hit is of so huge altitude that men lyffenge vnder hit see on hyt the beames of the sonne beenge in the weste by iij. howres with in the nyȝhte, and also in the mornenge iij. howres afore day on the este parte of hit. The region Hircany hathe on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, on the northe Albania, on the weste Hiberia, beenge subiecte to Caucasus, callede Hyrcania of a woode so namede, whiche is a region noryschenge wilde bestes, tigres, panteres, a waste region and brode, the peple of whom somme tylle erthe, somme lyve by huntenge, somme of theyme do eyte the flesche of man. There be bryddes in that region hauenge fethers schynenge in the nyȝhte. Hiberia is a region vnder that hille Taurus, whiche is ioinede to Armenye towarde the este. MS. HARL. 2261. Hyrcania regio. Hiberia.

Albania hathe on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, descendenge by the regiones of the northe occean to Meotides paludes. That region hathe peple with white Albania. f. 31. b.

---

[1] *on*, Cx.
[2] *i-cleped*, *a*.
[3] *the*, Cx.
[4] *beme*, Cx.
[5] Cx. omits *þe*.
[6] *þe*, *a*., Cx.
[7] *by the syde of*, Cx.; *beside of*, *a*.
[8] *beeste*] So Cx.; *foul*, MS., *a*.
[9] *tyllen*, Cx.
[10] *birdes that ben called*, Cx., who, however, has *heyghte* just before.
[11] *lith*, *a*.

oculis pictis[1] et glaucis, melius, de nocte quam de die videntes.[2] Hujus terræ sunt canes tam immanes et[3] feroces ut tauros premant, leones[4] perimant, e[5] quibus unus, Alexandro magno missus, triumphavit in stadio de leone, elephante, et apro.

De Gothia. Gothia est regio Scythiæ inferior[6] versus circium, cui subjacet insula Gothlandia omni mercium genere copiosa. Habet[7] ab aquilone Daciam et oceanum septentrionalem. Dicitur autem Gothia a Gog filio Japhet,[8] cujus gentes potius Gothos quam Gogos nominaverunt. Gens quidem[9] fortis, ingens, terribilis, de quorum[10] stirpe processerunt Daci in Europa, Gætuli in Africa, Amazones in Asia.

De Armenia. Armenia, quæ alio nomine dicitur Ararath, ab Armenio Jasonis milite[11] nuncupata est, qui[12] Armenius, amisso Jasone Thessalo rege suo,[13] recollecta[14] multitudine militum qui passim vagabantur,[15] Armeniam occupavit[16] et inhabitavit. Quæ quidem[17] regio protenditur

---

[1] *oculisque pictriis* (quid?), B.
[2] *adeo ut melius . . . videant*, C.D.
[3] *ingentes sunt canes tam f.*, C.D.
[4] *et leones*, A.
[5] *e*] de, C.D.
[6] So A.E.; *inferioris*, B.C.D. C. and D. omit *versus circium*.
[7] *Habet autem hæc Gothia*, C.D. (the latter has *gens*.)
[8] *oceanum, a Gog* (*Goth*, D.) *filio Iaphet sic dicta, &c.*, C.D.
[9] *quidem*] om. C.D.
[10] *quarum*, D.
[11] *milite Jasonis*, C.D.
[12] *hic*, C.D.
[13] *amisso rege Jasone Thessalo*, C.D.
[14] *collecta*, A.
[15] *vacabantur*, B.; *multitudine ejus quæ passim vagabatur*, C.D.
[16] *cepit*, C.D.
[17] *hæc*, C.D.

i-bore wiþ white here and wiþ ȝelowe[1] eyȝen i-peynt, and seeþ better be nyȝte þan be daye. Þe houndes of þat londe beeþ so greete, so grym, and stronge þat þey prowep doun boles[2] and sleeþ lyouns. Oon of þilke houndes was sent to kyng Alexandre, and fauȝte wiþynne lystes wiþ a leon and an olyfaunt, and wiþ a wylde bore, and hadde þe maystrie. TREVISA.

Gotha is þe neþer partie of Scythia toward Circium.[3] To þat lond Gotha liep þe ilond Gothlandia; þat ylonde hap plente of al manere marchaundise, and hap in þe north side Dacia, and in þe southe syde[4] occean, and hatte Gothea of Gos, Iapheþ his sone. Þe[5] men of þat lond beeþ rediloker[6] i-cleped Gothy þan Gogi, and beþ wel stronge men and huge,[7] grym and sterne, and of hem com þe Dacies in Europa, Getuli in Affrica, Amazones in Asia.

Armenia, þat hatte also Ararath, hap þe name of Armenius, Iasons knyȝt, the whiche Armenius, whan he hadde i-lost Iason,[8] kyng of Thessalia,[9] he gadered knyȝtes þat roiled[10] aboute, and toke Armenia, and woned þerynne.

---

[1] *ȝelew*, α.
[2] *booles*, α.; *bulles*, Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *Cireon*, MS.
[4] *southe syde*] So Cx.; *norþ*, MS. *Dacia and þe north occean*, α., which agrees with the Latin, and is probably right.
[5] So α.; *þat*, MS.
[6] *reedloker*, α.; *redylyer*, Cx.
[7] *and ben right stronge men, grete, grym, and sturne*, Cx.
[8] α. and Cx. adds *his*.
[9] *Tessalia*, MS., α. (not Cx.)
[10] *roillede*, α.; *royled*, Cx.

MS. HARL. 2261.

heire, peyntede eien and ȝelowe, seenge better in the nyȝhte then in the daye. The dogges of whiche region be so greete and feerse that thei depresse bulles and peresche lyones, of whome oon was sende to kynge Alexander, whiche hade the victory with in a forlonge of a bulle, an elephaunte, and of a boore. Gothia is a region of Scythia towarde the weste, to whom the yle of Gotlande is subiecte, copious of alle kyndes of marchandise, hauenge on the northe parte to hit Dacia and the northe occean. That londe was callede Gothia of Gog, the sonne of Iapheth, the peple of whom be callede rather Gothos then Gogos, whiche be myȝhty men and terrible, of whom men of Denmarke, in Europe, come, Getuliones or Getules in Affrike, and the Amasonnes in Asia. Gothia.

Armenia, whiche oþerwise callede Ararthe, toke the name of hit of Armenius, knyȝhte of Iason, whiche Armenius Iason his kynge loste gedrenge a multitude of knyȝhtes, whiche wente abowte as vagabundes, occupiede Armenye and inhabite hit, whiche region is protendede betwene Armenia.

inter montem Taurum et Caucasum a Caspio mari usque ad Cappadociam. Habet autem in longitudine undecies centum millia passuum, in latitudine vero septingenta [1] millia.[2] Ibi est mons Ararath,[3] ubi arca Noe [4] consedit post diluvium, et sunt duæ Armeniæ,[5] major et minor, superior et inferior, sicut duæ Pannoniæ.

Cap. XVIII.

De Cappadocia.

Cappadocia regio [6] equorum nutrix ab ortu habet Armeniam, ab occasu Asiam minorem, ab aquilone Amazones, ab austro Taurum [7] montem, cui subjacet Cilicia, Lycia,[8] et Isauria, usque ad Cilicium sinum qui prospicit [9] contra insulam Cyprum. Asia minor ab ortu tangit Cappadociam, a cæteris lateribus clauditur [10] mari magno. Nam a septentrione habet Pontum Euxinum, ab occasu Propontidem, ab austro Ægyptium mare.

De provinciis Asiæ minoris.

---

[1] So E. at length and rightly; *septuaginta*, A. (at length); lxx^ta, B. The versions also differ.

[2] *Habet . . . millia*] om. C.D.

[3] *Araratha*, B.

[4] *Noe*] om. C.D.

[5] C.D. add *sicut Pannoniæ duæ*, omitting the rest. E. omits *sicut duæ Pannoniæ*. The text agrees with A.B. (which latter has *scilicet* before *major*), and the versions.

[6] *regio*] om. C.D.

[7] C.D. add *habet*.

[8] *Lycia*] om. A.C.D.

[9] *spectat*, C.D.

[10] D. adds *undique*.

þat londe strecchep by[1] þe mount Taurus and Caucasus from þe see Caspius anon to Cappadocia,[2] and hap in lengþe eleuene hondred þowsand paas, and in brede seuene hondred myle. Þere is þat hille mount Ararath,. þere Noe is schippe abood[3] after Noes flood, and þere is Armenyes tweie,[4] þe more and þe lasse, þe ouer[5] and þe neþer, and so beeþ tweye Pannonyes also. TREVISA.

De Cappadocia.[6] *Capitulum octavum decimum.*

CAPPADOCIA þat londe norischep and fedep many hors,[7] and hap in þe est side Armenia, in þe west side[8] Asia þe lasse, in þe norþ Amazonia, and in þe south mount Taurus. Þerto be-lyeþ[9] Cilicia[10] and Isauria anon to þe see Cilicius þat strecchep toward the ilond of Cyprus. Þe lasse Asia ioynep to Cappadocia in the est side, and is biclipped and i-closed in þe oþer sides wiþ þe grete see. For he hap in þe north side þat mouth and see þat hatte Euxinus,[11] in þe west þe mouth and þe[12] see Propontides, and in þe south þe see of Egipte. Þis lasse

the hill Taurus and Caucasus, from the see Caspy vn to Cappadocia. This region hathe in longitude xjᶜ. mĺ of passes, in latitude lxxᵗⁱ mĺ. There the mownte of Ararth is, where the schippe of Noe remaynede after the floode. Also þer be ij. Armenyes, the moore and lesse, as þer be ij. Pannonyes. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum octavum decimum.

CAPPADOCIA is a region nutrix of horses, hauenge on the este parte to hit Armeny, on the weste the lesse Asia, on the northe the Amasones, on the sowthe the hille Taurus, to whom Cilicia, Lycia, and Isauria be subacte vn to the water of Cilicia, which hathe prospecte ageyne the yle of Cipresse. Asia the lesse towcheth in the este parte Capadocy, on other sides hit is schutte with the grete see. For in the northe parte hit hathe the see Eusyne, and of the weste Propontides, on the sowthe parte the see off Egipte, Cappadocia. Asia Minor.

[1] *to*, Cx.
[2] *Capadocia*, MS. and Cx., and so below.
[3] *abode*, Cx.
[4] *ther be two Armenyes*, Cx.
[5] *ouerer*, Cx.
[6] The proper names in this chapter are more than usually corrupted and distorted, in both versions, as well as in the text. Their false spellings will not in general be noticed.
[7] *horses*, Cx. (not *a*.)
[8] Cx. omits *side*.
[9] *bilieþ*, *a*. ; *ther by lyeth*, Cx.
[10] *Scicilia*, MS. and Cx., which have *Silicus* and *Sylycus* below.
[11] *Eusynus*, MS.
[12] þe omitted in *a*. and Cx.

Continet autem in se plures provincias. Nam primo ab aquilone habet Bithyniam in [1] Ponti exordio Thraciæ adversam, quæ etiam [2] dicitur Phrygia major, cujus metropolis est Nicomedia. Deinde Galatia, a priscis Gallorum gentibus per regem Bithyniæ ad bellandum [3] invitatis sic denominata et occupata. Sed tunc dicebatur Gallogræcia, et populi ejus Gallogræci, tanquam ex Græcis et Gallis mixti,[4] qui nunc dicuntur Galatæ, quibus Paulus unam scribit epistolam.[5] Tertio est [6] Phrygia minor, sic dicta a Phrygia, filia Europæ, filiæ Agenoris, quæ etiam dicitur Dardania, a Dardano filio Jovis. In qua terra est civitas [7] Troja,[8] quæ et Ilium dicitur. Dicitur autem Troja a Tros[9] filio Erichthonii, filii Dardani, filii Jovis.[10] Cui regioni [11] ab oriente est Lydia, ab occasu Hellespontus. Quarto est Lydia ad orientem Phrygiæ minoris,[12] in qua rex ille dives Crœsus [13] quondam regnabat, quæ quidem terra dum pro brevitate

De Bithynia, sive Phrygia majore.

De Galatia.

De Phrygia minore, sive Dardania.

De Lydia.

---

[1] *in*] om. B.

[2] *et*, B.; *dicitur etiam*, C.D.; *adversamque et dicitur*, A.

[3] *bellum*, C.D.

[4] *et populi . . . mixti*] om. C.D.

[5] *quibus . . . epistolam*] om. C.D.

[6] *est*] om. C.D., in which the following sentence is slightly altered.

[7] *civitas*] om. C.D.

[8] *Troya*, E. not A.B.

[9] So the MSS.

[10] *Dicitur autem . . . Jovis*] om. C.D.

[11] *regioni*] om. C.D.

[12] *minoris*] om. C.D.

[13] *Crœsus rex dives*, C.D., (which latter has *quondam* after *Crœsus*).

Asia conteyneþ meny prouynces and londes. For firste in þe norþ side he conteyneþ Bithynia in þe bygynnynge vppon þe see aȝenst Thracia, and hatte also þe more Phrygia. Þe chief citee of Bithynia hatte Nicomedia. Þanne is Galatia and haþ þe name of men þat were i-cleped Galli, þat come at þe prayere[1] of þe kyng of Bithynia to helpe hym in his werres, and woned in þat lond Galatia: but þo þat lond hiȝte Gallogrecia and þe men of þat lond hiȝte[2] Gallogreci as men i-melled of Gallis and of Grecis; but now þey beeþ i-cleped Galate,[3] and to hem Poule wroot[4] his pistel ad Galatas. Þe þridde is þe lasse Phrygia and haþ þe name of Phrygia, Europa his[5] douȝter, Agenore his douȝter. And þat Phrygia hatte Dardania also[6] of Dardanus Iupiter[7] sone. In þat londe is þe citee of Troye, þat hatte Ilium also. Troye hatte after Tros,[8] Erichthonius sone, þat was Dardanus sone, þat was Iupiter[9] sone. Þat lond[10] haþ in þe est side Lydia, and in þe west þe mouth and þe see Hellespontus. Þe fourþe is Lydia, and is in þe est side of the lasse[11] Phrygia. In þat Lydia regned somtyme þe riche kyng Cresus, but whan þat lond was to litel for tweie

TREVISA.

---

conteynenge in hit mony prouinces. For hit hathe firste in the northe Bithynia, in the begynnenge of Pontus ageyne Thracia, whiche is callede also Phrygia maior, the chiefe cite of whom is Nicomedia, afterwarde callede Galatia, of peple desirede to fiȝhte by the kyng of Bithynia, then callede Gallogrecia, and the peple of hit Gallogreci, as peple mixte of Frensche men and of Grekes, whiche be callede now Galate,[3] to whom Paule did wryte an epistole. The thrydde is the lesse Phrygia, callede by that name of Phrygia the doȝhter of Europa, the doȝhter of Agenoris, whiche was callede Dardania, of Dardanus the son of Iupiter. In whiche londe is the cite of Troye, namede so of Tros, son of Erichthonius, son of Dardanus the son of Iupiter. To whiche region Lydia is in the este parte, and Hellespontus of the weste parte. Lydia is at the este parte of the lesse Phrygia, in whom Cresus, the ryche kynge, reignede somme tyme, whiche londe for the litelle quantite of hit myȝhte not suffre and suffice to ij. breþer,

MS. HARL. 2261.

Bithynia.

Phrygia Minor.

f. 32. a.

Troja.

Lydia.

---

[1] *preiere, α.*

[2] *Gallogrecia .... hiȝte*] added from *α.* and Cx.

[3] *Galathe*, MS., *α.*, and Cx., and so the Harl. MS., as well as all the Latin MSS.

[4] *wryteth*, Cx.

[5] *Europaes*, Cx.; and *Agenors* below.

[6] *also*] added from *α.*

[7] *Iupiter his, α.*; *Iupyters*, Cx.

[8] So *α.*; *Troos*, MS. and Cx.

[9] *α.* adds *his.*

[10] *lond*] added from *α.* and Cx.

[11] *eeste*, Cx.

sui duos reges, fratres, Lydum et Tyrrhenum, ferre non posset,[1] Tyrrhenus, agitante sorte, cum multitudine egressus, locum in superioribus partibus Galliæ[2] occupavit, quem Tyrrheniam[3] nominavit. Ab isto Tyrrheno Tyrrhenum mare videtur denominari, sicut Lydia terra a Lydo, reliquo fratre, cujus metropolis est Smyrna, ad quam Johannes[4] Evangelista scribit in Apocalypsi. Et principalis fluvius Lydiæ dicitur Pactolus, aureas secundum poetas gignens arenas.[5] Quinta provincia Asiæ minoris dicitur Pamphylia,[6] quæ et Isauria, habens metropolim Seleuciam, quam Seleucus Antiochus fundavit.[7]

De Pamphylia.

De Cilicia. Deinde est[8] Cilicia, in qua continetur Lycia sive Lycaonia, cujus urbes celebres erant Lystra et Derbe,[9] sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum, per quas de[10] Syria ad Italiam navigatur. Harum omnium urbs metropolis erat Tharsis[11] inferius versus mare.[12]

De Amazonia.

Amazonia regio est partim[13] in Asia, partim[13] in Europa. Albaniæ est vicina, et fuerunt Amazones primo Gothorum uxores, quæ, viris suis dolo[14] interfectis, debitamde hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. Nam spolia acceperunt,[15] masculos occiderunt, fœminas reservarunt.

---

[1] *potuit*, B.
[2] *Galileæ*, B.
[3] *Tiream*, MSS.
[4] B. prefixes *beatus*.
[5] *quæ quidem terra . . . arenas*] om. C.D.
[6] *Quinto est Pamphylia*, C.D.
[7] *quam . . . fundavit*] om. C.D.
[8] *est*] om. A.
[9] *Listris et Derben*, MSS., and similarly both the versions.
[10] *de*] om. A.
[11] The MS. reading is here best retained; in fact, Tarsus (not Tartessus) is most probably the same as Tarshish.
[12] C.D. thus contract the two last periods: *Deinde Cilicia, in qua est Tharsis.*
[13] B. has *partim est* (twice.)
[14] *dolo*] om. C. (not D.)
[15] *ceperunt*, C.D.

breþeren þat were kynges, þat hi3te Lydus and Tyrrhenus, hit by lott happed[1] þat Tyrrhenus went oute wiþ many men, and gat hym a lond in þe ouer partie of Gallia, and cleped his lond Tyrrhenia.[2] Hit semeþ þat þe see Tyrrhenus haþ þe name of þis king Tyrrhenus, as þe lond Lydia haþ þe name of his broþer Lydus. Þe chief cite of Lydia hat Smyrna, to þat[3] citee Iohan þe euangelist writeþ in þe Apocalips.[4] Þe chief ryuere of Lydia hatte Pactolus, and bringeþ forth goldene graule, as poetis telliþ. The fifte prouince of þe lasse Asia hatte Pamphylia and Isauria also. Þe cheef citee of þat lond hatte Seleucia. Þat citee Seleucus Antiochus bulde and arerede. Þan is Cilicia and conteyneþ Lycia, and þat hatte Lycaonia. Þerynne were noble citees Lystra and Derbe, as it is i-write in Actibus Apostolorum. By þilke citees me seileþ[5] out of Syria to Italia, but þe cheef citee of alle þese was Tharsis dounward toward þe see. Amazonia þat lond is som in Asia, and som in Europa, and is nyh to Albania. Þe firste Amazones were þe wyfes of Gothes, þat took wreche of hire housbondes deþ þat were traytouresliche i-slawe.[6] For þey toke prayes and slowe men and saued wommen, and

TREVISA.

Lydus and Tyrrhenus, ij. kynges. Tyrrhenus enchaunce movenge goenge furthe with a grete multitude occupiede a place in the superior parte of Fraunce, whiche londe he namede Tyrrhenia,[2] lyke as that londe Lydia was namede of Lydus his brother, the chiefe cite of whom is Smyrna, to whom Seynte Iohn Euangeliste wrytethe in his Apocalypsis: the principalle floode of Lydia is callede Pactolus gendrenge gravel of golde. The v^the^ prouince of the lesse Asia is callede Pamphylia and Isauria, hauenge Seleucia the chiefe cite of hit, whom Seleucus Antiochus causede to be edifiede. After that is Cilicia, in whom Lycia or Lycaonia is conteynede, the nowble cites of whom were Lystra and Derbe, as hit is expressede in the Actes of thapostles, by whom hit is saylede from Syria to Ytaly. The nowbleste cite off theyme alle was Tharsis, more inferialle towarde the see.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Pamphylia.

Cilicia.

Thatsis urbs.

Amazonia is a region parte in Asia and parte in Europe, nye to Albania, and the Amazones were firste the wifes of Gothes, the husbondes of whom sleyne by gyle, they toke dewe vengeaunce on the enmyes of theym þerfore. For thei robbede, sleenge the male childer and reseruenge

Amazonia.

---

[1] *happened by lotte*, Cx.

[2] *Tirea*, MS.; *Turea*, Harl. MS.

[3] *of Lydia . . . þat citee*] Added from *a.* and Cx.

[4] *seynt Iohan euangelyst wryteth in thapocalipsis*, Cx.

[5] *men saylle*, Cx.

[6] *traitourliche i-slawe*; *a.*; *traitourly slayne*, Cx.

Diu sine viris vixerunt. Tandem duas[1] reginas statuerunt, quarum una exercitum extra ducebat, altera rempublicam domi regebat. Per centum fere[2] annos magnam Asiæ partem perdomuerunt.[3] Demum[4] ex finitimis locis maritos sobolis gratia sumpserunt,[5] certis temporibus coeuntes et[6] certis temporibus abstinentes.[7] Masculinos[8] fœtus aut mactabant aut certo tempore ablactatos[9] patribus transmittebant. Fœminas vero[10] reservantes ad venandum, ad sagittandum, ad militandum[11] informabant. Et ne mamillarum grossities sagittationem[12] impediret, septimo ætatis anno dextram mammam exurebant. Inde[13] dictæ sunt Urimammæ vel Amazones, quasi sine mamma. Quarum[14] feritatem primo perdomuit Hercules, deinde Achilles, et[15] tandem Alexander magnus. *Ranulphus.* Et[16] quamvis Isidorus, Etymolog. lib. xiv., dicat Amazones per Alexandrum magnum deletas, historia[17] tamen Alexandri dicit Thalestrem[18] Amazonum reginam Alexandro petenti tributa[19]

---

[1] *Duas tandem*, C.D.
[2] *ferme*, A.C.D.
[3] *m. p. A. subigebant*, C.D.
[4] *Tandem*, C.D.
[5] *sumebant*, C.D.
[6] *et*] om. B.
[7] *coeuntes et iterum vacantes*, C.D.
[8] *masculos*, C.D.
[9] *ablactatos*] om. C.D.
[10] *et fœminas*, B.
[11] *ad venandum et militandum*, C.D.
[12] *sagittationi*, D.
[13] *et inde*, C.D.
[14] *Harum*, C.D.
[15] *deinde Achilles et*] om. C.D.
[16] *Et*] om. C.D. This sentence is blundered in B.
[17] *ostia*, A.
[18] *Thalestrem*] om. C.D.
[19] *tributa petenti*, D.

leued longe wiþ oute housbondes, and afterward made hem tweie queenes; þat oon ladde þe oost and meynteyned the werre, and werred faste; þat oþer quene was at home, and ruled þe lond, and gouernede þe peple at home. And þese wommen helde vnder hond a grete deel of Asia aboute an hondred yere. And at þe laste[1] þese wommen wolde haue children, and toke housbondes of þe next contrayes aboute, and certeyn tymes lette [her][2] housbondes ligge by hem, and certeyne tymes absteyned hem. But þey slowȝ alle þe knaue[3] children, oþer certeyn tyme i-wened sent hem to þe fadres, and saued alle[4] mayde children, and tauȝt hem to schetynge, and to[5] dedes of armes and of chyualrie. And for grete brestes schulde nouȝt lette hem to schete, of eueriche maide of seuen ȝere olde þey brende of þe riȝt brest; and þerfore þey were cleped Urimammæ, þat is to menynge *brend bristes;* and þey were i-hote Amazones, þat is to menynge *wiþoute brest.* Hercules was þe firste þat chastised þe schrewednesse[6] of þese wommen, and þan Achilles, and þan at þe laste þe grete Alexandre.[7] R. And þei, Isid. Eth. 14, seie þat þe grete Alexander destroyed Amazones, neuerþeles þe storie of Alexander seiþ, þat whan þe kyng Alexandre asked[8] of hem tribute, Thalestris þe quene of Amazones

TREVISA.

the childer female, lyvenge longe with owte howsebondes. At the laste thei made ij. qwenes, oon of whom gouernede the hoste, that oþer kepede residence at home, hauenge victory ouer a grete parte of Asia by c. yere. At the laste thei toke to theym men of ferre costes for cause of multiplicacion, vsenge the acte venerealle in certeyne tymes, and absteynenge oþer certeyne tymes, auther sleenge the male childer other elles sendenge them to the faders after a certeyne tyme, reseruenge the female childer, informenge þeym to hunte, to schote, and to vse cheuallery, brennenge the ryȝhte pappe of theyme in the vij^{the} yere of theire age, leste the grosenes of hit scholde lette theyme to schote. Wherefore thei were callede Urimammæ, or Amazones, as with owte a pappe; the cruellenes of whom Hercules did mitigate firste, after that Achilles, and at the laste kynge Alexander. R. Thauȝhe Isidorus, Eth. 14°, seye Amazones to be destroyede by kynge Alexander, neuerthelesse the story of Alexander seythe that Thalestris, qwene of

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 32. b.

[1] *atte laste*, Cx.
[2] Added from Cx., who has *theyr;* absent from a.
[3] *men*, Cx., who omits *other . . . fadres.*
[4] *alle*] the, Cx.
[5] *for to shote and to do*, Cx.
[6] *schrewednesse*] ylle disposicion, Cx.
[7] *and atte laste the grete Alysaunder*, Cx. *Alexander* and *Alexandre* are both so written in the MS. and a. *at length.*
[8] *asked*] *axede*, a.; *axed*, Cx.

Littera missa Alexandro de regina Amazonum.

rescripsisse in hunc modum: "De tua prudentia[2] mi-
" randum est[3] quod cum fœminis congredi voluisti; quia
" si favente nobis fortuna succumbere[4] te contingat,
" merito es confusus, cum a fœminis sis devictus.[5]
" Quod si, iratis nobis diis, nos deviceris, parum hono-
" raberis qui[6] de fœminis triumphasti." Placatus ex his Alexander libertatem illis concessit,[7] dicens quod[8] mulieres amore non terrore[9] forent[10] devincendæ.[11] *Trogus, libro secundo.*[12] Hæc autem Thalestris regina, postquam concubitu Alexandri ad sobolem capiendam per quadraginta dies usa fuisset, in regnum reversa, brevi post tempore, cum gente sua, intercidit.[13]

Cap. XIX.

De Africa et ejus provinciis.

Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.[14] Omnes historici astruunt quod[15] Africa sit dicta ab Afer,[16] filio Madian, filii Abrahæ ex Cethura progeniti; proceditque[17] a fini-

---

[1] This is the rubric of E.

[2] *prudentia tua*, B.

[3] *est mirandum*, D.

[4] *occumbere*, C. (not D.)

[5] *mulieribus sis dejectus*, C.D. (which latter has *devictus*.)

[6] *quia*, D.

[7] *donavit*, C.D.

[8] *quod*] om. C.D.

[9] *per amorem non per t.*, C.D.

[10] *sunt*, A.

[11] *fore devincendas*, C.D.

[12] A. omits the reference; which, however, is correct. See Just. lib. ii. c. 4. in fine. B. has *libro primo.*

[13] *interiit*, B. *Trogus . . . intercidit*, om. C.D,

[14] 13°, A. wrongly. Reference omitted in B. See Isid. lib. xiv. c. 5.

[15] *Omnes . . . quod*] om. C.D., which, consequently, alter the construction below.

[16] So A.; *Affer*, B.C.D.E., (but *Afer* below in E.); see also the versions. The Vulgate has *Opher*.

[17] *quia*, A.

Amazones, did wroot to kyng Alexandre in þis manere: "Of "þy wittes we wonder,[1] þat þou desirest to fiȝte wiþ wommen; "for ȝif fortune faueriþ[2] vs, and þou be ouercome,[3] it is[4] "grete schame and vilonye, whan þou art ouercome of "wommen. Also ȝif[5] oure goddis beeþ wrooþ wiþ vs and "þou ouercome vs, for to wynne þe maystrie of wommen "þou getest but litel worschippe." Kyng Alexandre was i-plesed wiþ þis, and graunted hem fredom, and seide: "Wommen moste be ouercome with fairenesse and loue, and "nouȝt wiþ sternesse and drede." *Trogus, libro secundo.* Þis queene Thalestris, after þat sche hadde be kyng Alexandre his lemman fourty dayes, sche torned aȝeyn in to here owne lond, and afterward in schort tyme fil[6] yn wiþ here peple. TREVISA.

De Africa et ejus prouinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum nonum decimum.

ALLE auctors of stories witnessiþ þat Affrica haþ þe name of Affer,[7] Madians sone, Abrahams sone, þat was geten on wryte to kynge Alexander in this forme.[8] "Hyt is to "meruayle of thy prudence wyllenge to make batayle with "women: for if hit happe vs to haue the victory, fortune "schewenge fauor, thou scholde[9] be confusede by merite, "sythe that thou was[9] ouercommen with women; and thauȝhe "thou haue the victory of vs, thow schalle[9] obteyne but "lytelle worschippe, hauenge victory of women." Kynge Alexander pleasede grauntede to theyme liberte, seyenge, "Women ar to be ouercommen not with feere, but with "luffe." *Trogus, libro secundo.* That qwene Thalestris, after that sche had vsede the bedde of kynge Alexander by xl[ti] daies to haue a childe, returnenge to here realme felle at variaunce soone after with here peple. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 32 b.

Of Affrike and the prouinces of hyt. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum nonum decimum.

ALLE scriptores historicalle and croniclers afferme þat Affrica toke the name of hit of Affer, son of Madian, the son

[1] *wytte is wonder*, α, Cx., which is probably right.
[2] *fauoure*, Cx.
[3] So α. and Cx. MS. adds *of wommen.*
[4] *is*] shal be, Cx.
[5] *and yf*, Cx.
[6] MS. adds *ful*, seemingly by a clerical error; α. and Cx. have it not.
[7] The MS. reading of the versions, though rather incorrect, is retained, because Africa is always written *Affrica*, or *Affrike* therein.
[8] *fforme*, Harl. MS., which commonly uses the *ff* merely as a capital letter.
[9] So the Harl. MS.

bus Ægypti juxta meridiem per Æthiopiam inferiorem usque ad montem Atlanticum,[1] ab oriente et septentrione mari magno clauditur, ab occasu vero habet oceanum occidentalem. *Ranulphus.*[2] Iste Afer, secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo octavo,[3] et secundum Isidorum, Etymolog. libro nono, duxit exercitum versus[4] Libyam, auxilioque Herculis majoris hostes superans, gentem et patriam ex suo nomine dictam Africam nominavit.[5] Cujus filiam Etheam Hercules desponsavit, ex qua genuit Dodorim, ex quo Pharon. Hæc regio Africa plures continet provincias, videlicet,[6] occidentalem partem Æthiopiæ, Libyam,[7] Tripolim, Gætuliam, Numidiam, Mauritaniam duplicem, de quibus hic per ordinem.[8]

De Æthiopia.

Æthiopia tres habet partes; prima namque[9] pars occidentalis montuosa est, quæ ab Atlantico monte celsissimo protenditur usque ad Ægyptum, media pars arenosa est; tertia, quæ orientalis est, pene deserta est.[10] Et illa[11] situatur inter australem oceanum et Nilum fluvium, habens ab ortu mare Rubrum. Dicta est Æthiopia a colore populorum, quos solis vicinitas torret.

---

[1] *usque A. montem*, C.D.

[2] Reference added from A.B.

[3] The true reference is to *Antiq.* lib. i. c. 15., where the MSS. differ much in the forms of the proper names. Josephus is quoting Alexander Polyhistor, who again derives his account from Malchus.

[4] *adversus*, C.

[5] *nuncupavit*, D.

[6] *scilicet*, C.D.

[7] *Libyam*] added from B.C.D.

[8] *duplicem . . . ordinem*] om. C.D.

[9] *que*, (q̄.), B. apparently.

[10] *quæ est orientalis, pæne deserta.* B.; *tertia vero, quæ orientalis, est pæne deserta*, C.D., which also slightly alter the following sentence.

[11] C. adds *autem*; B. has *que*; D. has *etiam*.

Cethura. Affrica strecchep forp from pe endes of Egipt by pe south by pe neyper Ethiopia anon to the hille[1] Atlas, and is i-closed yn wip pe grete see bope in pe estside and yn pe northside also; and hap in pe west side pe west occean. R. Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo octavo, and Isidorus, libro nono, seip pat pis Affer ladde his oost toward Libya, and ouercome his enemyes by pe help of pe more Hercules; and nempned[2] pe men and the lond after his owne name, Affrica. Hercules wedded Ethea, Affer[3] is douȝter, and gat on hir Dederym; of Dederym com Pharon. Pis Affrica conteynep many prouinces and londes; first he conteynep[4] pe west dele of Ethiopia, pan Libya, Tripolis, Getulia, Numidia, and tweie Mauritania. Of alle pese now by ordre is oure speche. Ethiopia hap pre parties, pe firste is hilly and montuous, and strecchep from pe mount Atlas anon to[5] Egipt; pe myddel partie is ful of grauel; pe pridde, pat is pe est partie,[6] is almost alle wildernesse. Pat partie is bytwene pe soupe occean and pat[7] ryuer Nilus, and hap pe Reed see in pe estside, and hatte Ethiopia of pe colour and hewe of pe men of pe lond, pat bep blewe[8] men, and is for[9]

[1] Cx. adds *of*.
[2] *named*, Cx.
[3] *Affers*, α., Cx.
[4] MS. originally had *many* (clerical repetition).
[5] *anon to*] vnto, Cx. (as usual.)
[6] MS. and α. add *and*.
[7] *þat*] the, Cx. (not α.)
[8] *blac*, Cx.
[9] *for the*, Cx.

Trevisa.

of Abraham, geten of Cethura. Whiche procedethe from the costes off Egipte, nye the meridien by the inferior Ethiop vn to the mownte Atlantyke, schutte of the este parte and northe with the grete see, hauenge on the weste to hit the westerne occean. R. This Affer, after Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo octavo, and also after Isidor, in his Ethimologies, libro nono, hade an hoste, ledenge hit towarde Libya, hauenge victory of his enmyes thro helpe of grete Hercules, namede that cuntre Affrica, after his name; whiche toke to his wife Editha, doȝhter to Hercules, of whom he gate Dodoris. This regien of Affrike conteynethe mony prouinces, that is to say, the weste parte of Ethioppe, Libya, Tripolis, Getulia, Numidia, and tweyne Mauritanyes, of whom hit schalle be seyde by ordre. Ethioppe hathe thre partes; the firste parte of it, that is in the weste, is fulle of hilles, whiche is protendede from that hie hille Atlantyke vn to Egipte. The mydde parte is fulle of gravelle. The thrydde parte, that is of the este, is alle moste fulle of deserte, whiche is sette between the sowthe occean and the floode of Nilus, hauenge on the este to hit the Redde See. Hit is callede Ethiopia, of the colour of peple whom

MS. Harl. 2261.

Ethiopia.

Et continet monstruosos populos, videlicet,[1] Garamantes, Troglodytas,[2] qui cervos cursu prætereunt, quorum aliqui maledicunt soli propter ejus nimium fervorem.[3] Aliqui[4] serpentes comedunt, aliqui[4] leones et pantheras venantur. Aliqui[4] specus excavant et inhabitant,[5] quibus stridor est potius in ore quam vox. Alii incedunt nudi, nullo exercitio occupati. Alii sine capitibus, os et oculos in pectore habent. Apud aliquos eorum quadrupedia nascuntur sine auribus, etiam et elephantes. Aliqui eorum canem habent pro rege, cujus motu augurantur. Aliqui solis locustis vivunt, sole vel fumo induratis. Ibi sunt chamæleon et basiliscus, rhinoceros, cameli, pardi,[6] et dracones, ex quorum capitibus et cerebro gemmæ extrahuntur. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Africa apud Troglodytas[7] est fons, cujus aqua potata canoras

---

[1] *scilicet*, B.

[2] *Trogoditas*, MSS., and similarly the MSS. of the versions.

[3] *Dicta . . . fervorem*] Slightly contracted in C.D.

[4] *Alii*, C.D. (thrice.)

[5] After this C.D. have; *ignes ibi de nocte videntur. Satyri quoque ac pilosi: chamæleon et basiliscus . . . dracones.* After which the citation from Isidore.

[6] So all the MSS. and both versions; but *camelopardi* is in all likelihood the true reading.

[7] *apud Troglodytas*] om. C.D.

gret brennynge and hete of the sonne, þat is hem [1] ful nyh.[2] In Ethiopia beeþ meny dyuerse peple grisliche and wonderliche i-schape; som hatte Garamantes and som Troglodyte, and beeþ [3] swifter þan hertes. And som curseþ þe sonne for his grete hete; some eteþ serpentes and addres; som hunteþ leouns and panters. Some diggeþ caues and dennes, and woneþ vnder erþe, and makiþ hir noyse wiþ grisbaytynge [4] and chirkynge of teeþ more than wiþ voys of þe þrote. Som gooþ naked and no werk wircheþ,[5] some wiþ oute hedes and haueþ mouþ and yȝen in þe [6] breest. Among som of hem beeþ foure foted bestes wiþoute eren, and olyphantes also. Som of hem haþ an hound for hire kyng and deuyne [7] by meuynge and sterynge of hym, som [8] leueþ onliche [9] by honysoukels i-dryed wiþ smoke oþer wiþ þe sonne. Þere beeþ also camelions and basiliscus, vnycornes, camels, pardes, and dragouns, þat haueþ in here brayn and hedes many precious stones. Camelion is a flekked best in colour liche to a lupard; and so is pardus, and pantera [10] also, and som dele of þe kynde; but pantera is frende to alle manere bestes but to [11] þe dragoun al lone; for hym he hateþ as deth. Basiliscus is kyng of serpentes þat wiþ smyl and siȝt sleeþ beestes and foules. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Affrica amonge þe puple Troglodyte [12] is a welle þat makeþ hem þat

Trevisa.

the nyȝhenesse of the sonne dothe brenne, whiche conteynethe in hit peple to be meruaylede, that is to saye, Garamantes, Troglodytes, which renne and turne hertes and other bestes thro rennenge, somme of whom curse the sonne for the grete feruent hete of hit. Somme do eite serpentes, somme men of theyme hunte panteres and lyonnes. Somme of theyme make caves in the erthe, whiche berke rather then speke lyke men. Somme men of theyme goe nakede, not occupyenge theyme in eny exercise. Somme with owte hedes, hauenge theire mowthe and eiȝen in the breste. Somme of theyme haue a dogge to theire kynge, thro movenge of whom thei vse wycchecrafte. There be also cocatrice, cameles, cattes of the mownteyne, and dragones from the hedes of whom and breyne pannes gemmes be extracte. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* There is a welle amonge the Troglodytes in Affrike, the water of whom y-

MS. Harl. 2261.

Troglodyte.

f. 33. a.

[1] *whiche is to hem*, Cx.
[2] *nyȝ*, *a.*
[3] *whiche ben*, Cx.
[4] *gruntynge*, Cx.
[5] *doo no werke*, Cx.
[6] *in þe*] So *a.* and Cx.; *wiþoute*, MS.
[7] *devyneþ*, *a.*, Cx.
[8] MS. omits *som*. Added from *a.*
[9] So *a.*; *nouȝht*, MS.; *somme lyue only*, Cx.
[10] *panthera*, Cx., who however has *panters* above.
[11] *sauf to*, Cx.
[12] *peple that ben called* (*þat hatte*, *a.*) *Trogodyte*, Cx.

facit voces. Item apud Garamantes dicunt esse fontem ita algentem de die, ut bibi non possit; ita[1] calentem de nocte, ut[2] tangi non valeat.

De Libya.[3] Libya Cyrenensis habet ab ortu Ægyptum, ab austro Æthiopiam occidentalem, ab occasu Syrtes majores et Troglodytas, a septentrione mare magnum. Est autem Libya dicta vel quia Libs, id est ventus Africus,[4] inde flat, secundum Isidorum, libro xv°., vel a Libya, filia Epaphi, filii Jovis, ibidem regnante. Et gentes ibidem dicuntur Phutei a Phut filio Cham.[5]

De regione Tripolitana. Tripolitana regio habet ab ortu[6] aras Philænorum inter Syrtes majores et Troglodytas situatas,[7] ab austro Gætulos et Garamantes, usque ad oceanum Æthiopicum protensos,[8] ab occasu habet Byzantium usque ad lacum Salinarum, a septentrione habet mare mediterraneum et Syrtes minores.[9]

---

[1] *et ita*, C. (not D.)
[2] *quod*, A.
[3] E. has for rubric, *De Libya insula*.
[4] So A.B.; *Afrie* (for *Africæ* ?), E.
[5] *a septentrione . . . filio Cham*] om. C.D.
[6] *habet* after *ortu* in A.
[7] *situatas*] om. C.D. (with other very slight omissions.)
[8] *protensus*, A.
[9] *minores*] om. A.B.

drynkeþ[1] þerof to haue good voys, sch[r]ille,[2] and clere. Also among þe opere peple Garamantes is a welle al[3] day so colde þat no man may þerof[4] drynke, and al[3] nyȝt so[5] hote þat no man may it[6] touche. Libya Cyrenensis þat lond haþ in þe est side Egipt, in þe souþ side[7] Ethiopia, in þe west þe perilous place of þe see þat hatte þe more Syrtes,[8] and Troglodytas[9] also, in the norþ þe grete see. Isidorus, libro quinto, seiþ þat [Libya haþ þe name of þat wynd þat hatte Libs, and is þe wynd þat bloweþ out of Affrica, oþer][10] Libya haþ þe name of Libya, Epaphies douȝter, þat Epaphi was Iupiter his sone. Þat womman Libya reigned in þat lond Libya, and þe peple of þat lond hitte Phutei[11] of Phut, Chamys sone. Tripolitana þat regioun haþ in þe est side aras Philenorum, þe auters and wenedes[12] of þat peple þat beeþ i-sette bytwene þe peple Troglodyte and þe more Syrtes. Syrtes maiores beeþ perilous places faste by þe[13] see, þat is mare Arenosum. And Tripolitana haþ in þe south side Getulos and Garamantes, þat strecchеþ anon to þe occean of Egipt, and haþ in þe west side Byzantium anon to þe lake þat hatte lacus Salinarum, and in þe norþ side he haþ þe see of myddel erþe and þe perilous place þat hatte Syrtes minores, þe lasse Syrtes. Getulia is þe myddel londe of

TREVISA.

drunke yeldethe clere voices. Also thei seye an other welle to be amonge the Garamantes, the water of whom is soe colde on the day that hit may not be drunke, and soe hoote in the nyȝhte that hit may not be towchede. Libya Cyrenensis[14] hathe of the este parte to hit Egipte, of the sowthe parte the weste Ethioppe, of the weste the more Syrtes and Troglodytes, of the northe the grete see. And Libya is callede, for libs, the sowthe wynde, blawethe from thens, and after Isidorus, libro xv°, hit is callede of Libya, the doȝhter of Epaphus, reignenge þer; and peple be namede there Phutei of Phut, the son of Cam. The region Tripolitan hathe of the este to hit the cuntre of Philenes, sette betwene the grete Syrtes and the Troglodytes, and of the weste parte Byzantium[15] vn to the Dedde see, hauenge of þe northe to hit the see Mediterrany and the lesse Syrtes. Getulia is a litelle region of Affricke. Sothely Getulia toke the

MS. HARL. 2261.

Libya.

Tripolitana.

Getulia.

[1] *drunggeþ*, *a*.
[2] So Cx. (*shryll*); *schil*, *a*.
[3] Cx. adds *the* (*bis*).
[4] *of*, *a*.; *drynke therof*, Cx.
[5] *so*] *it is so*, Cx.
[6] *it*] om. Cx.
[7] *west*, *a*.; Cx. omits *side*.
[8] *Cirtes*, MSS. of both versions.
[9] So *a*. and Cx., but misspelt; *Trogodite*, MS. Trevisa's usage is inconstant, see below.
[10] The words in brackets added from *a*. and Cx.
[11] *Putei*, *a*.
[12] *wyndes*, Cx.
[13] *a*. and Cx. add *gravely*.
[14] *Cretensis*, Harl. MS.
[15] *Bisancium*, Harl. MS.

De Gætulia. Gætulia est media regio Africæ, sic denominata a Getis, qui a Gothis[1] processerunt. Et, ut dicit Gregorius in Homilia,[2] piscatores non habet.[3]

Cap. XXI.

De Numidia.

Numidia habet ab ortu Syrtes minores, ab austro Æthiopes, ab occasu Mauritaniam, a septentrione mare Siculum. Hæc regio habet in se Rusicadam[4] et Carthaginem magnam, quæ sic condita fuit secundum auctores.[5] *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo xiij°.* Phœnices, a Rubro mari profecti, Sidonem et Tyrum in Syria, Uticam in Africa, Thebas in Bœotia,[6] Gades in fauce occidentalis oceani condiderunt.[7] Nam mos erat antiquis Phœnicibus mercandi causa a domo longius[8] proficisci, et cum alienigenarum animos commercio novarum rerum sibi conciliassent,[9] loca condendis urbibus apta capere.[10] *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.* Ex his profecta

---

[1] A space left for the word in B.
[2] *omeliis*, B.
[3] C.D. thus (after *Africæ*): *a Gothis qui eam occuparunt denominata; piscatores non habet.*
[4] *Ruscidam*, MSS.
[5] *secundum auctores*] om. C.
[6] C.D. add *duce Cadmo.*
[7] *et Gades insulam in ultima f. o. c.*, C.D.
[8] *longius*] om. D.
[9] *reconciliassent*, C.D.
[10] *capere* (*carpere*, C.) *cæperunt*, C.D.; *sibi procuraverunt*, B.

Affrica, and haþ þe name of Gethes ; þat folk com of Gothes,[1] and in an omelie Seint Gregorie seiþ þat þilke men haueþ no fisheres. TREVISA

De Numidia.[2] *Capitulum vicesimum.*

NUMIDIA haþ in þe est side Syrtes minores, þe lasse Syrtes, a perilous place,[3]. in þe southe Ethiopia, in þe west Mauritania, and in þe norþ þe see Siculus. In þat lond is Rusicada[4] and Carthago[5] þe grete citee, þat was in þis manere arered and i-buld, as auctors telliþ. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Phenices, men of Phenicia, þat lond, wente from þe Rede see and bulde[6] þese citees : first in Syria þei bulde Sidon[7] and Tyrus,[8] in Affrica Utica, in Beotia Thebe, and in þe mouþ of þe west occean Gades; for in olde tyme þe Phenices were grete marchaundes, and passed into dyuers londes wiþ marchaundise þat þei brouȝte, and feng[9] þerfore londe and place to bulde on citees and townes. *Trogus, libro*

name of hit of Gothes, of whom Getuliones didde procede, and, as Seynte Gregory seythe in a[10] omely, that region hath no fischers in hit for the wontenge of fisches. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum vicesimum.

NUMIDIA hath on the este parte to hit the lesse Syrtes, of the weste men of Ethiope, on the weste Mauritany,[11] and on the northe parte the see of Sicilia.[12] This region hathe in hit Rusicada[4] and Carthago,[5] whiche was edifiede in this maner after auctores. *Isidorus, libro vicesimo quinto, capitulo tertio decimo.* Men off Phenicia, goenge from the Redde See, made the cites of Sidon and of Tyrus in Syria, Utica in Affrike, Thebas in Beotia, Gades in the mowthe of the occean. For a consuetude was vsede amonge theyme somme tyme to goe in to ferre regiones from theire cuntres, and when thei perceyvede the hertes of straunge peple to haue theyme in fauour, thro the merchaundise of newe thynges thei toke places apte to make cites. *Trogus, libro* Numidia. Carthago.

[1] *folke of the Gothes*, Cx.

[2] *Numedia*, MS. (not Cx.) Various other unimportant deflections from the classical forms will not be noticed.

[3] *a.* and Cx. add *in the see.*

[4] *Ruscida*, MSS. of both versions and Cx.

[5] *Cartago*, MSS. of both versions and Cx., here and below. *Cartage* has been retained below, as an English form.

[6] *buylded*, Cx. ; who has *buyld* below.

[7] *Sydoun*, MS.

[8] So *a.* and Cx. ; *of Tirus*, MS.

[9] *feng*] *resseyued*, Cx.

[10] So the MS.

[11] *Mauritamy*, Harl. MS., and so below.

[12] *Silicia*, Harl. MS.

Dido, quæ alio nomine Elissa vocabatur, electa secum robustorum juvenum multitudine, Cyprum insulam primo venit, ubi assumptis secum lxxx. virginibus ad sobolem propagandam Africam devenit. Ibique[1] empto loco pro refocillatione navigantium qui corio bovis circumduci[2] posset, corium in tenue[3] filum secari jussit,[4] locumque emptum[5] circumduci, quem Byrsam, id est *Corium*, vocavit. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Sive
Carthago. Carthadam,[6] quod sonat *villam novam.* Tandem[7] verso nomine locus ille Carthago vocabatur. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.*[8] Sicque conditur Carthago lxxij. annis ante urbem Romam. *Ranulphus.*[9] Idem dicit Papias; cum ergo[10] secundum historicos Roma sit fundata quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,[11] si isti quatuor anni, et sedecim anni regis Joathæ, et quinquaginta duo anni regis Oziæ,[12] qui regem Achaz præcesserunt, simul numerentur, patebit quod circa primum annum regis Oziæ Carthago fuerit fundata. Veruntamen[13] Isidorus Etymolog., libro

[1] *Ubi*, C.D.
[2] *tegi*, C.D.
[3] *tenuissimum*, C.D.
[4] *jubet*, C.D
[5] C.D. add *eodem*.
[6] *Cartadam*, MSS.
[7] *deinde*, C. (not D.)
[8] The reference added from C.D. See Just., Lib. xviii. c. 6.
[9] In C.D. the article from *Ranulphus* stands thus: "Verius tamen "æstimandum est, quod si (*si*, om. "D.) Carthago condita sit ab illa Di- "done quam Æneas reliquit, quod "(*et quod*, D.) Carthago fundata "sit 570 annis ante urbem Romam. "Nam tot anni sunt inter Jair ju- "dicem et Romulum. Quod autem "quidam dicunt Carthaginem fuisse "conditam tempore regis David a "Carthedone Tyrio, sive a filia "(*filio*, C.) ejus Didone, potius "puto Carthaginem tunc fuisse am- "pliatam, et illam Didonem aliam "fuisse a prima." After this the paragraph on Mauretania begins.
[10] *igitur*, A.
[11] *Juda*, added from A.B., which write *Iude*, though having *Iudæ* below.
[12] Azariah is intended.
[13] *Verumptamen*, A.B.E.

octavo decimo. Dido, þat hiȝte Elissa also, went oute of Phenicia wiþ a grete companye of ȝonglynges i-chose, and seilede first into Cyprus.[1] And þere þis womman Dido toke wiþ hir foure score maydens for to brynge forþ children, and com into Affrica, and þere fore ese and reste of here men, þat were wery of seillynge, sche bouȝte as moche lond as sche myȝte byclippe wiþ an oxe hide,[2] and kutte[3] þe hyde into[4] a þong þat was ful long and ful[5] smal, and biclipped þerwiþ a grete place, and cleped hit Byrsa, þat is *a þwong. Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Oþer Carthada,[6] þat was *a newe toun.* After þat þe name was chaunged and þe[7] place i-cleped Carthago.[8] And so Carthago was i-buld þre score ȝere and twelue to fore þe citee of Rome. Ꝛ. Papias seiþ þe same; and[9] stories telleþ þat Rome was i-bulde þe fourþe ȝere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda. Þan ȝif we acounte rediliche and putte to giders foure ȝere of Achaz, xvi. ȝere of Iotham,[10] and two and fifty ȝere of Ozias, þat regned to fore Achaz, hit folweþ þat Carthago was i-founded aboute þe firste ȝere of Ozias þe kyng. Neuerþeles Isidorus, libro quinto Eth., and Magister, in[11]

TREVISA.

octavo decimo. Dido goenge furthe from theyme, whiche was callede by an other name Elissa, takenge a multitude of yonge men with here, come firste to the yle of Cyprus,[1] and lxxx. virgynes to norysche multiplicacion, come to Affrike, whiche byenge a place þer for noryschenge of men, trauayl-enge as ferre as the skynne of an ox myȝhte extende, causede hit to be kytte in as smalle partes, and so the grownde to be compassede abowte, whiche place was callede Byrsa,[12] that is to say, *leder. Isidorus, libro xv°.* Or elles that cite was callede Carthada,[6] and afterwarde Carthago, whiche cite was edifiede lxx^ti^ yere afore the cite of Rome. Ꝛ. Papias seythe the same, sythe after alle wryters historicalle Rome was made in the iiij^the^ yere of Achaz kynge of the Iewere. If these iiij. yere, and xvi. yere of kynge Ioachim,[13] and lij^ti^ yere of kynge Ozias, whiche precedede kynge Achaz, be annumerate, hit is expressede that lij^ti^ yere resulte þat Carthago was made in the iiij^the^ yere of Achaz kynge of Iewery. Neuerthelesse Isidorus wille,

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 33. b.

[1] *Cipres*, MS., *a.*, Harl. MS.; *Cipris*, Cx.
[2] *oxe huyde*, *a.*; *oxes hyde*, Cx.
[3] *kytte*, Cx.
[4] *to*, *a.*; *vnto*, Cx.
[5] Cx. omits the second *ful.*
[6] *Cartada*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.
[7] So Cx. (*the*); *to þe*, MS.
[8] *thus*, Cx.
[9] *and*] added from *a.*, and Cx.; the latter has *historyes.*
[10] *Iothas*, MS., *a.*; *Ionathas*, Cx.
[11] *in*] added from Cx.
[12] *Birisa*, Harl. MS.
[13] So the Harl. MS., but *Iotham* is intended.

quinto, et Magister in[1] Historiis[2] Scholasticis, videntur sentire quod fundata sit[3] circa xxxiv^{m} annum regis David. Marianus autem dicit quod circa quartum annum Amasiæ regis Juda. Non ergo poterit ad litteram stare quod[4] tradit Virgilius, et Phrygius Dares in historia sua de bello Trojano, quod scilicet[5] Æneas vidit Didonem, cum Æneas obierit ante fundationem Carthaginis, quam Dido fundavit, plus quam trecentis annis; vel erit dare aliam Didonem ab ista antiquiorem, vel quod Carthago prius fuerit[6] fundata. Proinde dicit Augustinus, primo libro Confessionum in fine, quod docti negabant[7] Æneam vidisse Carthaginem aut Didonem. Igitur secundum Orosium, libro quarto, Carthago in circuitu murorum habuit xxij. millia passuum. Altitudo muri quadraginta cubitus; latitudo triginta pedes; et tota pene mari cingebatur absque faucibus quæ tria[8] millia aperiebantur.

De Mauritania.

Mauritania duplex est. Prima Cæsariensis, quæ habet ad orientem Numidiam,[9] ab austro arenas oceani, ab occasu flumen Maluam,[10] a septentrione fauces maris magni. Mauritania Tingitana[11] ultima est provincia Africæ, habens ab ortu flumen Maluam, a septentrione

---

[1] *in*] om. A.

[2] So E. at length; A.B. abbreviate the words; the singular would be preferable. See the versions.

[3] *fuit*, A.

[4] *quod*] *sicut*, A.B.

[5] *scilicet*] om. A.B.

[6] So A.B.; *fuerat*, E.

[7] *negabunt*, A.E.

[8] *tria*] *in mil.*, B. The text runs awkwardly. See the versions.

[9] *Prima habet ab ortu Numidiam*, C.D.

[10] Apparently an error for *Mulucham*. Both versions have likewise *Malua* in all the MSS.

[11] *Tingitina*, MSS.

Historia Scholastica, seiþ þat[1] it semeþ þat Carthago was i-founded aboute þe foure and þritty ȝere of kyng Dauid. Marianus seiþ þat Carthago was i-bulde aboute þe fourþe ȝere of Amazias, kyng of Iuda. Þan it may nouȝt stonde þat Virgilius and Phrygius Dares in his storie of þe bataille of Troye seiþ, þat Eneas sih þat womman Dido, for Eneas was dede þre hondred ȝere and more or[2] Cartage was i-founded þat Dido foundede; oþer þere was anoþer Dido, an[3] elder þan sche; oþer Cartage was raþer[4] i-founded.[5] Þerfore Seynt Austyn, libro primo Confessiõnum, seiþ þat wise men denyeþ þat Eneas siȝ Carthago oþer Dido þat womman. Þerfore Orosius, libro quarto, seiþ þat Carthago[6] is al aboute two and twenty þowsand paas, and euery wal is fourty cubites[7] hiȝe, and þritty foot brood; and þe citee is byclipped wiþ þe see wel nyh al aboute, ou[t][8] take faucibus quæ tria milia aperiebantur.[9]

Mauritania is þe name of twei londes, þe firste Cesariensis, þat haþ in þe est side Numidia, in þe souþ þe grauel of þe see[10] occean, in þe west þe ryuer Malua, and in þe norþ þe gewes of þe grete see.

Tingitana is þe laste prouince of Affrica, and haþ in þe est side þe ryuer Malua, in þe north þe see Gaditanus, in þe west þe hulle Atlas, and the see

TREVISA.

Ethimolog., libro v°, and the Maister in his story scholasticalle, that Carthago was edifiede abowte the xxxiiij[ti] yere of kynge Dauid; wherefore the seyenge of Virgille and of Phrygius Dares in his story of the batelle of Troye, that Eneas see Dido; or elles hit is to ȝiffe a more elder Dido then this. For Eneas dyede more then iii[c] yere afore the edifienge of Carthago, or elles hit wille folowe that Carthago was made a fore. Where of Seynte Austyn seythe in his booke of confessiones, libro primo, in the ende, that wyse men denye Eneas to have seen Carthago. Therefore after Orosius, libro iiij[to], Carthago hade with in the circuite of the walles, xxij. ml. passes. The altitude of the walle was of xl[ti] cubites, the latitude of xxx[ti] foote alle moste compassede abowte with the water of the see. There be tweyne Mauritanyes, that firste is Mauritany Cesariense, whiche hathe at the este of hit Numidia, at the sowthe the gravelles of the occean, at the northe the floode callede Malua, of the weste the chekes of the occean. Mauritania

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mauritania.

[1] *as*, Cx.
[2] *ar*, *a.*; *er*, Cx.
[3] *and*, Cx.
[4] *raþer*] added from *a.*
[5] *i-buld*, *a.* and Cx.
[6] *þat Carthago*] added from Cx.
[7] *cubit*, *a.*
[8] *out*, *a.*; *oute*, Cx. Trevisa and the Harl. translator seem to have been puzzled with the Latin text.
[9] *that iij. m. were opend*, Cx.
[10] Cx. omits *see.*

fretum Gaditanum, ab occasu montem Atlanticum et oceanum. Dicitur autem Mauritania[1] a *mauron*, quod est *nigrum*, quasi nigrorum patria. In hac Africa est mons Atlas ad occidentem, non longe ab oceano,[2] ita supra montes alios[3] elevatus ut circulum lunarem credatur attingere; ubi de nocte crebri ignes, fauni et satyri videntur, tubæ, fistulæ, et cymbala frequenter audiuntur. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo.*[4] Atlas fuit astrologus, et[5] frater Promethei, qui ideo[6] portare cœlum fingitur; a quo et[7] mons ille Atlas dicitur, quem[8] propter immensam altitudinem cœlum portare vulgus credit. *Hugutio,*[9] *capitulo Phœnix.* Nota[10] quod Puni, Pœni, Punici, et Punices, dicuntur[11] tam Phœnices quam Afri sive Carthaginenses, quia Dido Carthaginensis fuit de terra Phœniciæ adventitia.[12]

Cap. XXII.

De Europa et ejus provinciis.

Ranulphus.[13] Ponit Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, quod[14] Europa sit dicta ab Europa, filia Agenoris regis

---

[1] *q. n. p.* after *Mauritania* in C.D., which add: *alia Mauritania dicitur Cæsariensis.*

[2] *non longe ab oceano*] om. C.D.

[3] *alios*] om. C.D.

[4] 19, E., wrongly. *See* Lib. xviii. c. 8. and c. 39. E. also heads the previous paragraph: *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviij.* likewise wrongly; for the two passages above named, which alone name *Atlas*, do not contain what is here said.

[5] *astrologus et*] om. C.D.

[6] *quia idem*, D.

[7] *et*] om. B.

[8] *cujus nomine Atlas dicitur mons ille, quem*, C.D.

[9] *Hugo*, A.B. (a frequent variation).

[10] *Notandum*, D,

[11] *quod Punici et Punices dicuntur*, C.

[12] *de civitatibus Ph. veniens*, C.D.

[13] So E.: the other MSS. omit the name.

[14] *Ponit . . . . quod*] om. C.D., which also contract slightly the first two sentences throughout.

occean. Mauritania haþ þe name of *mauron*, þat is *blak*, as it were þe contray of black men. In þis Affrica is þe hulle Atlas in þe west side and ende, nouȝt fer from occean. And Atlas is so hiȝe ouer þe[1] hulles, þat lewed men weneþ þat it recheþ to þe mone. Þere is ofte by nyȝte i-seie fire, fauni, and satyri, þat beeþ spiritus[2] of þe[3] aier dyuersliche i-schewed. Also þere is ofte i-herde tymbers, pipes, and trompes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavo decimo.* Atlas was an astronomyour, Prometheus broþer; þerfore[4] som men[5] feyneþ þat Atlas bereþ heuene. And of þis man Atlas þe hul haþ his name and hatte Atlas also, and[6] is so hiȝe þat þe lewed peple weneþ þat he[7] bereþ heuene. Take hede þat Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices also beeþ i-cleped Phenices, Afri, and Carthaginienses, as þei were men of Phenicia, of Affrica, oþer of Cartage. For þat womman Dido,[8] þat founded Carthago, was a comlynge, and com of[9] Phenicia. TREVISA.

De Europa et ejus partibus. Capitulum vicesimum primum.

ISIDORUS, libro quarto, seiþ þat Europa haþ the name of Europa, Agenores douȝter, king of Libya; and Iupiter,

takethe the name of hit of *mauron*, that is *blacke*, as the cuntre of blacke men. In whom is the mownte callede Atlas at the weste, not ferre from the occean, whiche is so eleuate ouer other hilles that is ȝiffen to credence the altitude of hit to towche the cercle of the moone, where claryones and symbales be herde oftetymes in the nyȝhte. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo.* Atlas was an astronomier and the broder of Prometheus, whiche was feynede to berre heuyn, of whom this hille callede Atlas toke the name of hit, whom commune peple suppose to berre heuyn for the huge altitude of hit. Also hit is to be attendede that Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices be callede as welle men of Phenicia of Affrike and of Carthago, for Dido dwellenge in it was of the londe of Phenicia. MS. HARL. 2261. Mons Atlas. f. 34 a.

Of Europe and of the Provinces of hit. Capitulum 21.

ISIDORUS rehersethe, in his xiiij[the] boke, that Europa toke name of Europa, doȝhter of Agenoris, kynge of Libya, Europa.

[1] þe] *other*, Cx.
[2] *spiritis, a.*; *sprytes*, Cx.
[3] þe] om. *a.* (not Cx.)
[4] *for, a.*
[5] Cx. omits *men.*
[6] *it is*, Cx.
[7] *it*, Cx. (and so often.)
[8] *Didoo, a.*
[9] *fro*, Cx.

Libyæ, quam Jupiter Cretensis rapuit sibi. Hæc autem Europa, pars mundi tertia, incipiens a flumine Tanai et Mœotide palude, descendit per septentrionalem oceanum usque in fines Hispaniæ apud Gades insulam. Ab oriente et austro mari magno cingitur.[1] Plures continet provincias et insulas, de quibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda.[2] Est autem sciendum quod ex parte orbis septentrionalis Mœotides paludes et fluvius Tanais distinguunt Asiam majorem ab Europa.[3]

Fluvius Tanais unde dicitur.

Fluvius autem[4] Tanais dictus est a Thano primo rege Scytharum, qui fluvius exoriens[5] a Ripæis montibus[6] descendens intrat pontum Mediterraneum.

De Scythia.

Scythia inferior regio[7] frigida est[8] valde. Incipit a flumine[9] Tanai,[10] inter Danubium et oceanum septentrionalem usque Germaniam protenditur. Sed propter barbaras gentes quas continet generaliter Barbaria[11] appellatur.[12]

De Alania.

Alania,[13] pars Scythiæ inferioris,[14] declinat a lacu Mœotidis usque Daciam.

De Mœsia.

Mœsia[15] ab ortu clauditur ostiis Danubii; ab euro

---

[1] *jungitur*, D.
[2] *aliqua . . . tangenda*] om. C.D.
[3] *et Europam*, C.D.
[4] *autem*] om. C.D.
[5] *S. et exoriens*, C.D.
[6] *apud R. montes*, C.D.
[7] *regio*] om. C.D.
[8] *est*] om. A.B.C.
[9] *fluvio*, A.D.
[10] *Thanays*, B.
[11] So A.C.D.; *barbarica*, B.E.
[12] *vocatur*, D.
[13] *Albania*, B.E.
[14] *inferioris*] om. C.D.
[15] *Misia*, MSS. Mysia and Mœsia may be dialectical variations of the same name (Smith's *Anc. Geogr.* ii. 389): but to edit *Mysia* would only confuse. A little below A. has *Mesiam*, and this form has been adopted in the versions.

kyng of Creta, rauisched Europa, Agenores dou3ter. Þis Europa is þe þridde deel of þis worlde wyde,[1] and bygynneþ fro þe ryuer Tanais[2] and þe water Meotides, and strecchеþ dounward by þe norþ occean anon to þe endes of Spayne at þe[3] ylond Gades, and is byclipped by þe[4] est and also by þe[4] souþ wiþ þe grete see. In Europa beeþ many prouinces and ylondes, þe whiche now schal be descreued;[5] but firste take hede þat in þe north side of þe world þe water[6] Meotides and þe ryuer Tanais departeþ atwynne[7] þe more Asia and Europa. Þe ryuer Tanais haþ þe name of Thanus, þe firste kyng of Scythia. Þat ryuer Tanais bygynneþ from þe hulles Ripheis, and gooþ doun to[8] þe see of myddel erþe. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Þe lower Scythia þat lond is ful colde,[9] and bygynneþ from þe ryuer Tanais, and strecchеþ bytwene þe ryuer Danubius and þe[10] norþ occean anon to[11] Germania þat contray. Alania is a party of þe lower Scythia, and strecchеþ somdel from þe wateres Meotides toward Daciam. Mesia[12] þat lond is i-closed in þe north est wiþ þe mouþ of Danubius, and ioyneþ in þe souþ est to Thracia,[13] and

TREVISA.

whom Iupiter Cretensis raveschede to hym. That Europe, the thrydde parte of the worlde, begynnenge from the floode of Thanay, descendethe by the northe occean vn to the costes of Speyne, compassede abowte with the see at þe yle callede Gades, on the este parte and in the sowthe with the grete see, conteynenge mony prouinces and yles, of whom somme thynges schalle be towchede by ordre.

MS. HARL. 2261.

Hyt is to be attendede that of the northe parte the marras of Meotides and the floode of Thanais diuiden the lesse Asia from Europe. Floode of Thanais was namede firste of Thanus, kynge of Scythia, which floode descendenge entrethe in to the see Mediterrany. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* The inferior Scythia is colde, begynnenge from the water of Thanus, betwene Danuby and the northe occean is protendede to Germanye, which is callede Barbarica for the men of Barbre that hit conteynethe.

Scythia.

Alania is a parte of the inferior Scythia declinenge to the water of Meotides vn to Denmarke.[14] Mesia is schutte of the este parte of it with the durres of Danuby, from the

Alania.

Mesia.

[1] *wyde world*, Cx.
[2] *Thanai*, MS., *a.*; *Thanay*, Cx.
[3] *at þe*] *atte*, Cx.
[4] Cx. omits þe (twice).
[5] *descryued*, Cx.
[6] *wateris*, *a.*
[7] *a sonder*, Cx.
[8] *into*, *a.*
[9] *ful of cold*, Cx.
[10] *þe*] om. *a.*
[11] *anon to*] *vnto the*, Cx.
[12] *Misia*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx., and so below.
[13] *Tracia*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.
[14] The medieval use of *Dacia* and *Daci* has here misled the translator.

Thraciæ, ab austro Macedoniæ, ab occasu Istriæ, ab Africo Dalmatiæ jungitur.[1] Terra frugifera maxime tritici,[2] unde et eam veteres Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt.

De Sclavia. Sclavia pars est[3] Mœsiæ, quæ[4] tamen duplex est, una major quæ proprie dicitur Sclavonia, et continet Dalmatiæ partem et Sarmatas. Feras habet gentes et piraticas. Alia, minor Sclavia, extenditur a Wandalis et Bohemis[5] usque ad Saxones, quæ gentem habet magis piam.[6]

De Pannonia. Pannonia, a Penninis Alpibus quibus ab Italia secernitur sic vocata, duplex est, major quæ in ulteriori Scythia est ultra Mœotides paludes, a qua Huni[7] primitus venationis gratia exeuntes, per longa paludum spatia cervorum vestigia insectantes,[8] ut dicit Herodotus,[9] tandem Pannoniam minorem invenerunt, qui reversi ad propria, collecto agmine, in illam rediere, et, expulsis incolis, nomen patriæ Hungariam indiderunt. Cujus tamen pars Bulgaria dicitur, quæ habet ab oriente Mœsiam, ab euro Istriam, ab Africo[10] Alpes, ab occidente

---

[1] *jungitur*] om. C.D.

[2] So A.E.; *triticea*, C.; *tritico*, D.

[3] *est*] om. A., placing it after *major*; omitted entirely in B.D.

[4] *quæ*] C.D. contract a little here.

[5] *Boemiis*, A.E.

[6] *p'ann*, B., (possibly blundered for *placidam*, which is very likely the true reading).

[7] So the MSS., which form is fully as good as *Hunni*, if less common.

[8] *insequentes*, B.

[9] *ut dicit Herodotus*] om. C.D. Herodotus never names the Huns; and his remarks on the Scythians can hardly be the origin of this account.

[10] *austro*, B.

in þe south to Macedonia, in þe west to Histria,[1] and in þe south west to Dalmatia. Mesia is a prise[2] lond of corne and of whete, þerfore þe olde cereris[3] cleped hit a berne. Sclauia is a partie of Mesia; þere beeþ also two londes, eiþer hatte Sclauia. Þe more hatte properliche Sclauonia, and conteyneþ som of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, and haþ wylde men and see þeues. Þe lasse Sclauia strecchef from Wandalia and Bohemia anon to Saxone; and þere ynne beþ more mylde[4] peple. Pannonia haþ þe name of Penninis Alpibus, þat beeþ[5] hulle,[6] þat beeþ i-cleped Alpes, and þilke hilles departeþ Pannonia and Italia: þere is anoþer Pannonia be ȝonde þe wateres Meotides in þe ȝonder Scythia. Out of þe more Pannonia Hunni[7] went an huntynge, and passed long by marys and wateres, and folwed þe trace of hertes, ut dicit Herodotus,[8] and so at þe laste[9] þei founde þe lasse Pannonia, and torned home aȝen, and fette to[10] hem grete strengþe and com eft[11] in to þe lasse Pannonia, and put out þe men þat were þerynne, and cleped þe lond Hungaria.[12] But a partie þerof hatte Bulgaria, and haþ in þe est side Mesia, in þe souþ est Histria,[13] in þe west Alpes, (þe hilles þat so hoteþ,) in þe west Gallia Belgica, þat is

Trevisa.

---

este of Tracia to the sowthe parte of Macedony; a plentuous region, and specially of whete, wherefore olde men namede hit the berne of God of corne. Sclauia is a parte of Mesia, of whom the nowmbre is duplicate, the more and lesse. The more is callede proprely Sclauonia, conteynenge a parte of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, hauenge ferse peple and schippemen. The litelle Sclauia is extendede from Wandalinges and men of Boemy vnto the Saxones, the peple of whom is more meke. Also Pannonye is duplicate, the more that is in the ferþer Scythia, ouer the waters of Meotides, from whom Hunes goenge furthe for cause of huntenge by ferre cuntrees folowenge hertes, as Herodotus seythe, at the laste founde the lesse Pannonye, whiche returnenge home, gedrenge a multitude of peple, returnede ageyne to hit, the inhabitatores of hit expulsede thei namede that cuntre Hungary. A parte of whom is callede Bulgaria, hauenge on the este to hit Mesia, of the weste Gallia

MS. Harl. 2261.

Sclavia.

Pannonia.

f. 34. b.

Hungaria.

---

[1] *and in þe . . . Histria*] added from *α*. and Cx.
[2] *pris*, *α*.; *good*, Cx.
[3] This absurdity is found also in *α*. and Cx.
[4] *α*. and Cx. add *men and* after *mylde*.
[5] *beoþ*, *α*.
[6] *hulles*, *α*.
[7] *Humi*, MS.; *Hinny*, Cx.
[8] *as Erodotus seyth*, Cx.
[9] *atte laste*, Cx., and so often.
[10] *toke with*, Cx.
[11] *agayn*, Cx.
[12] *Hungeria*, MS.; *Hongaria*, Cx.
[13] So *α*. and Cx.; *Historia*, MS.

Galliam Belgicam, a septentrione Danubium seu[1] Germaniam. Habet hæc terra venas aureas, et montes in quibus effoditur marmor et sal optimum.[2]

Cap. XXIII.

De Græcia et ejus provinciis.

Innuunt auctores quod Græcia, cum provinciis[3] suis, regnorum sit domina, militiæ nutrix, philosophiæ mater, magistra artium et inventrix; a quodam[4] Græco ibidem regnante[5] Græcia dicta est, quæ tamen generaliter dicitur Illyricus, cujus populi dicuntur Græci, Graii, Achæi, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, sive Hellenes.[6] Sed quando Constantinus Magnus sedem Romani imperii in Constantinopolim transtulit, Græcorum gens Romania vocabatur quasi nova Roma, ut dicit Rabanus. Ideo usque hodie Græci[7] non se vocant Græcos vulgariter, sed Ramayses,[8] gens olim bellicosissima, sed regibus subdita.[9] *Giraldus, distinctione*

---

[1] *seu*] et, A.

[2] *Habet... optimum*] om. C.D.

[3] *insulis*, C.D.

[4] *quodam*] om. A.B.

[5] *regnante ibidem*, B.

[6] The opening sentence is much contracted in C.D.

[7] *Græci*] om. B.

[8] *sed Ramayses*] So E.; *Ramaysos*, A.; *Romanos*, B., which is perhaps right; though more probably the other readings mean to express Ῥωμαίους. C. and D. omit the clause and all the preceding sentence.

[9] *gens... subdita*] placed in C. after *Hellenes*.

Fraunce, and in þe norþ þat ryuer Danubius and Germania þat lond. Þis lond Bulgaria haþ veynes of golde[1] and hilles in þe whiche me diggeþ marbel and salt goode at þe best. TREVISA.

De Græcia et eius prouinciis. Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

AUCTOURS telleþ þat Grees with þe prouinces[2] þerof is lady of kyngdoms, norice of knyȝthode and of chiualrie, moder of philosofie, fynder and mayster of art and sciens,[3] and haþ þe name of oon Grecus þat reigned þere somtyme. Neuerþeles[4] þat lond is comounliche i-cleped Illyricus,[5] þe men þerof beþ i-cleped Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, and[6] Hellenes. But whan þe grete Constantyn made[7] Constantinopolim þe cheef sete of þe emperour[8] of Rome, þan were þe Grees[9] i-cleped Romanij,[10] as it were men of newe Rome, so seiþ Rabanus. And anon to þis day þe Grees clepeþ nouȝt hem self Grees, but Romayses,[11] and were somtyme stalworþe and orped and best men of armes, and neuerþeles sugett[12] to lawes. *Isidorus*,[13]

Belgica, of the northe Danuby or Almayne. That londe hathe veynes of golde, and hilles in whom marbole is diggede and goode salte. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Grece, and of the prouinces of hit. Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

AUCTORES remembre and reherse that Grece is lady of other londes with his provinces, nutrix of cheuallery, the moder of philosophy, maistresse of artes, callede Grecia of a man named Grecus reignenge there, whiche is callede generally Illyricus, þe peple of whom be callede Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, or Hellenes. But when grete Constantyne transferrede the seete of the Roman ympyre to Constantinople, the men of Grewe were callede as newe Romanes, as Rabanus seythe; where fore men of that cuntre vn to this tyme calle not theyme Grekes, but Ramoyses, somme tyme peple moste victorious but subjecte to lawes. *Gir. de papa, ca-* Grecia.

---

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *colde*, MS.
[2] *prouince*, MS. (not Cx.)
[3] *of science*, Cx.
[4] *Netheles*, Cx. (and so often.)
[5] *Iliricus*, MS.
[6] *and*] So Cx.; *et*, MS.
[7] *Constantyn made*] added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *þe empere*, *a.*; *thempyre*, Cx. This is nearer the Latin.
[9] *Grekes*, Cx., and so below.
[10] So MS., *a.*, and Cx.
[11] *the Grekes be but Romayses*, Cx.
[12] *natheles subget*, Cx.
[13] Seemingly a clerical error for *Giraldus*. Cf. *Præf. Dist.* 1. p. 6. (Ed. Brewer.) But the reference is uncertain.

secunda, capitulo nono decimo.[1] In hac terra quondam Palladis et Minervæ studia musæ et militiæ[2] castra junctis dextris firmatisque fœderibus sese comitabantur, ideoque respublica tunc prosperabatur; item multa Graii veteres et armis aggressi et studiis assecuti sunt. Sed virtus illa refriguit in posteris, et in orbem Latinum migravit, ut qui ante fontes fuerant[3] nunc rivuli, vel potius alvei arentes et exhausti. Virtutum siquidem successor nullus,[4] scelerum omnes. Namque Sinonis figmenta, Ulixis fallaciam, Atrei atrocitatem retinent. Arte non armis dimicant. Hæc itaque regio Græcia juxta mare magnum sita plures in se continet[5] provincias, quæ sunt Thracia, Lacedæmonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia,[6] Bœotia.[7]

De Thracia.

Thracia, quæ et Epirus, terra[8] quondam Epirotarum, habet ab austro Ægeum mare, ab occasu Macedoniam, quam quondam inhabitabant Massagetæ, Sarmatæ, Gothi. *Isidorus, libro xv°.*[9] In hac terra est fons extinguens faces accensas et iterum extinctas reaccen-

---

[1] So written at length (but as one word) in E. Higden or his scribes seem to have avoided the form *undevicesimus*.

[2] *militiæ*] om. C.D.

[3] *fuerunt*, A.

[4] *æmulus*, B.

[5] *continet in se*, B.

[6] *Elladia* or *Elladea*, MSS.; *Calladia*, B.; *Hellas* is of course intended.

[7] *Hæc itaque ... Bœotia*] Slightly contracted in C.D. (the names excepted), which place the sentence before *Giraldus*; A. has *et Achaia* and *et Arcadia*.

[8] *tota*, B. (apparently).

[9] The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 13.

libro primo, capitulo septimo decimo. In þis lond was somtyme þe studie and þe scole of Pallas and Minerua, of grettest art and sciens of kny3thode and of chiualrie, and þe clergie and the chiualrie hilde[1] so to giders þat in þe comyn profi3t was all way good spede. Also þe olde Graii auntrede[2] and gat many þinges by clergie and dedes of armes, but þat vertue keled[3] and wiþ drowe ynne ham þat com[4] afterward, and passede from þe Grees to þe Latyns, so þat þe raþer welles beeþ[5] now but lakes,[6] oþer more vereyliche dreye chanels wiþ oute watir. For now þey holdeþ Sinonis[7] feynynge, Vlixis[8] gile, Atreuis cruelnesse, and fiteþ wiþ sleiþe and wiþ cauteles and nou3t wiþ armoure and wepoun. Þis lond Grecia is faste by þe grete see, and conteyneþ many prouinces, þat beeþ Thracia,[9] Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.[10] Thracia hatte Epirus also, for[11] Epirote woned þerynne somtyme, and haþ in þe souþ side þe see Egeus,[12] in þe west Macedonia. In Macedonia woned somtyme dyuers men þat hi3te Massagete, Sarmate, and Gothi. *Isidorus, libro quinto.*[13] In þis lond is a welle þat quencheþ brennynge brondes, and tendeþ brondes þat beeþ a

TREVISA.

pitulo septimo decimo. In whiche londe somme tyme were libraryes, studies, muses, and companyes of cheuallery, where fore the londe stode that tyme in prosperite. But that vertu in theyme was refusede after and wente to the cuntre of men of Latyn, and thei that were somme tyme the nowble welles now be[14] as ryueres with owte water and consumede; noo folower of vertu þer, but alle off vices. For thei reteyne to them the figmentes of Sinonis, the fallace of Vlixes, fi3htenge by arte and not by armes. That region of Grece, sette nye the grete see, hathe mony prouinces in hit, whiche be Thracia,[9] Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.[10] Thracia, or Egiptus,[15] somme tyme the londe Epiratores, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Ege, of the weste Macedony, where the Massagetes inhabite somme tyme. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* There is a welle in that londe qwenchenge brennenge brondes of fire and li3htenge theyme ageyne. The chiefe cite of

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 35. a.

[1] *helde*, Cx.
[2] *aventured*, Cx.
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *keleþ*, MS.
[4] *cam*, *a.* and Cx.
[5] So *a.*; *is*, MS.
[6] *so that to fore where welles were, ben now but lakes*, Cx.
[7] *Synonis*, MS.
[8] So *a*; *Vlixus*, MS.; *Vlixes*, Cx.
[9] *þat beeþ Thracia*] Added from *a.* and Cx. The MSS. have *Tracia*, as usual; but *Thessalia* is correctly written in MS. (not Harl. MS.)
[10] *Boecia*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.
[11] *for*] added from Cx.
[12] *Egedeus*, MS.
[13] 15, *a.*, Cx.
[14] *thei be*, MS., but *thei* erased.
[15] This is of course for Epirus; but the sentence is otherwise corrupt.

dens.[1] Hujus provinciæ metropolis est Constantinopolis[2] in orientali parte patens inter Ponticum mare et Propontidem, terræ marique pervia, caput quondam orientis, sicut Roma occidentis; et quondam vocabatur Byzantium.[3] De qua loquitur sic Willielmus de Regibus, libro quarto:[4] Hanc[5] urbem Constantius magnus constituit æquam Romæ, decernens imperatorem non debere Romæ principari, ubi principabantur apostoli coronati. Invexit quoque illuc innumeras Sanctorum reliquias, qui possent[6] contra hostium insultus[7] suffragari. Statuas etiam deorum et tripodes Delphicos ad ludibrium intuentium adduxit, gratum æstimans ibi urbem imperialem condere ubi esset soli ubertas[8] et cœli temperies, juxta regionem Mysiam[9] frugum feracem. Patet quoque undecumque[10] adnavigantibus ab Asia et Europa, undique pene mari magno cincta, ambitu murorum juxta situm pelagi angulosi[11] viginti millia[12] passuum muro complexa. Quapropter rupium molibus

---

[1] *accendens*, B.

[2] *Constantinopolim*, E.

[3] *Thracia . . . Byzantium*] Much altered and transposed in C.D., which omit all that follows till the section on *Lacedæmon*.

[4] *in libro quarto Regum*, A.

[5] *Quapropter hanc*, A.

[6] *possunt*, A.

[7] *insidias*, B.

[8] *libertas*, E.

[9] *Mesiam*, A.; but *Mysia* is most probably intended.

[10] *undique*, B.

[11] *angulosa*, B.E.

[12] *millibus*, B.

queynt.[1] Þe chief cite of þis lond is Constantinopolis in þe est side, openliche i-seie by twene þe tweie sees Ponticus and Propontides, and opounliche i-seie out of water and of lond, and was somtyme þe cheef citee of þe Est; riȝt as Rome was of þe West, and hiȝte som tyme Byzantium.[2] Of þis citee Willielmus, libro quarto Regum, spekeþ in þis manere: Þe grete Constantinus bulde and made þis citee euene and pere to Rome[3] and demed þat þe Emperour schulde nouȝt be chief þere; þe Apostles were cheef, and nameliche i-crowned. And he brouȝt þider also meny relikes of holy seyntes, þat myȝte hem helpe aȝenst her enemyes. Ymages of false goddes and tripodes Delphicos þat were Apolynes ymages he brouȝte to byskorne[4] and bysmere[5] to hem þat byhelde hem and say.[6] So þis Emperour vouched sauf to bulde þe chief citee of þe empere in good corn contray, where þere is good temperure of heuene and of wedir, besides þe londe Mysia,[7] þat haþ grete plente of corn and of fruyt. Þe[8] citee is i-seiȝe and i-schewed to alle schipmen þat seilleþ þider ward out of what lond þat þey come of Asia and[9] Europa, and is wel nyȝ byclipped al aboute wiþ þe grete see, and is cornered wiþynne þe clippynge of þe walles faste by þe see side, and is[10] byclipped wiþ a wal of twenty þowsand paas. Þere wiþ hupes of stones[11] and of grauel, i-caste

TREVISA.

that cuntre is Constantinople,[12] in the este part of hit, betwene the see Pontyke and Propontides, the hede of alle the este, as Rome is of the weste, somme tyme callede Byzantium;[2] of whom Willielmus, libro iiij^to^, de Regibus, spekethe; Constantine made that cite egalle to Rome, seyenge hit was not conueniente an Emperoure to kepe residence where thapostles crownede kepede the principate, bryngenge thider innumerable relikes of Seyntes whiche myȝhte schewe socoure to the cite ageyne the sawtes of theire enmyes, thenkenge hit fra to hym to make a cite imperialle where was the pleasure and liberte of grownde, temperaunce of heuyn, nye to the region callede Mysia,[7] plentuous of whete. Whiche is patente on euery syde to men saylenge from Asia and Europa, compassede alle moste with the grete see. The

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *acquenchyd*, Cx.
[2] *Bisancium*, MSS.
[3] *Rome*] So *a.* and Cx.; *Londoun*, MS.
[4] *by skorne*, MS., and similarly often.
[5] *busmere*, *a.*
[6] *he brought to be scorned and spyght to them that behelde hem and sawe*, Cx.
[7] *Misia*, MSS. (of both versions).
[8] *That*, Cx.
[9] *and of*, Cx.
[10] *I is*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[11] *ther with heepes and huppels of stones*, Cx.
[12] *Propontides Constantinople*, MS., but *Propontides* erased.

et arenarum cumulis juxta urbem profundo injectis tellus dilatatur; Danubius etiam[1] fluvius (qui et Hister) occultis sub terra canalibus influit; urbi diebus constitutis, ablato pessulo, inductus centum plateas inundat. In qua urbe Constantinus erexit duas ecclesias famosas, sed Justinianus[2] postmodum literis et bellis egregius addidit tertiam ecclesiam in honorem Divinæ Sophiæ, id est[3] Domini Christi, quem "hagiam[4] sophiam" vocavit; opus, ut ferunt, omnibus per orbem ædificiis magnificentius, ita ut verba referentium vincat. Ibi per Helenam allatum fuit lignum dominicæ crucis. Ibi quiescunt apostoli Andreas, Jacobus frater Domini, Matthias, prophetæ quoque Heliseus, Samuel, Daniel. Item Lucas Evangelista et martyres quamplures. Item confessores Johannes Chrysostomus, Basilius, Gregorius Nazianzenus. Item virgines Agatha et Lucia.

De Lacedæmonia.

Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Lacedæmonia sive Spartania provincia est Græciæ juxta Thraciam, cujus incolæ vocantur Lacedæmones a Lacedæmone filio

---

[1] *etiam*] So A.B.; *et*, E.
[2] A. adds *imperator*.
[3] A. repeats *in honorem*.
[4] Trevisa's MS. must have had *Agia*, to judge by his translation.

into þe see besides þe citee, þe lond i-serched[1] and i-made more. Also þe ryuer Danubius, þat hatte Hister also, is i-lete and i-ladde in to dyuerse places of þe cite by goteres vnder erþe in þis manere. Whan þe water schal torne[2] in to þe citee men takeþ out a barre, þat þe water is i-stopped wiþ, and letteþ þe water renne, and stoppeþ whan hem likeþ. And so Danubius fyndeþ water i-now to an hondred stretis. In þis citee Constantinus arered and bulde tweie famous chirches; but Iustinianus þe Emperour bulde afterward þe þridde chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure Lord Crist, þat[3] Agia clepeþ Diuina Sophia, in[4] Englisshe, Þe Wisdom of God. And men telleþ þat þe werk passeþ al þe buldynge of þe worlde, and is more noble þan men konne[5] telle. Þeder Seint Eleyne[6] brouȝte þe holy crosse þat oure Lorde Crist deied on; þere resteþ þe apostles Andrewe and Iames, þat is i-cleped Frater Domini;[7] þere resteþ Mathias and prophetes also, Heliseus, Samuel, and Daniel; and also Luke þe euangeliste, and martires ful many; also confessours, Iohan wiþ þe gilden[8] mouth, Basilius, and Gregorius Nazianzenus; and virgines, Agatha and Lucia.

Lacedemonia, þat hat Spartania[9] also, is a prouince of of Grecia faste byside Thracia. Men of þat prouince beeþ i-cleped Lacedemones of Lacedemon, Semelis[10] sone, and

TREVISA.

floode Danubius flowethe in to the cite in condettes vnder the erthe; in dayes ordeynede, a barre take a way, that water clensethe cl. weyes in that cite. In whom grete Constantine erecte ij. famose chirches; but Iustinian the Emperoure, instructe in letters and in armes, addede the chirche in the worschippe of oure Lorde Criste, moste nowble in worke of alle oþer chirches in the worlde. The crosse of oure Lorde was brouȝhte þider by Elene, where Seynte Andrewe, Seynte Iames broþer of oure Lorde, Mathias, Eliseus, Samuel, and Daniel reste. Also Lucas the Euangeliste, and mony other martires. Also Iohn Crisostom, Basilius, Gregory Nazanzene. Also Agatha and Lucia, virgines. Lacedemonia is a prouince of Grece, nye Thracia. The inhabitatores of whom be callede Lacedemones. Men of that

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *eched*, Cx.
[2] *renne*, Cx.
[3] þ*a*, MS. (not *a*.)
[4] *an*, *a*.
[5] *kun*, *a*.; *can*, Cx.
[6] *Helene*, Cx.
[7] Cx. adds: *in Englisshe, oure lordes broder*.
[8] *golden*, Cx. (not *a*.)
[9] *Spartania*] So *a*. and Cx.; *Speratonia*, MS.
[10] So Cx.; *Samuelis*, MS.; *Samelis*, *a*.

Semeles. Dicuntur etiam[1] Spartani.[2] *Trogus, libro tertio, capitulo secundo.* Hi aliquando[3] circa obsidionem Messenes[4] civitatis in Apulia per decennium immorati,[5] querelis uxorum fatigabantur, timentesque[6] ne diuturnitate prælii spem prolis amitterent, statuerunt ut eorum virgines cum juvenibus domi relictis promiscue concumberent, arbitrantes per hoc sobolem maturiorem provenire si singulæ mulieres plures viros experirentur. Ex quibus nati, ob notam[7] materni pudoris, Spartani vocabantur. Qui cum tricesimum annum attigissent, metu inopiæ, cum nullum certum patrem haberent,[8] duce Phalantho filio Araci,[9] insalutatis matribus, per varios casus jactati tandem Italiam devenerunt, expulsisque veteribus incolis, sedem apud Tarentum statuerunt.

De Macedonia.

Macedonia, a Macedone[10] Deucalionis nepote sic dicta, quondam Emathia a rege Emathio vocabatur.[11] Ab ortu habet Ægeum mare, ab austro Achaiam, ab occasu Dalmatiam, a septentrione Mœsiam.[12]

---

[1] *et*, A.B.

[2] *Dicuntur etiam Spartani*] sive Spartani, C.D.

[3] *aliquando*] om. C.D.

[4] *Messene*, MSS.

[5] *x. annos morati*, B.

[6] A. and B. omit *que*.

[7] *natam*, A.D.; *naturam*, C.

[8] *haberent patrem*, A.B.D.

[9] Both the Latin and English MSS. have the form *Aracius*.

[10] *Macedo*, MS.

[11] *dicebatur*, C.

[12] *Misiam*, MSS.

beeþ i-cleped Spartani also. *Trogus, libro tertio.* Þese men somtyme byseged þe citee Messena ten ȝere to gidres, and were wery and i-greued[1] of pleyntes and grucchinge of her wyfes, and dradde also þat longe abidynge from home in werre and in bataille schulde make hem childrenlese[2] at hom, and ordeyned þerfore þat þe[3] maydenes of her londe schulde take ȝongelynges þat were i-left at home; so þat euery mayde schulde take many ȝongelynges,[4] euerich after oþer; for þey hoped to haue þe strenger childeren, ȝif eueriche womman assayed many men. But for þe schameful doynge of the modres þe children þat were i-gete and i-brouȝt forþ in þat manere were i-cleped Spartani, and whan þey were þritty wynter[5] olde þey dredde sore of nede and of meschef; for non of hem wiste who was his owne sire.[6] Þerfore þey toke hem a ledere and a chifteyn[7] Phalanthus, Aracus[8] his sone, and toke no leue of hire modres, but wente forþ and were i-cast hider and þider by dyuers happes,[9] and at þe laste cam in to Italia, and dryue[10] oute þe men þat woned þere, and made þe cheef sede[11] at Tarentum.

Macedonia haþ þe name of Macedo, Deucalions neuew, and hiȝt somtyme Emathia of Emathius the kyng, and haþ in þe est side þe see Egeus, in þe soupe Achaia,[12] in þe west Dalmatia, and in þe norþ Mesia.[13] In þis prouince

[1] *agreued*, Cx.
[2] *childeren*, Cx. (typogr. error).
[3] *þe*] om. Cx.
[4] *þat were . . . ȝongelynges*] om. Cx.
[5] *yere*, Cx.
[6] *fader*, Cx.
[7] *capytayne*, Cx.
[8] *Phalantis Aracius*, MS.
[9] *fortunes*, Cx.
[10] *droof*, Cx.
[11] *cyte*, Cx. (not *a.*), which is probably right.
[12] *Achaie*, MS.
[13] *Misia*, MSS. of both versions; and so below.

TREVISA.

prouince taryenge abowte the sege of a cite callede Messene in Apulia, wexede feynte thro compleyntes of theire wifes, dredenge to lose multiplicacion off childer by diuturnite of batelle, ordeynede that the childer of theyme lefte at home scholde folowe the luste of the flesche to gedre, supposinge the more multiplicacion to encrease; but the women experte the knowlege of diuerse men, the childer of whom were callede Spartani. Whiche childer atteynenge the age of xxx^ti yere, not knowenge their faders in certitude, takenge to theyme a duke callede Phalax, sonne of Aracus, come to Ytaly, expellenge the olde inhabitatores of hit, made a mansion and a seete to theyme at Tarentum. Macedonia, callede by that name of Macedo, neuewe to Deucalion, some tyme [was] callede Emathia of kynge Emathius, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Egee, on the sowthe Achaia, of the weste Dalmatia, on the northe parte Mesia. The hille f. 35. b.

MS. HARL. 2261.

De monte Olympo.

In hac provincia est[1] mons Olympus, qui dividit Thraciam et Macedoniam.[2] *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Mons quidem nubes excedens, in cujus vertice nec nubes nec venti nec pluviæ sentiuntur, super quem litteræ inscriptæ in pulvere[3] post annum repertæ sunt illibatæ; ubi etiam pro nimia aeris raritate nec aves vivere queunt,[4] nec philosophi ibidem[5] ascendentes ad discendum cursum stellarum absque spongiis adaquatis manere potuerunt,[6] quas naribus suis apponentes[7] aerem trahebant crassiorem.

De monte Atho.

Est ibi etiam[8] mons Athos nubes pertingens, cujus umbra usque[9] ad Lemnum insulam[10] extenditur,[11] quæ distat illo monte lxxvi. milliaribus.

De Dalmatia.

Dalmatia ab ortu habet Macedoniam, ab occasu Istriam, a septentrione Mœsiam, ab austro Adriaticum sinum.

De Achaia.

Achaia, ab Achæo rege sic dicta, tota pæne[12] est insula. Nam ab ortu habet Tyrrhenum mare, ab euro[13] Creticum mare, a meridie[14] mare Ionium, a solo[15] sep-

---

[1] *In ea est*, C.D.

[2] *et Macedoniam*] *a Macedonia*, A.B.C.D.; C. and D. omit the title of the following extract from *Petrus*.

[3] *scriptæ in pulverem*, B.

[4] *possunt*, C. (not D.)

[5] *ibi*, B.; om. D.

[6] *potuerant*, A.

[7] *apponentes suis*, B.; *suis* is omitted in D.

[8] *etiam ibidem*, A.B.D.

[9] *usque*] om. B.

[10] *in L. insulam*, C.; *in L. insula* D.

[11] *protenditur*, A.

[12] *pæne*] fere, C.D.

[13] *austro*, B.

[14] *ab occasu*, B.

[15] *solo*] om. B. The other MSS. have *sola*.

is þe hil mons Olympus, and to deleþ[1] tweie londes, Thracia and Macedonia. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Þe hul passeþ þe clowdes, in þe cop[2] of þat hil comeþ no clowdes, wynd, noþer reyn;[3] vppon þat hulle lettres[4] þat were i-write in poudre were i-founde wiþ oute wem[5] at þe ȝeres ende. Also foules[6] mowe not lyue[7] þere; for þe aier is to clere. And philosofres mowe not[8] dwelle þere to lerne þe course of sterres[9] wiþ oute sponges i-watred and i-holde at hir nostrilles[10] to make þikker þe ayer, þat þey draweþ to kele[11] wiþ here herte. Þere is also þe hille[12] mons Athos, þat recche þ to þe clowdes; þe schadewe of þat hille arecheþ to the ilond Lemnum. Þat ilond is from þe[13] hul þre score myle and sixtene.[14]

Dalmatia þat lond haþ in þe est side Macedonia, in þe west Histria, in þe norþ Mesia, and in þe souþ þe see Adriaticus.

Achaia haþ þe name of Acheus þe kyng, and is wel nyh an ylonde i-closed in þe see: for he[15] haþ in þe est side þe see Tyrrhenus, and in þe norþ þe see Creticus, in þe souþ þe

Trevisa.

---

callede Olimpus is in that prouince whiche diuidethe Thracia from Macedony. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* That mownte is of suche altitude that the toppe off hit excedethe clowdes, where clowdes be not perceyvede, neither wyndes, neither reynes, in whom letters wryten were founde vndefilede at the end of the yere, where bryddes may not lyve for rarite of the aier, neiþer philosophres myȝte ascende to hit to knowe the courses of the sterres with owte sponges, whiche, puttenge theyme to theire noose, attracte more thicker aier to theyme. There is also an hille callede Athon, towchenge the clowdes, the schado of whom is protendede to the yle callede Lemnus, which is from that hille lxxvj. [m̃yle]. Dalmatia hathe on the este parte to hit Macedony, of the weste Histria, of the northe Mesia, of the sowthe parte the see Adriatike. Achaia takenge the name of hit of a kynge callede Acheus,[16] is allemoste alle an yle. For on the este parte to hit hit hathe the see Tirene, of the weste the see Cretike, on the sowthe the see Ionius, of the

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *departeth*, Cx.
[2] *vpprist*, Cx.
[3] *reine ne wynde*, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *lettre*, MS.
[5] *hurtynge or wemme*, Cx.
[6] *So fowles*, Cx.
[7] *nouȝt libbe*, *a.*
[8] *nouȝt*, *a.*
[9] *the sterres*, Cx.
[10] *her nose thirles*, Cx.; *nosetrils*, *a.*
[11] *cole*, Cx.
[12] Cx. omits *þe hille.*
[13] *that*, Cx.
[14] *lxx. myle*, Cx.
[15] *it*, Cx.
[16] *Echius*, Harl. MS.

tentrione Macedoniæ et Atticæ jungitur. Hujus metropolis est Corinthus, ubi Alexander magnus[1] collegit exercitum, quando proposuit[2] expugnare orbem terrarum; quibus et Paulus scripsit.[3]

De Arcadia. Arcadia, quæ et[4] Sicyonia, ab Arcade filio Jovis sic dicta, sinus est Achaiæ; inter mare Ionium et Ægeum velut[5] platani folium jacet.

De lapide Asbesto. Hæc gignit Asbeston[6] lapidem,[7] qui semel accensus nunquam extinguitur. Gignit etiam[8] candidas merulas, cum tamen apud nos merulæ sint[9] nigræ.[10]

De Thessalia. Thessalia ad austrum Macedoniæ jungitur, patria quondam Achillis et Lapitharum origo, qui primum equos frænis domuerunt et dorsis eorum insederunt, propter quod unum corpus cum equis quibus insidebant[11] a vulgo indocto[12] putabantur. Et inde centum Centauri. equites Thessalorum dicti sunt Centauri a centum

---

[1] *magnus Alexander*, A.B.D.
[2] *disposuit*, D.
[3] *duas scripsit epistolas*, C.D.
[4] *et*] est, D.
[5] *velut*] quasi, C.D.
[6] *albeston*, A.B.; *albesten*. C.D.E.
[7] *lapidem*] om. C. (not D.)
[8] *etiam*] *et*, C. (not D.)
[9] *sint*] sunt, A.
[10] *cum apud nos omnes sint nigræ*, C.D.
[11] *quibus insidebant*] om. C.D.
[12] *indocto*] ignaro, C.D.

see Ionius, and onliche in þe norþ he[1] ioyneth[2] to Macedonia and to Attica. Þe cheef citee of þat lond hatte Corinthus; þere kyng Alexandre[3] gadrede his oost for to wynne al þe world; þeder Poul[4] wroot his pistil ad Corinthios. TREVISA.

Arcadia, þat hatte Sicyonia also, haþ þe name of Arcas,[5] Iupiter is sone, and is an angul (þat is,[6] a corner) of Achaia, and lieþ bytwene þe tweie sees Ionius and Egeus, and is i-schape as is[7] a plane leef. Þere ynne is Asbeston[8] þat wil neuere quenche, be it ones i-tend; þere beeþ also white wesels.[9] Þe[10] wesels[9] be blak among vs; þere þey beeþ white.

Thessalia ioyneþ in þe souþ side to Macedonia, and was somtyme Achilles contray, and þere bygonne Lapithe;[11] þilke men chastisede[12] and temede[13] hors firste wiþ bridels, and sette[14] on hire bakkes; þerfore þe lewed peple wende[15] þat it were[16] alle on[17] body, man and hors þat þey sitte[18] on. And þerfore an hondred horsmen of Thessalia were i-cleped *centaury*. Þat name is i-gadered of tweyne, of *centum*, þat is, *an hondred*, and of *aura*, þat is, *þe wynde*. And so þat name was to hem i-schappe *Centauri*, as it were an hundred

---

northe oonly Macedony, ioynede to Attica. The chiefe cite of whom is Corinthus, where kynge Alexander gedrede his hoste, intendenge to expugne alle the worlde, to whom Seynte Paule did wryte. Arcadia, whiche [is] operwise callede Sicyonia, was so namede of Arcas,[5] son of Iupiter, the bosom of Achaia, betwene the see Ionine and the see of Egee, lyenge lyke to the leef of a tree. In this cuntre is a ston callede Asbeston,[19] whiche accendede oonys is neuer extincte, and oþer diuerse precious stones. Thessalia, at the sowthe parte of hit, is ioynede to Macedony, somme tyme the cuntre of Achilles, and the originalle of men callede Laphites, whiche made tame firste horses with bridelles, and rydenge on the backes off theyme, whiche were trawede to be of oon body with þe horses on whom thei did ryde of the commune peple, where fore a c. horse men of that MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *it*, Cx.
[2] So Cx.; *ioyned*, MS.
[3] *Alysaunder*, Cx.
[4] *Paule*, Cx.
[5] *Archas*, Cx.; *Archades*, MSS. of both versions.
[6] *þat is*] *or*, Cx.
[7] *is*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[8] *Albeston*, MS., *a.*, Cx.
[9] *ousels*, Cx. (twice).
[10] *þei, a.*; *though*, Cx., which seems right.
[11] *Laphite*, MS., Cx.
[12] *chastede, a.*
[13] *tamed*, Cx.
[14] *satte*, Cx.
[15] *supposed*, Cx.
[16] *had be*, Cx.
[17] *oon, a.*; *one*, Cx.
[18] *sete, a.*; *satte*, Cx.
[19] *Albestes*, Harl. MS.

et aura quam agitabant sic equitando.[1] *Trogus, libro*
Parnassus. *xxiv°*.[2] In hac[3] provincia est mons Parnassus apud poetas famosus et celebris, saxo bicipiti dependens; in cujus vertice templum Delphici Apollinis situatur; et in anfractu planitiei mediæ puteus existit, ubi responsa dari solebant,[4] mentesque philosophantiam inspirari. Quamobrem si hominum aut tubarum sonitus in medio convallis personet, correspondentibus inter se rupibus multiplex echo resonabit.[5] *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo.* In hac provincia duo sunt flumina, ex quorum uno bibentes oves efficiuntur nigræ, ex altero albæ, ex utroque fonte bibentes fiunt coloris varii.[6]
Fons. *Ranulphus.* In hac quoque terra sunt loca illa delectabilia ad spatiandum accommoda quæ dicuntur apud philosophos et poetas[7] Tempe florida, de quibus Ovidius et Theodosius[8] scribunt.[9] In hac quoque terra contigit illud tertium diluvium particulare[10] tempore Deucalionis ibidem principantis, qui confugientes ad eum[11] in ratibus salvabat, propter quod fingunt poetæ ipsum cum conjuge sua Pyrrha jactis lapidibus homines creasse.[12]

---

[1] *quam equitando sic agitabant*, C.; also D., omitting *sic*.

[2] 14, B.; 34, C.D. The text is correct. See Just. xxiv. 6.

[3] *hac quoque*, C. (not D.)

[4] *solent*, C.D.

[5] *personabit*, C.D.

[6] *ex utroque vero bibentes vario colore fiunt*, C.D.

[7] *apud . . . poetas*] om. C.D.

[8] *Theodolus*, A.B.D. Perhaps Herodotus (see vii. 173) is intended.

[9] *scribunt*] mentionem faciunt, C. D.

[10] *particulare diluvium*, A.

[11] *ad eum*] om. C.D.

[12] The two last sentences are transposed in B.

wynde waggers: for þey wagged wel[1] þe wynde faste in hir ridynge. *Trogus, libro vicesimo quarto.*[2] In þis prouince is þe hille Parnassus; (poetis accounteþ þat hil noble and famous;) and hongeþ with tweie copped stones. In þe cop[3] þerof is the temple of Delphicus Apollo;[4] and in þe wyndynge[5] of þe myddel playn is a pitte, oute of þat pitte philosofres were enspired; and dyuers answeres were i-ȝeue out of þat pitte. Þerfore ȝif noyse of men oþer of trompes sowneþ in þe[6] valey, þe stones answereþ euerich oþer, and dyuers ecco sowneþ. Ecco is þe reboundynge of noyse. *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo.* In þis prouince beeþ tweie ryueres; scheepe þat drynkeþ of þat oon schulle worþe[7] blak, and schepe þat drynkeþ of þat oþer schul worþe[7] whyte; and ȝif þey drynken of boþe, þey schulle worþe[7] spekked[8] of dyuers colour. Also in þis prouince beeþ þilke likynge places to walke ynne þat philosofres and poetes cleþeþ *tempe*[9] *florida*, þat is, *likynge place wiþ floures.* Of þis place writeþ Theodolus and Ouidius. Also in þis[10] prouince of þat lond[11] was þe þridde particuler flood, and ful[12] in Deucalions tyme, prince of þat lond. Þat prince sauede men þat fleigh to hym in schippes and bootes; þerfore poetes feynede þat he and his wif Pyrrha cast stones and

Trevisa.

cuntre were callede centauri. *Trogus, libro secundo.* The hille callede Parnasus is in that prouince, a nowble mownte, and of grete fame after poetes, dependenge[13] by a dowble ston, in the toppe of whom a temple is sette lyke to the temple of Apollo Delphicus; and in the pleyne þer of is a pitte where thei ȝafe to viuificate the myndes of philosophres, *Isidorus, libro* 13°. There be ij. waters in that prouince, of that oon of whom schepe drynkenge be made blacke, of that other white, and schepe drynkenge of bothe waters be made of diuerse coloures. Also in that londe be places delectable, of whom Ouidius and Theodolus doe wryte. In that londe happede a particuler floode, in the tyme of Deucalion beynge prince there, whiche saluede men commenge to hym in schippes, wherefore poetes feyne hym, with Pyrrha his wife, to haue create men of stones. Helladia

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 36. a.

[1] *wel*] om. Cx.; placed before *faste* in *a.*, which seems right.
[2] 14, Cx.
[3] *toppe*, Cx.
[4] *Appolyn*, MS.; *Appollym*, Cx.
[5] *wendyng*, Cx.
[6] *þe*] *a*, Cx.
[7] *wexe*, Cx. (thrice).
[8] *splekked*, *a.* and Cx.
[9] *tempore*, Cx.
[10] So *a.* and Cx.; *his*, MS.
[11] *of þat lond*] om. Cx.
[12] *fille*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[13] *portes depengenge*, Harl. MS.

De Helladia.

Helladia,[1] a rege Hellene, Deucalionis et Pyrrhæ filio, sic dicta, a quo Græci Hellenes dicti sunt. Ipsa quoque est Attica terra, ab Atthide[2] filia Cranai[3] sic dicta, inter Macedoniam et Achaiam[4] jacet media, a septentrione jungitur Arcadiæ. Ipsa est vera Græcia, cujus duæ sunt partes, Bœotia et Peloponnesus, quarum metropolis est Athenæ,[5] ubi quondam vigebat studium litterarum; nationumque cunctarum[6] ad discendum[7] confluebat copia, quæ tali modo condita fuit. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Ea tempestate qua Ægyptus percussa est plagis sub manu Moysis,[8] quidam Ægyptii[9] timentes[10] Ægyptum perituram egressi sunt.[11] Unde et[12] Cecrops egressus apud Græciam[13] urbem Acten condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. Isto modo secundum Varronem, cum apud Acten urbem subito apparuisset oliva, et aqua alibi repente erupisset, consuluit

---

[1] *Ellana*, A.; *Ellanda*, C. The MSS. generally omit the aspirate.
[2] *Athis*, MSS.
[3] *Grani*, MSS.
[4] *A. et M.*, B.
[5] *Athenas*, MSS.
[6] *et ecclesiarum*, C., which omits *cunctarum* (not D.).
[7] *a discendi*, B. (without sense.)
[8] *Moysi*, MSS.
[9] *Ægyptiorum*, C.D.
[10] *tunc timentes*, A.
[11] *fugerunt*, C. (not D.)
[12] *et*] om. B.
[13] *apud Græciam*] adveniensque Græciam, C.D., which have other slight alterations.

made men. Helladia þat londe haþ þe name of Hellen[1] þe kyng, þat was Deucaliouns sone, and Pyrrha also. Of þis Hellen þe Grees hatte Hellenes. Þis lond hatte Attica also, of Atthis, þat was Cranaus[2] his douȝter; and lieþ by twene Macedonia and Achaia and ioyneþ in þe north side to Arcadia. Þis londe is verrey Grecia, and haþ tweie parties: Beotia[3] is þat oon, and Peloponnesus[4] þat oþer. Þe chief citee of þis lond hatte Athene:[5] þere was somtyme a grete studie of lettrure[6] and of clergie, and men of all naciouns and londes come þider forto lerne. Athene þat citee was i-bulde in þis manere. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Þat tyme þat Egipt was i-smyte wiþ God all myȝties wrethe vnder Moyses hond, som seiȝe[7] Egipt schulde be lost, and flowe oute of Egipt in to[8] oþer londes. And so Cecrops[9] fleigh[10] out of Egipt into Grecia, and þere he bulde þe citee Atthen, þat was i-cleped afterward Athene. In þis manere, as Varro[11] seiþ, an olyue was sodeynliche i-seie in þat citee Atthen, and a water brak oute sodeynliche in anoþer place. Þanne Cecrops axede

TREVISA.

---

toke the name of hit of Hellen,[12] son of Deucalion and of Pyrra, of whome Grekes be callede Elenas. That is the londe callede Attica, of Atthis, doȝhter of Graius, lyenge betwene Macedony and Achaia, as in the myddes, ioynede to Arcadia in the northe: that is vereye Grece, of whom be ij. partes, Beotia[3] and Peloponense, the chiefe cite of whom is Athenas, where study was somme tyme multiplicate, to whiche cite grete multitude of peple made confluence for cause of erudicion from diuerse regiones. *Augustinus, De civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo.* Somme Egypciannes dredenge Egipte to peresche in that grete tempeste, what tyme hit was grevede with mony diseases vnder the powere of Moises, wente furthe from hit. Wherefore Cecrops, goen furthe to Grece, made a cite, namenge hit Athen, whiche was callede after Athenas. After Varro, hit was made in this maner, when at that city callede Athen an oliue apperede sodenly, and the water brake vp also sodenly in an other place, Cecrops

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Ellęna*, MS., *a.*, Cx.
[2] *Gramys*, MS., *a.*; *Grauius*, Cx.
[3] *Boecia*, MSS. (as usual).
[4] *Pelopenensis*, MS.
[5] *Athenes*, Cx., and so below.
[6] *lecture*, Cx.
[7] *som Egipcians dredde lest, a.*; *somme Egypciens dradde leste*, Cx.
[8] *in to*] *to*, Cx.
[9] *Sicrops*, MS.; *Cicrops* and *Sycrops* below. Similarly the rest, nearly.
[10] *fledde*, Cx.
[11] So Cx.; *Pharro*, MS., and *a.*
[12] *Ellanda*, Harl. MS.

Cecrops Apollinem[1] Delphicum in[2] monte Parnasso, quid de hac re foret accitandum.[3] Ille respondit quod oliva deam Minervam significaret, unda vero[4] Neptunum. Et quod esset[5] in civium potestate ex cujus nomine duorum deorum civitatem vellent denominare.[6] Hinc cives omnes utriusque sexus conveniunt, sicut mos erat tunc, ita fœminas sicut mares publicis consultationibus interesse; mares igitur pro Neptuno, fœminæ[7] pro Minerva tulerunt sententiam. Et quia una plus inventa est fœminarum quam virorum[8] vicit Minerva, ita ut civitas nomine ejus vocaretur Athenæ. Nam[9] Minerva Græce dicitur Athena.[10] Tunc Neptunus iratus terras Atheniensium marinis fluctibus operuit, quod non est difficile dæmonibus facere. Cujus ut iracundia facilius placaretur, fœminæ dupliciter sunt afflictæ; ita ut nulla deinceps fœminarum publicis consultationibus interesset,

---

[1] *misit rex Cecrops ad Ap.*, D.

[2] *in*] de, A.

[3] Sic A.E.; *accidendum*, B.; *agendum*, C.D.

[4] *vero* added from C.D.

[5] *esset* after *potestate* in B.

[6] *Et quod . . . denominare*] In C. thus: "Tunc facta est dissensio in civitate ex cujus nomine duorum deorum civitas potius vocaretur." D. agrees with C. in the last three words only.

[7] B. adds *vero*.

[8] *quam virorum*] om. D.

[9] *Nam*] om. B.

[10] *Nam . . . Athena*] om. C.D.

counsaille of Appolyn[1] Delphicus, þat maumet, in þe hil mount Parnassus, and axede what þese þinges schulde be to menyng ;[2] and he answerde and seide þat þe olyue bytokened þe Goddes Minerua[3] and þe water bytokened Neptunus ; and seide þat it was in power and choys of þe citeceyns after wheþer of þe tweie goddes þe citee schulde hote.[4] Þerfore þe citee,[5] boþe men and wommen [gadred hem to gyders, as it was the manere that tyme ; that bothe men and wymmen][6] schulde come to comoun counsaille ; þanne in þat counsail[7] men ȝaf þe dome for Neptunus and wommen for Minerua ; and for þere was o[8] womman more[9] þan were men, Minerua hadde þe maistrie, and þe citee was i-cleped by here name Athene ;[10] for Minerua in þe speche of Grewe hatte Athena. Þan was Neptunus wood wroþ,[11] and made þe flodes of þe see arise[12] and ouerflowe and hele þe londes of þe men of þat citee Athena,[13] as deueles mowe liȝtliche doo suche chekkes. Þan for to plese Neptunus and for to abathe his wreþþe and his anger wommen were i-punsched with double payne ; þat oon was þat no womman schulde aftirward come

TREVISA.

takenge cownselle of Apollo Delphicus what scholde be doen in that matere, he ȝafe an ansuere that the oliue signifiede that goddesse Minerua and the water Neptunus, and that cause was after the name of whom of theyme the cite scholde have name. Then the citesynnes of either kynde were gedrede to gedre as the consuetude was in that tyme women to be at cownselles amonge the men. The women ȝafe sentence for Minerua, and men for Neptunus, and for cause the nowmbre was moore in women then in men by oon person, Minerua hade the victory, in so moche that the cite scholde be namede aftere here Athena, for Minerva in Grewe is callede Athena. Then Neptunus beenge wrothe, couerede the growndes of men of Atheynes with waters, whiche thynge is not harde to deuelles to performe and to do. The women of whiche cite were afflicte in ij. maneres, that Neptunus myȝhte rather take pleasure, soe that a woman scholde not be at cownesailes afterwarde,

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So MS. Trevisa seems to have considered this the nominative of *Apollinis*.
[2] *mene*, α., Cx.
[3] *Mynerua*, MS. ; but *Minerua* below.
[4] *hoote*, α.
[5] *citezeins*, α., Cx.
[6] Words in brackets added from Cx. They are absent from α.
[7] *þanne . . . counsail*] Added from α., Cx.
[8] *one*, Cx. (not α.)
[9] *moo*, α., Cx.
[10] *Atthene*, MS., and so below.
[11] *wroth wode*, Cx.
[12] *tarise* (i. e. *to arise*), Cx.
[13] *londes of them of Athenes*, Cx.

et ut nullus nascentium maternum nomen contraheret.[1] Huic provinciæ Helladiæ subjacet Hellespontus, sinus maris magni,[2] sic dictus ab Helle sorore Phrixi, quæ fugiens insidias novercales submersa est in illo mari, a quo casu mare et terra adjacens denominationem accepit. Juxta quem locum dicit Varro aliquos esse homines quorum tactus et saliva medentur contra ictus serpentum. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Primi Athenienses lanificii, vini, et olei usum habuerunt; arare, serere, glandibusque[3] vesci docuerunt; literis, facundia civili, disciplina primo floruerunt. Cujus primus rex fuit Cecrops, post quem Cranus seu Cranaus,[4] cujus filius Atthis nomen regioni dedit. Post quem Amphictyon,[5] cujus tempore factum est diluvium in Thessalia. Deinde successive regnum descendit ad Ericthonium, post quem Ægeus,[6] post quem Theseus filius ejus, deinde Demo-

---

[1] *traheret*, C.D.

[2] *maris magni.*] C.D. end the section here, beginning the next sentence with, *Bœotia, a bove*, &c., and omitting Isidore's name as the source of the information.

[3] A.B. omit *que.*

[4] Both words are written with a G in the MSS. In Trevisa they vary. Here and elsewhere it is impossible to deal with proper names in any manner satisfactorily. To correct the orthography in such authors as Higden and his translators is to re-write them. The MSS. of the text, however, have been more freely corrected than those of the versions.

[5] *Amphigionides*, A.E. *Alphigeonides*, B.

[6] *post quem Ægeus*] om. B.

to[1] comyn counseil, þat oþer payne was þat no childe schulde aftirward bere his moder[2] name. To þat prouince Helladia lyeþ[3] Hellespontus, þat greet mouth of[4] þe grete see, and haþ þe name of Helle, Phrixus[5] his suster, þat fleiȝ[6] þe malice and pursuet[7] of here stepdame, and was adraynt[8] in þat mouth and see; and for þat hap þe[9] see and þe lond aboute hatte after Helle Hellespontus. Varro[10] seiþ þat faste bysides þat place beeþ men þat heleþ smytynge of serpentes wiþ touche or[11] wiþ spotel. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Athenienses, men of Athene, vsed first craft of wolle and[12] of wyn and of oylle, and tauȝte erye[13] and sowe and ete acharns;[14] þei florisched first in lore of clergie and of lawe. Þe firste kyng of þat lond hiȝte Cecrops, after hym come Granus þat heet Cranaus also; þan his sone Atthis ȝaf his name to þe lond and cleped it after hymself Atheniensis. Þan after Atthis regned Amphigionides.[15] In his tyme was þe grete flood in Thessalia. Þanne aftirwarde the kyngdom discendede to Erichthonius.[16] After hym regnede Egeus, and after hym his sone Theseus; þat Theseus sone Demophon,[17] he halp[18] þe Grees

TREVISA.

and also that theire childer scholde not take name in eny wyse after theyme. Hellespontus, bosom of the grete see, is subiecte to the prouince of Helladia, takenge the name of hit of Helle sustyr to Phrixus,[5] whiche fleenge the wacches of here steppe moder, was drownede in that see, by whiche chaunce that londe and see adiecte to hit toke hit name. Nye to whiche place Varro seythe there be men the towche or spatelle of whom is medicinable ageyne serpentes and styngenge of theyme. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Men of Atheynes began firste the vse of wyne and oyle, techenge to eiere and sawe, and floreschenge fyrste with ciuile discipline, the firste kynge of whom was Cecrops, after whom Graius, other Granaus, Atthis the son of whom ȝafe name to that region. After whom Amphigionides, in whose tyme was a floode in Thessalia. After that the realme descendede successiuely to Erichthonius. Then reignede Egeus. After whom Theseus his sonne. After that the son of Demophon,

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 35. b.

[1] *in*, *a.*, Cx.
[2] *moders*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[3] *lyeþ*] Added from Cx. (*lyeth*).
[4] Four words added from *a.* and Cx.
[5] *Frixus*, MSS. of both versions.
[6] *fledde*, Cx.
[7] *þe pursuyt*, *a.*
[8] *drowned*, Cx.
[9] *þat*, *a.*
[10] So Cx.; *Barro*, MS., *a.*
[11] *and*, *a.* and Cx.
[12] *and*] om. *a.*
[13] *to eere*, Cx.
[14] *acornes*, Cx.
[15] So MSS. of both versions, for *Amphictyon*.
[16] *Euritonius*, MS.; *Erictonius*, *a.* and Cx.
[17] So Cx.; *Demoson*, MSS. of both versions.
[18] *helpe*, Cx.

phon ejus filius, qui Græcis opem tulit contra Trojanos.

De Bœotia. *Isidorus, libro nonodecimo.*[1] Bœotia a bove denominata est; dum[2] enim Cadmus filius Agenoris Europam sororem suam a Jove raptam ex præcepto patris quæreret, nec reperiret;[3] patris iram formidans confirmato animo exilium elegit,[4] et dum casu bovis conspectæ[5] sequeretur vestigium, locum ubi bos decubuit Bœotiam nominavit.[6] Ubi et[7] postmodum Thebas construxit: in qua olim bella civilia detonuerunt.[8] Ibique nati sunt Apollo et Hercules ille major Thebanus. In hac terra est lacus quidam furialis, de quo qui biberit furore

Fons. libidinis inardescet.[9] Sunt et alii duo fontes, quorum unus memoriam, alter oblivionem inducit. *Petrus, xvj°.* Et nota quod a Thebis Ægyptiorum dicuntur Thebæi, a Thebis Græcorum Thebani, a Thebis Judæorum[10] Thebitæ.

---

[1] 9, B.; 14, A., but altered to 18. The true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 4. § 10.
[2] *dum*] cum, C.D.
[3] *nec reperiret*] om. A.
[4] *petit*, E.
[5] *conspectæ*] conspecti, C.D.
[6] *denominavit*, B.D.
[7] *ibique*, B.
[8] *detenuerunt*, B.D.
[9] *inardescit*, D.
[10] *Indorum*, B.

aȝenst þe Troians. Beotia, oxe-lond, haþ þe name of *bos*, þat is *an oxe*. Whan Cadmus, Agenores sone, at his fader[1] heste souȝt his suster Europa, þat Iupiter hadde i-rauished, and myȝte nouȝt here fynde, he dradde his fader wrathe, and[2] koupe non oþer reed but fleiȝ[3] as an outlawe; hit happed[4] þat he folwed þe fore[5] of an oxe, and fonde þe place þat þe oxe lay inne, and cleped it Beotia, and bulde þere þe citee Thebe, in[6] þat citee bella civilia detonuerunt.[7] And þere was Apollo[8] i-bore and Hercules,[9] in þilke more Thebanus also.[10] In þat lond is a lake wonderful and wood, for who þat drynkeþ þerof he[11] schal brenne in woodnesse of leccherie. Þere beeþ also tweie welles in þat lond; who þat drynkeþ of þat oon, he schal be forȝetful; and who þat drinketh of þat oþer, he schal haue good mynde. *Petrus.* Take hede þat men of Thebe, þat is in Egipt, hatte Thebey; men of Thebe, þat is in Grecia, hat Thebany; and þe men of Thebe, þat is in Iudea, hatte Thebite.[12]

Trevisa.

---

whiche schewede helpe to Grekes ageyne the Troianes. Boetia toke name of this worde, bos. When Cadmus, son Agenoris, sekenge Europa his sustyr, by commaundemente of his fader, whiche was rapte by Iupiter,[13] whiche not fyndenge here, dredenge also the wrathe of his fader, chosede to lyve in exile, whiche folowenge the stappes of an ox, namede that place Boetia, where the oxe did lye downe and dye, where he made a cite called Thebas, in whom they did holde somme tymes ciuile batayles, where Apollo and Hercules were borne. In that prouince is a water of whom if a man drynke he schalle be inflamed with woodenesse of lecchery. There be oþer ij. welles also, of whom oon inducethe memory, that other obliuion.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *faders*, Cx. (who often has similar variations).
[2] *he conthe*, *a.*; *he coude*, Cx.
[3] *fledde*, Cx.
[4] *hapned*, Cx.
[5] *foote*, Cx.
[6] *in*] Added from Cx.
[7] *detenuerunt*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[8] *Appollo*, MS.
[9] *Ercules*, MS.
[10] Probably *in* before *þilke* should be cancelled; or Trevisa may have misunderstood the text.
[11] *he*] om. Cx.
[12] The sentence is slightly compressed in Cx.
[13] *Iubiter*, Harl. MS.

Cap. XXIII.

De Italia.

Italia diversa habet nomina.[1]

Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.[2] Legitur in historiis quod[3] Italia, a Græcis quondam[4] occupata, Magna Græcia dicebatur. Dicta[5] est etiam Hesperia, ab Hespero[6] stella, qui direxit[7] Græcos illuc[8] navigantes. Deinde a Saturno eam incolente dicta est Saturnia; sed et[9] ab eodem, propter metum filii sui Jovis ibidem latitante, dicta est Latium, quasi a latebra Saturni.[10] Postmodum[11] ab Ausonio[12] filio Ulixis dicta est Ausonia. Tandem ab Italo Siculorum rege dicta est Italia, totius Europæ insignior provincia, quæ ab aquilone clauditur sinu Adriatico, ab ortu mari magno,[13] ab euro Sicilia et mare Tyrrheno, ab occasu Alpium jugis, ex quibus[14] oriuntur tria nobilissima Europæ flumina, Rhenus, Danubius, Rhodanus.[15] *Isidorus, libro*

---

[1] Marginal summary varied slightly from A.
[2] *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. iv. § 18.
[3] *Legitur ... quod*] om. C.D.
[4] *quondam* after *Italia* in B.
[5] *Et dicta*, B.
[6] So B. *Hespera*, A.C.D.E. and the versions, (having *quæ* below).
[7] *ducebat*, C.D.
[8] *ibidem*, B.
[9] *et*] etiam, A.
[10] *Deinde ... Saturni*] Much abbreviated in C.D.
[11] *post hæc*, D.
[12] *Ausonio*] Anselmo, C. (not D.)
[13] *magno mari*, B.
[14] *quibus*] quo, C.
[15] *et Rhodanus*, B.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.
Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.

TREVISA.

WE redeþ in stories þat Grees[1] wonede somtyme in[2] Italia,[3] an cleped þe lond þe Grete Grecia; þat lond hiȝte somtyme Hesperia, of Hespera, þe sterre þat ladde þe Grees whan þey seilled þider, and was her loode sterre, Hespera,[4] þat is Venus. Afterward þat lond hiȝte Saturnia of Saturnus þat wonede þere, for[5] Saturnus hid hymself[6] in þat lond for drede of his owne sone Iupiter, and cleped þe lond Latium, þat is Saturnus huydels.[7] After þat þat lond hiȝte Ausonia of Ausonius,[8] Vlixus sone; but at þe laste þat londe hiȝte Italia of Italus, rege Siculorum, kyng of Sicilia,[9] and is þe noblest prouince of al Europa, and is i-closed in þe norþ side wiþ þe mouþ and see þat hatte Adriaticus, in þe est wiþ þe grete see, in þe souþ wiþ Sicilia, and wiþ þe see Tyrrhenus, and in þe west wiþ þe sides of þe hilles þat hatte Alpes.[10] Out of þilke hil[les][11] springeþ þre þe noblest ryueres of al Europa, þat beeþ i-cleped þe Ryne,[12] Danubius, and Rone. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

MS. HARL. 2261.

HYT is redde in storyes that Ytaly somme tyme occupyede of the Grekes, was callede the grete londe off Grece. Also hit was callede Hespera, after a sterre callede Hespera, whiche directe the Grekes saylenge to hit. After that hit was namede Saturnia of Saturnus inhabitenge hit, afterwarde callede Latium, for the drede of Iouis his son lyenge there priuely; whiche was callede afterwarde Ausonia, of Ausonius son of Vlixes. Afterwarde hit was namede Ytaly of Ytalus kynge of Siculynes, the moste nowble prouince of alle Europe, whiche is schutte on the northe parte to hit with the see Adriatike, on the este with the grete see, of the sowthe with Sicille and with the see Tyrene. From whom iij. nowble and famose floodes of Europe take theire originalle, whiche be callede Renus, Danubius, and Rodanus. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.* In this prouince is

[1] *Grekes*, Cx. (as usual).
[2] *in*] om. MS.
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *Hesperia*, MS.
[4] *Helpera*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[5] *for*] So Cx.; *but þe*, MS., *a.*
[6] Cx. adds *there*.
[7] *hydles*, Cx.
[8] *Eusonia*, *Eusonius*, MS., *a.*, Cx.
[9] *Scicilia*, MS., Cx.
[10] The previous sentence is much blundered in Cx.
[11] *hulles*, *a.*; *hylles*, Cx.
[12] *ryuer*, Cx.

tertio decimo. In hac Italia est fons Cithæronis,[1] oculorum vulnera curans. Est et in ea Clitorius lacus, ex quo bibens[2] vini[3] tædium habebit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.*[4] Juxta Alpes Appeninos fluvius Novanus[5] est, qui circa[6] solstitium æstivale torret et inundat, circa brumam vero[7] desiccatur. *Paulus, libro secundo.*[8] Hujus Italiæ plures sunt provinciæ, quæ sunt[9] Calabria, Apulia, Campania, Beneventana, Tuscia, Herulia, Liguria, Lombardia.[10]

De Apulia. Apulia pars est Italiæ maritima ad eurum situata,[11] ab insula Siciliæ marino brachio separata, a Græcis primitus ædificata, cujus metropolis est Brundusium, sic dicta a *brunta,*[12] Græce, quod est, *caput cervi,* eo quod formam capitis cervini in sui figuratione teneat;[13] inde versus Terram Sanctam, ut communiter navigatur. Habet quoque hæc terra fontes calidos et salubres.

De Campania majore et minore. Campania major est regio, media inter Romanum territorium et Apuliam, cujus metropolis civitas est Capua, a capacitate sufficientiæ sic dicta. Post duas famosissimas civitates, Romam[14] et Carthaginem, tertia

---

[1] *Othonis,* B.; *Citheronis,* E.; *Cithar,* C. In Isidore (xiii. 13) we have *Ciceron.* Perhaps *Cithæron* in Attica may be intended by him as well as by Higden.

[2] *bibens*] qui bibit, C.; qui *biberit,* D.

[3] *vix,* B.

[4] *libro* 1°. *c.* 108, B.; *li.* 2. *c.* 96, A. The text is correct.

[5] *Novacius,* B., and the versions, wrongly.

[6] *circa*] citra, C. (not D.)

[7] *vero*] om. C.D.

[8] *primo,* B., wrongly. See lib. ii. c. 15.

[9] *quæ sunt*] scilicet, D.E.

[10] *Lumbardia,* MSS., Latin and English; Trevisa once writes it Lombardia.

[11] *desituata,* A.

[12] The Messapian word was probably *βρένδον.* See Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.,* s.v.

[13] *tenet,* A.

[14] B. adds *scilicet.*

In þis Italia is Cithero his welle, þat helep wel sore eiȝen. Þere is also þe lake Clitorius; who þat drynkeþ of þat lake, no wyne schal hym greue. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo decimo.*[1] Faste by þe hilles þat hatte Alpes Appennini is þat welle Novacius, þat welleþ and springeþ in þe hote somer and drye, and fordrieþ in colde wynter and wete. *Treuisa.* Alpes Appennini þat beeþ Penitus his hilles. Hanibal was a grete duke and hiȝte Penitus also, and wente by Alpes to Rome; þerfore of þe tweie names Alpes and Penitus is þat oon name schortliche i-made Appennini,[2] and so beeþ meny lettres i-left of þe tweyne. *Paulus, libro secundo.* In þis Italia beeþ many prouinces and londes, þat beeþ cleped Calabria, Apulia, Campania, Beneuentana, Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria, Lombardia. Apulia is a party of Italia, and lieþ estward vppon þe see, and is departed from þe ilond Sicilia wiþ an arme of þe see. Grees were þe firste þat bulde þerynne; þe chief citee þerof is Brundusium, and haþ þe name of þa[t][3] worde of Grew *brunta*, þat is, *an hertes hede*, for þe citee is i-schape as an hertes hede. Fro þennes me[4] seilleþ to þe Holy Lond. In þis lond Apulia beeþ hote welles and holsom. Þe more Campania is a lond in þe myddel bitwene þe demeynnes of Rome and Apulia; þe cheef cite þerof is Capua, and haþ þe name of *Capacitas*, þat is, *ablenesse* to fonge and to take. For þat citee fongeþ and takeþ i-now of all plente, and is acounted[5] þe pridde citee

Trevisa.

the welle of Cithonis healenge the woundes of eien. *Isidorus libro tertio decimo.* Also there is a welle callede Novacius nye to the hilles of Alpes, whiche floethe ouer with watere abowte the solstice of somer, and is drye in wynter. *Paulus, libro secundo.* There be mony prouinces of this Ytaly, whiche be Calabria, Apulia, Campaniia, Beneuentana, Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria, Lombardia. Apulia is a coste of the see of Ytaly, sette at the sowthe of hit, departede from Sicille by an arme of the see, byldede and edifiede firste by Grekes. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Brundusium, takenge the name of hit of this worde *brunda* in Grewe, þat is *the hede of an herte*, in that hit holdethe in the figuracion of hit the similitude of the hede of an herte. Campania is a moore region betwene the territory of Rome and Apulia. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Capua, namede so of the capacite of sufficiaunce, callede the thrydde

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *octodecimo* (sic), Cx.
[2] So *a.* and Cx.; *Appentimii*, MS. In many proper names below, *a.*, or Cx., or both, give the true form, which is edited without noticing MS.
[3] *þat*, *a.*
[4] *me*] So *a.*; *ne*, MS.; *men*, Cx. (as usual).
[5] *counted*, Cx.

nominata. In qua terra sunt Neapolis et Puteoli[1] urbes famosæ, ubi balnea Virgilii quondam in honore habebantur. Sed est alia[2] Campania Minor in Gallia Senonensi,[3] cujus metropolis est urbs Trecas, seu Trecensis.[4] *Ranulphus.* Hæc autem Italia a variis vicissim possessa est gentibus, utpote a Græcis, a Jano,[5] a Saturno, ab Italo, ab Ænea et ejus posteris. Post hæc a Gallis Senonensibus sub duce Brenno, deinde circa annum gratiæ cccc^um^[6] occupata est a Gothis, Hunis, Vandalis,[7] postremo a Longobardis sub anno Domini dlxviii°, tempore Justini principis per Narsem chartularium invitatis,[8] a quorum nomine citerior[9] pars Italiæ ab Alpibus pene[10] usque[11] ad urbem Romam adhuc[12] Lombardia[13] nominatur.[14] *Ranulphus.* De Longobardorum[15] ortu et progressu Paulus Romanus diaconus, in primo libro historiarum Longobardorum,[16] refert in hunc modum.

---

[1] *Puteolus*, B.
[2] *Sed est alia*] omitted in E.
[3] *Senonensi*] om. A.
[4] C.D. omit the whole of the paragraph relating to Apulia and Calabria; i.e. from *Apulia pars est... Trecas, seu Trecensis.* For *Trecas* Higden should rather have written *Tricassium.* See Smith, Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., *s. v. Tricasses.*
[5] For *a Jano*, C. (not D.) has *Mercurio.*
[6] *circa annum Domini* 100, C.
[7] *a Gothis, deinde a Wandalis*, C.; *Hunis et Wandalis*, D.
[8] *invitatis*] veritatis (sic !), C.D.
[9] *exterior*, B.
[10] *pene*] om. C.D.
[11] *usque*] om. B.
[12] *adhuc*] om. B.
[13] *Lumbardia*, MSS.
[14] *nominatur*] dicitur, C.
[15] D. adds *autem.*
[16] C. adds *autem* after *Longobardorum.*

after þe most famous citees Rome and Carthago. In þat lond beeþ noble citees and famous Neopolis and Puteoli.[1] Þere beeþ Virgiles bathas[2] þat were somtyme in greet worschippe. But þere is anoþer lasse Campania in Gallia Senonensi,[3] þat is Frauns, þe chief citee of þat Campania hatte Trecas and Trecensis also, þat is Troys[4] in Champayn. B.[5] In þis Italia were somtyme dyuers lordes euerich after oþer þat were Grees, Ianus, Saturnus, Italus, Eneas and his ospringe.[6] And afterward Galli Senonenses, þat beeþ Frensche men, vnder duke Brennus. Þan aftirward, aboute þe ȝere of grace fyue hondred þre score and eiȝte, in to þe[7] princes tyme Iustinus, Narsen[8] Cartularius prayed Longobardy for to come in to Italia; and of þe Longobardy, for to come in to[9] þis day, þe hider side of Italia from Alpes wel nygh to Rome hatte Lombardia.[10] How Longobardy come a place[11] Paulus[12] Romanus diaconus in primo libro historiæ Longobardorum[13]

TREVISA.

nowble cite to Rome and to Carthago. In whiche londe be cites callede Neapolis and Puteoli, where the bathes of Virgille were hade somme tyme in worschippe. There is also an oþer Campania more litel, the chiefe cite of whom is callede Cretas or the cite Cretense.[14] B. That cuntre of Ytaly hathe be possessede of diuerse peple and naciones, as of Grekes, of Iano, [of] Saturno, of Ytalo, and of Enea. After that of Frenche men Senonense vnder Duke Brennus. Also hit was occupiede of Gothis, Hunes, and Wandalynges abowte the yere of our Lorde cccc. and laste occupyede off Longobardes, abowte the year of oure Lorde vᶜlxviij., in the tyme of Iustinian prynce, of the name of whom the forther parte of Ytaly from Alpes alle moste to the cite of Rome is named ȝitte Lumbardy. Of the begynnenge of Longobardes, and of the progresse of theym, Paulus Diacon of Rome rehersethe in his firste boke of the story of

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Puteolis*, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.
[2] *baþes*, *a*., Cx.
[3] *Senocenci*, MS. and *a*.; but correctly below.
[4] So Cx.; *Tros*, MS., *a*.
[5] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[6] *offsprynge*, Cx.
[7] *in þe*, *a*.
[8] *Narsen*] This is not a clerical error, but one of many proofs of the slovenliness of Trevisa, who did not care to discover the nominative of the word. Below, where the text has the nominative, he has written it correctly.
[9] *for to come in to*] yet to, Cx.
[10] The preceding sentence is much blundered in Cx.
[11] *a place*] to that name, Cx.
[12] *Poulus*, MS. (not *a*.)
[13] *Longobardi*, MS.; abbreviated in *a*.
[14] The similarity of *c* and *t* in MSS. has misled the translator, who probably had no notion where the place was.

De Wynnulis et Longobardis.

Wynnuli,[1] qui et Longobardi, a longis barbis quas fovebant sic dicti, de aquilonali[2] insula Germaniæ Scandinavia sorte primitus sunt egressi sub ducibus Ibor[3] et Ajone[4] cum matre eorum Gambara prudentissima. Hæc autem Scandinavia dicta est insula non quod in mari sit,[5] sed quia in planitie marginum[6] undis jugiter circumlambitur.[7] Inde Winnuli[8] Scoringam regionem[9] sunt aggressi, ubi et Wandalos devicerunt. Mortuis[10] autem Ibor et Ajone, constituerunt sibi regem[11] Agelmundum,[12] filium Ajonis, qui[13] regnavit super eos triginta tribus annis, cujus diebus meretrix quædam enixa est unico partu septem liberos, sicut inferius[14] dicetur; quorum unus, Lamissio[15] nomine, postquam Agelmundus rex nimia securitate[16] torpens a Bulgaris nocte fuerat[17] occisus, regnum[21] super Longobardos secundus tenuit. Post quem tertius Lethen quadraginta[19] annis[20] regnavit. Post quem quartus Hildehok.[21] Post quem quintus Gudehok[22] tempore Odoacris Italici[23] regnavit, qui gentem suam[24] ad terram Rugorum duxit. Post quem sextus Claffo.[25] Post quem septimus Cato, quem[26] Waco[27] filius germani sui occidit, filiumque Catonis[28]

---

[1] *Wynnuli*] Winuli, A.D.; Wintili, C., which adds *igitur*, as does D.
[2] *aquilonari*, C.D.
[3] *Ibo*, B.E.; *Ybor*, C. (not D.)
[4] *Arione*, E.
[5] *sita*, D.
[6] *marinis*, B.
[7] *circumlambitur*] circumlabitur, C.D.
[8] *Winnuli*] om. C.D.
[9] *regionem*] provinciam, C.
[10] *Mortuo*, D.
[11] B.C.D. add *primum*.
[12] *Agilmundum*, A., and so below.
[13] *qui*] et, C.D.
[14] *infra*, D.
[15] *Lassimio*, D. The text is right. See Paul. *Hist. Long.*, lib. i. c. 17.
[16] *satietate*, C. (not D.)
[17] *fuerat*] est, C.D.; a Vulgaris voce fuerat, E.
[18] *regnum*] qui regnum, C. (not D.)
[19] *quatuordecim*, C.D.
[20] The sense requires *annos*. But here and twice below all the MSS. have *annis*.
[21] *Hildehoc*, B.C.
[22] *Gudehoc*, C.; *Undehoc*, B.
[23] *Italici*] om. C.D.
[24] *suam*] om. C. (not D.)
[25] *Classo*, C.
[26] *quem*] post quem, E.
[27] *Wacho*, A.
[28] *Catonis*] ejus Catonis, C.D.

seiþ in þis manere : Winuli, þat hatte Longobardi also, and hueþ the name of her longe berdes, went wiþ tweie dukes, Ibor and Aion, and here moder Gambara, þat was ful redy and wys, out of Scandinauia, an ylond of Germania in þe norþ side. Þis Scandinauia is i-cleped an ilond, not for he is in þe see, but for in þe pleyn of þe brinkes he is alwey i-wasche wiþ wawes. Out þereof went Winuli and werred in Scorunga[1] and ouer com þe Wandales; þan deied þe Wandales, Iborn and Aion, and þei made hem a kyng Agelmundus, Aions sone, þe whiche reigned ouer hem þritty ȝere and þre. In his tyme an hore[2] hadde seuene children at oon birþen, as it is ynner more clereliche i-schewed. Oon of hem, þat hiȝte Lauissius was þe secounde kyng of Longobardes, and regned after Agelmundus, whanne[3] Agelmundus þe kyng was to bolde on his trist,[4] and þe Bulgaris com vppon hym in a nyȝt and slowe hym stan deed.[5] After hym Lethen regned and was [þe þridde][6] kyng of Longobardes[7] and was[8] regnynge fourty ȝere. After hym Hildehoc[9] regned,[10] after hym þe fifte[11] Godehoc regnede in Odoacres tyme, þat was Italicus, and ladde his men to þe lond of Rugorum. After hym þe sixte Claffo. After hym þe seuenþe Cato. Þan[12] Wacho slow Cato and outlawed his sone [for evere more; Wacho was Cato his broþer sonne].[13] TREVISA.

Longobardes, in this maner, Winuli or Longobardes takenge that name of the longe berdes whom thei noryschede, wente furthe from the northe partes of Allemeyne under Ibor and Aione the gouernoures of theyme, with prudente Gambara moder to theyme, from Scandinauia.[14] This Scandinauia[14] is callede an yle not in that hit is in the see, but for cause that is compassede abowte with waters in the pleynes of the brynkes of hit. Winuli goenge furthe entrede a region namede Scoringa, where the Wandalynges were devicte. Ibor and Aione, the dukes and gouernoures of theym dedde, they made Agelmundus kynge, son of Aio, xxxiij. yere hauenge his gouernaile and reigne ouer theyme. In the tyme of whom a woman hade vij. childer at oon childenge. After whom Lethen reignede xl^ti yere, after hym Hildegog. After whom Gloffo, after hym Cato. After whom, Waco MS. HARL. 2261. f. 37. b.

[1] *Scormyga*, Cx.
[2] *hore*] comyn woman, Cx.
[3] *Agelmundus, whanne*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[4] *owen truste*, Cx.
[5] *standyng*, Cx.
[6] Added from *a.*
[7] *the L.*, Cx.
[8] *regnede, a.*, Cx.
[9] *Hildecoc*, Cx.
[10] *a.* and Cx. om. *regnede.*
[11] So *a.*, Cx.; *firste*, MS.
[12] *that*, Cx.
[13] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[14] *Scandimauia*, Harl. MS. twice.

perpetuo exilio damnavit. Idcirco mortuo Wachone, Walthariçus[1] filius ejus super Longobardos octavus regnavit vij. annis.[2] Post quem nonus Audoenus,[3] qui Longobardos primus[4] in Pannoniam adduxit. Post quem Albuinus filius ejus super Longobardos regnavit decimus,[5] quem cum sua gente invitavit Narses patricius ad possidendam[6] Italiam tempore Justini imperatoris, anno Domini quingentesimo sexagesimo[7] octavo, postquam Longobardi quadraginta duobus annis[8] in Pannonia fuissent demorati.[9] *Ranulphus.* De conquæstu hujus[10] Albuini et exitu mirabili quære infra loco suo, circa annum Domini quingentesimum septuagesimum.[11]

Cap. XXV.

De Urbe Roma.

Ranulphus. Auctores tradunt quod in Tuscia, quæ pars est[12] Italiæ, situata est urbs Romana, de cujus[13] fundatione et regimine multa et[14] varia scripserunt auctores, potissime tamen frater Martinus de conditione ejus, magister vero Gregorius de urbis mirabilibus perstrinxit[15]

---

[1] *Waltaricus*, A.C.D.
[2] *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.
[3] *Audenus*, B.
[4] *primus* before *adduxit* in C.D.
[5] So A.B.C.D.; *decimus* before *regnavit* in E.
[6] *possidendum*, E.
[7] *sexagesimo*] xl., B.
[8] *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.
[9] *demorassent*, D.
[10] *hujus*] om. A.
[11] C. and D. omit this extract from *Ranulphus*.
[12] *est pars*, A.
[13] *cujus*] civitatis, B.
[14] *et*] om. A.
[15] *perstrinxit*] perstrinxerunt, C.

TREVISA.

And so whan Wacho was ded, his sone Waltaricus was þe eiȝte kyng of Longobardy,[1] and regned seuen ȝere. After hym þe nynþe Audoenus, þat ladde firste þe Longobardes in to Pannonia. After hym his sone Albuinus was þe tenþe kyng of Longobardy.[2] Narses[3] patricius prayed þis kyng Albuinus to come wiþ his men and haue[4] Italia, þat was in Iustinis tyme þe Emperour,[5] þe ȝere of our Lorde fyue hondred þre score and eiȝte, and þat was after þat Longobardis hadde i-woned in Pannonia two and fourty ȝere. Of þis Albuinus conquest and of his wonder[6] ende seche wiþynne[7] in his place, aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord fyue hondred þre score and ten.

De vrbe Romana. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

AVCTOURS telleþ and writeþ[8] þat þe citee of Rome is i-bulde in Tuscia, þat is a party of Italia. Of þe fundacioun þerof and gouernynge auctoures writeþ[9] meny dyuers doynges; and specialliche Frater Martinus de conditione ejus; Magister[10] vero Gregorius of þe wondres of þe citee

MS. HARL. 2261.

destroyede, Walcarius his son reignede on the Longobardes vij. yere. After whom Audoenus reignede, whiche ledde the Longobardes firste in to Pannony.[11] After whom Albinus his son reignede, whiche desirede Narses Patricius to inhabite Ytaly, in the tyme of Iustinus themperoure, the yere of oure Lorde v^c^xlviij^the^, after that Longobardes hade taryede in Pannony by xlij^ti^ yere. Of the conqueste of Albinus, and of his meruellous goenge furthe, hit schalle be expressede abowte the yere of grace v^c^ and lxx^ti^.

Of the Cite of Rome. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

AUCTORES expresse that the cite of Rome is sette in Tuscia, whiche is a parte of Ytaly, of þe fundacion and gouernaile of whom auctores wryte diuerse thynges, specially Martinus, of the makenge of hit, but Maister Gregory

[1] *Longobardys*, Cx.
[2] *the Longobardes*, Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *Narces*, MS.
[4] *take*, Cx.
[5] *in Justinus themperours time*, Cx.
[6] *wonderful*, Cx.
[7] *within forth*, Cx.
[8] *writeþ and telleþ*, a.; *wryten and tellen*, Cx.
[9] Cx. here, contrary to his custom, has *wryte*.
[10] *de . . . Magister*] Added from a.
[11] *Ytaly Pannony*, MS., but *Ytaly* erased.

digna memoratu.[1] *Martinus.* Circa locum Romæ plures leguntur regnasse. Nam secundum Estodium,[2] post turrim confusionis constructam,[3] Noe cum aliquibus ratem ingressus Italiam venit; ædificataque urbe nomine[4] sui, ibi[5] vitæ terminum dedit.[6] Janus vero cum Jano filio Japhet nepote suo trans Tiberim Janiculum condidit, ubi[7] modo est ecclesia Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum.[8] Circa illud[9] tempus Nemproth, qui et Saturnus, a Jove filio suo eunuchatus, ad prædicti Jani regnum veniens, urbem, ubi nunc est Capitolium, construxit. Illis quoque diebus rex Italus cum Siculis adveniens[10] ad Janum et Saturnum urbem juxta Albulam fluvium, qui postmodum dictus est Tiberis,[11] construxit. Hercules quoque, filius Itali, fecit urbem[12] Galeriam sub Capitolio. Post hæc rex Tiberis de oriente et rex[13] Evander de Arcadia venerunt et urbes fecerunt, unde Virgilius:

Tunc pater Evander, Romanæ conditor arcis.[14]

Quorum omnium urbes Romulus postmodum in

---

[1] This extract from *Ranulphus* is likewise partly omitted in C.D., which commence the chapter thus: *In hac insula* (sic) *in principio situatur urbs Roma, de cujus fundatione et regimine*, &c., down to *memoratu.* For *memoratu* B. has *memorata.*

[2] *Eustodium*, C. (not D.) See Fabric. *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Lat.*, s.v. *Extodius.*

[3] *constructam*] ædificatam, C.D.

[4] *nomine*] nominis, B.C.D.

[5] *ibi*] om. B.

[6] *dedit*] suscepit, C.D.

[7] *ubi . . . Janiculum*] om. E.

[8] C. and D. have *ubi mons est etiam Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum.*

[9] *illud*] idem, B.C.D.

[10] *adveniens*] veniens, B.C.

[11] *qui . . . Tiberis*] After *construxit* in C. (not in D.)

[12] *urbem*] civitatem, C.D.

[13] *rex*] om. B.

[14] Virg. *Æn.*, viii. 313, where, however, *Tum rex Evandrus* is the common reading.

writeþ schortliche meny þinges þat beeþ worþy to be kept in mynde. *Martinus.* It is i-write þat many kynges regned aboute þe place of Rome. For Eustodius seiþ þat after þat tour Babel was i-bulde and men bygonne to speke dyuerse langage and tonges,[1] Noe wiþ certeyne men took a schip and seillede into Italia, and bulde a citee of his name and ended þere his lyf. Þan Ianus, Iaphet his sone, þat was Noes sone, bulde Ianiculum by ȝonde þe ryuer Tiberis; þere is now a cherche of Seynt Iohan, þat hatte Seint Iones chirche ad Ianiculum. Aboute þat tyme Nemprot, þat hiȝt Saturnus also, i-gilded[2] of his owne sone Ioue,[3] come to the forsaide Ianus kyngdom, and bulde a citee; þere þe Capytal is now. Also þat tyme Italus þe kyng wiþ Siculis[4] men of Sicilia come to Ianus and to Saturnus, and bulde a citee faste by þe ryuer Albula; þat ryuer hiȝte afterward and now hatte Tyber, and is a ryuer of Rome. Also Hercules, Italus his sone, bulde a citee Galeria by neþe þe Capitol. After þat Tiberi[n]us[5] þe kyng com out of þe est, and Euander þe kyng out of Arcadia, and bulde citees. Virgilius accordeþ and seiþ: Þanne þe fader Euander at Rome was maker of toures. Þanne afterwarde come Romulus and closed wiþ ynne oon

TREVISA.

towchethe mony thynges worthy to be hade in remembraunce of the meruayles of that cyte. *Martinus.* Mony men be redde to haue reignede in the cyte of Rome. For after Estodius, after the towre of confusion made, Noe takenge a schippe with other men come to Ytaly, whiche makenge a cite there endede his lyfe in hit. Ianus with Iano the son of Iapheth made a cite callede Ianiculus ouer the water of Tiber, where a chirche is nowe callede Sti. Iohannis ad Ianiculum. Abowte that tyme Nemproth, oþer wise callede Saturnus, expulsede of Iupiter his son, commenge to the realme of Ianus, made a cite where the chiefe place of the cite is now. In those dayes kynge Ytalus commenge with Siculynes to Ianus and Saturnus made a cite nye the floode callede Albula, whiche was namede afterwarde Tiber. After that Hercules, the son of Italus, made a cite of Galerius vnder the Capitoly. After that kynge Tiberis and Euander commenge from Arcadia made that cite of Rome. After that Romulus redacte alle the cites in to oon causenge the

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *tonges and langages*, Cx.
[2] *whiche was gelded*, Cx.
[3] *Iupyter*, Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *Siculus*, MS.
[5] *Tiberis*, Cx.; *Tyberis*, *a.*; *Tyberius*, MS.

unam civitatem muratam redegit,[1] ac nobiliores de Italia cum uxoribus suis inhabitare fecit. *Titus Livius.*[2] Qua urbe tempore paupertatis suæ nullus locus sanctior nec bonis exemplis ditior; sed postmodum divitiæ avaritiam et luxuriam auxerunt. *Martinus.*[2] Roma igitur condita est in monte Palatino a gemellis fratribus Remo et Romulo xj. kalend. Maii, Olympiade vij[a] incipiente, quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,[3] post Trojam captam anno cccc°liiij°. *Ranulphus.*[4] Sed verius secundum Solinum cccc°xxxiiij°. *Martinus.*[5] Quæ urbs processu temporis muris, turribus, portis, templis, palatiis, artificiis[6] mirabiliter insignita.[7] Habuit turres murorum ccclxj., in cujus circuitu sunt milliaria viginti duo, præter trans Tiberim et urbem Leoninam, cum quibus dicitur habere in circuitu milliaria quadraginta duo.

---

[1] *muratam* after *redegit* in B.
[2] Title of both extracts omitted in C.D.
[3] So C.; *Judææ*, B.; *Jude*, D.E.
[4] *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
[5] Reference added from A.B.
[6] *artificies*, C.
[7] *insignitur*, C.; *insignitus*, D.

wal alle þilke citees[1] aboute, and made oon grete citee of alle i-closed in oon: and brouȝte gentil men and noble out of Italia wiþ here wifes for to wone þerynne. *Titus, libro secundo.* While þat citee was pore, was no place more holy noþer richere of good ensample; but afterward richesse gadered and eched to gidres couetise and leccherie.[2] *Marcus.* Tweie breþren þat were twynnes,[3] Remus and Romulus, bulde Rome in þe hul Palatinus, and was i-bulde in þe enleuenþe[4] kalandes of Maij: þo bigan þe seuenþe Olimpiades,[5] þat is þe seuenþe tyme of iustes and tornementes þat Grees made at þe foot of mont Olympus, þo[6] was þe firste ȝere of Achaz kyng of Iuda and foure hondred ȝere and foure and fifty after þe takyng of Troye. But more vereiliche, as Solinus seiþ, foure hondred and[7] foure and þritti ȝere after þe takynge of Troye. Þe[8] whiche citee of[9] Rome was afterward wonderliche i-hiȝt wiþ walles, wiþ toures, wiþ ȝates, wiþ templis, wiþ paleys, and wiþ diuers and wonderful werkes; and hadde on þe walles þre hondred toures[10] and[11] þre score and oon, and conteyneþ aboute two and twenty myle, wiþoute þat þat[12] is byȝonde Tybre and þe citee Leonina. But, as me seiþ, þer wiþ he[13] conteyneþ al aboute two and fourty myle, and

TREVISA.

nowble men of Ytaly to inhabite hyt with theire wyfes. *Titus Livius.* Whiche cite beenge in pouerte was noo cite moore holy neiþer more ryche in goode exemples, but afterwarde rychesse enereasede lecchery and auarice. *Martinus.* Rome was made of ij. breþer, Remus and Romulus, in the mownte Palatyne þe xj. kalendes of Maij, in the vij^the^ Olimpias, the iiij^the^ yere of the reigne of Achaz kynge of the Iewery begynnenge, in the iiij^c^ yere liiij. after the takenge of the cite of Troye. ℞. But after Solinus cccc. and xxxiiij^ti^ yere. *Martinus.* Whiche cite made nowble in processe with towres, walles, temples, ȝates, and palice, hauenge towres of the walles ccc.lxj. within the circuite of whom be myles xxij^ti^, excepte the edifienge ouer Tiber and the cite Leonine, with whom hit is seyde to conteyne in circuite xlij^ti^ myles. In

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 38. a.

Of þe meruayles of Rome.

[1] *citetes*, MS.; txt, Cx.
[2] *gadred and encreased, and syn they haue ben coueytous and lecherous*, Cx.
[3] *born at one burthon*, Cx.
[4] MS. adds ȝere (not *a.* or Cx.)
[5] *Olimpus*, Cx., who omits the remainder of the sentence.
[6] *that*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[7] *a.* om. *and.*
[8] Cx. prefixes *Marcus*; *a.* has in margin *Marcus* or *Martinus* (Marcȝ).
[9] *of*] om. *a.*
[10] MS. has some repetitions here.
[11] *and*] om. *a.*
[12] The second þat added from *a.*; absent from MS. and Cx.
[13] *men seyn it*, Cx.

Habuit etiam portas principales sexdecim in universo, videlicet citra Tiberim decem: portam Capenam,[1] portam Appiam, portam Latinam, portam Asinariam, portam Metronii, portam Lavicanam, portam Numentanam, portam Salariam,[2] portam Princianam, portam Collinam.[3] Item trans Tiberim portas tres, et in urbe Leonina portas tres. *Gregorius.* Inter urbis[4] hujus mirabilia, arte magica seu[5] opere humano[6] constructa, quorum adhuc restant vestigia miranda, sunt tot promunctoria turrium, tot ædificia palatiorum. [7]*Ranulphus.* Etiam nunc veri sint versus illi Hildeberti Cenomannensis episcopi, quos ponit Willielmus Malmesburiensis in libro suo de regibus.

Versus de Roma.

Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis fere[8] tota ruina;
Fracta docere potes, integra quanta fores.

De palatiis Romæ.

Gregorius. Fuerunt et[9] palatia egregia in[10] honorem imperatorum aliorumque illustrium virorum constructa, inter quæ[11] erat palatium majus in medio urbis in

---

[1] *Capuana*, B.C.D.; *Capuena*, A.E. (See versions.) These gates are all accusatives in B.; in other MSS. they are in the nominative. The reader must take the orthography of the versions *taliter qualiter*. In the text *Lavicana* stands for *Labicana*; and *Princiana* for *Pinciana*; *Metronii* is more correctly written *Metronis*. See Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., s. v. *Roma*.

[2] *portam Salariam*] om. C. (not D.)

[3] *Collania*, C.

[4] *urbis*] om. C. (not D.)

[5] *sive*, B.

[6] *humano*] om. C.D.

[7] *Ran.* to *Versus de Roma*, abbreviated in C. and D. thus: *ut jam verum sit, Par tibi, &c.* B. omits the two lines following *Hildeberti*, and grievously corrupts both the verses.

[8] *pene*, MSS.

[9] *que*, B.; *ibi*, C.; *etiam*, D.

[10] *ad*, B.

[11] *de quibus*, C.D.; *in qua*, A.

had in all sixtene principal ȝates ;[1] ten on þis half Tiber, þat were i-cleped port Capuena, port Apia, port Latina, port Asinaria, port Matronii, port Levicana,[2] port Numentana, port Salaria, port Princiana, port Colina. Also byȝonde Tyberis beeþ þre ȝates, and þre in þe citee Leonina. *Gregorius.* Among þe wondres of þis citee þat ȝit beeþ i-sene, it is greet[3] wonder of so many defensable toures and so many buldynge of palays, where[4] it were i-doo[5] by wychecraft oþer by manis dede. So þat now beeþ ferified[6] þe vers þat Hildebertus[7] Episcopus Cenomannensis made, and Willielmus Malmesburiensis putteþ hem in his book of kynges :[8] TREVISA.

Rome, no þing is pere to þe,
Þeyȝ þou nygh all fallynge be ;
On alle[9] þou schewest þy bounde,
How grete þou were,[10] when þow were[10] sounde.

Þere were meny paleys real[11] and noble i-bulde in Rome in worschippe of emperours and of oþere noble men also. Among þe whiche þe gretteste and most palys of alle was in þe myddel of þe citee, in tokene of oon principalte of De palatiis Romæ.

that cite were xvj. principalle ȝates, x. abowte Tiber, Porta Capuana, Porta Apia, Porta Latina, Porta Asinaria, Porta Metronii, Porta Lauicana, Porta Numentana, Porta Salaria, Porta Prinopana, Porta Collina. Also there were iij. ȝates ouer Tiber and iij. in the Cite Leonine. *Gregorius.* Vn to this tyme presente remayne mony signes in hit to be meruayles as edifienges and palice, that the versus of Hildeberte, bischop Cenomacense may be verifiede of hit whom William Malmesbury puttethe in his boke of kynges seyenge in this wyse : O Rome, þer is noon oþer cite egalle to the nowe beenge in ruyne. Thou may teche nowe in confusion howe nowble thow was a fore. *De Palatiis.* In that cite were nowble palice made in honor of emperoures, and of other nowble men amonge whom oon palice was made in the myddes of the cite in the signe of the monarchy of MS. HARL. 2261. Of þe palices.

[1] *yates*, Cx.
[2] So *a.* and Cx.; *Eluicana*, MS.
[3] *a grete*, Cx.
[4] *towres of so many buyldynges of palayces, whether*, Cx.
[5] *i-doo*] om. Cx.
[6] So MS. and *a.*
[7] So Cx. ; *Hidebertus*, MS.
[8] *as here foloweth*, Cx.
[9] So Cx. ; *anaitte*, MS. ; *analle*, *a.*
[10] So MS. and *a.* See Harl. MS.
[11] *ryal*, Cx.

signum monarchiæ orbis; item[1] palatium Pacis, ubi Romulus posuit statuam suam auream, dicens, "Non "cadet,[2] donec virgo pariat;" quod et[3] cecidit Christo nascente.[4] Palatium Diocletiani columnas habet ad jactum lapilli tam altas, et tam[5] magnas quod a centum viris per totum annum operantibus vix una earum secari possit. Item fuit ibi quoddam palatium sexaginta imperatorum, cujus hodie partem residuam tota Roma destruere non potest.

De templis Romæ. Apud templum Pantheon, quod fuit[6] omnium deorum,[7] modo est ecclesia omnium sanctorum, et autonomastice[8] dicitur Sancta Maria Rotunda, et habet in latitudine spatium ducentorum sexaginta pedum. Prope illud templum est arcus triumphalis Augusti Cæsaris marmoreus, in quo gesta ipsius describuntur.[9] Ibi quoque[10] est arcus Scipionis, qui devicit Hannibalem. Item ad Sanctum Stephanum in piscina[11] fuit templum[12] holovitreum, totum de crystallo et auro factum, ubi erat astronomia insculpta cum signis cœli et stellis, quod

---

[1] *inter*, B.
[2] D. adds *hæc*.
[3] *et*] tamen, B.
[4] *quod . . . nascente*] om. C.D.
[5] *tam*] om. C. (not D.)
[6] A. adds *ecclesia*.
[7] *dæmoniorum*, B.
[8] *authonomasice*, D.
[9] *scribuntur*, A.; *conscribuntur*, B.
[10] *Et juxta id*, C.D. (which latter has *illud*.)
[11] *pasonia*, B.
[12] *templum*] om. C.D.

all þe world wide. Also þe paleys of pees; þerynne Romulus dede[1] his owne ymage of golde, and seide: "It "schal neuere falle, or[2] a mayde bere a childe;" and þat ymage fel[3] whan Crist was i-bore. Diocletianus[4] paleys haþ pilers as hiȝ as a stones[5] cast, and so grete aboute þat an hondred men al a ȝere worchynge schulde vnneþe hewe oon of þilke pylers. Also þere was a paleys of sixty emperours, and ȝit stondeþ a party[6] þerof þat al Rome may nouȝt destroye it. Þere, as[7] Pantheon þe temple of all mawmetrie was, is now a chirche of al halwen,[8] and for[9] oure Lady is after Crist cheef halwe[10] of al mankynde, þat chirche haþ þe name of oure Lady, and hatte Sancta Maria Rotunda, þat is þe Rounde Chirche of oure Lady, and haþ in brede þe space of two hondred feet and sixty. Fast by þat temple is an arche of marbel, and is þe arche of Augustus Cesar his victories and grete dedes. In þat arche beeþ al Augustus Cesar his dedes[11] descryued. Þere is also Scipions arche; he ouercom Hanibal. At Seint Steuene in Piscina was þe temple Olouitreum, þat was made al[12] of cristal and of golde; þere was astronomie i-graued and i-peyntwiþ sterres and signes of heuen. Seint Sebastian[13]

TREVISA. —— De templis.

---

the worlde. Also thei made a palice of peace, where in Romulus put an ymage of golde, seyenge, this ymage schalle not falle tylle that a mayde haue a childe, whiche ymage felle down in the natiuite off Criste. The palice of Dioclitian hathe pyllers soe hie as a man may caste with a stonne, and soe grete that vnnethe oon off theyme may be kytte and putte down by a c. men laborenge dayly in hyt by a yere. Also þer was a palice of lx. emperoures the residu of whom alle Rome can not destroye. *Of þe temples.* Now the chirche of alle Seyntes is in Rome, where the temple of alle goddes was before, namede Panteon, hauenge in latitude the space of ij^{c}. and lx. foote, nye to whom is an arche made of marbole, in whom the gestes of Augustus Cesar be wryten. Also þer is an arche of Scipio whiche ouercome Hanibal. Also there was a temple made of cristalle and golde, where in astronomy was graven with the signes of heuyn and sterres, whom Seynte Sebastian

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *dyde do*, Cx.
[2] *tel*, Cx.
[3] *fylle*, Cx.
[4] *Dyoclicianus*, MS.
[5] *astoon*, *a*.
[6] *a part*, Cx.; *another party*, MS.
[7] *as*] Added from Cx. (not in *a*.)
[8] *halowen*, Cx.; *halewen*, *a*.
[9] *by cause*, Cx.
[10] *chyef and holyest*, Cx.
[11] *ben alle his grete actes*, Cx.
[12] *al*] om. Cx.
[13] *Sebestian*, MS. (not Cx.)

Sanctus Sebastianus destruxit.[1] Item in Capitolio, quod erat altis muris vitro et auro coopertis, quasi speculum mundi sublimiter erectum, ubi consules[2] et senatores mundum regebant, erat templum Jovis in quo statua Jovis aurea in throno aureo erat sedens.[3] *Ranulphus.*[4] Hic advertendum est quod in Roma tria tantum templa fuerunt quæ flamines habuerunt, id est, pontifices idolorum, sic dicti quasi *filamines* a *filo* quod[5] ligabant sibi in capite, quando non poterant præ calvitate diebus festivis pileum deferre. Nam in templo Jovis ministrabat flamen dialis, quia Jupiter vocabatur Diespiter, id est, diei pater. Item in templo fuit flamen Martialis, in templo Romuli flamen Quirinalis, nam Romulus dicebatur Quirinus.[4]

De domibus Romæ.

Romæ fuit domus quædam consecrata pene[6] tota aurea lapidibus pretiosis ornata, quæ dicebatur valere pene tertiam partem mundi, cujus cryptæ[6] parietum adhuc apparent horrendæ et inaccessibiles; in qua etiam[7] domo statuæ omnium provinciarum[8] ponebam-

---

[1] *astronomia ... destruxit*] Slightly different in C. and D.

[2] *ad consulendum*, C.

[3] The latter part of the sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

[4] *Ran.* to *Quirinus*] om. in A.B. C.D.

[5] *quem*, E. The solecism is probably due to the scribe.

[6] *pene ... cryptæ*] Abbreviated in A.B.C.D.

[7] *etiam*] Added from C.D.

[8] *Romæ subjectarum* after *provinciarum* in D.; *statuæ* after *provinciarum* in B.

destroyed þat temple. Also[1] þe Capitol was arrayed[2] wiþ hiȝe walles i-heled wiþ glas and wiþ gold, as it were þe mirrour of al þe world aboute. Þere consuls[3] and senatours gouernede and rulede al[4] þe world, as moche as was in here power; and þere was Iupiters[5] temple, and in þe temple was Iupiters ymage of golde,[6] sittynge in a trone. Þ.[7] Here take hede þat onliche þre temples were somtyme in Rome þat hadde flamines, [þat were bisshops to serve false goddis and mawmetrie, and heet flamines,][8] as it were *filamines*, of *filo*, þat is *a þrede*, þat þey bonde aboute hire heed, whan þei myȝte nouȝt in þe holy day suffre on hire piliouns and here cappes for hete. In Iupiter his temple seruede flamen dialis, þat is, þe day bisshop; for Iupiter was i-cleped Diespiter, þat is, *þe fader of þe day:* also in Mars his temple was flamen Martialis, þat is, Mars is[9] bisshop, and in Romulus temple was flamen Quirinalis, þat is, Quirinus[10] bisshop; for Romulus was i-cleped Quirinus also. TREVISA.

In Rome was an hous i-made wel nyh al of gold and i-hiȝt[11] wiþ precious stones; me seide þat hous was worþ wel nyȝ þe þridde deel[12] of all þe world. In þat hous eueriche londe and prouince hadde an ymage i-sette by De domibus.

destroyede. Þ. Hyt is to be aduertisede that in Rome were oonly thre temples whom the byschoppes of ydoles hade in possession callede flamines, as filamines, of threde whom thei bounde in theire hedes when thei myȝhte not were a cappe in holy dayes for hete. The byschop Dialle[13] ministrede in the temple of Iupiter, for he was callede Diespiter, that is to say, fader of þe day. The byschop Martialle was in the temple of Mars. And the byschoppe Quirinalle in the temple of Romulus, for Romulus was callede Quirinus. *Of howses.* In Rome was an howse consecrate onornede allemoste alle with golde and precious stones, whiche was seyde to be worthe the thrydde parte of the worlde, whiche place apperethe ȝitte as ferefulle and inaccessible, in whiche place the ymages of alle pro- MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] MS. and *a.* (not Cx.) add *in*.
[2] Cx. omits the four following words.
[3] *the consuls*, Cx.
[4] *of al*, *a.*
[5] *Iubiters*, MS., and so below.
[6] *fyn golde*, Cx.
[7] Þ.] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] The words in brackets added from *a.*
[9] Cx. here and above prints only *Mars*.
[10] *his*, added in *a.*, which has often similar variations.
[11] *besette*, Cx.
[12] *part*, Cx.
[13] *Dial*, Harl. MS.; similarly *Martial* below.

tur arte magica,[1] quarum quælibet nomen provinciæ suæ in se[2] gerebat scriptum in pectore, et nolam argenteam circa collum; quæ, si qua gens contra Romam insurgeret,[3] statim imago[4] illius vertebat dorsum ad imaginem Romæ, et tintinnabulum illius imaginis insonabat.[4] Unde et sacerdotes Gentiles domum illam alternis vicibus custodientes nomen imaginis illius principibus nunciabant.[5] Erat etiam[6] in tecto domus illius eques quidam æneus concordans mobiliter motui illius imaginis,[7] lanceamque contra gentem illam sic insurgentem[8] dirigebat. Unde et Romani[9] facile hostes suos inpræmeditatos occupabant. In qua etiam domo tradunt ignem fuisse inextinguibilem, cujus artifex requisitus quamdiu duraret, respondit, "Donec virgo pariat." Unde divulgatum est quod[10] nocte Dominicæ nativitatis eques ille cum domo corruit, et ignis ille extinctus.[11] Item Beaneus[12] Apollo confectionem[13] quandam sulphuris[14]

---

[1] Slightly transposed in C.D.

[2] *in se*] om. C.

[3] *insurgere proponeret*, C.D.

[4] *imago . . . . insonabat*] Abbreviated to *sonum dabat* in C.D.; A.B. have only *statim sonabat*, after *insurgeret*. (A. reads *sonaret*.) Both versions agree with the text.

[5] The sentence transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

[6] *et*, B.

[7] *ipsius imaginis*, A.; *imaginis illius*, B.

[8] *sic insurgentem*] om. C.D.

[9] *Roma*, C. (not D.)

[10] *quod*] om. E.

[11] *In qua . . . extinctus*] Transposed and abbreviated in C.; B. has *est* after *extinctus*.

[12] *Bancus*, A. It is possible that Higden intends Apollonius Tyanæus; but, if so, the story seems not to be found in Philostratus.

[13] *confossionem*, C. (not D.)

[14] *sulphure*, A.

wicche craft;[1] euericheof þilke ymages bare his owne lordes name i-write on[2] his brest and a cokebelle[3] of siluer i-honged aboute his nekke; so ȝat[4] ȝif eny londe arise aȝen Rome, anon þe ymage of þat londe torned his bak toward þe ymage of Rome, and þe belle aboute his nekke anon schulde rynge, and þe preostes þat kepte þat hous euerich by his cours warnede þe princes of þat doynge. Þere was also an horsman of bras an[5] hiȝe on þe cop of þat hous, and moued[6] also wiþ a spere in his hond, and torned þe poynt of his spere to ward þat londe þat so wolde arise; and so þe Romayns myȝte liȝtliche come vppon here enemyes vnwarned.[7] In þat hous also was a fuyre þat no man myȝte aquenche,[8] and men askede[9] of þe craftesman þat it made how longe it schulde dure,[10] and he answerde and seide: Þat[11] it schulde dure for euermore for to[12] þat a mayde bere a childe. And in[13] þe same nyȝt þat Crist was i-bore þat hous fil doun, and þe fuyre was aqueynt also þe same[14] nyȝt and tyme. Also Beaneus Apollo þat

TREVISA.

uinces were putte by wycche crafte, euery ymage hauenge writen in the breste of hit the name of the prouince, and a belle of golde abowte the necke of hit. And if eny peple made insureccion ageyne thempire of Rome, the ymage of that prouince turnede the backe of hit to the ymage of Rome, and ronge his belle; the gentile pristes hauenge kepenge of the ymages schewede those thynges to the princes of thempire. In the hier partes of whiche place was an horse man made of brasse corespondente to the ymage of that prouince, hauenge a spere directe towarde the peple makenge þat insurreccion. Where fore the Romanes hade victory of theier enmyes, takenge theyme as sodenly. In whiche place men affermede fire to haue bene inextinguible; þe maker of hit requirede how longe hit scholde dure, answerede and seyde, tyl a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe. Wherefore hit was expressede that the man made of brasse felle down with the howse in the natiuite of Criste, and that fyre was extincte. *Of Craftes*

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *nigromancie*, Cx.
[2] *and on*, Cx. (typ. error?)
[3] *cockerbelle*, Cx.
[4] So the MS.; but seemingly a mere clerical error; *a.* has *þat*.
[5] *and*, *a.*; *on*, Cx.
[6] *meouede*, *a.*; *meued*, Cx.
[7] *on ware*, Cx.
[8] *quenche*, Cx.
[9] *axed*, Cx.
[10] *endure*, Cx., and so below.
[11] Cx. omits *þat*.
[12] *for to*] vnto, Cx.
[13] *a.* and Cx. omit *in*.
[14] *quenchyd that same*, Cx.

et nigri salis inclusit in vase æneo, quam candela consecrata incendit, et balneum ibi[1] fecit cum thermis perpetuo[2] calentibus.[3] Erat quoque[4] in domo quadam[5] ferreum simulacrum Bellerophontis pondere quindecim millia[6] librarum, in aere cum equo suo suspensum, nulla catena superius aut stipite inferius sustentatum; sed lapides magnetes in arcubus[7] testudinum sive fornicibus[8] arcuatis circumquaque ponebantur, et hinc[9] inde proportionali[10] attractione simulacrum in medio servabant, ita ut nullicubi[11] posset dissilire.[12]

De artificiis Romæ.

Est ibi theatrum in Heraclea de ipso monte marmoreo ita[13] sculptum, ut cellulæ mansionum et sedilia per gyrum,[14] exitus, et antra[15] ex uno solido lapide sint[16] sculpta, poniturque hoc totum[17] opus super sex cancros ex ipso etiam monte sculptos, ubi nullus tam secrete aut[18] secum aut cum alio loqui poterit[19] quin in circuitu audiatur.[20] Item[21] juxta palatium Augusti est murus coctilis descendens per portam Asinariam a summis montibus, qui immensis fornicibus aquæductum sustentat; per quem amnis a[22] montanis fontibus per spatium unius diætæ urbi illabitur, qui æreis fistulis postmodum divisus[23] universis palatiis Romæ[24] quondam influebat. Fluvius namque Tiberis equis est salubris,[25]

---

[1] *ibidem*, B.

[2] *in perpetuo*, A.

[3] *Et balneum . . . . calentibus*] Varies verbally in C.D.

[4] *etiam*, C.D.

[5] *ibi quoddam*, C.; *ibi quadam*, D.; *domo quodam*, B.

[6] *milium*, C.D.

[7] *fornicibus*, C.D.

[8] *sive fornicibus*] om. C.D.; *in fornicibus*, A.E.

[9] D. adds *et*.

[10] *proportionabili*, B.

[11] *nullibi*, B.

[12] *desilire*, B. The sentence ends thus in C.D. after *attractione*: *consistens quasi sub equilibrata mensura sic manebat*.

[13] *quasi*, C. (not D.)

[14] C. and D. add *et*; B. adds *mansionum* after *gyrum*.

[15] *aura*, C.

[16] *sic*, C.

[17] *totum*] om. A.B.

[18] *aut*] om. C.D.

[19] *poterat*, D.

[20] *quin omnes qui in circuitu erant audirent*, C.D.

[21] *Item*] om. C.D.

[22] *et*, E. (clerical error.)

[23] *divisis*, B.

[24] *Romæ*] om. C.D.

[25] *utilis*, C.D.

man closede a confeccioun of brymston and of blak salt in a vessel of bras, and sette hit on þe fire[1] wiþ a candel þat he hadde made on his manere,[2] and made þere a bath wiþ baþinge places þat all wey were hote. Þere was also on[3] an hous an ymage of yren, and was [namyd][4] Bellefrontes ymage, and[5] weyed xv. þowsand pound wiþ his hors þat he satte on, and hyng[6] in þe ayer wiþ no post ne pyler bynepe vnder sette, nopere[7] i-holde wiþ chayne aboue; but adamant stones þat were in þe fot[8] and in þe arches aboute drowe euen þe yren eueriche to his side, so þat þe yren ymage myȝt nouȝt dounward nopер vpward ne toward neyther side,[9] but hyng alwey euene amydde. TREVISA.

Þere is a place at Rome in Heraclea and hatte theatrum; þat is a place to stonde oþer sitte ynne for to loke wel aboute. Þerynne is wonderliche i-graue cabans and dennes, dyuers oute goynges, benches, and seges all aboute, and is hool and sound, al oon marbel ston: [and þis work is i-sett uppon sixe crabbes i-hewe of hard marbilston];[10] in þat place may no man so priuely speke, nopер by[11] hemself nopер by[11] anoþer man, but al þat he seiþ be herde al aboute. Faste by Augustus Cesar his place[12] is a wal i-made of b[r]ent[13] tile and strecchep dounward oute of þe hiȝe hulles by þe ȝate, port Asinaria. Þat wal is i-made vppon grete arches and heug; þat wal strecchep a dayes iornay from Rome yn a greet condyt; vppon þat wal þe wateres and þe[14] stremes of þe[15] welles of þe mounteyns rennep ynto Rome; and þan is[16] departed in dyuers condites and pipes of bras, and so ran somtyme in to euery paleys of Rome: for þe water [of][17] Tyber is holsom and good for De artificiis.

---

and Edifienges. There is a place made in Heraclea graven so of marbole in that hille, that the mansiones of hit and setes of hit were graven of oon ston, where a man can not speke so secretely with hymselfe or with eny other, but hit schal be herde in alle the circuite. The water of Tiber is MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *it a fyre*, Cx.; *hit on fire*, *a*.
[2] *i-halewed in his manere*, *a*., Cx.
[3] *in*, *a*., Cx.
[4] Added from Cx.
[5] *whiche*, Cx.
[6] *heng*, *a*. and Cx., and so Cx. (not *a*.) below.
[7] *ne*, Cx.
[8] *vawte*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *neuere aside*, MS., *a*.
[10] The words in brackets added from *a*. and Cx.
[11] *to*, Cx. (twice).
[12] *palays*, Cx. (not *a*.)
[13] *welle i-made of brend*, *a*.; *walle made of brente*, Cx.
[14] *a*. and Cx. omit *þe*.
[15] So *a*. and Cx.; *þat*, MS.
[16] *it is*, Cx.
[17] Added from Cx. (not in *a*.)

sed hominibus noxius;[1] quamobrem a quatuor urbis partibus per artificiosos meatus Romani veteres aquas recentes venire fecerunt; quibus, dum res publica floruit, quicquid[2] libuit consummare licuit. Juxta hunc murum aquæductus[3] est illud[4] balneum Beanei, de quo supra dicitur. In albisterio, quod dicitur mutatorium Cæsaris, ubi fiebant albæ stolæ imperatorum, fuit[5] candelabrum factum de lapide albeste, qui semel accensus et sub divo positus nulla arte potuit extingui.[6]

De Pallante gigante.

Ranulphus. Juxta hunc modum potuit contingere quod de Pallante gigante legitur infra circa annum domini millesimum quadragesimum, quo anno repertum est Romæ corpus giganteæ staturæ tumulatum et[7] incorruptum, cujus vulneris hiatus quatuor pedes longitudinis[8] et semis continebat. Longitudo corporis altitudinem muri vincebat; lucerna continue ardens ad caput ejus reperta[9] est, quæ nec flatu nec humore extingui poterat,

---

[1] *est noxius*, D.
[2] after *floruit*, thus: *aquæductus fiebant ut libuit et licuit*, C.; *quicquid libuit, licuit*, D.
[3] *aquæductus*] om. C. (not D.)
[4] *illud*] om. D.
[5] *ibi fuit*, B.
[6] C. and D. omitted from *Juxta hunc &c.* down to *jacet hic.*
[7] *et*] om. B.
[8] So B.; *pedum longitudinis*, A.; *pedum longitudine*, E.
[9] *inventa*, A.

hors, and for men yuel[1] and vnholsom.[2] þerfore þe olde Romaynes made fresche water come oute of foure parties of þe citee by weies craftliche i-made, and þerof men myȝte take al þat þey wolde, [whyle][3] þe comynge[4] of Rome were in her floures. By þat wall is þe bath Byaneus made, of þe whiche baþ was raþer a speche.[5] In Albist[e]rio[6] a place þat heet also Mutatorium Cesaris were i-made white stolis for emperours. Also þere was a candelstikke i-made of a stoon þat hatte Albeston; whan it was ones i-tend[7] and i-sette per oute,[8] þere coupe no man it aquenche[9] wiþ no craft þat me koupe deuise. [R.][10] In þis manere hit miȝte be of[11] þe geaunt Pallas aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord a þowsand and fourty; þat ȝere was i-founde in Rome a geantis body i-buried all[12] hool and sounde; þe chene[13] of his wounde was foure foot longe and an half; þe lengþe of his body passed the heiȝte of þe walles; at his heed was founde a lanterne brennynge alway, þat no man couthe quenche wiþ blast noþer[14] wiþ water noþer[14] wiþ oþer craft, or[15] þere were

TREVISA

wholsom for horses, but not for men, wherefore the Romanes made labor that fresche waters myȝte comme in to the cite in iiij. partes of hit. In Albisterio was a candellesticke where the emperoures were wonte to be chaungede, where the white stoles of emperoures were made also, whiche was made of a precious ston callede Albestes, whiche accendede and putte furthe in the aiere wylle not be extincte by eny crafte. R. In lyke wyse that thynge myȝhte happe that is redde of Pallas, þe gigante abowte the yere of our Lorde God mxl[ti], in which yere a body was founde of þe stature of a gigante beryede at Rome and incorrupte, the wounde of whom conteynede in longitude iiij. foote and a halfe. The longitude of that body excedede the altitude of the walles of that cite: fyndenge also a lampe brennenge at the feete off hit continually, whiche cowthe not be extincte þro blawenge

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *euel, a.*
[2] *and vnholsome and euyl for men,* Cx.
[3] Added from Cx. (not in *a.*)
[4] *comins,* Cx.
[5] *was spoken to fore,* Cx.
[6] *Albisterio, a.,* Cx.
[7] *yteyned,* Cx., who adds *and sette a fyre.*
[8] *without,* Cx.
[9] *quenche it,* Cx.; *hit quenche, a.*
[10] R.] Reference added from *a.* and Cx.
[11] *of*] *that,* Cx.
[12] *all*] om Cx.
[13] *space,* Cx.
[14] *ne,* Cx., twice; (as frequently.)
[15] *ar, a.*

donec subtili foramine subter[1] flammam[2] facto aer foret introductus. Hunc Pallantem Turnus dicitur occidisse, quando[3] pugnavit pro Lavinia. Hujus[4] gigantis tale erat epitaphium.

Epitaphium gigantis Romæ.

Filius Evandri Pallas, quem lancea Turni
Militis occidit more suo, jacet hic.

De statuis et signis Romæ.

Fuit apud[5] Romam taurus æneus in speciem[6] Jovis transformati, qui mugienti et gesticulanti[7] simillimus videbatur. Fuit[8] et imago Veneris eo modo[9] quo quondam nudo corpore Paridi se ostendebat, ita artificiose composita ut in niveo imaginis ore sanguis recens[10] natare videretur. Est etiam[11] ibi[12] pyramis Romuli, ubi speliebatur juxta[13] ecclesiam beati Petri; quam peregrini, qui semper[14] frivolis[15] abundant, dicunt fuisse acervum segetis beati Petri, quem cum Nero rapuisset in lapideum collem pristinæ quantitatis ferunt fuisse[16] conversum. Inter omnes pyramides mira-

---

[1] *super*, B.
[2] *flammæ*, A. (but looks more like *flamine*.)
[3] A. adds *Æneas*.
[4] *Cujus*, B.
[5] *in Roma*, C.D.
[6] *specie*, C.D.
[7] *tubanti*, B.; *moventi*, C.D.
[8] *Item fuit*, C.D.
[9] *eo modo*] om. C.D., which have *quæ* following.
[10] *recens*] om. B.
[11] *etiam*] om. C.D.
[12] *ibidem*, B.
[13] *prope*, C.D.
[14] *frivolis semper habundantes*, C.D.
[15] *suis frivolis*, B.
[16] *fuisse*] fore, A.E.

i-made an hole[1] vnder þe lyȝt by neþe, þat þe ayer myȝte entre. Me seiþ þat Turnus slow þis geaunt Pallas, whan Eneas fauȝte for Lauin[i]a þat was Eneas his wyf. Þis[2] geauntes epitaphium,[3] þat is,[4] þe writynge of mynde of hym þat lay þere, was suche:[5] TREVISA.

Pallas Euander his sone lieþ here:
Hym Turnus þe knyȝt wiþ his spere
Slowe in his manere.

De statuis et signis. Þere was at Rome a bole[6] of bras in þe schap of Iupiter ouercast and schape to men þat loked þeron; þat boole semed lowynge and startlinge. Þere was also þe ymage of Venus al naked in þe same manere as Venus schewed hir self to þat man Paris[7] somtyme,[8] and was so craftliche made þat in þe mouþe and lippes, þat were as white as eny[9] snow, semede fresche blood and newe. Þere is also at Rome a wonder copped pilour, and is Romulus pyler. Þere Romulus was i-buried faste by Seynt Petres chirche. Þat piler pilgrims and palmers, þat faste con[10] liȝe, clepeþ it[11] seint Petris corn hepe,[12] and seiþ þat whan Nero þe emperour hadde i-rauisched it, it[13] turned into an hil of stoon as grete as it was raþer, whiles it was corn.[14] Among þe[15] pilers

---

or eny other humor, tylle they made a subtile hoole vnder hit with a nelde,[16] where thro the aier commenge thro hyt causede hit to be extincte: whom a knyȝhte callede Turnus did flee, when Eneas did fiȝhte for Lauiń[i]a. *Of the Ymages at Rome.* There was an ymage of Venus made in Rome, in that similitude as sche apperede to Parides, whiche was made so subtily that a man myȝhte see in that ymage as bloode decurrente. Also another off brasse transformede in to the similitude of Iupiter. Also there is the grave of Romulus, where he was beryede, nye to þe chirche of Seynte Petre, whom the commune peple calle the hepe of corne of Seynte Petre, whom Nero takenge aweye was restorede in to the state of hit a fore. Amonge the beryalles of whom MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *vnto the tyme that there was made a lytil hoole*, Cx.
[2] So Cx. (This); *þese*, MS., *a*.
[3] *epytaphium*, Cx.; *ephitafium*, MS., *a*.
[4] *is this*, Cx. (without sense).
[5] *suche*] *this*, Cx.
[6] *bulle*, Cx.
[7] So Cx.; *Pares*, MS., *a*.
[8] Cx. adds *of Troye*.
[9] *ony*, Cx.
[10] *can*, Cx.
[11] *a* (not Cx.) omits *it*.
[12] *corn hupple*, Cx.
[13] *it*] hit, Cx. (perhaps considering the aspirated form the stronger).
[14] *as grete as it was byfore of corne*, Cx.
[15] *alle*, *a*., Cx.
[16] So Harl. MS.

bilior est pyramis Julii Cæsaris, habens in altitudine[1] ducentos quinquaginta pedes, in cujus summo fuit[2] sphæra ænea cineres et ossa Julii continens.[3] De quo colosseo[4] quidam metricus[5] sic ait:

Versus de pyramide Julii Cæsaris.

Si lapis est unus, dic qua fuit arte levatus:
Si lapides plures, dic ubi contigui.

Hanc autem pyramidem super quatuor leones[6] fundatam peregrini mendosi[7] acum beati Petri appellant, mentiunturque illum fore[8] mundum a peccatis[9] qui sub saxo illo liberius potuerit repere.[10] Sunt etiam in

De caballis marmoreis.

Roma duo magni equi marmorei quorum talis redditur ratio. Tempore Tiberii imperatoris, duo juvenes philosophi, Praxitellus et Fibia,[11] venerunt Romam, quos cum Cæsar interrogasset cur nudi incederent, dixerunt, " Quia omnia reliquimus, et quia omnia nobis sunt nuda " et aperta; etiam[12] quæ dixeris, Cæsar, vel clam feceris,

---

[1] *latitudine*, C. (not D.)
[2] *est*, C.D.
[3] *continentes*, C.D.
[4] *colosseo*] om. C.D.
[5] *metricus*] om. C.D.
[6] *æneos* added in C.D.
[7] *mendosi*] om. C.D.
[8] *mundum esse*, C.D.
[9] *pœnitentiamque perfectam egisse*, added in C.D.
[10] Slightly altered in C.D.
[11] *Fibus*, C. (not D.) It seems that in this monstrous legend the persons intended are the sculptors Phidias and Praxiteles. See Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom.* vol. iii. pp. 404, 405, (Stuttgard, 1860.)
[12] *etiam sqq.*] Slightly altered in C.D.

Iulius Cesar his piler is most wonderful and haþ in heiþe two hondred feete[1] and fifty; in þe coppe þerof [in][2] a rounde þing of bras, wher on[3] beeþ Iulius Cesar his askes and his bones.[4] Of þat piler in an[5] arche beeþ vers i-write,[6] þat beþ þus to menynge, and nameliche of þe ouermest stone: TREVISA.

ȝif þe stone is oon, telle what craft brouȝt hym vppon;
ȝif meny st[on]es,[7] telle where þey ioyne[8] attones.[9]

Þis arche and piler is i-founded and y-sette vppon foure lyouns. Pilgryms ful of lesynges clepeþ þis arche and piler Seynt Petres nedle, and lieþ and seiþ þat þat[10] man is clene of dedely[11] synne þat may crepe vnder þat stoon. Þere beeþ also in Rome tweie grete horse of marbilston: for in Tiberius þe emperoures[12] tyme twei ȝonge philosofres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome, and ȝede all naked; and whan þe emperour axed hem[13] why and wher fore þey ȝede[14] so naked, þei answerde and seide: "For we haueþ all þing "for sake;[15] and for all þing is to vs naked and bare and "openliche i-knowe; ȝe, sire emperoure, and all þat þow "spekest in counsail and in priuete we knoweþ at þe[16] beste." *Treuisa.* Þe firste poynt of þis doynge and answere techeþ

---

the beryalle of Iulius Cesar dothe excede, conteynenge in altitude cc. and l^ti^ foote, in the hiȝhte of whom is a spere of brasse conteynenge the bones of Iulyus Cesar, of whom hit is seyde in metre,—If that ston be oon say in what wyse and by what arte hit was elevate; if there be mony stones say where they be contiguate or ioynede to gedre. Mony pilgremes calle that beryalle of Iulius sette on iiij. lyones made of brasse, the nelde of Seynte Petre. Also in Romé be ij. grete horses made off marbole, whiche were made for this cause folowenge. In the tyme of Tiberius themperoure, ij. yonge philosophres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome. Tiberius inquirenge of theyme why they wente bare, they seyde, For we haue refusede alle thynges, and alle thynges be to vs bare and open that thow seyes MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Collose.

---

[1] *foot, a.*, Cx.
[2] Added from *a.* and Cx. Probably *is* is the true reading.
[3] *wher on*] om. Cx.
[4] So MS. and *a.*; *Iulius Cezars bones and asshes*, Cx.
[5] *in an*] *and, a*, Cx.
[6] *made, a.*, Cx.
[7] *stones, a.*; *And yf they be many stones*, Cx. (which is better metre).
[8] *joyneþ, a.*
[9] *at ones*, Cx.
[10] *thylk*, Cx
[11] *dedely*] om. Cx.
[12] *þe emperoures*] om. Cx.
[13] *hym*, Cx.
[14] *wente*, Cx., who, however, has *yeden* just before.
[15] *forsaken al thynge*, Cx.
[16] *þe*] om. Cx.

" nobis patent." Quod cum Cæsar verum comperisset, ipsis hoc petentibus, fecit hoc[1] memoriale, duos scilicet caballos marmoreos. Est et aliud signum ante palatium domini Papæ, equus æneus et sessor ejus manu dextra quasi populo[2] loquens, sinistraque quasi[3] frenum regens, habens avem cuculam inter aures equi et nanum quasi moribundum,[4] sub pedibus,[5] quem peregrini Theodoricum vocant, vulgus Constantinum, sed clerici curiæ Marcum seu Quintum Curtium appellant.[6] Hoc signum antiquitus sub quatuor[7] columnas æreas ante aram Jovis in Capitolio stabat, sed Beatus Gregorius equitem et equum dejecit, et columnas in ecclesia Lateranensi posuit, Romani vero[8] equitem et equum ante palatium papæ[9] posuerunt. Qui Marcum illum[10]

[1] *id*, C.; *illud*, D.
[2] *populis*, C.D.
[3] *quasi*] om. B.
[4] So A.B.; *morbidum*, C.D.E.
[5] *ejus* added in B.D.
[6] The previous sentence is slightly altered in C.D.
[7] *super decem*, C.D.
[8] *sed Romani*, B.
[9] *domini papæ*, D.
[10] *illud*, C.

TREVISA.

þat who[1] forsakeþ all þyng forsakeþ all his clopes; and so it foloweþ þat þey þat beeþ wel i-cloped and gooþ aboute and beggeþ and gadereþ money and corn and catel of oþer men[2] forsakeþ nouȝt al þing.[3] Þe emperour assaied and founde sooþ all þat þey seide, and at here prayer[4] made in mynde of hem tweie greet hors[5] of marbel. Þere is anoþere signe and tokene to fore[6] þe popes paleys; an hors of bras and a man sittynge þeron and halt his[7] riȝt hond as þouȝ he spake[8] to þe peple;[9] and halt his[7] bridel in his lift hand, and haþ a cukkow by twene his hors eres and a seek[10] dwerf vnder his horse[11] feet. Pilgrims clepeþ þat man Theodoricus, and þe comouns clepeþ hym Constantinus. But clerkes of þe court clepeþ hym Marcus and Quintus Curtius also. Þis signe stood somtyme to fore Iupiters auȝter[12] in þe Capitol vppon foure[13] pilers of bras; but Seynt Gregorie þrewe doun hors and man and sette[14] þe pilers in Seint Iones chirche þe Lateranensis. But þe Romayns toke hors and man and sette hem to fore þe popes paleys. Þey þat clepeþ hym Marcus telleþ þis skile and[15]

MS. HARL. 2261.

or dose priuely. Themperoure knowenge that to be trewe at the desire of theyme made that memorialle for theyme, that is to say, ij. bare horses of marbole. Also there was an other signe a fore the palice of the pope, whiche is an horse made of brasse, and the sitter on hit as spekenge to the peple by the signe of the ryȝhte honde, and gouernenge the horse as with the lyfte honde, hauenge a brydde callede a cukkowe made betwene the eeres of the horse, and Nanus lyke to dye vnder his feete, whom pilgremes calle Theo- f. 39 b.
doricus, the commune peple Constantyne, but clerkes of the cowrte calle hit Marcus or Quintus Curtius. That signe stode somme tyme on iiij. pyllers of brasse a fore the awter of Iupiter in the Capitoly or chiefe place of Rome. But Seynte Gregory put downe the horse man and that horse, and putte the pillars in the chirche Lateranense. The Romanes toke the horse man and the horse, and sette hit before the palyce of the pope. Men callenge hyt Marcus

---

[1] *þat who þat*, *a*.
[2] *þing* before *men* in MS. (not *a*. or Cx.)
[3] Reference to ꝑ. added in Cx.
[4] *owen prayer*, Cx.
[5] *horses*, Cx.
[6] *byfore*, Cx.
[7] *holdeth*, Cx. (twice.)
[8] *speke*, *a*.
[9] *ple*, MS.
[10] *sike*, *a*.
[11] *horse*] om. Cx.
[12] *awlter*, Cx.
[13] *the four*, Cx.
[14] Cx. omits the seventeen words following.
[15] *skile and*] om. Cx.

appellant hanc causam assignant. Ex genere Messenorum corpore quidam nanus sed arte nigromanticus, cum finitimos sibi reges subjugasset, Romanos aggressus est, quibus[1] virtutem feriendi[2] ademit. Unde[3] et ipsos in urbe conclusos diu obsedit.[4] Nanus[5] nempe ille quotidie ante solis occasum[6] extra castra egrediens artem suam in agro[7] excercuit.[8] Quo[9] comperto Romani strenuo militi Marco urbis dominium et[10] memoriale perpetuum promiserunt, si urbem liberaret. At ille muro urbis ex illa parte perforato, qua nanus solebat præstigiari,[11] de[12] nocte[13] exiens mane[14] expectabat[15] quod et[16] cuculus avis[12] denunciabat[17 18] voce sua. Arreptum nanum, quem armis non poterat, manu in urbem deportabat; et ne, si fandi copiam haberet,

---

[1] *qui virtute*, C.; *qui virtutem*, D.
[2] *et artem secandi arte sua penitus*, added in C.D.
[3] *Unde*] om. A.
[4] Transposed in C.D.
[5] *Denique magus ille*, C.D.
[6] *ortum*, C.; *occasum solis*, A.
[7] *in agro*] magicam, B.
[8] The previous sentence slightly altered in C.D.
[9] *Hoc*, D.
[10] *et*] in, A.
[11] *præstagiari*, B.
[12] *de . . . avis*] exspectatoque . . B.
[13] *nocteque*, C.; *nocte*, (quid?) D
[14] *maneque*, C.D.
[15] *exspectato*, A.C.D.
[16] *et*] om. C.D.
[17] *denunciavit*, C. (not D.)
[18] *nocte*, added in C.D.

TREVISA.

resoun. Þere was a dwerf[1] of þe kynrede of Mesenis; his craft was nigremansi.[2] Whan he hadde so conquered kynges þat woned hym nyh,[3] and made hem soget to hym, þan he wente to Rome to werre wiþ Romayns,[4] and wiþ his craft he byname þe Romays[5] power and myȝt for to smyte, and so[6] byseged hem long tyme i-closed wiþynne þe citee. Þis dwerf ȝede[7] eche day to fore þe sonne risynge in to þe feld for to doo his craft. Whanne þe Romaynes had aspied[8] þat manere doynge of þat dwerf, þey speke to Marcus a noble knyȝt, and byhiȝt hym lordschippe of þe citee and a memoryall[9] in mynde for euermore, ȝif it were his wille to helpe hem and saue[10] þe citee. Þan Marcus made[11] an hole þorwe þe wal toward þe place; þere[12] þe dwerf was woned to worche and vse þe sotilte of his craft. And Marcus rod oute at þat place þorw þe wal, longe or it were day, for to abyde his tyme to cacche þe dwerf, anon as it were day. And whan it was tyme, þe kukkow song and warnede hym of þe day. Þan Marcus[13] resede too, and for[14] he myȝte nouȝt hitte þe dwerf wiþ wepoun, he kauȝte hym wiþ his honde, and bare hym in to þe citee. And for drede lest he wolde[15] helpe hymself wiþ

MS. HARL. 2261.

assigne this cause. A man callede Nanus, erudite in the arte of nigromancy, whiche subduenge to hym mony kynges and realmes wente to the Romanes, takenge a weye from theyme the vertu of smytenge and kyttenge, segede theyme longe schutte with in the cite. This Nanus wente from his felowschippe erly in the mornenge afore the rysenge of the sonne, and put his arte in exercise; whiche thynge perceyvede, the Romanes made promise to Marcus, a nowble knyȝhte, that he scholde haue predominy of the cite, and a perpetualle memory if he cowthe delyuer that cite. Marcus pereschenge the walle of the cite on that parte where Nanus vsede the arte of nigromancye goenge furthe on the nyȝhte taryede for Nanus vntylle the morowe, whom a brydde callede a cuckowe schewede by here voyce; whiche takenge hym brouȝhte hym in to the cite, whiche fallenge down amonge

---

[1] *dwarf*, Cx.
[2] *nigromancy*, *a.*; *nygromancie*, Cx.
[3] *dwellyd nygh him*, Cx.
[4] *the Romayns*, *a.*, Cx.
[5] *Romayns*, *a.*, Cx.
[6] *so*] om. Cx.
[7] *wente*, Cx.
[8] *espied*, Cx.
[9] *memory all*, MS.; *memorial*, Cx.; *a* agrees apparently with MS.
[10] *yf he wolde defende hem and saue*, Cx.
[11] So Cx.; *at*, MS.
[12] Probably we should read *where*. Cx. has large omissions here.
[13] *Markus*, MS.
[14] *bycause*, Cx.
[15] *sholde*, Cx.

arte sua se forsan [1] liberaret, statim sub pedibus equi sui [2] contrivit; unde et [3] tale memoriale promeruit.[4] Qui vero Quintum Curtium illud vocant hoc assignant, quod hiatus quidam in media urbe [5] patuit sulphurea exhalatione multos perimens; in quem, responso Phœbi [6] accepto, Quintus Curtius, ut urbem [7] liberaret, armatus se dejecit; et statim cuculus avis [8] de hiatu illo [9] exivit, et terra se conclusit. Aliud signum est [10] imago Colossei quam statuam Solis aut ipsius [11] Romæ dicunt, de quo mirandum est quomodo tanta moles fundi [12] potuit aut erigi, cum longitudo ejus sit centum viginti sex pedum. Fuit itaque [13] hæc statua aliquando [14] in insula Rhodi [15] quindecim pedibus altior eminentioribus locis Romæ. Hæc statua sphæram [16] in [17] specie mundi [18] manu dextra, et gladium sub specie virtutis bellicæ [18] manu sinistra gerebat, in signum quod minoris vir-

---

[1] *forsitan*, B.; *si forsan*, A.
[2] *sui*] om. C.D.
[3] *et*] om. C.D.
[4] *meruit*, C.D.
[5] So B.; *in urbe*, C.D.; *urbe* omitted in E.
[6] *plebi*, B.
[7] *plebem*, C. (not D.)
[8] *cuculus avis*] hiatus in B., filled up in pencil by a modern hand.
[9] *de hiatu illo*] om. C.D.
[10] *est*] om. B.
[11] *ipsius*] ipsi, B.
[12] *infundi*, C. (not D.)
[13] *itaque*] So B.; *aliquando*, C.D.; *ita*, E.
[14] *aliquando*] om. C.D.
[15] *Horedii*, B.; *Herodii*, A.C.D.E.
[16] *speram*, MSS.
[17] *sub*, C.D.
[18] *in manu*, B.C.D. (twice.)

his craft, and he moste[1] speke, he threw hym vndir his[2] hors feet, and þe hors all to trade hym. And herefore þat image was i-made in mynde[3] of þis dede. Þey þat clepeþ þat signe an[4] ymage Quintus Curtius, telleþ þis skille and resoun: Þere was somtyme in þe myddel of Rome a greet chene[5] in þe erþe; out of þat chene[6] come smoke[7] and brymston, and slow[8] many man.[9] Þanne Quintus Curtius took counseil of Phebus, and armed hym, and auntrede hym hym in to þe chene;[6] þanne anon fleigh a cukkow out of þat[10] chene.[6] Þan þe erþe closed to gidres, and so þe chene[6] was i-stopped. Anoþer signe is Colossus[11] ymage, þat is i-cleped also þe ymage of þe Sonne, oþer of Rome. Þere is grete wonder how it myȝte be i-ȝote[12] oþer arered, þe ymage is so grete. Þe lengþ þerof is sixe score foot and sixe. Þis ymage was somtyme in þe ylond Rhodus,[13] fiftene foot hiȝere þan þe hiȝest place of[14] Rome. Þis ymage bare in his riȝt hond a spere[15] al round i-schape as þe world, and in his lift hand a swerd þat tokeneþ[16] myȝt of bataille; in

TREVISA.

the feete of the horses supposede to have delyuerede hym by his arte; wherefore Marcus hade that memorialle. Men that calle hit Quintus Curtius[17] assigne this reason, seyenge that there was a place open in the myddes of the cite pereschenge mony men as with a brethe of sulphure, an answere ȝiffen to the peple that hit wolde not be schutte vn tylle that a man felle in to hit voluntarily. Then Quintus Curtius[17] armenge hym felle in to hit to delyuer the cite; that doen, a cukko did flye owte from that pytte, and the erthe was closed anoon. An other signe is an ymage of Colossus,[11] whom they seye to be the ymage of the sonne or elles of the cite of Rome, of whom hit is to be meruaylede how that so hevy a thynge myȝhte be soe erecte, sythe hit is in longitude of c. foote and xxvi[ti]; whiche ymage was somme tyme in the yle of Rhodus,[13] whiche was more hie in altitude by xv. foote then eny place of the cite. That ymage hade in the ryȝhte honde of hit a rownde thynge after the similitude of þe worlde, and a swerde in the signe of batelle in the lifte honde, in token that hit is lesse

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 40. a.

[1] *yf he myght*, Cx.
[2] *the*, Cx.
[3] *remembraunce*, Cx.
[4] *and, a.*, Cx.
[5] *clyfte or hoole*, Cx.
[6] *hool*, Cx., and so below.
[7] *smook*, Cx.
[8] *slewe*, Cx.
[9] *men, a.*
[10] *þe, a.*
[11] *Colloseus*, MSS. and Cx.
[12] *yoten*, Cx.
[13] *Herodius*, MSS. and Cx.
[14] *in*, Cx.
[15] So the MSS. and Cx. for *sphere*.
[16] *bytokeneth*, Cx.
[17] *Cursius*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

tutis est quærere quam quæsita tueri. Hæc quidem[1] statua ærea, sed imperiali auro deaurata, per tenebras radiabat continuo,[2] et æquali motu cum sole circumferebatur, semper solari corpori[3] faciem gerens oppositam, quam[4] cuncti Romani advenientes[5] in signum subjectionis adorabant. Hanc[6] Beatus Gregorius,[7] cum viribus non posset, igne supposito destruxit;[8] ex quo solummodo caput cum manu dextra sphæram tenente incendio superfuit, quæ nunc[9] ante palatium domini Papæ super[10] duas columnas marmoreas visuntur.[11] Miro[12] quoque modo ars fusilis adhuc in ære rigido molles mentitur capillos, et os loquenti[13] simillimum præfert.[14] *Pol., libro secundo.*[15] Ad venustandam urbis[16] majestatem muliebrem formam, quæ orbem dextra[17] contineret, in æris materia fieri fecerant;[18] qua perfecta quidam solas tibias tantæ moli perferendæ insufficientes sunt[19] causati, quibus faber statuæ

---

[1] *quidem*] om. C.D.
[2] *continue*, B.
[3] *speræ*, C. (not D.)
[4] *hanc*, C.D.
[5] *venientes flexis genibus adorabant*, C.D.
[6] *postmodum*, added in C.D.
[7] *Papa*, added in C.D.
[8] *combussit*, C.D.
[9] *etiam nunc*, D.
[10] *inter*, C. (not D.)
[11] *vinciuntur*, B.
[12] *Miroque*, A.C.D.
[13] *loquentis*, C. (not D.)
[14] *profert*, C.D.
[15] So A.; *Plinius, libro sec.*, E.; *Poli., libro* 1°, B. The true reference is to Johan. Saresb. *Polycrat.* lib. ii. c. 15. Reference omitted in C.D.
[16] *orbis*, C. (not D.)
[17] *dextra orbem*, B.
[18] The previous clause slightly altered and transposed in C.D.
[19] *insufficientes causabant, quibus faber respondit*, C.D.

tokeynge[1] þat þis[2] is lasse maistrie, to wynne and to conquere, þan it is to kepe and to saue þat þat is conquered and i-wonne. Þis ymage was of bras; but it was so rialliche ouer gilt, þat it schoon[3] in derknes, and ȝaf grete bemes of[4] liȝt; also it moued[5] aboute wiþ þe sonne in suche a manere þat alway his face was toward þe sonne. Alle þe Romaynes þat come þereby worschipped þat ymage in wey[6] of subieccioun and of þraldom. Seynt Gregorie destroyed þat ymage wiþ fuyre, for he myȝte nouȝt destroye it wiþ strengþe. Of þat ymage is onliche i-left þe hede and the riȝt hond holdynge þe spere, þat is þe roundenesse and þe liknesse of þe world; for of al þat ymage lefte[7] namore vnbrend. But[8] þat hede and þat hond beeþ now to fore þe popes palays vppon þe[9] tweie pilers of marbil; and wonderliche by craft of ȝetynge[10] þat bras is i-ȝote, þat þe heer semeþ nesche[11] to a manis siȝt, and þe mouþ as þey it were spekynge. *Policr.*,[12] *libro secundo*. For to hiȝte þe noblete of þe[13] citee þe Romaynes made a wommans ymage in bras; þat ymage helde in his[14] hond a spere þe schap[15] of þe world wyde. And whan þe ymage was made, hem semede þat þe legges were to feble for to bere suche an ymage; it was so grete and so huge. TREVISA.

vertu to gete then to kepe thynges y-geten. That ymage was made of brasse, but hit was ouer gilte with golde imperialle, schynenge contynually in derkenesse, movenge egally with the son in his circumference, hade the face of hit contrarious alleweyes to the body of the sonne; whom alle Romanes worschippede in a signe of subieccion, whom Seynte Gregory destroyede with fyre; of whiche ymage the hede and ryȝhte honde remaynede, whiche be sette now afore the palice off the pope on ij. pyllers of marbole. *Policronicon, libro* 2°. The Romanes made an ymage of a woman, to make feire the maieste of the cite, in brasse; whiche performede, mony men seyde the legges of that ymage to be insufficiente to bere suche a burdon. To whom the smythe that made hit MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *token*, *a.*, Cx.
[2] *hit*, *a.*, Cx.
[3] *shone*, Cx.
[4] *of*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[5] *meouede*, *a.*; *meued*, Cx.
[6] *tokene*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *is*, or rather *was*, must be inserted before *lefte*.
[8] *But*] om. *a.*, Cx.
[9] þe] om. *a.*
[10] *milting*, Cx.
[11] *softe*, Cx.
[12] *Polict.*, *a.*
[13] *this*, Cx.
[14] *hir*, Cx.; but perhaps his own correction.
[15] So *a.* and Cx.; *scharpest*, MS. (not understanding *spere*).

respondit eas[1] usque quaque sufficere[2] donec virgo[3] pareret. Quod et factum est in Christi nativitate.[4] *Gregorius.*[5] Juxta palatium Vespasiani, ubi sus[6] alba de Pario lapide cum triginta porcellis aquam abluendis præbet, est[7] tabula ænea peccatum prohibens, ubi scripta sunt potiora legis præcepta; et scribuntur[8] ibi quasi aphorismi metrici, quorum[9] sententiæ supplementum pene subintelligitur. *Versus:*[10]

Gallus ibi quanquam[11] per noctem tinnipet omnem,
Sed sua vox nulli[12] jure[13] placere potest.

Dulce pelora sonat, quam dicunt nomine troscam,[14]
Sed fugiente die illa quieta manet.

Et merulus[15] modulans tam pulchris zinzitat[16] odis,
Nocte ruente timet, cantica nulla canit.

Vere calente novo componit acredula cantus,
Matutinali tempore ruricolans.

---

[1] *illas*, C.D.
[2] *sufficeres*, E.
[3] *virgo*] om. B.
[4] *nam tunc corruit*, added in C.D.
[5] *Gregorius*] om. B.
[6] *versus albam*, C. (not D.)
[7] *ibi*, C. (not D.)
[8] *Scribuntur etiam*, C.; *scribuntur autem*, D.
[9] *omnia fere verba subintelliguntur*, C.D.
[10] *Versus*] om. B.
[11] So B.; *quemquam*, A.C.D.E. and Trevisa.
[12] *ulli*, C. (not D.)
[13] *viro*, B.
[14] *quodam*, C. (not D.)
[15] *morulis*, B.
[16] *incitat*, B.; *zinzalat* is perhaps the true reading. See Du Cange.

Bot þe craftes men, þat it made, answered and seide: þe legges schal dure alway, and bere þe ymage at þe beste, and neuere faille, for to[1] a mayde bere a childe. But þe legges faillede, and þe ymage fel[2] down, whan Crist was i-bore. Faste by Vespasianus his paleys is a stone þat hatte Parius, [and is whyȝte marbil; and hatte Parius][3] for suche a stoon is i-digged in þe ilond þat hatte Paros. In þat[4] stoon is i-corue a[5] white sowe wiþ þritty pigges, þat fyndeþ[6] water to hem þat wol wasche.[7] Þere is also a table of bras þat forbedeþ synne; þerynne beeþ i-write þe chief poyntes of þe lawe; þere beeþ i-write as þere were rules in metre. Þe menynge þerof is vnderstonde in þis writynge, þat folweþ next:

TREVISA.

Euerich nyȝt, þere[8] a cok
Wakeþ som man, or it dawe;
All his song in a flok
May like no man by þe lawe.

Whan somer[9] is hote
Þrostel[10] syngeþ wiþ mery note.
Whan þe day goþ away,
Þe brid[11] is stille, and leueþ his lay.

In towne, as it longes,
Þe osul twytereþ mery songes.
At nyȝt for drede
Truly no song doþ he grede.

Whan floures[12] springeþ on rote,
Þe nyȝtyngale in his note
Twytereþ wel fawnyng
Wiþ full swete song in þe dawenyng.

ȝafe answere and seyde, that the ymage scholde stonde tylle that a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe, whiche felle down in the natiuite of Criste. Nye to the place and palyce of Vespasian, where a whyte sowe made of ston with xxx^ti pygges ȝiffe the water to thynges to be waschen, is a table of brasse prohibetenge synne, where the myȝhty preceptes of the lawe bene wryten.

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *vnto*, Cx.
[2] *fil*, *a*.
[3] Words in brackets added from *a*.; absent from Cx., who has other omissions.
[4] *þat*] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[5] So *a*. and Cx.; *i cornere white*, MS.
[6] *giue*, Cx.
[7] Cx. adds *there*.
[8] *where*, Cx.
[9] So *a*.; *some*, MS.
[10] *the throstle*, Cx.
[11] *birde*, Cx.
[12] *floure*, Cx.

Cum turdus [1] tritulat,[2] sturnus tunc pausitat ore;
Sed [3] quod [4] mane canunt vespere non recolunt.

Cap. XXV.

De quibusdam Romanorum [5] *institutis.*

Isidorus, libro octavo decimo, capitulo de triumphis,[6] *et Hugutio, capitulo Tris.*[7] Venienti [8] duci, regi, consuli, sive imperatori post insignem victoriam ad urbem Romam [9] triumphus parabatur, id est, honor triplex triumphanti [10] exhibebatur. Nam totus populus cum exultatione varia exibat [11] obviam victori. Captivi quoque [12] sequebantur currum ejus [13] ligatis post terga manibus, et ipse victor induebatur tunica Jovis in [14] curru sedens, quem trahebant quatuor equi albi usque [15] ad Capitolium: unde Ovidius:

Quatuor in niveis, Cæsar, abibis [16] equis.

Hanc tamen ferebat [17] [18] molestiam sic honoratus, ne [19] sui ipsius oblivisceretur, quia cum eo ponebatur servus

---

[1] *timidus truculat*, B.
[2] *titulat*, C.; *trutilat*, D.
[3] *Et*, C.D.
[4] *quæ*, B.; q^{a}, A.
[5] *observantiis et*, added in C.; *observantiis* in place of *institutis*, D.
[6] *capitulo de triumphis*] om. B.
[7] *de tris*, C. D. The title of Hugutio's section is *tres* vel *tris*.
[8] *Venienti*] om. C.D.
[9] *redeunti*, added in C.D.
[10] *triumphanti*] om. C.D.
[11] *exibant*, C.
[12] *etiam*, C.D.
[13] *victoris*, C.D.
[14] *in*] om. B.
[15] *et sic ducebatur ad*, C.D.
[16] *abibit*, C.; *abibat*, B. The true reading is *aureus ibis*. (Ovid. 1 *Am.* 214.)
[17] *patiebatur*, C.D.
[18] *Hanc ... ferebat*] Attamen molestia, B.
[19] *nam aliquis servilis conditionis sedens in curru jugiter colaphizabat triumphantem, sic dicens, Nothisselitos, &c.*, C.D.

Trevisa.

Þral makiþ his fare,
Wiþ mouth þan cheterep[1] þe stare.
Of morwe song kynde
Þey haueth at eue no mynde.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

De quibusdam Romanorum institutis et obseruantiis.

Isidorus, Etym., libro octavo decimo, cap. de triumphis, et Hugutio, cap. Tris. Whan duke, kyng, consul, oþer emperour hadde i-doo greet viage[2] and victorie, and come into Rome, at his comynge he schulde wiþ [3]þre manere worschippe be vnderfonge.[4] Al þe peple schulde come aȝenst hym wiþ all þe solempne[5] merþe, comforte, and ioye þat þey koupe make; alle þe prisoneres schulde folwe þe[6] chaar wiþ hire hondes i-bounde byhynde her bakkes; þis victor hym self schulde were on Iupiter his cote and sitte in[7] a chaar þat fyue white hors schulde drawe anon to[8] þe Capitol. Þerof spekeþ Ouidius:

Wiþ foure hors all snowe white
Þou schalt, sire Emperour, wende.

Ȝit among all þis worschippe, for he schulde not forȝete hym self, þis onnuy[9] he hadde: a cherle was wiþ hym in

MS. Harl. 2261.

Of somme institutes and obseruaunces of the Romanes. Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro octavo decimo, capitulo Triumphus, et Hugutio, capitulo Tris. Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

A triplicate honor was ȝiffen to a kynge, duke, consul, or emperoure hauenge victory, in his commenge to the cite of Rome; for the peple wente furthe to mete the victor with variable gladdenesse, the charyette of whom men putte in captiuite folowede, theire hondes bownde behynde the backes of theyme. Also the victor was induede with the coote of Iupiter, syttenge in a charyette whom iiij. white horses didde drawe to þe Capitoly.[10] A victor thus hade in honor suffrede an oþer grevaunce, þat he scholde not forgete hym selfe, in the charyette of whom a seruaunte of vile con-

[1] *chiterith*, Cx.
[2] *don ony grete voyage*, Cx.
[3] *re* before *þre* in MS. (not *a*.)
[4] *receyued*, Cx.
[5] *solempte*, *a*.
[6] *his*, Cx.
[7] *on*, *a*., Cx.
[8] *vnto*, Cx.
[9] So MS. and *a*.; *this one annoy*, Cx.
[10] *to þe Capitoly*, added in the margin, apparently by the original scribe.

in eodem curru, qui jugiter colaphizaret triumphantem; et hoc duplici de causa, ne scilicet triumphans nimis[1] ex tali gloria superbiret, et etiam[2] ut daretur spes cuique[3] probo perveniendi ad consimilem honorem, si probitas sua hoc promereretur. Colaphizans vero sæpius dicebat triumphanti "Γνῶθι σεαυτόν,"[4] id est, *nosce teipsum*, quasi diceret, "Noli superbire "de tanto honore."[5] Et eo[6] die licuit[7] unicuique de populo dicere victori[8] impune quicquid vellet. Unde et Julio[9] triumphanti multæ dicebantur contumeliæ,[10] nulla tamen[11] ultione subsequente. Nam a quodam dicebatur, "Salve, calve;" et ab alio, "Ave, Rex et "Regina." *Ranulphus.* Vide infra de Julio Cæsare. *In vita Johannis Eleemosynarii.*[12] Quando imperatores coronabantur, venerunt ad eos ædificatores monumentorum, inquirentes[13] de quali metallo[14] seu lapide Cæsar vellet suum monumentum fieri, quasi diceret, "Corruptibilis es, "pie regnum dispone." *Hugutio, capitulo Clarus.* Quando Romani bellum[15] indicere volebant, accedebat aliquis

---

[1] *nimis* after *gloria*, B.
[2] *etiam*] om. B.
[3] *cuicumque*, B.E.
[4] *Nothissilitos*, A.; *Nothiselites*, B.; *Nothisselitos*, C.D.; *Nichoeselitos*, E.
[5] C.D. thus: *Hoc autem duplici fiebat de causa, ne videlicet triumphans sui ipsius obliviscetur, et ut daretur spes cuicumque probo similem honorem consequendi.*
[6] *illo*, B.
[7] *licuit* after *populo*, B.
[8] *triumphanti*, C.D.
[9] *Cæsari aliquotiens sic*, added in C.D.
[10] *multa dicebantur convitia*, C.D.
[11] *absque ulla*, C.D.
[12] R. . . . *Elemosinarii*] om. C.D. which have, in place of it, *Valerius.* The text is correct. See Jac. de Vorag. *Leg. Aur.* c. 27. (p. 130. ed. Lips. 1850.)
[13] *dicentes*, C.
[14] *seu marmore jubet vestra dominatio monumentum fieri*, C.D.
[15] *cuiquam provinciæ*, C.D.

his chare, and smote hym all wey in þe nekke; and þat for tweye skilles; þat oon was, for he schulde nouȝt be proude of þat greet worschippe; þat oþer skile was, for euerich man schulde hope to come to þat worschippe, ȝif he made hym self worþy by his dedes. While þe cherle smoot þe victor, he schulde ofte seie to hym in þis manere: Nothisselitos,[1] þat is to menynge, *Knowe þyself*; as who seiþ, Be nouȝt to proude of þis worschippe. And also þat day euerich man hadde leue to seie to þe victor what euere he wolde, and no blame schulde take.[2] And so were meny dispitous worde[3] i-seide to Iulius Cesar [and he took þerof no maner wreche. On seide to Iulius Cesar][4] at suche[5] a tyme: "Salue, calue;" þat is, "*Hail, ballard;*" and anoþer seide: "Heile, kyng and quene." R. Loke wiþ ynne Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii.* Whan þe emperoures of Rome were i-crowned, come[6] to hem craftes men þat made tombes, and axed[7] of hem of what manere stoon oþer metal þey schulde make her tombes; as who seiþ, "Þow schalt deye;[8] gouerne myldeliche þy peple." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus.* When þe Romaynes wolde werry in eny lond, schulde oon goo to þe endes of þat lond and clere-

TREVISA.

dicion was putte, whiche scholde bobbe besily the victor, and that for two causes. Oon was, That þe victor scholde not be ouer prowde of suche glory; an other was, And also in token that euery man myȝhte comme to the same honor if his manhode extendede labor to that merite. And the seruaunte bobbenge hym seyde ofte tymes, "Knowe thy selfe;" as if he scholde saye, "Be not prowde of this victory." In whiche day hyt was lawefulle to euery man and woman to saye to þe victor after theire pleasure with owte eny peyne. Of somme men hit was saide, "Haile, ballede man;" of somme, "Hayle, kynge." R. Beholde in this processe how thei seyde to Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii.* When emperoures were crownede, makers of graves come to theyme inquirenge of what metalle he wolde his berialle to be made, as if he scholde say, "Thow arte corruptible, dispose the empire mekely." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus.* When the Romanes intendede to ȝiffe batelle to eny cuntre, oon of theyme scholde goe to the costes of theire enmyes and

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 40 b.

[1] So MS. and *a.*; *Notho solitos*, Cx.
[2] *sholde he take therfore*, Cx.
[3] *wordes*, Cx.
[4] The words in brackets added from *a.* and Cx.
[5] *siche*, Cx.
[6] *sholde come*, Cx.
[7] *axe*, Cx.
[8] *deye*] Added from Cx.

ad fines hostium et clara voce causas belli exponebat. Et talis expositio vocabatur clarigatio.[1] Et tunc hasta defixa in finibus hostium principium pugnæ denunciabat. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.*[2] Tempore consulum milites Romani pridie quam pugnarent[3] rosea veste[4] induebantur, quod[5] fiebat ad celandum sanguinem,[6] ne viso sanguine[7] corda militum[8] trepidarent. Inde et[9] rosati dicebantur. *Ranulphus.* Nota[10] hic, secundum Papiam et Hugutionem, quod Virgilius poeta vocat gentem Romanam *togatam*, quia veste toga utebantur. Erat autem triplex toga, videlicet, prætextata, palmata, candidata. Prætextata utebantur filii nobilium usque ad tertium decimum ætatis annum, et postmodum toga. Secunda toga utebantur victores. Tertia toga utebantur magistratus in re publica.[10] *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* Dies quibus bene contigit Romanis vocabantur fasti, eo quod fas erat[11] in illis exercere causas et negotia.[12] Dies vero in[13] quibus male contingebat illis[14] vocabantur nefasti, quasi non fasti;[15] et illos dies malos colebant,[16] non

---

[1] *quæ quidem expositio clarigatio dicebatur*, C.D.

[2] So A.D., rightly; *lib. nono*, E. *cap. xxi.*, B.

[3] *dimicaturi essent*, C.D.

[4] *seu purpurea*, added in C.D.

[5] *hoc autem*, C.D.

[6] *si forsan vulnarentur*, added in C.D.

[7] *viso sanguine*] om. B.

[8] *militum*] om. B.C.D.

[9] *et*] om. A.B.C. (not D.)

[10] *Ranulphus. Nota . . . publica*] om. A.B.C.D.

[11] *esset*, B.C.D.

[12] Transposed, C.D. Partly repeated in B. by error of the scribe.

[13] *in*] om. C.D.

[14] *illis*] om. A.C.D,

[15] *quasi non fasti*] om. C.D.

[16] *et celebrabant*, added in C.D.

liche declare and schewe þe matire and cause of the werre, and þat declaracioun was i-cleped clarigatio.[1] Þanne a spere i-pyȝt in þe ende of þe londe warned þat þe Romayns wolde werre. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, cap. vicesimo secundo.* While consuls ruled Rome, þe knyȝtes of Rome schulde were rede clopes þe day to fore þat þey schulde fiȝte. Þat was i-do for þey schulde not knowe and be abashed, whan þey say þe reed blood renne on hir clopes; and suche knyȝtes were i-cleped Rosati, as it were i-cloped in roses. R. Take hede þat[2] Papy seith, Virgil clepeþ the Romayns togati; þat beeþ men i-cloped in gownes. Þre manere gownes þey vsede and were i-hote, Pretextata,[3] Palmata, Candidata. Þe firste manere gowne, Pretextata, gentil men[4] children vsede for to þey were[5] fouretene ȝere olde; þe secounde manere, Palmata, vsede victoris for here noble dedes; þe þridde manere gowne, Candidata, vsed lordes and maistres[6] of þe lawe. *Hugutio, cap. Fastus.* Þe dayes þat þe Romayns wel spedde heet fasti, þat is, *leful,* for it was[7] leful to hem þylk[8] dayes to vse dyuers doynge and dedes. Dayes[9] þat þe Romaynes mysspedde were i-hote nefasti, as it were *nouȝt leeful,* and [þey] byhelde[10] þilke dayes and wrouȝt nouȝt þilke dayes,[11] but nouȝt for loue and[12] deuocioun, but

Trevisa.

expresse with a clere voice the causes of batelle, and suche an expression was callede a clarigacion. Then the spere of the messengere defixede in to the erthe schewede a prenosticacion and as a begynnenge of fiȝhte. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.* What tyme the consules were reignenge in Rome the knyȝhtes of the Romanes [wente][13] in clothenge of redde in the day a fore they scholde fiȝte, that theire hertes scholde not be in fray or feere to beholde bloode. Wherefore the Romanes were callede Rosati, as clothede in redde. *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* The dayes in whom the Romans hade victory and spedde welle were callede fasti, in so moche that hit was lawefulle to theyme in those daies to exercise theire causes and erneddes. And the dayes in whom hit happede ylle to theyme were callede nefasti, in whom thei worschippede ylle thynges, not for cause of deuocion or of luffe but

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *clarigacion,* Cx.
[2] *what,* Cx.
[3] *Pretaxata,* MS. and Cx.
[4] *gentilmens,* Cx.
[5] *for to were of xiiij.,* Cx.
[6] *maystres rulers,* Cx.
[7] Four words preceding wanting in MS.
[8] So Cx.; þat, MS.
[9] þat dayes, a.; *the dayes,* Cx.
[10] *and they heelde,* Cx.
[11] þilke dayes] om. Cx.
[12] *and*] ne, Cx.
[13] This or some similar word is omitted.

causa devotionis et amoris sed timore[1] infortunii. *Hugutio, capitulo Quinque.*[2] Unde et quinquatria dicuntur illi[3] quinque atri dies, sive festum illorum dierum quos Romani sustinuerunt[4] obsessi a Gallis et ab Hannibale; quibus diebus nullus Romanus audebat egredi urbem.[5] *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* Cum instituisset Romulus[6] rem publicam, divisit populum in duas partes, majores scilicet[7] et minores, et utramque partem vocavit classem a quibusdam classicis, id est, sonis vel signis, quæ[8] inter se distincta habebant. Unde et[9] nobiles dicebantur prima classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem Maium,[10] id est, Majorum. Inferiores dicebantur secunda classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem[10] Junium, quasi Juniorum. Postmodum Romani divisi sunt[11] in quatuor partes, in quarum prima[12] erant consules, dictatores, qui[13] summos tenebant[14] honores. In secunda classi erant[15] tribuni, et qui minores tenebant[16] dignitates. In tertia classe fuerant[17] liberi, in quarta servi.

---

[1] *consimilis,* added in C.D.

[2] 5, C. The versions have the same error.

[3] *illi*] om. B.D.

[4] *sustinuerunt Romani,* A.B.

[5] *ausus fuit,* A.; *urbem egredi,* A.B. The sentence abbreviated and clauses transposed in C.D.

[6] Transposed in A.C.D.

[7] *scilicet*] om. A.

[8] *per quem,* C. (not D.)

[9] *distincta erat.* (sic.) *Nobiles,* C.D. The readings of A. are blundered in the four lines following.

[10] *Maium . . . mensem*] om. C.D.

[11] *dividebantur,* C.D.

[12] *In prima classe erant,* C.D.

[13] *qui*] *et qui,* A.D.

[14] *habebant,* C.D.

[15] *erant*] om. A.B.C.D.

[16] *habebant,* C.

[17] *classe fuerant*] om. B.C.D.; *fuerant* only omitted in A.

for drede of euel happes. *Hugutio, cap. quinto.* Þe feste of þilke dayes is i-cleped *Quinquatria*, þat is, þe fyue bl[a]k[1] dayes, for þe sorwe and þe[2] bitternesse þat þe Romayns mysspedde[3] whan þe Frensche men and Hannibal[4] byseged hem all aboute. For þan no Romayn dorste ones goo out of towne.[5] *Hugutio, cap. Classis.* Whan Romulus hadde ordeyned for the comoun profiȝt, he departed atwynne[6] þe grete and þe mene, and cleped eiþer partie Classis,[7] for certeyne noyse and signes þat þey were by departed, þat we[re] i-cleped classica. And so þe gentil[8] men and noble were i-cleped first þe firste classis. In worschippe of hem[9] he ordeyned a monthe and cleped hym Maius, þat is, þe monþe of þe grete men. Þe mene[10] men were i-cleped þe secounde classis, and in worschipe of hem he ordeyned a monþe, and cleped hym Iunius, þat is, þe monþe of ȝonge[11] men. Afterward þe Romaynes were departed in foure parties. In þe firste partie were consuls and doctoures; in þe secounde classis were tribuni and men of lasse dignite; in þe þridde were fre men; and in þe fourþe

TREVISA.

---

for drede of infortuny. *Hugutio, capitulo quinto.* Of whom quinquatria were namede v. blacke daies, or the feste of those daies in whom the Romanes, besegede of Frenche men and of Hanniball,[4] susteynede mony thynges, in whiche dayes noo Roman hade audacite to go furthe of that cite. *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* When Romulus hade institute the commune vtilite he diuidede the peple in to tweyne parties, into the moore nowble men and lesse nowble, callenge either parte of theyme classis of sowndes and signes whom thei hade distincte amonge theyme selfe. Wherefore the nowble men were callede Prima Classis, the firste companye. In the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Maij, that is, of grete men. The other inferior parte was callede the secunde companye, in the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Iunius, that is to saye, of yonger men. Afterwarde the Romanes were diuidede in to iiij. partes. In the firste parte of whom were consules and men of grete honor. In the secunde parte were tribunes and men of lesse dignite. In the thrydde parte free men; and in

MS. HARL. 2261.

Menses Maii et Junii instituuntur.

---

[1] *black*, Cx.; *blake*, *a*.
[2] *þe*] om. *a*. and Cx.
[3] *mysspedde*] had, Cx.
[4] *Hanybal* or *Hanibal*, MSS. and Cx.
[5] *the toun*, Cx.
[6] *a sondre*, Cx.
[7] Cx. has large omissions here.
[8] *jantil*, *a*.
[9] MS. repeats *in worschippe* after *hem*.
[10] So *a*. and Cx.; *merie*, MS.
[11] *ȝongere*, *a*. and Cx.

Hugutio, capitulo Calon.[1] Consuetum fuit apud Romanos[2] ut in[3] quolibet mense nundinas celebrarent, quæ inciperent[4] prima die nonarum et durarent[5] usque ad primum diem Iduum. Idus namque idem est quod divisio, quia tunc dividebantur a nundinis; verum[6] quia venturi[7] ad nundinas ignorabant frequenter principia[8] mensium, ideo semper prima die mensis (quæ vocabatur pluraliter kalendæ a *calo-las*,[9] quod est *vocare*,) ascendebat præco turrim et totiens clamabat *Calo*,[10] (id est, Voco vos ad nundinas,) quot restabant dies usque[11] ad inceptionem nundinarum;[12] ut, si in quarto die inciperent nundinæ, quater dicebat *Calo*. Inde est quod aliquis mensis in[13] kalendario habet tantum[14] quatuor nonas, aliquis mensis[15] sex nonas. Quod ideo fiebat ut latrones insidiantes mercatoribus in silvis absconsi[16] nescirent, quando forum inciperet. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Milites[17] Romani[18] post sexagesimum ætatis[19] annum non cogebantur militare, sed dabatur illis[20]

---

[1] *cason*, B. The text is correct. Hugut. MS. Cambr. Univ. Libr. has: *Calon* Græce: Latine *lignum*: soon after which follows Higden's extract.

[2] *Romanis*, C.D.

[3] *in*] om. C.D.; *in qualibet*, A. Similar errors of gender occur elsewhere, and are not always recorded.

[4] *incipiebant*, B.C.D. (not A.)

[5] *durabant*, A.B.C.D.

[6] *et*, C.D.; *at*, A.B.

[7] *venientes*, B.

[8] *principium mensis*, A.B.C.D., which last have other very slight variations, just below.

[9] *calo, calas*, C.D.

[10] *Calo*, badly repeated in B.C.D; *calo-las*, A., which is worse.

[11] *usque*] om. C.

[12] *fori*, A.B.C.D.

[13] *sex nonas habet*, C.D., omitting the rest.

[14] *tantum habet*, B.

[15] *mensis*] vero, B.

[16] *absconditi*, C.; *latitantes*, D.

[17] *quondam*, added in A.B.C.D.

[18] *Romani*] om. A.

[19] *ætatis*] om. A.B.C.

[20] *tunc eis*, C.; *eis tunc*, D.

were bonde men. Tribunus is he þat fongeþ[1] tribute, and payeþ kny3tes, and a ledere[2] of a þowsand kny3tes hatte tribunus. *Hugutio, cap. Calon.* Þe Romayns vsed somtyme in eueriche monþe to make a faire, and þe faire bygan þe firste day of þe Nonis,[3] and durede to þe firste day of Idus. Idus is to menynge[4] delynge and departynge; for þan þe feire was departed. Also for þe begynnynge of the monthe was ofte tyme vnknowe of[5] marchaundes and to chapmen, þerfore the firste day of þe monþe þat[6] hatte *Kalende*, of *calo, calas*, þat is, to clepe and crie. A cryour schulde stonde vppon a toure, and as meny dayes as were from þat day to þe bygynnynge of the feire, he schulde crie, "Calo:" þerfore it is þat som[7] monþe in þe kalendere haþ but foure Nonas, and som haþ sixe. And þat was i-doo, for þeffes (þat were[8] i-hud[9] in woodes for to aspye chapmen) schulde not knowe[10] whan þe faire schulde bygnne. *Hugutio, cap. Mereor.* Som tyme kny3tes after þey were sixty wynter[11] olde were no3t compelled forto do deedes of armes; but me[12] 3af hem feldes oþer townes oþer somwhat

Trevisa.

the iiij[the] parte seruauntes. *Hugutio, capitulo Calon.* The Romanes vsede to have feires in euery monethe whiche began in the firste day of Nones durenge vn to the firste day of the Idus. Idus is nou3te elles but a diuision; for then men were diuidede from the feires. And for cause men commenge to the feires were ignoraunte ofte tymes of the begynnenge of the monethe, therfore a bydelle, or the crier of the cite ascendede in to a towre in to the markethe, and seyde so mony tymes, "Calo, calo," (that is to seye, "y calle yow to the feires,") as were dayes vn to the begynnenge of hit; as and if the feires scholde begynne in the iiij[the] day, he scholde saye iiij. tymes calo. Therefore hit is that somme monethe in the calendary hathe iiij. nones oonly; somme monethe vj., whiche was ordeynede for this cause that thefes 3iffenge wacches to marchauntes lyenge priuely in woodes scholde not knowe when the feires scholde begynne. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Somme tyme kny3htes in Rome were not constreynede to exercise the actes of cheuallery after the age of lx. yere; but lyvelode was 3iffen

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *fangeth, a.*; *receyueth*, Cx., as usual.
[2] Cx. adds, *or capitain.*
[3] *Nonas*, Cx.
[4] *is as moche to saye as*, Cx.
[5] *to, a.*, Cx.; the latter omits *of the monthe*, just above.
[6] *þet*, Cx.
[7] *in somme*, Cx. (typ. error.)
[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *we*, MS.
[9] *hidde*, Cx.
[10] *i-knowe*, MS. (not Cx.)
[11] *yere*, Cx.
[12] *men*, Cx.

villa vel ager vel aliquid [1] de re publica unde viverent, et tuno vocabatur miles emeritus,[2] vel emeritæ militiæ,[3] quasi positus extra meritum militiæ.[4 5] *Ranulphus.*[6] Inde quædam taberna trans Tiberim vocabatur[7] Emeritoria, quia ibi milites emeriti[8] symbola sua expendebant.[9] *Hugutio,*[10] *capitulo Nea.*[11] Consuetum fuit apud Romanos[12] ut usque ad horam nonam cives de commodo rei publicæ tractarent,[13] nec alteri delectationi vacarent; unde et meretrices Romanæ vocabantur nonariæ, quia ante horam nonam non licuit eis egredi prostibula sua, ne forte[14] impedirent juvenes ab utilitate rei publicæ. *Hugutio, capitulo Nepa.*[10] Olim pueri Romani non tradebantur patribus propriis ad erudiendum seu nutriendum, quia præsumebatur quod præ nimia affectione eos non verberarent;[15] nec etiam tradebantur magistris omnino ignotis,[16] eo quod extra-

---

[1] *quippiam,* added in C.D.

[2] *dicebantur milites emeriti,* C.D.

[3] *vel emeritæ militiæ*] om. C.D.

[4] Transposed in A.B.C.D.

[5] *quia nil postea ex militia merebantur,* added in C.D.

[6] *Ranulphus*] om. C. (not D.)

[7] *dicebatur,* A.; *videtur dici,* D.

[8] *emeriti*] om. B.

[9] So A.B.; transposed in E.; slightly altered in C.D.

[10] *Hugutio . . . Nepa*] om. C. (not D.)

[11] *Stea,* A.B.; *Sta,* D. The text is correct. Hugutio's section begins: *Nea Græci dicunt novem;* soon after which follows Higden's extract.

[12] *apud Romanos*] om. A.B.

[13] *disputarent,* A.B.; *tractare et disputare,* D. (omitting *ut*), which proceeds thus: *nec licebat quenquam ante illam horam delectationibus vacare; unde et,* &c.

[14] *forsan,* D.

[15] *dilectione nollent filios verberare,* C.D. (with other very slight alterations.) The readings of C.D. agree more nearly with Hugutio's text (cap. *Nepa*).

[16] *omnino extraneis magistris,* C.D.; *extraneis,* A.B.

elles of [1] þe comyn tresorie, wherby þei schulde leue. And þan suche a kny3t was i-cleped *Emeritus* (oþer Emeryte) *militie*, as it were a kny3t i-sett out of þe myddel [2] dedes of chyualrie. R. Þerfore Achanarii [3] þat is by-3onde Tyber heet Emeritoria; for [4] kny3tes spended [5] þare what þey hadde raþer [6] i-gadered and i-wonne. *Hugutio, cap. Sita.*[7] Hit was vsage in Rome þat þe citezeyns schulde doo nou3t [8] elles to fore none but despute of þe comyn profit: [9] þerfore comyn wommen of Rome were i-cleped *Nonarie*, for þey schulde nou3t to fore none goon oute of [10] here comoun place, leste þey schulde lette 3onge men from the comyn profi3te. *Hugutio, cap. Nepa.* Somtyme in Rome fader and moder schulde nou3t norische and teche hire owne children; for me supposed [11] þat he [12] wolde be to tendre of hem [13] and nou3t chast [14] hem and bete hem to sore.[15] [Neyther maystres that were al straunge and out of the kynne shold teche childeren of Rome, lest they wold

TREVISA.

to theyme, or somme goodes of thynges commune whereby thei my3hte lyffe, and then the kny3hte was callede Emeritus, as putte with owte the merite of cheuallery. R. Wherefore a tauerne ouer Tiber was callede Emeritoria, where kny3htes put with owte merite of cheuallery spende theire goodes. *Hugutio, capitulo Scea.* Also a consuetude was amonge Romanes that the citesynnes scholde dispute of the commune profette vn tylle none: and not attende to eny other delectacion. Wherefore the harlottes at Rome were callede *nonariæ*, for hit was not lawefulle to theyme to passe theire places, leste they scholde lette yonge men from the commune vtilite. *Hugutio, capitulo Nepa.* Somme tyme children in Rome were not taken to theire faders to lerne or to be noryschede, for hit was presumede that the faders wolde not chastise theire children for the grete luffe that they wolde schewe to theyme; neither thei wyllede not their children to be taken to maistres that were not of theire kynrede, for a

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *of*] So *a.* and Cx.; *for*, MS.
[2] *medful, a.*; *nedeful*, Cx.
[3] *Anatarij*, Cx.
[4] *for suche*, Cx.
[5] *spende, a.*
[6] *to fore gotten*, Cx.
[7] *lita*, Cx.
[8] *not*, Cx.
[9] *profi3t, a.*
[10] *of*] to, Cx.
[11] *for it was supposed*, Cx.
[12] *they*, Cx.
[13] *of hem*] om. Cx.
[14] *chastyse*, Cx. (omitting *hem.*)
[15] *to sore*] om. Cx.

neus parum curat de extraneo.[1] Sed tradebantur patruis,[2] qui non nimis propinqui nec nimis remoti erant.[3] *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* Erant in urbe proletarii, qui causa gignendæ prolis[4] semper in urbe morabantur, nec exire ad arma cogebantur.[5] *Ranulphus.* Tempore tamen Hannibalis cogebantur tales exire ad arma propter militum penuriam.[6] *Valerius, libro secundo.*[7] Ab urbe condita usque ad centesimum sexagesimum annum divortium nullum[8] inter conjuges fuerat.[9] Primus tamen Carbilius Spurius[10] uxorem suam[11] duntaxat[12] causa sterilitatis dimisit; qui, quamvis ratione motus videretur, reprehensione tamen non caruit, quia cupiditatem liberorum fidei conjugali præposuit. *Isidorus,*[13] *libro sexto.* Quamvis Græci primum cum stylis ferreis in cera scripserunt, Romani tamen statuerunt[14] ut nullus stylo ferreo sed tantum[15] osseo scriberet. *Pol.,*[16] *libro secundo.* Siquis[17] ab initio urbis[18] con-

---

[1] *quia extranei parum curant de extraneis,* C.D.

[2] C.D. add *et avunculis.*

[3] Slightly altered in C.D. For *non* A. has *nec.*

[4] *gignendorum liberorum,* C.B.

[5] Transposed in A.B.C.D.

[6] *coacti sunt ad bellum exire,* C.D.; *coacti sunt exire propter penuriam militum,* A.B.

[7] *primo,* B.; *quarto,* D. The text is correct. See Val. Max., lib. ii. c. 1. § 4.

[8] *nullum divortium,* B.

[9] *fuit,* A.; *virum et mulierem fuit,* C.D. (with other very slight alterations.)

[10] *autem Spurius Carbilius,* C.D., more correctly.

[11] *suam*] om. A.B.

[12] *dumtaxat*] om. C.D. (with slight alterations just afterwards); transposed in A.B.

[13] *Etymologia,* added in C.D.

[14] *interdixerunt,* C.D. (with slight alterations just before.)

[15] *tantum*] om. C.D.

[16] So A.B.; *Plinius,* C.D.; *Valerius,* E. The true reference is to *Johan. Sarisb. Polycrat.,* lib. ii. c. 15.

[17] *Si qui,* C.D.

[18] *urbis totam,* A.

recche to lytel of the childeren, and bete hem to sore].[1] Þerfore maistres schulde teche þe children of Rome þat were nouȝt to nyȝ, oþer[2] to fer of hire own kin. *Hugutio, cap. Proles.* Þere were som tyme men[3] in Rome þat serued of nouȝt elles but for to gete[4] children and dwelle[5] all wey in þe citee, and were noȝt compelled to doo dedes of armes. And suche men were i-cleped *proletarii*, þat is geteris[6] of children. R.[7] Neuerþeles in Hannibals tyme þey were i-constreyned for to goo out of[8] skarsnesse of knyȝtes. *Valerie, libro secundo.* An hundred ȝere and sixti after þat þe citee was i-buld was no deuors i-made bytwene a man and his wyf. Neuerþeles Carbilius, a bastard, was þe firste þat lifte[9] his wif, onliche for þe womman was bareyne. Þei he semed i-meued of resoun, ȝit he was nouȝt al blameles: for he putte couetise of children to fore þe fey[10] of wedlock. *Isidorus, libro sexto.* Þey þe Grees write first yn wex wiþ poynteles of yren, the Romayns ordeyned þat no man schulde write wiþ poynteles of yren but wiþ poyntels of boon. *Pol., libro secundo.* Who þat wil[11] loke bookes of stories among all men þat

TREVISA.

---

straungeour ȝiffe the litelle attendaunce of an other straungeour; but thei were of theire kynne, as vncles to theyme, whiche were not ouer nye to theyme neiþer ouer ferre from theyme. *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* There were men in the cite of Rome whiche taryede in the cite for multiplicacion of childer, and were not coacte to goe furthe to batelles. R. Neuerthelesse they were coacte in the tyme of Hannibal for pennury of knyȝhtes. *Valerius, libro secundo.* From the cite made unto clx. yere folowenge was movede noo diuorce. The firste man. inducenge hit was callede Carbilius,[12] a bastarde, whiche departede from his wife be cause that sche hade not childer, whiche hade schame and reprove ynowe for hit, whiche sette before the luffe of childre to the luffe of matrimony. *Isidorus, libro sexto.* Thauȝhe the Grekes did wryte ffirste in wexes with poyntelles, neuerthelesse the Romanes ordeynede that noo man scholde wryte with an instrument of irne, but made of boon. *Policronicon,*[13] *libro secundo.* If a man reuolve in his mynde

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 41 b.

---

[1] The sentence in brackets added from Cx., whose orthography is retained. It is omitted in *a*.
[2] *noþer, a.*; *ne,* Cx.
[3] *men*] om. Cx.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *geten,* MS.
[5] *dwellyd,* Cx.
[6] *geters, a.,* Cx.
[7] R.] Added from Cx.
[8] *for, a.*
[9] *lefte, a.,* Cx.
[10] *feyth,* Cx.
[11] *wole, a.*
[12] *Scarbilius,* Harl. MS.
[13] So written at length in Harl. MS., for *Polycraticon*; the same confusion occurs in the title of Higden's work.

ditæ totam revolvat historiam, inveniet[1] Romanos præ cæteris gentibus ambitione et avaritia laborasse, seditionibus et plagis totum orbem concussisse,[2] in tantum ut vix quisquam principum suorum ad exitum vitæ natura ducente pervenerit.[3] Præterea Romanus omnis aut adulatione corrumpit aut corrumpitur.[4] Certe si non verbis possunt[5] tamen fraudulentis muneribus expugnari, et quos[6] munuscula non dejiciunt honoribus certe captivantur. [7]*Pol., libro quinto, capitulo undecimo.* Italiæ urbes, dum pacem diligunt, justitiam colunt, et a perjuriis abstinent, gaudio[8] perfruuntur; cum vero prolabuntur ad fraudes et schismata, statim vel fastum Romanorum[9] vel furorem Teutonicorum[10] aliudve Domini flagellum persentiunt, donec per pœnitentiam conterantur. Merita namque[11] populi illius aut[12] evacuant omnem principatum, aut principem faciunt mitiorem.

---

[1] *inveniet* after *laborasse*, B.; before it, A.D.

[2] *convixisse*, B.

[3] So A.B.; *pervenit*, E.; slightly transposed in C.

[4] Verbs transposed in C.D.

[5] *possint*, B.; *tamen* omitted in A.

[6] *et quos*] ex quo, B.

[7] *Item*, added in C.D. The true reference is to the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury, lib. iv. c. 11.

[8] *gl̃a* (*gloria*), C.; *gladio*, D. (for *gaudio?*)

[9] *statum Romanum*, C.; *fastum Romanum*, D.

[10] *Theutonicum*, C.; *Teutonicum*, D.

[11] *nam*, A.

[12] *illius aut*] juste vel, C.; illius vel, D.

were sippe Rome was first sette,[1] he schal fynde þat þe Romayns were most couetous and proude, he schal fynde also þat þe maistrie[2] þat þey hadde in þe world aboute þey gete[3] it by punyschynge of peple[4] by false wiles and by gile so fer forþ þat vnneþe eny of hir princes leuede his lyf kyndeliche to þe[5] ende. Þerfore euerych Romayn ouercomeþ[6] oþer is ouercome wiþ flaterynge and wiþ[7] faire wordes; and ȝif wordes failleþ, ȝiftes[8] schal hym awelde; ȝif ȝiftes failleþ, worschip makeþ hym prisoner. *Pol., libro septimo, capitulo undecimo.* While þe citees of Italia loueþ pees and worschippeþ[9] riȝtwisnesse and leueth false oþes, þan þey haueþ[10] likynge and welþe in here owne lond. But whan þey ȝeueþ[11] hem to falshede and to stryf, anon þe pride of[12] Romayns, oþer þe woodnesse of Duches[13] men, oþer som oþer wrecche of God all myȝti[14] falleþ vppon hem for to þey[15] amende her lyf[16] by penaunce of[17] contricioun. For trespas of þat peple putteþ awey al principalte, oþer makeþ here prynce more mylde. TREVISA.

alle the storye ffrom the begynnenge of Rome, he schal fynde the Romanes and other peple to have laborede in ambicion and auarice, in so moche in that noo prince of þe empire lyvede vnnethe after the naturalle course of his life, but thei were destroyede by fiȝhte. *Policronicon, libro septimo, capitulo septuagesimo primo.*[18] While the men of Italy lyve in peace, thei luffe ryȝhteuousenes and absteyne from periury. But when they falle to fraudes and diuision they fele other the pride off the Romanes or cruelnesse of men of Allemeyne, or somme other peyne or punyschenge of God, tylle thei be contrite by penaunce. For other that peple avoide euery principate, other elles thei make the prynce moore meke. MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *made*, Cx.
[2] *maistry*, *a*.
[3] *gate*, Cx.
[4] *puple*, *a*.
[5] *his*, *a*., Cx.
[6] *that ouercometh*, Cx.
[7] *wiþ*] om. *a*. (not Cx.)
[8] *yeftes*, Cx.
[9] *worschepeþ*, *a*. ; *worshipped*, Cx., more correctly, who has also *loued*, and *leued*.
[10] *had*, Cx.
[11] *yeue*, Cx.
[12] *of the*, Cx.
[13] *Duche*, Cx.
[14] *almyȝti*, *a*.
[15] *vnto the tyme they*, Cx.
[16] *her lyf*] om. Cx.
[17] *of*] and, Cx.
[18] The reference given thus at length in Harl. MS.

Cap. XXVI.

De Germania et ejus partibus.[1]

Isidorus tradit quod[2] Germania proprie dicta habet[3] ab ortu ostium Danubii fluminis, ab austro Rhenum fluvium, a septentrione et occasu oceanum. Est autem[4] duplex Germania; superior,[5] quæ se extendit ad Alpes juxta[6] sinum maris mediterranei,[7] quod Adriaticum dicitur, ubi mare sistitur in Aquileiæ partibus per paludes; alia[8] Germania, inferior, versus occidentem sistit[9] circa Rhenum,[10] quæ[11] communiter Alemannia sive[12] Teutonia[13] dicitur. Multi namque[14] in utraque Germania sunt populi et provinciæ, utpote Boemia, Westfalia, Bavaria,[15] Thuringia, Suevia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lotharingia,[16] Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*[17] Verum quia septentrionalis[18] plaga quanto ab æstu solis fit[19] remotior, tanto propagandis nutriendisque[20] populis salubrior; sicut e contra meridiana plaga[21] quanto soli vicinior, tanto[22]

---

[1] *Isidorus, libro* 19, A.; 9°, B.C. (not D.) The true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 4.

[2] *Isidorus . . . quod*] om. B.D.

[3] *Germania proprie sumpta ab ortu*, C.D. (with other slight variations.)

[4] *Et est*, C.D.

[5] *scilicet*, added in A.B.

[6] *juxta Alpes usque ad sinum*, B.C.D.; and so A., omitting *usque*.

[7] *magni*, A.B.

[8] *est* added in B.

[9] *sistitur*, C. (not D.)

[10] *Thenum*, C.; *Renum*, B.

[11] *qui*, C.D.

[12] *seu*, B.C.

[13] *Teutonica*, B.

[14] *namque*] om. C.; nempe, A.B.

[15] *Gavarria*, C.; *Bavarria*, E. Some of the names following are written with slight variations in the MSS.

[16] *Lothoringia*, MSS.

[17] *Paulus...quinto*] om. C.; *capitulo quinto*, om. A.B.D. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1., which is copied almost *verbatim* as far as *alere sufficiat*.

[18] *etiam* added in C. (not D.)

[19] *est*, C. (not D.)

[20] *et nutriendis*, C. (not D.)

[21] *regio*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

[22] *enim* after *tanto* in E.; not in A.B.C.D.

De Germania et eius prouinciis. Capitulum vicesimum sextum. TREVISA.

Isid. Eth. quarto decimo. Ysidre [1] seiþ þat verray Germania haþ in þe est side þe mouth of þe ryuer Danubius, in þe south þe Ryne [2] þat ryuer, and in þe north and in þe west þe see of Occean. Þere beeþ tweie londes, eiþer hatte Germania; þe ouer Germania [3] strecchеþ by sides Alpes to þat mouþ and coost of þe grete see þat hatte Adriaticus; þere þe see [4] is as it were lakes yn þe contrayes of Aquila.[5] Þe oþer Germania is lower, toward þe west about the Reyne,[6] and is comounliche i-cleped Almania oþer Teutonia. In eiþer Germania beeþ many prouinces and londes, þat beeþ Boemia, Westfalia, Bauarria, Thuryngia, Sueuia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo.* Þe north contrey is fer from þe hete of þe [7] sonne, and holsom for men to wone [8] yn, and able to brynge forþ children. Þerfore it is þat þere is more multiplicacioun and encrese of men and children in þe norþ contray þan in þe south, þat is ful nyh þe

[1] *Isidorus*, Cx.
[2] *ryuer*, MS.; *Ryn*, Cx.
[3] *þe ouer Germania*] om. MS.
[4] *se, a.*
[5] *Aquylia*, Cx.
[6] *Ryne, a.*, Cx.
[7] *hete of þe*] om. Cx.
[8] *a.* adds, *and dwelle.*

Of Allemeyne or Germany and of þe provinces of hit. Capitulum vicesimum sextum. Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro nono. MS. HARL. 2261.

ISIDORUS rehersethe that Germany, or Allemeyne properly seyde, hathe on the este to hit the durre of the floode callede Danubius, on the sowthe the floode callede Renus, of the northe and the weste the occean. There be ij. Germanyes; the superior whiche extendethe vn to Alpes to the bosom of the grete see that is callede the see Adriatike. And the inferior Germany, towarde the weste, is abowte the floode callede Renus, whiche is callede communely Almayne. There be mony peple in either Germany, and prouinces, as Boemia, Westefalia, Bauarrea, Turingea, Sveuia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro quinto.* For the northerne plage, in as moch as hit is more removede from hete, in so moche hit is more hollesome for childer to be gendrede and to be noryschede. Hyt is in contrary wise of the plage meridian; for in as moche Alemannia.

languoribus obnoxior. Inde fit ut tantæ[1] populorum multitudines arctico[2] sub axe oriantur, ut non[3] immerito omnis illa regio a Tanai[4] usque ad occiduum,[5] quamvis[6] propriis[7] singula loca vocentur[8] nominibus, generaliter tamen Germania vocatur, quia tot germinat populos quot vix alere sufficiat. Inde est quod totiens ab ea parte mundi gentes sunt egressæ, aut videlicet sorte emissæ aut non sponte captivatæ, aut[9] ad cæteras nationes subigendas ultro progressæ, sicut patuit aliquando[10] de Hunis, Gothïs, Wandalis, Saxonibus, Wynnulis,[11] Longobardis.

De Boemia. Boemia, prima orientalis Germaniæ[12] provincia, habet ab oriente[13] Mœsiam et Alanos, a meridie Danubium et Pannoniam, ab occidente Bavariam et Thuringiam, a septentrionali circio[14] Saxones. Fere undique circumsepta est montibus et silvis; abundat quoque herbis pascualibus et aromaticis,[15] necnon[16] feris et[17] bestiis, inter quas est quoddam animal cornibus et corpore bovi valde persimile,[18] quod lingua Boemica[19] *leoz*[20] vocatur;[21] suis tamen cornibus[22] se non defendit, sed in amplo folliculo quod sub mento gestat[23] aquam colli-

[1] *tantæ*] So A.B.C.D.; *tantum*, E.
[2] *arto*, C.D. (*arctoo*, Paulus.)
[3] *non*] om. C. (not D.)
[4] *fluvio* added in C.D.
[5] *oceanum*, C. (not D.)
[6] *licet*, C.D.
[7] *ad* added in C.D.
[8] *nuncupentur*, C.; *nuncupantur*, D.; *loca vocentur*, B.
[9] *quod* added in A.C.D.
[10] *quondam*, C.D.; om. A.B.
[11] *sive* added in C.D.
[12] *Germaniæ orientalis*, A.B.
[13] *ortu*, C.D.
[14] So E. *septentrione. Circio Saxanes* (sic), A.; *septentrione circio*, D. Perhaps *septentrione et circio* is the true reading. See Trevisa.
[15] Transposed in B.
[16] *ac*, B.; *nec feris nec*, A., absurdly.
[17] *et*] om. C.
[18] *simile bovi*, C.D.
[19] *Boemetica*, B.
[20] So E.D.; *Leor*, C.; *Boez*, B. *Loz*, A. The text is perhaps corrupt. The modern Polish name of the Auroch (*Bison Europæus*), which appears to be intended, is *Zubr*, or *Subr*. See *Penny Cycl.*, s.v. Ox.
[21] *dicitur*, C.D.
[22] *cum insectatur*, added in C.D.
[23] *gerit*, B.

sonne, and vnholsom and siklewe for men to wonye ynne. And so þey eueriche londe and contray haue his owne propre name, noþeles[1] al þe contray and lond from the ryuer Tanais anon to þe west hatte Germania; for he gendreþ and bryngeth forth mo[2] men and children þan þey[3] may wel susteyne. Þerfore hit is þat so ofte goþ dyuers men out of þat side of þe world ynto oþer londes, oþer[4] by lot, oþer aȝenst hir wille, oþer by here good wille for to wynne and[5] gete oþere londes. So dede Gothy, Wandaly, Saxones, Wynuly, and Longobardi. Boemya is þe firste prouince of þat[6] ester[7] Germania, and haþ in þe est side Mesia[8] and Alania, in þe souþ þe ryuer Danubius and Pannonia, in þe west Bauaria and Thuringia,[9] and in þe north and northwest Saxonia, and is i-closed al most all[10] aboute wiþ hilles and wodes, and haþ grete[11] plente of lese and of gras þat[12] smelleþ ful swete, and of dyuerse wylde bestes, among þe whiche is oo[13] beste, and hatte *boz* in þe langage of Boemia, but he deffendeþ nouȝt hymself with his hornes, but he haþ a large ryuel, as it were a bagge, vnder þe chynne; þeryn he gadereth water and

Trevisa.

as hit is more nye to the son, in so moche hit is more nyous to nature. Wherefore alle that region from Thanay unto þe weste, thauȝhe euery place be namede by theire propre names, generally thei be callede Germany, for that londe gendrethe so mony peple that hit may vnnethe suffise to norysche theyme. That causede so mony peple to haue goen from hit, as Hunes, Gothes, Wandalynges, Saxones, Winuli and Longobardes. Boemia is the firste prouince of esturne Germanye, hauenge on the este parte to hit Mesia,[8] of the weste Danuby and Pannony, of the meridien Bauarria and Thuringia, of the northe weste Saxones, allemoste compassede abowte with hilles and woodes, beynge habundante in yerbes and pastures and mony wilde bestes. Amonge whom is a beste like to an oxe in body and in hornes, whiche is callede in their langage *loz*, whiche defendethe hym not with his hornes, but gedrethe water in a grete voide place vnder

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *netheles*, Cx.
[2] *moo*, *a*.
[3] *it*, Cx.
[4] *oþer*] om. Cx., who has *or* below.
[5] *wynne and*] om. Cx.
[6] *þe*, *a*., Cx.
[7] *este*, Cx.
[8] *Misia*, MSS. (as usual.)
[9] *Thurynga*, MS., here and below (not so always *a*. or Cx.)
[10] *all*] om. Cx.
[11] *agreete*, *a*.
[12] So Cx. (*that*); *and*, MS., *a*.
[13] *o beste*, *a*.; *bestes*, MS.; *one beeste*, Cx.

git,[1] quam currendo multum [2] calefacit, et super insequentes venatores [3] et canes projicit, sicque approximantes sibi mirabiliter depilat et exurit.[4]

De Thuringia. Thuringia habet ab ortu Boemiam, ab occidente Franconiam, a septentrione Westfaliam, ab austro Danubium fluvium.[5]

De Franconia. Franconia est quasi[6] media Germaniæ provincia, habetque ad ortum[7] sui[8] Thuringiam, ad occasum[9] Sueviam, ad aquilonem partem Westfaliæ, ad austrum[10] Bavariam et Danubium.

De Bavaria. Bavaria habet ad ortum[11] Danubium,[12] ad occidentem Sueviam, ad aquilonem Franconiam, ad austrum partem Danubii et Rhæticam.[13]

De Westfalia. Westfalia habet ad ortum Saxones,[14] ad occasum Frisiam, ad aquilonem oceanum, ad austrum partem Franconiæ et Sueviæ.

De Suevia. Suevia habet ad ortum sui[15] Bavariam, ad occidentem Rhenum fluvium,[16] ab aquilone[17] partem Franconiæ, ad austrum Rhæticam et[18] Alpes.

De Saxonia. Saxonia habet ab ortu Alanos,[19] ab occasu[20] Westfaliam, a septentrione[21] oceanum, ab austro Thuringiam. *Isidorus,*[22] *libro quarto decimo.* Saxonum gens ad septentrionales fines oceani constituta virtute et

---

[1] *recolligit*, A.C.D.
[2] *valde*, B.C.D.
[3] *venatores*] Added from B.C.D.
[4] So A.B.; *depilat atque urit*, C. D; *depilat et*, om. E.
[5] *fluvium*] om. A.B.C.D.
[6] *quædam*, D.
[7] *ab ortu*, C.D.
[8] *sui*] om. C.D.
[9] *ab occasu*, B.C. (not D.)
[10] *ab austro*, C.D.
[11] *ab ortu*, C.D.
[12] *Bavaria . . . Danubium*] om. B. (by error of scribe.) The readings of A. are blundered through omissions
[13] *et Rhæticam*] om. C.D.
[14] *ab ortu Saxoniam*, B.
[15] *sui*] om. C.D.
[16] *fluvium*] om. B.C.D.
[17] *ad aquilonem*, C.D.
[18] *Rheticam et*] om. C.D.
[19] *Slavos*, B.
[20] *occidente*, D.
[21] *septentrionale parte*, B.
[22] *Etymol.*, added in C. (not D.)

hetep it in his rennynge scladeng [1] hoot, and prowep it vppon hunteres and houndes pat pursewep hym, and scaldep of pe heere of hem [2] and brennep hem ful sore. Thuryngia [3] hap in pe est side Boemia, in pe west Franconia, in pe norp Westfalia, and in pe soup pe ryuer Danubius. Franconia is, as it were, pe myddel prouynce of Germania, and hap in pe est side Thuryngia,[3] in pe west Sueuia, in pe norp a party [4] of Westfalia, and in pe soup Bauaria and pe ryuer Danubius. Bauaria hap in pe est pe ryuer Danubius [5] and Retica.[6] Westfalia hap in pe est side Saxonia, in pe west Frisia, in pe norp occean, in pe soup a party of Fraunce [7] and of Sueuia. Sueuia hap in pe est Bauaria, in pe west pe ryuere pat hatte pe Ryne, in pe north a party of Franconia, and in pe south Retica and Alpes. Saxonia hap in pe est Alania, yn pe west Westfalia, in pe north occean, and in pe soup Thuringia.[8] *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Men of Saxonia wonep toward pe norp endes of occean, and beep bope liȝter [9] and strenger pan oper

TREVISA.

---

his chynne, whiche makenge the water hoote, in rennenge castethe [10] hyt on hunters and on dogges folowenge hit, hurtenge theyme soore with that water. Thuringia hathe on the este to hit Boemia, on the weste Franconia, on the northe Westefalia, on the sowthe Danubyus. Franconia is as the myddelle prouince of Germayne, hauenge on the este to hit Thuringia, at the weste Sweuia, at the northe parte of Westefalia, at the sowthe Bauarria and Danubius. Bauarria hathe on the este to hit Danubius, at the weste Sweuia, at the northe Franconia, at the sowthe parte of Danuby and Rethica. Westefalia hathe on the este to hit Saxones, at the weste Frisia, at the northe the occean, and at the sowthe parte of Franconia and of Sueuia. Sveuia hathe at the este of hit Bauarria, at the weste Renum, at the northe parte of Franconia, at the sowthe Rethica and Alpes. Saxonia hathe on the weste to hit Westfalia, on the northe the occean, on pe sowthe Thuringia. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* The peple of Saxones whiche be moore nowble in vertu and agilite not oonly on londe, but

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 42. b.

---

[1] *scald, a.*; *skalding,* Cx., which is probably alone right.
[2] So Cx.; *hym,* MS.
[3] *Thurynga,* MS., here and below (not so always *a.* or Cx.).
[4] So Cx.; *of a party,* MS. and *a.*
[5] Eight words preceding wanting n MS.
[6] So *a.* and Cx.; *Ratica,* MS.; *Rethica* below.
[7] Some words repeated in MS.
[8] Cx. omits the last clause of the foregoing, and much of the following sentence.
[9] *ben more lighter,* Cx.
[10] *castetethe,* Harl. MS.

agilitate præstantior quam cæteri piratæ, non solum per terras, sed etiam per mariá, suis hostibus est infesta; unde et Saxones, quasi saxei et duri ac[1] importabiles sunt vocati;[2] in quorum montanis[3] omnia pene metallorum genera excepto stanno[4] sunt effossa.[5] Germania[6] etiam fontes habet[7] salsos, ex quibus sal albissimum conficitur, et[8] juxta illum[9] montem ubi cuprum effoditur est mons magnus, cujus lapides redolent sicut violæ.[10] Et juxta cenobium Sancti Michaelis invenitur marmor pulcherrimum.[6] *Beda, libro quarto, cap. vicesimo quinto.*[11] Antiqui Saxones ducem non habent,[12] sed satrapas plurimos genti suæ præpositos, qui ingruente belli articulo[13] mittunt æqualiter sortes, et[14] quemcunque[15] sors ostenderit[16] hunc tempore belli[17] ducem sequuntur,[18] peractoque bello rursus æqualis potestatis omnes satrapæ fiunt.[19]

De Frisia. Frisia,[20] secundum Plinium, est[21] regio super littus[22] occidentalis oceani sita; ab austro incipit a[23] Rheno

---

[1] *saxei duri et*, C.D. (with other very slight variations above); *et*, A.B.

[2] *dicti sunt*, C.D.

[3] *montana*, B.

[4] *stagno*, MSS.

[5] *effossa*] om. E.; *effodiuntur*, C.D.; *genera*, om. B.

[6] *Germania . . . . pulcherrimum*, om. C.D.

[7] *habet fontes*, B.

[8] *et*] om. A.B.

[9] *illum*] om. A.B.

[10] *sicut violæ*] So A.B.; *violæ sicut*, E.

[11] The true reference is to lib. v. c. 10. D. has no reference.

[12] *non habent regem*, A.B.C. (and Bede.)

[13] *bello*, B.

[14] *ut*, C. (not D.)

[15] *cuicumque*, B.

[16] *evenerit*, B.

[17] *omnes*, added in C.D., and in Bede's text.

[18] *sequentur*, A.

[19] *sunt omnes satrapæ*, B.

[20] *Plinius* prefixed in A.B.; *Plinius, libro 5°*, C. No reference in D., which has *Frigia*.

[21] *secundum Plinium est*] om. B. C.D.

[22] *sub litus*, B.

[23] *a*] om. A.

skymours[1] of þe see, and pursewep her enemyes ful hard bope by water and by lond, and hatte Saxones of saxum,[2] þat is, *a stoon*, for þey beep hard as stones and vnesy to fare wiþ. In þe hulles of Saxonia is wel nyȝ all manere metal i-digged, outakyn[3] tyn. In Germania beep salt welles, of þe whiche wellis is salt i-made as white[4] as any[5] snowe. Fast by þe[6] hille þat coper is i-digged ynne is a greet hille of stones; of þat hille [the stones][7] smellep swete as violet. Also faste by þe mynystre[8] of Seint Michel is marbil i-founde þe fairest þat may be. *Beda, libro* [*quinto*], *capitulo vicesimo quinto.* Þe olde Saxones haue no kyng, but meny knyȝtes of here owne rulep hem;[9] but in tyme of bataille þei castep lott whiche of here knyȝtes schal be ledere and cheveteyn, and folwep him þat is so i-chose by lott[10] as cheef lorde and maister durynge þe bataille; but whan þe bataile[11] is i-doo, þan schal he be as he was raþer,[12] he and opere knyȝtes al i-liche[13] greet of power and of myȝt. *Plinius, libro quinto.* Frisia is a lond vppon þe clyue[14] of þe west occean, and bygynnep

TREVISA.

also on the see, is moche contrarious to theire enmyes. Wherefore thei be callede Saxones, as importable and harde as a ston. In the hilles or mownteynes of whom allemoste alle kyndes of metalles be founde, tynne excepte. Also Germayne hathe salte welles, of whom white salte is made. Also nye to the hille where copur is geten is a grete hille, the stones of whom smelle lyke violettes. Also feire marbole is founde in the hille nye to the Abbay of Seynte Michael. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo quinto.* The olde Saxones vsede not a kynge but other men in worschippe; which perceyvenge batelle to be inducede made a gouernoure to theyme after as the chaunce scholde ffalle, whom thei folowede in tyme of batelle. The batelle doen, alle the nowble men were of egalle honor. *Plinius, libro quinto.* Frisia is a region sette on the brynke of the weste ocean, takenge begynnenge of

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *scommers or theuys*, Cx.
[2] *saxon*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[3] *outake*, *a.*; *founden*, *reserued tyn*, Cx.
[4] *whiȝt*, *a.*
[5] *ony*, Cx. (and so often.)
[6] *that*, Cx.
[7] Added from Cx., who varies the sentence a little.
[8] *monasterye*, Cx.
[9] *hem*] om. Cx.
[10] *whiche of . . . lott*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[11] Four words omitted in MS.
[12] *byfore; that is to wete, he, &c.*, Cx.
[13] *alle lyche*, Cx., who omits *knyȝtes.*
[14] *coste*, Cx.

fluvio,[1] et mari Danico terminatur, cujus viri circulariter tonduntur, et quanto nobiliores sunt, tanto celsius tonsorantur. Gens quidem fortis,[2] proceri corporis, animi ferocis, lanceis utens pro sagittis; libertatem summe zelat;[3] ideo nullum qui eis dominetur in militem erigi sinunt. Judicibus tamen[4] subsunt, quos annuatim de seipsis eligunt; pudicitiam[5] zelant; liberos suos[6] diligenter custodiunt;[7] quos[8] non ante vicesimum quartum annum nubere permittunt; unde et[9] contingit robustam sobolem procreari. Lignis carent, proinde[10] glebas et cespites ad ignem ponunt.[11]

De Selandia.

Selandia, terra modica et maritima, instar insulæ marinis brachiis circumdata, ad ortum habet Hollandiam, ad septentrionem Frisiam, ad occasum oceanum, ad austrum Flandriam. Cincta est aggeribus in cir-

---

[1] *fluvio*] om. A.B.C.D.
[2] *fortis*] om. A.
[3] *zelant*, C.D., which is perhaps better.
[4] *tamen judicibus*, A.
[5] *prudentiam*, C. (not D.)
[6] *et suos*, A.
[7] *custoditos*, A.B.C.D.
[8] *quos*] om. A.B.C.D.
[9] *et*] om. A.C.D.
[10] *iccirco*, C.D.; *et proinde*, A.
[11] *incendunt*, A.B.C.D.

in þe souþ side from þe Ryne, and endeþ at þe see of Denmark.[1] Men of Frisia beeþ i-schore[2] aboute, and euir[3] þe more gentil man and noble þe hiȝer he is i-schore. Þe men beþ faire of body and cruel and bolde of herte, and vsed[4] speres in stede[5] of arwes, and loueþ fredom most of eny þing. Þerfore þey suffreþ no man be a knyȝt þat wil be her lorde. Neuerþeles þey beeþ gouerned and ruled by domesmen and iuges, and euerich ȝere þey[6] cheseþ of hem self her owne iuges. Þey loueþ wel chastite, and kepeþ besiliche here children, and suffreth hem nouȝt to wyfe[7] wiþ ynne[8] foure and twenty ȝere.[9] Þerfore þey haueþ stalworþe[10] children and stronge; þey haueþ none wodes,[11] þerfore þey makeþ hem fuyre of torues.[12] Selandia is a litel lond vppon þe see, [whiche renneth thurgh the londe and causeþ xvij. ilondes, and about euerychе a shippe saylle,][13] and haþ in þe est side Holandia, in þe north Frisia, in þe west occean, in[14] þe souþ Flandria, and is by clipped aboute as an ilond wiþ armes of

Trevisa.

---

the sowthe parte from the floode callede Rhenus, and is endede with the see of Danes. The men of that londe be rowndede in the maner of a cercle, as moche as men be of moore nobilite, in so moche thei be rowndede more hye. That peple is stronge and of semely stature, bolde in herte, vsenge speres for arowes, luffenge moche liberte. Wherefore thei wylle not suffre a knyȝhte to haue predominy in theyme. They be obediente to iugges, whom thei make yerely; luffenge clennesse and chastite; kepenge theire childer with grete diligence, not suffrenge theyme to be maryede tylle they atteyne to xxiiij^{ti} yere in age. Wherefore thei gette myȝhty childer. Whiche wontenge woode brenne turfes made of the erthe. Selandia is a litelle londe, and in the costes of the see, compassede abowte as an yle with armes of the see, hauenge at the este to hit Holande, at the northe Frisia, at the weste the occean, at the sowthe Flandres; hauenge grete hepes

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *Denmarch, a.*
[2] *ben high shauen,* Cx.
[3] *euere, a.*
[4] *vse,* Cx., which is better.
[5] So *a.* and Cx.; *dede,* MS.
[6] *he, a.*
[7] *marie,* Cx.
[8] *wiþ ynne*] til they be, Cx.
[9] *yere old,* Cx.
[10] *stronge and stelworth childeren,* Cx.
[11] *no woodes, a.*
[12] *turues,* Cx.
[13] The words in brackets added from Cx. After *see* MS. and *a* have *by-clipped aboute as an ilond wiþ armes of þe see,* which occurs below.
[14] *and in, a.*

cuitu contra impetum maris, cujus gleba frugum ferax, sed arborum[1] rara; non enim poterit ibi arbor[2] radicem profundare propter soli salsuginem. Gens ejus[3] magnæ est[4] staturæ, fortis corpore, pia mente.[5]

De Scribonniis [vel Scritobinis], et de septem viris diu soporatis.

Paulus,[6] *libro primo.* In circionali occiduo Germaniæ sunt populi dicti Scribonii,[7] qui etiam æstatis tempore nivibus non carent, crudis animalium carnibus vescuntur, de quorum hirtis pellibus indumenta sibi coaptant. Apud quos circa solstitium æstivale radii solares aliquibus[8] noctibus continue apparent; et rursum circa solstitium brumale, quamvis lux diei adsit, sol tamen non videtur. *Item*[9] *Paulus, libro primo,*[10] *capitulo quarto.* Juxta eosdem Scribonios[11] in ipso oceani littore antrum sub eminenti rupe conspicitur, ubi septem viri jam diu soporati quiescunt ita illæsis corporibus et vestibus,[12] ut etiam apud indoctos barbaros magnæ venerationi habeantur. Hi quoque,[13] quantum ad habitum spectat, Romani putantur;[14] e quibus unum dum aliquis[15] cupiditate stimulatus vellet exuere,

---

[1] *arborum*] So B.; *arbore*, A.E.
[2] *arbor ibidem*, B.; *arbor ibi*, A.
[3] *et* added in B.
[4] *est*] om. B.
[5] *Selandia . . . mente*] The whole paragraph omitted in C.D.
[6] *Plinius*, C.D.
[7] *Stricobini*, (or perhaps *Scritobini*,) C.D. Paulus Diaconus (lib. i. c. 51, ed. 1603) has *Scritobini*, which may be correct.
[8] *aliquibus*] om. B.
[9] *Item*] om. C.D.
[10] *quinto*, B. wrongly. The text is correct.
[11] *Stricobinos*, C.D.
[12] *vestimentis*, C.D. (and Paulus.)
[13] *denique*, C.D. (and Paulus.)
[14] *esse cernuntur*, C.D. (and Paulus.)
[15] *quidam*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

þe see and floodes.[1] Þere is good corn londe and scarsete of trees, for þe rootes mowe not take depnesse and[2] fatnesse for saltnesse of þe erþe. Þe men beeþ grete of body and mylde of herte. *Paulus, libro primo.* In þe norþwest[3] side of Germania is a peple þat hiȝte Scribonius, þat hath snow al þe somer tyme, and eteþ rawe flesch, and beeþ i-cloþed in goot bukkes[4] skynnes. In hire contray, whan þe nyȝt is schort, me may all nyȝt see[5] þe sonne bemes; and eft[6] in the wynter, when þe day is schort, þey may see þe liȝt of þe sonne, þey[7] me seeþ noȝt þe sonne.[8] *Item Paulus, libro primo, cap. quarto.*[9] Fast byside þat peple Scribonius, vndir þe clif of occean, is a den vndir an hiȝe stoon; þerynne slepeþ seuen men and haueþ longe i-slepe, and beeþ hool and sound in body and cloþinge, and al wiþ oute wem.[10] So þat vntauȝt men and straunge haueþ hem[11] in gret worschippe.[12] Þey beeþ i-holde Romaynes, as þei semeþ by hire cloþinge.[13] Þere was a man som tyme þat for couetise wolde stripe on of hem, and haue his cloþing. But anone his

TREVISA.

---

in hit in a circuite for cause of the see; in whiche londe be fewe trees, for a tree may not take þer roote for saltenes of the erthe. The peple of hit is of grete stature, stronge off body, meke in mynde. *Paulus, libro primo.* Also in the sowthe weste of Germayne be peple callede Scribonij, whiche haue plente of snawe in the tyme of somer, and eite rawe flesche of bestes, hauenge clothes of the ruȝhe skynnes of bestes; where the beames of the sonne be seen contynually, somme nyȝhtes abowte the solstice of somer; and also abowte the solstice of wynter, thauȝhe liȝhte appere in the day, the son is not seene. *Item, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* A denne is seen nye to men of that cuntre vnder an hie hille, where vij. men slepenge haue lyen longe, the clothes and bodies of theym incorrupte, whiche be supposede to be Romanes, as after their habite; whom a man movede thro auaryce willenge to

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Cx. thus: *and is enuironed with water and highe bankes to holde out the rysynge of the see and floodes.*
[2] *ne*, Cx.
[3] *west*, Cx.
[4] *bukke*, *a.*, Cx. (*buk.*)
[5] *see alle the nyght*, Cx.
[6] *after*, Cx.
[7] *þey*] om. *a.*
[8] Cx. thus: *though men see the light of the sonne, yet the sonne is not seen.*
[9] Cx., omitting the reference, thus: *Item fast, &c.*
[10] *wemme*, *a.*, Cx.
[11] *For which cause the comyn peple have hem*, Cx.
[12] *worship and reuerence*, Cx.
[13] *They ar supposed Romains by her clothing*, Cx.

mox ejus brachia aruerunt. Fortassis ad hunc proventum eos Deus servat[1] illæsos,[2] ut barbaræ gentes per eos aliquando[3] convertantur.

Cap. XXV.

De Francia sive Gallia.[4]

Tradunt[5] historiæ quod Gallia, quæ et Francia, a[6] candore populi sit dicta.[7] *Gála* enim Græce *lac* dicitur Latine; idcirco eos Gallos,[8] id est, candidos, Sibylla[9] vocat, dicens:

tunc lactea colla
Auro humectentur.[10]

Hugutio, capitulo Gala. Nam secundum diversitatem cœli, colores facierum, quantitates corporum,[11] qualitates animorum existunt. Inde Roma graves, Græcia leves, Africa versipelles, Gallia ingeniosos generat. *Ranulphus.* Hic autem est notandum, sicut tangit Augustinus De Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo quinto, quod Galli uno modo dicti fuerunt sacerdotes in templo

---

[1] *servaverit Dominus*, C.D.; *Dominus servaverit*, B.

[2] *illæsos*] om. C.D.; *ille*, A. (clerical error.)

[3] *quandoque*, C.D.

[4] *De Gallia seu Francia*, A.B.

[5] *Tradunt . . . septimo decimo* (next page)] om. C.D.

[6] *a*] om. B.

[7] *denominata*, A.B.

[8] *et ideo Gallos eos*, A.B.

[9] *sub illa*, B.

[10] The reference is to Virg. Æn. viii. 660, where however *innectuntur* is the true reading. The Sibyl is not speaking, but the words are part of a description of Vulcan's shield.

[11] *et* added in B.

armes driede and wax al drye.[1] Hit may be þat God kepeþ[2] hem so hool and sounde, for mysbyleued men in tyme to comynge schulde þorwȝ hem be conuerted and i-torned to good byleue. TREVISA.

De Gallia sive Francia.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

℟. Hit is i-write in stories þat Gallia, þat[3] is Francia, haþ þat name Gallia of whitenes of þe[4] peple. *Gala* is Grew,[5] *lac* in Latyn, *mylk*[6] in Englissh. Þerfore Sibylla clepeþ hem Gallos, þat is, white, and seiþ "Þan[7] þe mylky nekkes "beeþ i-wasche wiþ gold." *Hugutio, cap. Gala.* By þe dyuersite of heuene is dyuersite of coloures of face, of quantite and gretnes of body, of maneres and of witt; þerfore in Rome beeþ heuy men, yn Grees lyȝt, in Affrica gileful, in Gallia witty men and wys. ℟. Here take hede, as Augustinus toucheþ, De Civitate Dei, libro [secundo, cap.][8] quinto, þat Gally in oon manere speche were þe preostes, þat were

[1] *forwith his arme waxed al dreye,* Cx.
[2] *list to kepe,* Cx.
[3] þat] Added from *a.*; *which,* Cx.
[4] þe] om. *a.* and Cx.
[5] *a worde in Grewe, and is lac,* Cx.
[6] *and mylke,* Cx.
[7] *that,* Cx.
[8] The words in brackets added from Cx. This is the true reference, and the text agrees; the Harl. MS. is wrong.

vnclothe anoon his armes wexede drye. Perauenture God preseruethe theyme incorrupte for that entente, that men of Barbre may be conuertede to the feithe by theyme. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Fraunce. Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

℟. Storyes expresse that Gallia or Fraunce hathe denominacion of the whitenesse of peple; for thys worde "galla" in Grewe is seyde "mylke" in Latyne, wherefore Sibille callethe Frenche me,[9] white, seyenge, "Then the white neckes schalle "be humectate or made weiete with golde." *Hugutio, capitulo Gala.* For the coloures of faces, quantites of bodies, qualites of sawles, haue theire existence in man after the diuer site of heuyn. Þerefore Rome gendrethe hevy men, Grece lyȝhte men, and Fraunce wytty men. ℟. Hit is also to be aduertisede after the seyenge of Seynte Austin, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo quinto, that men callede Galli in oon maner were prestes in the temple of a godesse

[9] *me*] So Harl. MS.

Cybelis, non a Gallia provincia, sed a Gallo fluvio Phrygiæ sic dicti; a quo potantes fiebant insani, et omnes castrabantur in memoriam pueri Attis[1] quem amavit Dea Cybele. Hic nempe Attis, propter fraudem quam Deæ fecerat, versus est in insaniam, in qua castravit se, secundum Ovidium de Fastis.[2] Sed de Gallis qui sunt Franci, sic[3] dicit Eutropius, libro secundo: Gallorum animi feroces erant et corpora plusquam humana; sed experimento deprehensum,[4] quod sicut Gallorum virtus primo impetu major est quam virorum, ita sequens virtus minor est quam fœminarum. Alpina namque corpora humenti cœlo educata quiddam simile suis habent nivibus quæ pugnæ calore in sudore resoluta quasi radio solari laxantur.[5] *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.* Gallia[6] igitur[7] cum partibus suis[8] a septentrione habet Germaniam, ab ortu Rhenum, ab Euro Alpes, ab occasu oceanum Britannicum,[9] ad austrum[10] fretum mediterraneum, quod præterfluit[11] provinciam Narbonensem.[12] Gallia quon-

---

[1] *Athis*, MSS.
[2] *Hic autem . . . Fastis*] om. A.B.
[3] So B.; *sicut*, E.
[4] *De Gallis sic dicit Eutropius in historia Romana; experimento deprehensum est*, A.B.
[5] *Alpina . . . laxantur*] om. A.B.
[6] C.D. begin the chapter here.
[7] *Gallia, quæ et Francia*, C.D.
[8] *suis partibus*, B.
[9] *seu Gallicum*, added in A.B.C.D.
[10] *ab austro*, B.
[11] *præterluit*, B.
[12] Abbreviated in C.D.

in þe temple of þat goddes þat hiȝte Cybele,[1] and hadde the name[2] nouȝt of þat lond Gallia but of þat[3] ryuer Gallus þat is in Phrygia.[4] Alle þat drank of þat ryuer schulde worþe wood, and were alle i-gilded in mynde[5] of þat child Attis,[6] þat þilke goddes Cybele loued wiþ all her myȝt. Þe[7] childe worþe[8] wood, and gilded hymself, for fraude and gile þat he hadde i-doo to þat goddes Cybele, [so sayth][9] Ovidius de Fastis. But of[10] Galli þat beeþ Franci, and Frensche men, Eutropius, libro secundo, seiþ, Galli beeþ wel hasty, and here body passeþ þe comune stature of oþer men. But it is i-founde by assay þat as[11] Galli beþ wel hasty þan strong in þe firste rees,[12] soo afterward þey beeþ[13] in fiȝtynge more feble þan wommen. For as þey beeþ liche Alpes in gretnes of body, so þey beeþ liche[14] to the snowe þat lieþ vppon Alpes[15] þat brekeþ out on sweet, and melteþ wiþ hete of fyȝtynge as snow dooþ wiþ hete of þe sonne. *Girald., Dist.* [*i.*], *cap. septimo decimo.* Þanne Gallia wiþ his parties al hole haþ in þe north side Germania, in þe est þe Ryne, in þe souþest[16] Alpes, in þe west þe see of[17] occean þat hatte boþe Britannicus and Gallicus, þat is, Englisshe and Frensche,[18] for it departeþ boþe Engelond and Fraunce, in þe souþ þe see of myddel erþe þat wascheþ aboute by þe

TREVISA.

callede Cybele,[1] not namede of Gallia, that is Fraunce, but of a floode callede Gallus in Frigia, of whiche water men drykenge were made madde, and were geldede, in to the memory of a childe callede Attis,[6] whom that godesse callede Cybele[1] luffedde. Whiche childe, after Ouide De Fastis, for the fraude that he hade doen to the godesse was turnede to maddenesse, in whiche maddenesse he did gelde hym selfe. *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.* Therefore Fraunce with his partes hathe on the northe to hyt Germayne, on the este the floode callede Rhenus, on the weste the occean of Britayne, at the sowthe the grete see whiche flowethe to the cuntre of Narbonense. Somme

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Cibeles* or *Sibeles*, MSS. and Cx.
[2] *haue that name*, Cx.
[3] *the*, Cx.
[4] *Frigia*, MSS. and Cx.
[5] *their mynde*, Cx.
[6] *Athis*, MSS. and Cx.
[7] *That*, Cx.
[8] *waxe*, Cx.
[9] Added from Cx.
[10] þe] Added in *a*.
[11] *a*. and Cx. add þe.
[12] *rese or brout*, Cx.
[13] *they ben after fyghtyng*, in Cx.
[14] *be somwhat like*, Cx. (and *a*.)
[15] *the Alpes*, Cx., and so below.
[16] So *a*. and Cx.; *south est*, MS.
[17] *of*] om. Cx.
[18] So Cx.; *Frensche in Englisshe*, MS., *a*.

dam apud Julium Cæsarem fuerat [1] tripartita, modo vero propter [2] varios rerum eventus a Rheno fluvio usque [3] Sequanam,[4] Gallia Belgica sive [5] Francia proprie dicitur. Inde [6] usque ad [7] Ligerim fluvium dicitur Gallia Lugdunensis, quæ nunc superius vocatur [8] Burgundia, inferius vero [9] Neustria dicitur.[10] A Ligere vero usque ad Garonnam fluvium Gallia Aquitanica dicitur, quæ ab orientali sibi Rhodano usque ad occidentalem oceanum porrigitur; cujus pars superior a celsitudine montium, qua præminet, Celtica dicitur.[11] A Garonna autem [12] fluvio [13] usque ad fretum mediterraneum seu Pyrenæos montes Gallia Narbonensis dicitur, quæ etiam [14] nunc [15] partim Gothia partim Vasconia dicitur. Et [16] sic Gallia universa [17] cingitur tribus nobilibus fluminibus,[18] Rheno ad septentrionem, Rhodano ad orientem, oceano Britannico ad occasum. Gallia itaque lapides [19] habet nobiles; potissime solum Parisiorum [20] abundat [21] gypso, quod album plastrum vocant,

---

[1] *fuit*, B.C.D.
[2] *ob*, A.B.C.D.
[3] *ad* added in B.C.D.
[4] So B.; *usque ad*, A.; *Secanam*, E.
[5] *seu*, C.D.
[6] *vero* added in C.D.
[7] *ad*] om. A.C.D.
[8] *vocatur*] om. A.B.
[9] *vero*] om. A.
[10] Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.
[11] Slightly varied in C.D.
[12] *autem*] om. A.B.; *vero*, C.D.
[13] *fluvio*] om C.D.
[14] *etiam*] om. A.B.
[15] *etiam nunc*] om. C. All after *dicitur* omitted in D.
[16] *Et sic . . . quondam in Grecia*] Thus abridged in C.D.: *In omni prorsus Gallia sexdecim sunt provinciæ, quarum omnium est felicior Aquitania.*
[17] *universaliter*, B.
[18] *aquis*, A.B.
[19] *lapidicinas*, A.B.
[20] *Pariseus*, B.; *Pariseorum*, A.E.
[21] *abundans nobili*, B.; *abundat nobili*, A.

prouynce of Narbon. In Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia was departed on þre; but for dyuers happes þat byfel afterward in þat lond þe contray and lond þat strecchеþ from þe Ryne to Seyne, from þe oon ryuer to þat oþer, hatte now Gallia Belgica, þat is verray Fraunce; and þat contray þat[1] strecchеþ from þens to þe ryuer of Leyre, hatte Gallia Lugdumensis. Þe ouer partie þerof hatte Burgundia, and þe neþere hatte Neustria; and þe contray þat strecchеþ fram þe ryuer of Leyre to þe water þat hatte[2] Garonna hatte Gallia Aquitanica, þat is Gyan, and strecchеþ out of þe est from þe ryuer of Rone anon to þe West occean. Þe ouer party þerof hatte Celica,[3] þat is, heuenliche and hiȝe, for hiȝe mountaignes þat beeþ þerynne. From þe ryuer of Garonna to þe see of myddel erþe and to þe mountaignes þat beeþ montes Pyrenei, greet hilles of Spayne, is i-cleped Gallia Narbonensis, and now som þerof hatte Gothia, and som Vasconia, þat is Gasquyne. And so Gallia al hool is i-closed aboute wiþ þre noble wateres, wiþ þe Reyne[4] in þe norþ side, wiþ þe Rone in þe est, and wiþ þe Bruttische[5] occean in þe west side. In Gallia beþ many good quarers and noble for to digge stoon;[6] and bysides Parys is greet plente of a manere stoon þat hatte gypsus, and is i-cleped white plaistre also; whan þat stoon is i-tempred wiþ water

Trevisa.

---

tyme Fraunce was partede in thre, after Iulius Cesar; but nowe hit is callede Gallia Belgica, or Fraunce properly from that floode callede Renus, vn to Seguana. And from thens to a floode callede Ligeris hit is calledde Fraunce Lugdunense. And from that water Ligeris vn to the floode callede Garona hit is callede Aquitany or Gyon, which is protendede vn to the esturne floode callede Rodanus, and to the weste occean, the superior parte of whom is callede Celtica, of the altitude of hilles in hit. And hit is callede nowe also Fraunce Narbonense, from that floode callede Garona vn to the grete see, whiche is nowe in parte Gothia in parte Gascuyn. And so alle Fraunce is cincte with thre nowble waters; with the water callede Rhenus at the northe, with the flood calledde Rodanus at the este, and at the weste with the occean of Briteyne. This Fraunce is habundante in white stones whiche is callede white playster, whiche brente in the fyre and temprede with water makethe

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 43 b.

---

[1] *þat*] Added from Cx.
[2] *þat hatte*] of, *a.*, Cx.
[3] *Selica, a.*
[4] *Ryne, a.*
[5] So also Cx. (*Bruttysh.*)
[6] *digge yn stones, a.*, Cx.

quod quidem igne exustum et aqua temperatum vertitur in cæmentum, unde fiunt parietes, testudines, et pavimenta indissolubilia. Ibi[1] floret civitas Parisius, nutrix morum, pincerna literarum, ita[2] refulgens in Europa sicut Athenæ quondam in Græcia.[3] Gens etiam[4] Francorum, sicut pleræque gentes Europæ, a Trojanis originem duxit; Antenor namque post captam Trojam cum suis profugus per Mæotides paludes perque[5] fluvium[6] Tanaim[7] Pannoniam tenuit, in qua urbem Sicambram fundavit, a qua et ipse et sui posteri[8] Sicambri dicti sunt. Post cujus mortem constituti sunt[9] duces super eos Trogotus et Franco, a quo Franci vocati;[10] sive, ut Turpinus inter gesta[11] Caroli,[12] scribit,[13] postquam Carolus subjugata Hispania Parisium remeasset, volens honorare Beatum Jacobum et Sanctum Dionysium manumisit[14] omnes servos per Galliam cujuscunque fuissent[15] dominii,[16] qui annuatim quatuor nummos ad fabricam ecclesiæ[17] Beati Dionysii offerrent; et sic franci, id est liberi, Beati Dionysii

---

[1] *et ibi*, B.
[2] *ita*] om. A.B.
[3] See previous page.
[4] *etiam*] om. C.D.; *igitur*, A.B.
[5] *per quæ*, B.
[6] *flumen*, A.
[7] *Thanay*, MSS.
[8] *ipse et sui posteri*] om. C.D.; *ejus sequaces*, A.B.
[9] *Post . . . sunt*] om. C.D.
[10] *sunt* added in A.B.D.
[11] *de gestis*, A.B.C.D.
[12] *Karoli*, MSS., and similarly below.
[13] *dicit*, C.D.
[14] Slightly transposed in C.
[15] *essent*, A.B.
[16] Slightly altered in C.D.
[17] *ecclesiæ*] Added from A.B.D.

and torned to playstre.[1] Þanne me makeþ þerof ymages, walles and chambres, pamentes and dyuerse manere of[2] workes, þat dureþ longe i-now. Þere is þe faire floure þe citee of Parys, norice[3] of þewes, botiller of lettres, schynynge in Europa as Athene[4] somtyme in Grecia. *Girald. Dist. prima.* Þe Frensche men, þat hatte Franci also, and many oþer men þe strengest of Europa come of[5] Troians; ffor aftir þat Troye was i-take, Antenor wiþ his men fliȝ[6] awey by þe[7] watres þat hatte paludes Meotides, and by þe ryuer Tanais, and wonede in Pannonia, and bulde þere a citee, and cleped it Sicambria. Of þat citee he and alle hise were aftirward i-cleped Sicambri. After Antenore his deeþ þey ordeyned hem tweie lederes, Trogotus and Franco, and of þilke Franco þei were after i-cleped Franci. Turpinus, de gestis Karoli, seiþ þat whanne[8] kyng Charles had i-made Spayne soget, and was i-come home to Parys aȝen, he made alle þe bonde men of Gallia fre[9] in worschippe of Seint Iame[10] and of Seynt Denys; but þey schulde euery ȝere offre foure pans[11] to þe chirche work of Seynt Denys. And so þey were i-cleped Franci

TREVISA.

---

cemente as indissoluble. The cite callede Parisius florySchethe there the nutrix of vertu, the pantry of letters, whiche schynethe now in Europe as Atheynes floryschede somme tyme in Grece. *Gir. Dist. prima.* The peple of Fraunce, as mony other peple, toke theire begynnenge of the Troianes. For Antenor, after the takenge of Troye, fleenge with his feloweschippe by the floode of Thanay, come to Pannony, in whom he made a cite called Sicambria,[12] wherefore he and his folowers were callede Sicambri.[12] After the dethe of whom ij. dukes and gouernoures were ordeynede to governe theyme. Which were Trogotus and Francus, off whom Frenche men toke theire name. But as Turpinus seyethe of the gestes of Charls, after that kynge Charls subduenge to hym Spayne hade commen to Parise, wyllenge to worschippe Seynte Iames and Seynte Dionise, he ȝafe manumission to all his seruauntes thro Fraunce of what so euer lordeschippe that thei were, whiche scholde offre yerely iiij. d. to the chirche of Seynte Dionise; and so Frenche

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *into plaster, a.*, Cx.
[2] *of*] om. Cx.
[3] *which is noryce*, Cx.
[4] *Athenes*, Cx.
[5] *a.* and Cx. add þe.
[6] *fled*, Cx.
[7] þe] om. Cx.
[8] So *a.*; *what*, MS. (first hand); altered to *whan*.
[9] So *a.* and Cx.; *fre* before *of Gallia* in MS.
[10] *Iames*, Cx.
[11] *panes, a.*; *pens*, Cx.
[12] *Cicambria* and *Cicambri*, Harl. MS.

ubique vocabantur.[1] Ex tunc inolevit quod Gallia Francia vocaretur.[2] Dicunt alii[3] quod Valentinianus imperator lingua Attica vocavit Francos, quasi ferancos, a feritate animi.[4] Nam usque ad tempora ejusdem[5] Valentiniani[6] Sicambri longævis temporibus tributarii fuerant Romanorum.[7] Illud autem tributum, ut[8] contra Alanos[9] Romanis infestos[10] bellum susciperent, decennio remissum est. Quo[11] decurso, Alanisque[12] detritis,[13] solitum exacti tributum solvere renuerunt. Quamobrem Valentinianus, ingenti coacto exercitu, Sicambros appetiit[14] et devicit. Quo infortunio Sicambri[15] efferati terras Romanorum Romanisque subjectorum crudeliter invaserunt.[16] Hinc eatenus Sicambri, a Franco

---

[1] *Et sic Franci Dionysii et liberi ubique vocantur*, C.D.

[2] A.B.C. add *ab illa libertate.*

[3] *autem quidam*, C.D.

[4] Slightly transposed in C.; *a feritate animi lingua Attica vocant eos Francos*, A.B.D.

[5] *ejusdem*] om. C.D.

[6] *Imperatoris*] added in C.D.

[7] *fuerunt Romanis*, C.D.

[8] *ut*] om. C.; *aut*, A.

[9] *Slavos*, B.

[10] *infestos cum*, C. (not D.)

[11] *Quo decennio*, A.B.C.D.

[12] *Slavisque*, B.

[13] *contritis*, A.B.C.D.

[14] *petiit*, B.

[15] *Sicambri*] om. A.B.C.D.

[16] *subjectas invadere inceperunt*, B.; *subjectas invadere ceperunt*, A.C.D.

Beati[1] Dionysii, þat is Seint Denys his fre men. And so it come[2] aboute þat Gallia was i-cleped Francia, by cause of þat fredom. Oþer men telleþ þat Valentinianus[3] þe emperour cleped hem Francos as it were Ferancos, þat is steorne and wither, in þe langage of Attica, þat is Grecia. For Sicambri, þat beeþ Frensche men, were tributarii to Rome longe tyme to fore Valentinianus is tyme also. But whan Alani, men of Alania, were enemyes to Rome, Sicambri hadde hire tribute forȝeue for ten ȝere for to werre aȝenst Alani, men[4] of Alania; and whan þe ten ȝere were i-doo and Alani ouercome, þe Romaynes asked her tribute; and Sicambri werned it and wolde none paye. Þerfore Valentinianus þe emperour werred vppon hem wiþ a grete oost, and hadde þe victorie; þan for þat myshap Sicambry were wood wrooþ,[5] and werred[6] in þe londes of Rome [and also on the londes that were subgett to Rome][7] also. Þerfore Sicambri were afterward i-cleped Franci, as it were feranci, þat is wither and sterne,[8] and of þat duke Franco þey were i-cleped Franci, as it were Franco his men. Also of hir fredom þat kyng Charles ȝaf hem þey beeþ i-cleped Franci, þat is fre men so[9] for to mene. *Treuisa.* But how er þey come to þat name, Franci beeþ Frensche men, and hatte boþe Sicambri and Galli. And so

Trevisa.

men were callede the fre men of Seynte Dionise. And so that londe was namede Fraunce for cause of that liberte. Other men say that Valentinianus themperoure callede theyme Francos, as ferancos. For Sicambri[10] were tributaryes to thempyre of Rome vn to the tyme of Valentinian, whiche tribute was remittede to theyme by x. yere that they scholde make batelle ageyn men of Almayne, whiche were contrarious to thempire of Rome that tyme y-paste; and the men of Allemayne deuicte, they refusede to pay theire tribute to Rome. Wherefore Valentinianus, gedrenge a grete hoste, entrede theire costes and hade victory of theyme; wherefore thei wente afterwarde and destroyede moche of the cuntre of Romanes; and therefore thei were callede Frenche men of Francus theire gouernoure or elles of

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *Sancti*, Cx.
[2] *cam*, Cx.
[3] So Cx.—MS. and *a.* have *his tyme also*, after *Val.*; but this seems a mere clerical error. See below.
[4] *ayenst the men*, Cx.
[5] *sore wroth*, Cx.
[6] *warred*, Cx.
[7] Words in brackets added from Cx.
[8] *wiþer and steerne*, *a.*
[9] *so*] om. Cx.
[10] *Cicambri*, Harl. MS., and so below.

De successione Regum Francorum.

duce sive a feritate animorum[1] dicti Franci,[2] Feramundum filium Marcomiri regem sibi[3] creaverunt, et terram a Sicambria usque ad Rhenum fluvium protensam[4] subegerunt.[5] *Willielmus*[6] *de Regibus, libro primo.*[7] Defuncto[8] autem Feramundo filium ejus Clodionem sive Clodium crinitum sibi præfecerunt, a quo reges Francorum criniti postmodum vocabantur. Post Clodium Meroveum nepotem ejus erexerunt, a quo succedentes reges usque ad Pipinum Merovingi vocabantur. Eodem modo[9] filii regum Angliæ a patribus patronymica sumpserunt; ut filius Edgari Edgaring,[10] filius Edmundi Edmundyng vocetur.[11] Communiter autem Adelingi vocantur qui de regio sanguine descendunt. *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.* Itaque[12] post Meroveum regnavit Childericus filius ejus, qui genuit Clodoveum, quem Sanctus Remigius baptizavit. Qui Gothos Arianos suasu Romanorum ab Aquitania expulit. Quo mortuo Childebertus[13] filius ejus cum tribus fratribus suis, Theodorico,[14]

[1] *animorum*] om. A.B.D.

[2] *a feritate dicti sunt Franci*, C.

[3] *Regem sibi* before *Feramundum* in A.B.D.

[4] *protensam*] om. B.D.

[5] Transposed in C.

[6] *Willelmus*, at length, here and below, E.

[7] C.D. om. title of quotation.

[8] Defuncto . . . expulit] *Quo defuncto Clodoveum filium ejus substituerunt. Post hæc Rhenum transeuntes a Rheno usque Lygerim cunctam terram a Romanis abstulerunt. Post hæc prædicante beato Remigio Clodoveus Christianus factus, Gothos Arianos de Aquitania jussu Romanorum ibi existentes depulit*, D.; and so C., but having *hoc* for *hæc* twice, and *ab* for *de*, and omitting *est*.

Quo defuncto Meroveum nepotem ejus in regem sibi erexerunt, a quo post eum reges Francorum usque ad Pepinum Merovingi sunt vocati, A.B., which agree in the rest with E., as far as *descendunt*.

[9] *et* added in A.B.

[10] *Edgaringes*, A.; *Edgaringus*, B.

[11] *Edmundingis*, A.; *Edmundyngus vocentur*, A.B.

[12] Itaque . . . expulit] *Itaque post Meroveum Cledonem filium ejus erexerunt, sub quo Rhenum fluvium transeuntes totam terram inter Rhenum et Ligerim a Romanis abstulerunt. Postmodum Cledoveus rex eorum, prædicante beato Remigio, Christianus effectus, Gothos Arianos jussu Romanorum ab Aquitania expulit*, B. And so A., but having *Clodionem*, and *Clodoveus*.

[13] *Agildebertus*, C.

[14] *Theoderico*, E.

it is alle oon peple, Sicambri, Galli, and [1] Franci, and Frensche men. Þ.[2] Franci made hem a kyng þat hi3te[3] Feramundus, Marcomiris[4] sone, and made alle þe lond sogett, ffrom[5] Sicambria anon to þe Ryne. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Whan Feramundus was dede, þey made his sone kyng, þat hadde þre names, and heet Clodion, Clodius, and Crinitus; and of hym kynges of Fraunce were aftirward i-cleped Criniti.[6] After Clodius þey made his sone kynge, þat hadde þre names,[7] and hi3te Meroueus; and after hym kynges of Fraunce were i-cleped Merouyngi anoon to Pypinus his tyme. In þe same manere kynges sones of Engelond hadde names i-schape by hir fader names and so[8] Edgarus his sone hi3te Edgaryngus,[9] and Edmundus his sone heet Edmundyngus. Comounliche he þat comeþ of[10] kynges blood is i-cleped Adelyngus. *Girald., Dist. prima.* After Meroueus regned his sone Childericus; hym folwede[11] Remigius. Þis Childericus at þe prayere[12] of þe Romayns put þat peple Gothi Arriani out of Gyan.[13] Whan he was dede his sone Childebertus helde þe kyngdom wiþ his þre breþeren Theodoricus, Clodomirus,[14] and Clo-

Trevisa.

cruelleness, makenge kynge amonge theyme Feramundus the son of Marcomirus, makenge subiecte to theym the cuntre from Sicambria vn to that floode callede Renus. *Willielmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.* Whiche Feramundus dedde thei made Clodoueus his son kynge. And after Clodoueus, Merouius his nevewe was electe in to the kynge, after whom alle kynges of Fraunce vn to Pipinus were callede Merouingi. In lyke wyse the sonnes of kynges of Englonde toke their names after theire faders. As the son of Edgare was callede Edgarynge, the son of Edmunde, Edmundenge. *Gir., Dist. prima.* Also after Merouius, Childericus his son reignede, whiche gate Clodoueus whom Remigius baptisede. This Clodoueus at the instaunce and preier of the Romanes expelled from the cuntre of Gyon the Gothes infecte with the heresy of Arrianus. Whiche dedde, Childericus his son occupyede the realme with his thre brether, Theodoricus, Clodomirus, and Clotarius; in whiche

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *a.* om. *and.*
[2] Þ.] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] *heet, a.*
[4] *Marcomirus his, a.*; *Marconurus,* Cx.
[5] *ffram, a.*
[6] *Criniti*] So *a.* and Cx.; *Cirini Sirini,* MS.
[7] Cx. omits this clause, which seems repeated by a clerical error.
[8] *had names after the names of theyr fader, as,* Cx.
[9] So *a.* and Cx.; *Edgaryndus,* MS.
[10] *of þe, a.*
[11] *cristned,* Cx.
[12] *atte prayere,* Cx.
[13] *Guyan,* Cx.
[14] Added from *a.* and Cx.

Clodomiro,[1] et Clothario,[2] eo scilicet [3] tempore quo Gregorius Magnus[4] floruit, regnum tenuit. Post quem Clotharius frater ejus, qui beatam Radegundam desponsavit. Et post eum Childericus filius ejus regnavit cum tribus fratribus suis, Cariberto, Gundano,[5] Sigeberto.[6] Post Childericum Clotharius filius ejus regnavit, qui genuit Dagobertum et Batildem sororem ejus. Sub isto Dagoberto fuit Pipinus major domus regiæ[7] temporibus Heraclii imperatoris. Post Dagobertum filius ejus Clodoveus regnavit,[8] cujus tempore corpus Sancti[9] Benedicti de provincia Beneventana usque in Franciam delatum est.[10] Post Clodoveum regnavit filius ejus Clotharius, post quem frater ejus Theodoricus, sub quo Ebroinus[11] major domus regiæ beatum[12] Leodegarium afflixit.[13] Post quem Clodoveus. Post quem frater ejus Childebertus. Post quem filius suus Dagobertus.[14] Post quem regale genus defecit.[15] Nam post eum regnavit Daniel clericus, quem[16] Franci mutato nomine vocave-

---

[1] *Clodemiro*, A. ; *Glodomiro*, C.D.

[2] *Clotario*, A., and similarly below ; *Glotario*, D., but *Clotarius* below.

[3] *eo scilicet*] om. C.D. ; *scilicet* om. A.B.

[4] *Magnus*] om. C.; *magnus Papa Gregorius*, A.B. ; *Papa Gregorius*, D.

[5] *Gundiano*, B.C.D.

[6] *et Sigeberto*, C.D.

[7] *reginæ*, B.

[8] *regnavit*] om. B.

[9] *beati*, C.D

[10] *translatum est*, A. ; *de Benevento translatum est*, C.D.

[11] *Eliromus*, B.

[12] *beatum*] om. B.

[13] Varied slightly in C.D.

[14] *Post . . . Dagobertus*] cui Childebertus frater ejus junior successit, cui filius suus (ejus, A.) Dagobertus junior, A.B.

[15] The foregoing clauses slightly varied in C.D.

[16] *frater quem*, C.D. ; *frater ejus, quem*, A.B.

tarius. Þis was in þe popes tyme þe Grete Gregory.[1] Afte þis Childebertus[2] regned his broþer Clotarius: he wedded Seynt Radagund. And after hym regned his sone, Childericus, wiþ his þre breþeren Carbertus, Gundianus, and Sigesbertus. After Childericus reigned his sone Clotarius: he bygat Dagobertus and his suster Batildys.[3] Vnder þis Dagobertus Pypinus was þe grettest man of þe kynges hous; and þat was in Heraclius þe emperoures tyme.[4] After Dagobertus regned his sone Clodoueus. In his tyme seynt Benet his body was translated and i-bore out of þe prouince Beneuentana in to Fraunce. After Clodoueus regned his sone Clotarius; after[5] hym his broþer Theodoricus. In his tyme Ebroynus,[6] þat was þe grettest of þe kynges hous, pursuede Seint Leodegarius and dede hym moche woo and tene, and martired hym at þe laste.[7] After Theodoricus regned Clodouius; and after hym his ȝonge[8] broþer Childebertus; [after him his ȝonger[9] sone Dagobertus;][10] and after hym þe kynges lynage faillede. For after hym reigned his broþer Daniel, þat was a clerk. But Franci chaunged Daniel his name, and

TREVISA.

tyme Grete Gregory floryschede. Afther whom Clotarius his brother reignede, whiche toke to his wyfe Seynte Radegunde. After whom Childericus his son reignede, with Garibertus, Gundianus, and Sigelbertus, his brether. After Childericus Clotarius his son reignede, which gate Dagoberte and Batildis his sustyr. Vnder this Dagoberte, Pipinus was as the gouernoure of the kynges house, in the tymes of Heraclius themperoure. After Dagoberte, Clodoueus his son reignede, in the tyme of whom the body of Seynte Benedicte was translate from the province Beneuentan vn to Fraunce. After Clodoueus, Clotarius his son reignede. After him his brother Theodoricus, vnder whom Ebronius was the gouernoure of the kynges howse, whiche punyschede Seynte Leodegary. After whom Clodoueus, and after hym Childebertus his yongeste brother reignede, whom Dagoberte his yongeste son succedede, and after hym the stokke of kynges failede. For after hym Daniel a clerke reignede, whiche was his brother; whom Frenche men callede Childe-

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *time of the grete pope Gregory*, Cx.
[2] So *a.*; *Chilbertus*, MS.
[3] So Cx.; *Batildus*, MS., *a.*
[4] *in the tyme of Eraclius thempe-rour*, Cx.
[5] *and after*, Cx.
[6] *Ebronius*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *atte laste*, Cx.
[8] ȝ*unger*, *a.*, Cx.
[9] *yong*, Cx.
[10] Words in brackets added from *a.* and Cx.

runt Childericum.[1] Post quem Theodoricus propinquus ejus. Post quem[2] Hildericus frater ejus,[3] qui ob inertiam nimiam[4] depositus et clericus factus in monasterio private vixit.[5] Sicque[6] defecit linea prosapiæ Ferramundi[7] per viros, sed mansit per Batildem[8] sororem Dagoberti isto[9] modo.[10] Batildis nupsit Ansberto, de quo[11] genuit Arnaldum, cujus filius Arnulphus duxit filiam Pipini ducis ac[12] majoris in domo regia[13] Dagoberti fratris[14] ejusdem Batildis. Sed isto[15] Arnulpho Metensi postmodum[16] episcopo facto,[17] Ansegisilus filius ejus genuit Pipinum, qui vetulus seu brevis dictus est. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.*[18] Qui Pipinus genuit Carolum Tutidem[19] seu Martellum nominatum,[20] eo quod tyrannos per Franciam emergentes contuderit,[21] Sarracenos quoque Galliam infestantes egregie depulerit.

---

[1] *Childericum vocaverunt*, A.D.; *Ethisdericum vocaverunt*, B.

[2] *cui successit*, A.B.; *illique successit Childericus*, D.

[3] *frater ejus*] om. A.

[4] *nimiam inertiam*, A.B.

[5] Abbreviated in C.D.

[6] *Sic ergo*, C.D.

[7] *Faramundi*, A.

[8] So B.; *Batildam*, E. (clerical error?)

[9] *hoc*, C.D.

[10] *isto modo*] ipsa vero, B.

[11] *qua*, A., more correctly.

[12] *et*, C. (not D.)

[13] *regis*, C.D.; om. B.

[14] *fratrisque*, A.C.D.

[15] *Isto quoque*, A.B.

[16] *postmodum Metensi*, A.B.

[17] *effecto*, A.; abbreviated slightly in C.D.

[18] Reference omitted in C.D.

[19] So MSS., but *Tudites* seems to be the correct title, and so Malmesbury, *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. p. 98, ed. Hardy). See Ducange, *s. v.*

[20] *nominatum . . . Iste*] om. C., and so D., except the word *nominatum*.

[21] *conquievit*, B.

cleped hym[1] Childericus. After hym reigned oon of his kyn þat heet Theodoricus; and after hym his brother Hildericus. He was i-putte doun for grete nysete and i-made a clerk, and leued as a monk in an abbay; and þanne faillede þe lynage in men of Feramundus blood. But ȝit it laste[2] and durede in a womman þat was Batildis, Dagobertus his suster. In þis manere Batildis[3] was i-wedded to Ansebertus, and hadde by hym a sone þat heet Arnold. Þan þis Arnoldes sone heet Arnulphe.[4] Þat Arnulphe[4] wedded duke Pypinis douȝter. Pypinus was grettest of king[5] Dagobertus his hous. Kyng Dagobertus was Batildis broþer. Þis Arnulph[4] was afterward i-made bisshop, Metensis episcopus.[6] Þan his sone Ansegesilus gat Pipinus, þat hadde tweie oþer names, Vetulus and Bremys.[7] *Willielmus*[8] *de Regibus, libro primo.* Þis Pypinus gat Charles þat heet Tutidis,[9] [and Martellus also, and had þat name Tutidis][10] of *tu*[*n*]*dere*, þat is *bete and bounse*.[11] For he beet[12] out of Fraunce alle þe tyrauntes and Sarazynes[13] þat werrede þerynne, and destourbed[14] þe lond and þe[15] peple. Þis Charles folwed þe

TREVISA.

ricus. After whom Theodoricus nye of his kynrede; after whom Hildericus his brother succedede, whiche deposede for his slawthe, and made a clerke, lyvede priuately in a monastery. Soe the linealle descense of the prosapy or kynrede of Feramundus faylede by men, but hyt remaynede in Batildis, sustyr to Dagoberte. The seyde Batildis was maryede to Ansebertus, whiche gate of here a childe callede Arnaldus, whose childe callede Arnulpus was maryede to the doȝhter of Pipinus, duke of the howse of kynge Dagoberte, brother to the seide Batildis. Whiche Arnulphus afterwarde beenge byschop Metense, Ansegesilus his son gate Pipinus, whiche was callede olde Pipinus, or schorte. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Whiche Pipinus gate Charles, or other wise namede Martellus, in so moche that he depressede tirauntes in Fraunce, and Saracenes makenge insurrecciones ageyne the londe of Fraunce. This man

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 44. b.

[1] *hym*] om. *a*.
[2] *lasted*, Cx.
[3] *Batildus*, MS. (not Cx.)
[4] *Arnulphus*, Cx. (thrice.)
[5] *the grettest of the kyng*, Cx.
[6] *episcopus*] om. Cx.
[7] *Brewis*, *a*. and Cx.
[8] *Willelmus*, Cx., here and elsewhere.
[9] So *a*. and Cx.; *Tutidus*, MS. (not so below.)
[10] Words in brackets added from *a*. and Cx.
[11] *beten and bounsed*, Cx.
[12] *he beet*] *abent*, *a*.
[13] *Sarzines*, *a*.
[14] *destroubled*, Cx.
[15] þe] om. Cx.

Hic nempe paternæ sententiæ sequax reges Franciæ tenuit in clientela sua, ipse comitis nomine contentatus.[1] *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.* Iste[2] Carolus genuit Pipinum secundum et Carolomannum postea monachum. Hic itaque[3] Pipinus[4] ex Batilde prædicta regium genus ducens, post depositionem Hilderici[5] regis voto totius militiæ auctoritateque Stephani[6] Papæ successoris Zachariæ[7] rex Francorum effectus,[8] genuit Carolum Magnum, qui post obitum patris sui,[9] anno Domini[10] DCC°.LX°.IX°. in regem erigitur. Deinde[11] advocatus Petri et patricius in imperatorem est erectus; a quo tempore imperium Constantinopolitanum defecit a Romanis et transiit ad Francos,[12] eo[13] quod Græci nullam opem ferrent Romanis contra sævitiam Longobardorum. Hic Carolus Lodowicum[14] imperatorem, qui Carolum tertium Calvum nuncupatum progenuit, qui Lodowicum secundum, qui Carolum quartum et Simplicem dictum pro-

---

[1] *contentus*, A.B.

[2] *Qui*, C.D.

[3] *igitur*, A.B.C.D.

[4] *Pipinus secundus*, A.B.C.D.

[5] *Childerici*, C.D.

[6] *totius militiæ auctoritate atque*, B.

[7] *auctoritateque Zachariæ Papæ*, C.D.

[8] *est qui* added in A.B.; *est qui et* added in C.D.

[9] *sui*] om. A.B.C.D.

[10] *Domini*] om. C.D.

[11] *deinde... Conquestoris*] Abbreviated in B., as follows: "Quem "postmodum Romani ob ejus egre- "gios actus advocatum beati Petri "elegerunt, deinde patricium, impe- "ratorem deinde Augustum; a quo "tempore imperium Constantinopo- "lis defecit a Romanis et transiit ad "Francos, eo quod nullam opem "ecclesiæ Romanæ ferrent contra "sævitiam Longobardorum tunc "Romanos infestantium." And so A. very nearly.

[12] *Deinde .... Francos*] Abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

[13] *eo quod .... reportaret* (next page)] om. C.D.

[14] *Lodowycum*, E., here and sometimes below

sentens of his forme fadres,[1] and helde þe kynges of Fraunce in his retenue. And he hym self was i-cleped an erle, and hilde hym a payed[2] in[3] þat name. *Giraldus.* Þis Charles gatte þe secounde Pypinus[4] and Charles þe Grete þat was aftirwarde a monk.. Þis secounde Pipinus was of þe kynges kynde: for he com of Batildis, þat we speke of rapere.[5] And þerfore he was i-made kyng of Fraunce by assent of alle þe chyualrie and by auctorite of pope Steuene þat was next pope[6] after Zacharie. Þis Pipinus gat Charles þe Grete; þis Charles was i-made kyng after his fader[7] deeþ, þe ȝere of oure Lorde seuene hundred þre score and nyne. For his noble dedes þe Romayns chees[8] hym afterwardes for to be Seynt Petres aduokett,[9] aftirward patricius, and þan þe emperour and Augustus. And from þat tyme þe empere of Constantinopolis[10] tornede from the Romaynes to þe Frensche men; for þey wolde not[11] helpe þe chirche of Rome aȝen þe Longebardes þat werred aȝenst þe Romayns. Þis Charles gat Lewes,[12] þat was aftirward emperoure. Þis Lewis gat þe Balled Charles, þat was emperour also. Þe Balled Charles gat Lewes; Lewes gat Charles þe Sym-

TREVISA.

folowenge the steppes of his fader, kepede the kynges of Fraunce in his seruyce, contente with the name of a duke. *Gir., Dist. prima.* This Charls gate Pipinus the secunde, and Karolomannus afterwarde a monke. This Pipinus the secunde, commenge of the stokke of the seide Batildis, after the deposicion of kynge Hildericus was made kynge of Fraunce thro the desire of alle the cheuallery, and by the auctorite of Pope Steven the successor off Zacharye. Whiche gate Grete Charles. Whiche was erecte to the kyngedome of Fraunce after the dethe of his fader in þe yere of our Lorde Godde DCC. LX. and IX., whom the Romanes electe to be the aduocate of Seynte Petre for the nowble actes that he did; after that thei made hym emperoure and Augustus. From whiche tyme the empire of Constantinople wente from þe Romanes and wente to Frenche men, in that thei helpede not the chirche of Rome ageyne Longobardes, kepenge werre ageyne the Romanes. This Charles gate Lodowicus. This Lodowicus gate Symple Charles, whiche

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *forfaders*, Cx.
[2] *paid and content*, Cx.
[3] *wiþ, a.*, Cx.
[4] *Pupinus*, Cx. (but not uniformly).
[5] *bifore*, Cx.
[6] *pope neyt* (for *next*), Cx.
[7] *faders*, Cx. (and so often.)
[8] *chose*, Cx.
[9] *aduocate*, Cx.
[10] *Constantinople*, Cx.
[11] *nouȝt, a.* (*not*, Cx. uniformly.)
[12] *Lowys*, Cx. (and so below.)

genuit, qui Lodowicum tertium, qui Lotharium primum, qui Lodowicum quartum, hujus prosapiæ regem ultimum. Quo mortuo Franci statuerunt super se Hugonem Capet, ducem Burgundiæ, qui genuit Robertum, qui Henricum, qui Philippum primum, qui Lodowicum quintum, qui regnavit tempore Henrici primi regis Angliæ filii Conquestoris. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Sicque successores Caroli Magni imperaverunt[1] in Italia et Alemannia usque[2] ad annum Domini nongentesimum duodecimum, quando Conradus rex[3] Teutonicorum imperium sibi arripuit. *Ranulphus.* Diu postmodum, ut fert fama, regina quædam Francorum, ad quam regnum Franciæ descenderat,[4] videns quemdam macellarium elegantem, sumpsit eum in virum; ob cujus facti detestationem, Franci apud se legem[5] sanxerunt[6] ut nulla mulier deinceps[7] regnum Franciæ reportaret.[8] *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.*[9] Galliam

---

[1] *Sicque . . . . imperaverunt*] Ex hujus Karoli genere regnaverunt successores in Francia usque ad Hugonem cognomento Capet, de quo cæteri descenderunt quemadmodum inferius in suo loco dicetur; ex cujus progenie regnaverunt, &c., A.B. and the versions. This is more like Malmesbury's text. See lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. pp. 100, 101, ed. Hardy). The same may be said of the readings of A.B. in the notes to p. 276; compare Malmesbury, p. 96.

[2] *usque*] om. A.

[3] *rex*] om. B.

[4] *hereditarie descenderat*, A.B.

[5] *legem*] om. A.B.

[6] *statuerunt*, A.B.

[7] *deinceps*] Added from A.B.

[8] See previous page.

[9] *Distinctione prima*] om. C.D.; the latter has *Girardus*.

ple. Charles þe Simple gat Lewes;[1] Lewes gat Lotharius; Lotharius gat Lewes, þe laste kyng of þis lynage. Whan þis Lewes was dede, Franci took Huwe[2] duke of Burgoyne, and made hym here kyng. Þis Hewe gat Robert; Robert gat Henry;[3] Henry gat Phelip; Philip gat Lewes. Lewes regnede in Henry Clerkes[4] tyme, þe Conquerours sone. Þe Grete Charles his[5] ospringe regnede in Fraunce anon to Hughe is tyme, þat hiȝt Capet by his surname. Of hym come oþer kynges of Fraunce, as it is wipynne in his place openliche declared; kynges of his ofsprynge regned in Italia and in Almania anone to þe ȝere of oure Lord nyne hondred and twelue, whan Conradus,[6] kyng of Duches[7] men, toke þe empere to hymself. R. Longe aftirward, as comyn[8] fame telleþ, a woman þat was quene of Fraunce by eritage wedded a bocher for his fairenesse; þerfore in þe repreef[9] of þat dede Frensche men ordeyned among hemself þat no womman schulde aftirwarde be eyre of þe reigne[10] of Fraunce. *Giraldus.* Þe Romayns were som- TREVISA.

gate Lodowicus. That Lodowicus gate Lotharius, whiche gate Lodowicus the laste kynge of that kynrede. After the dethe of whom the Romanes ordeynede Hugo duke off Burguyne to theire gouernoure, whiche gate Robert. That Robert gate Henry, whiche gate Philippe. Þat Philippe gate Lodowicus, whiche reignede in the tyme of Henry Clerke, son of the Conquerour. Kynges reignede in Fraunce of the stocke of Grete Charles vn til that Hewe Capet reignede in Fraunce, from whom other descendenge reignede there, as hit schalle be seyde in his propre place, of the stocke of whom somme reignede in Ytaly, somme in Allemayne, vn to the yere of oure lorde ix^{c}. and xii., when kynge Conradus toke to hym thempyre of Almayne. R. Longe afterwarde, after the commune fame, a qwene of Fraunce to whom the realme descendede by trewe inheritaunce, whiche seenge a bochor, a semely man of stature, toke hym to here howsebonde; for the detestacion of that dede, the Frenche men made a statute that noo woman after here scholde reioyce the realme of Fraunce. *Giraldus.* Nowble MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] Cx. omits both clauses relating to Charles the Simple.
[2] *Hugh*, Cx.
[3] *Harry*, Cx.
[4] *clerk his*, *a*.
[5] *his*] So *a*.; *of*, MS.
[6] So *a*. and Cx.; *Contradus*, MS.
[7] *Duche*, Cx.
[8] *the comyn*, Cx.
[9] *reproof*, Cx.
[10] *royame*, Cx.

dudum tenuerunt fortes coloni, qui [1] Romanos sæpius [2] protriverunt. Tandem Gallia, sub Julio [3] Cæsare subacta,[4] per quadringentos circiter annos usque ad ultima Valentiniani tempora [5] per Romanos occupata est.[6] Deinde [7] Wandali et Huni, post quos [8] Suevi et Burgundi, post quos Gothi et Sicambri, post quos [9] Norwagenses et Dani sedes sibi in ea fecerunt.[10] Sunt itaque in Gallia sive Francia [11] hæ provinciæ, Brabantia,[12] Flandria, Picardia, Normannia, Britannia Minor, Pictavia, Aquitania,[13] Andegavia, Vasconia, Burgundia, Alvernia,[14] Salina, Provincia, Campania Minor.[15]

---

[1] *qui totius vrbis (sic) victores*, A.; *qui totius orbis luctatores*, C.D.

[2] *multiplici bello pene*, A.C.D.

[3] *Gaio Julio*, C.D.

[4] *subacta est, et sic occupata per Romanos*, A.D.

[5] A.C.D. add : "quando externæ "ex diversis orbis terræ partibus "gentes eam invaserunt."

[6] Sentence otherwise very slightly altered in C.D.

[7] *Deinde*] Primo namque, C.D.

[8] *dein*, C. ; *deinde*, D.

[9] *post modum*, A. ; *postremo*, C.D.

[10] *sibi sumpserunt*, A.

[11] *itaque in ea*, C.D.

[12] *Brabania*, E.

[13] *Acquitania*, E.: it and other MSS. below have often *Aquitannia*, which is interesting, as showing the passage to the modern *Guienne*.

[14] *Alicervia*, C.

[15] The proper names slightly transposed in A.C.D. The account of Brabant is placed at the end of this chapter in A. and the Harl. version, but incongruously and inconsistently with the heading of the following chapter. The object in placing it here was to get a word beginning with F. as the initial letter of the following chapter. See the Introduction.

tyme victours of alle þe worlde; but stalworþe men and wight,[1] þat wonede in Fraunce, ouercome hem in many batailles; but at þe[2] laste in Gaius Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia, þat is Fraunce, was i-made soget, and so occupied by Romaynes aboute a foure hondred ȝere anon to þe laste tyme of Valentinianus þe emperour, whan dyuers men of straunge londes werred in Gallia. For first Wandali and Huni, þanne Sweui and Burgundi, þat beeþ of Sweuia, a lond of Almania,[3] þat is[4] Almayne. Þanne Gothi and Sicambri, þan Norþways[5] and Danes made hem[6] cheef citees in Gallia. In Gallia, þat is Fraunce, beeþ many prouinces and londes þat beeþ Braban, Flaundres, Pycardie, Normandye, þe lasse Britayne, Peyto, Gyan, Angeoye, Gasquyn,[7] Burgoyne,[8] Salina, Prouincia, Campania þe lasse, þat is[9] Champayn. And Aluarn also is in Fraunce. Flan-

Trevisa.

---

men occupyede late Fraunce, whiche allemoste contriuede the Romanes and victores of this worlde with mony batelles. At the laste Fraunce was subacte to Iulius Cesar, and occupyede by Romanes by cccc. yere, vn to the laste tymes of Valentinian themperoure, when straunge peple of diuerse partes of the worlde entrede in to hit. Firste Wandalinges and Hunes, after that men of Sveuia and of Burguyne, after whom Gothi and Sicambri, after theyme men of Norguegia and Danes, and toke theire places in hit. In whiche Fraunce be these prouinces, Braban, Flandres, Pikardy, Normandy, Breteyne the lesse, Gyon, Pictauia, Gascuyn, Burguyn, Aluerne, Salina, Prouince the lesse, Campanye. Brabancia is sette at the sowthe este off Flandres, a copious londe, and habundant in marchaundise, and specially in colourenge wolle in diuerse coloures, whiche they receyve from Englonde, and sende the clothes in to diuerse prouinces. Thauȝhe Englonde haue the beste wolle, neuerthelesse hit hathe not suche waters to make colores with as is in Flandres or in Brabayn. At London is a welle, and a determinate place in the ryuer that is abowte Lincolne, thro helpe of whom nowble scarlet is made.

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *wiȝt*, *a*.
[2] Cx., as usual, omits *þe*.
[3] So *a*., Cx.; *Alemanii*, MS.
[4] *is*] Added from Cx.
[5] So *a*., Cx.; *Norwaye*, MS.
[6] *hem self*, Cx., who omits *cheef*.
[7] *Gascoign*, Cx.
[8] *Burgun*, *a*.
[9] *is*] Added from *a*.

Cap. XXVIII.[1]

De Provinciis Franciæ.

De Brabantia. Brabantia ad Eurum Flandriæ situatur, terra mercibus copiosa, potissime lanis ordiendis instar Flandriæ indulget, quo fit ut lanas quas de Anglia recipit in pannos multicolores convertit, multisque provinciis refundit. Quamvis enim Anglia lanas optimas producat, aquas tamen tincturæ tam accommodas sicut Flandria, vel Brabantia, non habet. Est tamen apud Londonium fons quidam, et apud Lincolniam determinatus locus in rivulo per transversum urbis decurrente, quorum ope optimum scarletum efficitur.[2]

De Flandria. Flandria provincia Galliæ Belgicæ juxta litus oceani constituta, a septentrione habet Frisiam, ab ortu Germaniam, a meridie Picardiam, ab occasu oceanum et borealem partem Angliæ; et licet Flandria situ sit parva, multis tamen commoditatibus est referta,[3] utpote pascuis, armentis, mercimoniis, amnibus,[4] portubus marinis et urbibus inclita.[5] Gens ejus elegans, fortis, facunda,[6] locuples,[7] ad domesticos pacifica, ad extraneos fida,[8] opere lanifico præclara, quo toti pene Europæ subministrat. Terra quidem plana, sed[9] silvis rara; quarum vicem supplent glebæ de locis ejus palustribus effossæ, viliores[10] quidem quam ligna quoad[11] cinerem et[12] graviores ad odorem.

---

[1] Cap. 28 does not appear in C., but the following chapter is numbered 29. Instead of cap. 28, the following occurs: "De Gallia dicit "Eutropius experimento deprehen- "sum esse, quod sicut eorum virtus "primo impetu majorem quam vi- "rorum, ita sequens minor est quam "fœminarum. Burgundia dicta," &c. Here follows the piece about Burgundy at the end of cap. 28, slightly altered, and after that the piece about a well in Brittany, &c. (see p. 292), also slightly altered. So also D., except that the chapters are not numbered.

[2] The description of Brabant, which Higden evidently intended to write, is given in A. only, and in the versions.

[3] *refecta*, B.

[4] *amnibus*] om. A.

[5] *inclitis*, B.

[6] So B.; *fecunda*, A.E., and the versions.

[7] *locuplex*, A.E.

[8] *fida*] Added from A B.

[9] *et*] *sed et*, E.

[10] *viliorem*, E. (clerical error.)

[11] *ad*, B.

[12] *sed*, B.

dria, þat is Flaundres, a prouince of Gallia Belgica,[1] and is vppon þe brynke[2] of þe see of occean, and haþ in þe north side Frisia, in þe est Germania, in þe soupe Pycardie, in þe west occean, in[3] þe norþ a party of Engelond. And þeyȝ Flaundres be a litel lond, it is ful plentevous of meny profitable þinges, and[4] of richesse of pasture, of bestes, of marchaundise, of ryueres, of hauenes of þe see, and of good townes. Þe men of Flaundres beeþ faire, stronge, and riche; and bringeþ forth meny children, and beeþ pesible[5] to hir neighebores, trewe[6] to straungeres, noble craftes[7] men, and greet makeres of cloþ þat þey sendeþ[8] aboute wel nyȝ al[9] Europa. Þe lond is pleyne and skarse of wode; þerfore in stede of wode þey brenneþ torfes, þat smelleþ wors þan wode, and makeþ fouler askes.[10] Braban is by south est Flaundres, and is plentevous of marchaundise and of[11] makynge of clooth. For of wolle,[12] þat þey haueþ out of Engelond þey[13] makeþ cloop of dyuers coloures and sendeþ in to opere[14] prouinces and londes, as Flaundres doop. For þey Engelonde haue wolle at þe beste, he[15] haþ nouȝt so grete plente of good water for dyuers coloures and hewes as Flaundres haþ and Braban. Neuerþeles at Londoun is oon welle þat helpeþ[16] wel to make good scarlet, and so is at Lyncolne in[17] certeyne place in þe brook þat

TREVISA.

Of Flandres. Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

FLANDRIA is a prouince of Fraunce callede Francia Belgica, sette nye to the side of the occean, hauenge on the northe to hit Friselonde, on the este Almayne, on the sowthe Pikardy, and on the weste parte to hit the occean and the northe parte of Englonde. And thauȝhe Flandres be lytelle in quantite, neuerþelesse hit is replete with mony commodites, as with pastures, bestes, marchandise, waters, hauenes or portes of the see, and nowble in cites. The peple of hit be semely in stature, myȝhty, plentuous, and ryche, kepenge peace to men of theire cuntre, feitheful to straungeors, and excellente in worchynge and laborenge in wolle that seruethe allemoste alle Europe. That londe is playne, hauenge fewe woodes, whiche gete turfes of the marras grownde to fullefille the stede of woode, whiche be more vile then woode

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 46.

[1] So *a.*; *Bellica*, MS.
[2] *coste*, Cx.
[3] *a.* and Cx. add *and*.
[4] *and*] om. Cx.
[5] *pesibel*, *a.*
[6] *and trewe*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *crafty men*, Cx.
[8] *whiche is sante*, Cx.
[9] *in al*, *a.* and Cx.
[10] *asshes*, Cx. (as usual.)
[11] *of*] om. Cx.
[12] *the wulle*, Cx.
[13] *þey*] added from Cx. (*they.*)
[14] So *a.* and Cx.; *dyuers*, MS.
[15] *it*, Cx.; *þei*, *a.*
[16] So *a.* and Cx.; *clepeþ*, MS.
[17] *in*] *one*, Cx.

De Picardia.

Picardia Galliæ provincia, ab oppido Pontico quod nunc Phiten dicitur[1] sic vocata,[2] ut vult Herodotus,[3] nobilia habet castra; scilicet Ambianum, Belgis, sive Belvacum, Attrabatum, Tornacum.[4] Jacet[5] inter Flandriam ab aquilone et Normanniam ad[6] austrum, habens ad occasum fretum Gallicum et australem Angliæ partem. Est autem duplex Picardia, superior quæ Galliæ magis est[7] propinqua, alia inferior quæ Flandriæ est contigua et Brabantiæ finibus, cujus gens astuta est et[8] grossioris linguæ quam aliæ partes Franciæ.

De Normannia.

Normannia, quæ et Neustria a Noricis, id est Norvagenis,[9] proprie est dicta, qui navigantes a[10] Dacia et Norvegia[11] litus[12] Gallici oceani obtinuerunt et partem illam Normanniam vocaverunt. Cujus metropolis est Rothomagus, super ostium Sequanæ fluminis ubi cadit in oceanum situs; habet ad austrum sui Britanniam minorem, ad occasum oceanum Gallicum, ad circium australem partem Angliæ.

De Britannia minore,

Britannia minor denominata est a Britonibus bis

---

[1] *nunc . . . dicitur*] Space left in B.

[2] *vocat*, B.

[3] *Erodotus*, MSS. Some other author is doubtless intended, and so below.

[4] *Attrebant, Tornant*, A.B.

[5] *ab aquilone* before *inter* in B.

[6] *ad*] om. B.

[7] *est magis*, B.

[8] *et*] om. B.

[9] *Norwagenis*, B.

[10] *a*] So B.; *et*, A.E.

[11] *Norguegia*, A.

[12] *litora*, B.

passeþ by þe toun. Pycardie is a prouince of Gallia, and haþ þat name of þe toun þat hatte Ponticus, and hat now Phiten; so seiþ Herodotus. Pycardie haþ many noble castelles and townes, þat beeþ Ambyans,[1] Belgis, oþer Beluacus, Attrebat,[2] Tornat; and lieþ bytwene Flaundres in þe north side and Normandye in þe souþ side, and haþ in þe west side the see and þe south side[3] of Engelond. Þere beeþ tweie Picardies, þe ouer[4] is nere Fraunce; and þe neþer[5] ioyneþ[6] to þe endes of Flaundres and of Braban. Þe men þere of beeþ boistous men of dedes, and gretter[7] speche haþ[8] þan oþer men of Fraunce. Normandie, þat hatte[9] Neustria also, haþ[10] þe name of Norwayes þat seilled[11] out of Norway and of Denmark, and gatt a contrey vppon þe clyues of occean yn Gallia and cleped it Normandie. Þe cheef citee þerof is Rowan vppon þe mouth of þe ryuere of Seyne;[12] þere Seyne torneþ into þe see of occean. Normandye haþ in þe souþ [the lasse Brytayn, in the weste the Frensshe occean, and in the north west the south syde of Englonde].[13] Þe lasse Bretaigne haþ þe name of Britoons[14]

TREVISA.

---

as vn to esches, and more tedious to the odoure. Picardy is a prouince of Fraunce, hauenge nowble castelles and hie, lyenge betwene Flandres at þe northe and Normandy at the sowthe, hauenge on the weste to hit the see of Fraunce and the sowthe parte of Englonde. There be tweyne Picardyes; the hier that is more nye to Fraunce, and the lawer that is contiguate to Flandres and to the costes of Braban. The peple of this Picardy is more wyle and of more grosse langage then other partes of Fraunce. Normannia or Neustria, callede Normandy, toke the name of hit of men of Norway, whiche, saylenge from Denmarke, opteynede and inhabite that grownde, callenge hit Normandy, the chiefe eite of whom is callede Rothomagus, nye to the floode callede Sequana, where hit fallethe in to the occean, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the lesse Breteyne, at the weste the occean of Fraunce, at the sowthe weste to hit the northe parte of Englonde. The lesse Briteyne toke the name of

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *as Amyens*, Cx.
[2] *Attrebat*] om. Cx., who adds *and many other* after *Tournay*.
[3] Eleven words wanting in MS.
[4] *that one*, Cx.
[5] *and eyther*, Cx.
[6] *inneþ*, *a*.
[7] *grettre*, *a*.
[8] *haue gretter speche*, Cx.; *specheþ*, MS.
[9] *heet*, Cx. (who usually substitutes *is named*.)
[10] *and hath*, Cx. (typ. error.)
[11] *sail*, Cx.
[12] *ryuer Seyne*, *a*.
[13] The words in brackets added from Cx.; partly also from *a*.
[14] So *a*.; *Britons*, Cx.; *Brutus*, MS.

eam [1] occupantibus; primo, per Brennium fratrem Belini regis; secundo, tempore Vortigerni regis Britonum, per Britones a Saxonibus infestatos, sicut in historia Britonum continetur. Hæc provincia habet ad orientem Andegaviam, ad aquilonem Normanniam, ad austrum Aquitaniam,[2] ad occasum oceanum Aquitanicum. *Giraldus in Topographia.* In hac Britannia est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali haustis si petram fonti proximam perfuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno, pluvias statim non evades.[3] In Francorum etiam regno est fons juxta castrum Pascense masculorum usibus valde congruens, sed fœminis nequaquam; cujus aquæ nullo igne nulla[4] arte possunt calefieri.[5]

De Pictavia.

Pictavia Galliæ Narbonensis est provincia, quam Picti, Angli, Scoti navigio impetentes[6] inhabitaverunt, et nomen urbi Pictavis[7] et regioni Pictaviæ indiderunt, sicut

---

[1] *eam bis*, B.

[2] *ad . . . Aquitaniam*] om. B.

[3] *evadet*, A.B., in error. The paragraph appears thus in C.D.: *In Britannia minori est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali* (bibali, D.) *haustis, si petram ei proximam forte profuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno in continenti, pluvias non evades.*

[4] *nullave*, B.

[5] Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

[6] *impertientes*, A.

[7] So B.; *Pictavi*, A.E. Both *Pictavium* and *Pictavæ* occur as the nominative. See Lloyd's *Dict. Hist.* and Hofmann's *Lexic. Univ.*

þat twyes occupied[1] þat lond. Fyrst by Brennus[2] þat was kyng Bellynus his broþer,[3] and efte sones by Britons þat were pursued and greued by þe Saxons in Fortigerns[4] tyme kyng of Britons, as it is i-write and conteyned in þe storie of Britouns. Þis prouince haþ in þe est side Andegauia, þat is Angeoye,[5] in þe north Normandye, in þe souþ Guyan, in þe west occean Aquitanicus, þat is þe see þat is by Gyan is side.[6] *Giraldus in Topographia.*[7] In þis Britayne is a welle; ȝif þe water of þat welle is i-take in bugle[8] horn and i-helte[9] vppon a stoon þat is[10] next to þe welle, by[11] þe wedir[12] neuer so faire anon it schal rayne. Also in þe Frensche men lond[13] is a welle faste by þe castel Pascence, þe water of þat welle is swiþe good[14] for men and nouȝt for wommen. No man can hete water[15] of þat welle noþer wiþ fuyre ne wiþ craft þat any man can deuyse.[16] Pictauia, þat is Peytowe, is a prouince of Gallia Narbonensis. Englischmen, Scottes, and Pyctes[17] seilled and wonede þere and cleped þe contray Pictauia, and þe chief citee Pictauus, þat is Peiters, so seiþ Herodotus.[18]

TREVISA.

Britaynes occupienge hit twyes. Firste by Brennius, brother to kynge Belin. In the secunde tyme of Vortigernus, as hit is conteynede more plenerly in the story of Britaynes. That prouince hathe on the este to hit Gascuyn, at the northe Normandy, at the sowthe Gyon, at the weste the occean of Gyon. There is a welle in that Britayne, the water of whom ydrawen up in the horne of a bugle or of an ox, and caste on the nexte ston to hit, thauȝhe the weder be neuer soe feire, hit schalle reyne anoon. Also in the realme of Fraunce is a welle nye to the castelle Pascence, congruente to the vse of men, but not of women. The water of whiche welle can not be made hoote with eny fire. Pictauea is a province of Fraunce Narbonense, whom Pictes, Scottes, and Englischemen did inhabite, callenge the name off the cite Picta, and the name of the prouince Pictauea,

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *occupieþ*, MS.
[2] *Birremus*, MS.; *Brenius*, Cx.
[3] *Bellinus broder*, Cx.
[4] *Vortegerns*, *a.*; *Vortigers*, Cx.
[5] *Andegoy*, Cx.
[6] *by the side of Guyan*, Cx.
[7] *toppicis*, (sic) Cx. Reference omitted in MS.
[8] *in a bugles*, Cx.
[9] *poured*, Cx.
[10] *þat is*] om. Cx.
[11] So MS., but probably by a clerical error for *be*, which *a.* and Cx. read.
[12] *be þe welle*, *a.*
[13] *And in Fraunce*, Cx.
[14] *the water therof is right good*, Cx.
[15] *that water*, Cx.
[16] So *a.* and Cx.; *can do deuyse*, MS.
[17] So Cx.; *Puteis*, MS.; *Putees*, *a.*
[18] *Erodotus*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.

dicit Herodotus. Hæc itaque provincia per longum oceani projecta habet ab oriente Turoniam[1] quam flumen Ligeris præterfluit, ab austro Hispanias,[2] ab aquilone Britanniam minorem et sinum Aquitanicum, ab occasu oceanum. Gens ejus a Gallis, quibus sæpe immixta est, et etiam a climate, cui subjacet, mores attraxit ;[3] ut jam sit robusta corpore, venusta facie, animo audax, ingenio callida ; quia,[4] secundum Isidorum, Etymologiarum libro nono, secundum diversitatem cœli facies hominum, colores corporum, qualitates animorum existunt.

De Aquitania. Aquitania ab aquis obliquis Ligeris fluminis dicta est, quod plurima ex parte terminus ejus est ; cujus nomine plures particulares provinciæ comprehenduntur secundum Plinium. A septentrione et oriente habet Galliam Lugdunensem, ab euro et austro contingit provinciam Narbonensem.

De Andegavia. Andegavia provincia Galliæ media est quodammodo inter Aquitaniam et Britanniam minorem.

---

[1] *Thuroniam*, A.
[2] *Hispaniam*, B.
[3] *contraxit*, A.B.
[4] *eo quod*, B.

Þis prouince strecchep longe wey vppon þe occean, and hap in þe est side Turonia, þerby passep þe ryuer of Leyre, in þe soup side Spayne, in þe norp þe lasse Bretaigne and þe see of Gyan, in þe west þe see of occean. Þe[1] men of þat lond drawep after þe maneres of[2] Frensche men, bycause þat þey beep i-meddled[3] wip hem, and also by cause of þe contray þat þey wonep ynne;[4] so þat þey beep now stronge of body, faire of face, bold of herte, and fel of witte. For Ysidre, Eth., libro nono, seip þat dyuersite of contrayes vnder heuene is dyuersite of face in man in strengþe, in colour, and in witt.[5]

TREVISA.

De Aquitania.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

Aquitania, þat is Gyan, and hap þe name Aquitania of *aquis*, þat ben *wateres;* for þe water of þe ryuere of Leire goop aboute a greet deel of þat lond. Many particuler prouinces[6] is comprehendid vndir þe name of þat lond. Plinius seip þat he hap in þe north and in þe est Gallia Lugdunensis, in þe soup and est he strecchep to þe prouince of Narbon. Andegauia, þat is Angeoy, a prouince of Gallia, and is as it were in þe myddel bytwene Gyan

as Herodotus seythe. This prouince, proiecte by the longitude of the occean, hathe on the este to hit Turonea, whom the floode callede Ligeris flowethe abowte, in the sowthe parte of hit Spayne, on the northe the lesse Briteyne, on the weste to hit the occean. The peple of hit kepe the maneres and consuetudes of Frenche men, to whom thei were immixte, and after the cuntre to whom thei be subiecte. For after Isidorus, Ethi., libro nono, that the faces and coloures of men bene chaungede after the diuersite of heuyn. Aquitanny is namede of the oblyke waters of that floode callede Ligeris, in whiche name mony other particuler prouinces be comprehendede, after Plinius, hauenge on the northe and of the este to hit Fraunce Lugdunense, towchenge on the sowthe the prouince Narbonense. Audegauia is a province of Fraunce Lugdunense, as a meane betwene

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *þat*, MS.

[2] *ben of the conditions of*, Cx.

[3] *i-melled*, *a.*; *by cause they medle*, Cx.

[4] *and of the countrey that is so neyghe to them*, Cx.

[5] The last sentence is omitted in Cx.

[6] *many a perticuler prouince*, Cx.

De Vasconia.

Vasconia est provincia sub Aquitania olim contenta, habens ab oriente[1] Pyrenæos montes, ad occasum[2] oceanum occidentalem, ad eurum planitiem[3] provinciæ Tholosanæ. In alio latere propinquat genti Pictavorum, cujus terra satis est nemorosa et montuosa,[4] vinearum[5] ferax; quam Garonna fluvius a Tholosana[6] parte separat, et juxta Burdegalam,[7] quæ terræ illius metropolis est, oceanum intrat. Cujus[8] terræ viri dicuntur Vascones, quasi Wacones,[9] quos Pompeius Magnus, edomita Hispania deposuit de monte Pyrenæo et in[10] unum oppidum congregavit, sicut tradit Herodotus[11] historiographus. Viri quoque loci illius modo Bausclenses[12] vocantur, corpore quidem agiles, animo audaces, pilis et arcubalistis utentes, ad latrocinia et depredationes proni, vilibus et fissis vestibus induti.

De Burgundia.

Burgundia pars est Galliæ Senonensis usque ad Alpes[13] Pyrenæos pene extensa, et dicta est a burgis eo quod Austrogothi[14] Italiam vastaturi ibi fecerunt

---

[1] *ortu*, B.
[2] *ad occasum*] om. B.
[3] *planutam*, B.
[4] *montuosa et nemorosa*, B.
[5] *et vinearum*, A.
[6] *Tholozana*, E
[7] *Burdegalia*, B.
[8] *Hujus*, A.B.
[9] *quasi Wacones*] om. B.
[10] *in*] om. B.
[11] *Erodotus*, MSS., as usual. Some other author is, of course, intended.
[12] *Basclenses*, A.; *Blasclenses*, B.
[13] *Alpes Alpenninos* (sic) *Pirencos*, A.B.
[14] *Austro*] om. B.

and litel Bretaigne. Vasconia, þat is Gasguyne,[1] and was somtyme conteyned vndir Gyan, and haþ in þe est side þe hilles Pyrenei, in þe west the west occean, in þe souþ est þe pleyn of þe prouince of Tholous, and in þe[2] oþer side hit neigheþ to Peytow. In þat lond beeþ meny woodes, hilles, and vynes;[3] and þe ryuer Garonna departeþ bytwene þat lond and þe prouince of Tholous, and entreþ into þe see of occean faste by Burdeux; þat is þe chief citee[4] of þat lond. Þe men of þat lond beeþ i-cleped Vascones, as it were Wacones. Þe Grete Pompeius[5] put hem doun of mount Pyreneus, and gadered hem alle in to oon[6] towne, whanne Spayne was ouercome, so seiþ Herodotus, þe writer of stories.[7] Þe men of þat lond hatte now Vasclensis,[8] and beeþ swift and hardy, and vseþ balles and alblastres[9] and gladliche woleþ robbe[10] and reue[11]; and so þey beeþ stronge þeues. Þey beeþ cloþed in slitte[12] cloþis and foule. Burgundia is a party of Gallia Senonensis[13] and strecchеþ anon to Alpes Pyrenei, and haþ þat name Burgundia of borw[14] townes þat Austrogothi bulde[15] þer inne, whan þey keste[16] for to destroye Italia. Þis lond

TREVISA.

the lesse Briteyne and Aquitanye. Vasconia is a province somme tyme conteynede vnder Aquitanny, hauenge on the este to hit the hilles Pirene, at the weste the occean; whiche londe hathe woodes ynowe, and fulle off hilles, plentuous of vynes; whom the floode callede Garona departethe hit in parte from Tholosan, entrenge in to the occean nye to Burdewes, the chiefe cite of that prouince. Men of that cuntre be callede Vascones, whom Grete Pompeius makenge tame gedrede theyme in to oon lytelle cuntre, as Herodotus, the wryter of storyes, rehersethe. But nowe the peple of that cuntre be callede Basclenses, swifte of body, bolde in herte, vsenge dartes and crosse bawes or staffe slynges, prompte to thefte and robbenge, induede with fowle clothenge. Burguyn is a parte of Fraunce Cenonense to Alpes Pirene extente allemoste, callede soe of townes and cites whom Astrogothes, wyllenge to waste

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Guscoyn*, Cx.
[2] *that*, Cx.
[3] *wynes*, *a*.
[4] *whiche is chyef cyte*, Cx.
[5] *Pompeus*, MS., *a*., and Cx.
[6] *o*, *a*.
[7] *historyes*, Cx., as usual.
[8] *Basclensis*, *a*.; *Basclenses*, Cx.
[9] *arblestres*, Cx.
[10] *do robbe*, Cx.
[11] *reeve*, *a*.
[12] *slight*, Cx.
[13] *Senosensis*, MS., *a*., and Cx.
[14] *borugh*, Cx.
[15] *bylded*, Cx.
[16] *purposed*, Cx.

burgos, id est oppida. Hæc terra versus Alpes est frigida, ubi incolæ ex frequenti inundatione aquarum nivalium efficiuntur[1] sub mento turgidi et strumosi.[2]

Cap. XXIX.

De Hispania.

Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo. Refert Trogus[3] quod trigona sit Hispania universa,[4] quam a septentrione Pyrenæi montes conjungunt[5] Galliæ Narbonensi;[6] ex omni reliqua parte circumfusione oceani et Tyrrheni pelagi pene insula efficitur. Duplex tamen est Hispania; citerior quidem[7] incipiens a Pyrenæis saltibus per Cantabros apud Carthaginem Spartariam[8] terminatur. Ulterior vero Hispania[9] continet partem occidentalem usque ad fretum Gaditanum, ubi Herculis columnæ montem Atlanticum prospectant.[10]

---

[1] *officiuntur*, B.

[2] The preceding paragraph is slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.

[3] *Trogus trigonas quod*, E.

[4] *Hispania trigona est universa*, C.D.

[5] *contingunt*, B.

[6] *Narbonensi*] om. C.D.; *Galliæ Narbonensi*, om. B.

[7] *quidem*] om. C.D.

[8] *Spartariam*] om. C.D.; *Spatuariam*, MSS., and similarly below.

[9] *Hispania*] om. D., which in other respects agrees with the text.

[10] Transposed in C.

is ful colde toward Alpes Pyrenei; men þat woneþ toward þat side of Burgoyne[1] haueþ bocches vnder þe chyn i-swolle and i-bolled,[2] as þey he[3] were double chynned, þat is bycause of greet colde of wateres of snow, þat melteþ among hem al day. TREVISA.

De Hispania.[4]

Capitulum vicesimum nonum.

Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.

Trogus seiþ þat Trigonia[5] is Spayne al hool, and þe hilles Pireney ioyneþ Spayne in[6] þe norþ side to Gallia Narbonensis, and is i-closed in þe oþer sides al aboute wiþ þe see of occean and wiþ þe se Tyrrhenus. And so Spayne is wel nyȝ al an ylond, for he[7] is byclipped wiþ þe see wel nyȝ al aboute. But[8] þere beeþ tweye[9] Spaynes; þe hyder bygynneþ from þe pleynes and valeys of Pireneies, and strecche þ by Cantabria, and endeþ at Carthago Spartaria. Þe ȝonder Spayne conteyneþ þe west partye anoon to þe see Gaditanus; þere Hercules his pileres stondeþ[10] by sides

---

[1] *Burgan, α.*
[2] *yswollen and bagged,* Cx.
[3] *as though they,* Cx.
[4] The Latin proper names in the three following chapters are more or less corrupt; they have been mostly corrected without noticing the readings of the MSS.
[5] So α. and Cx.; *Trigania,* MS.
[6] *in*] so α. and Cx.; *and,* MS.
[7] *it,* Cx.
[8] *Boote, α.*
[9] *two,* Cx.
[10] *where as Hercules sette his pylers,* Cx.

Ytaly, made there. That londe towarde Alpes is colde, where the inhabitatores haue swellenges vnder the chynne for the grete habundaunce of waters of snawe beenge there. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Speyne. Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo. Capitulum vicesimum nonum.

TROGUS rehersethe that Speyne is iij. cornerde, or hauenge iij. corners, whom the hilles Pirene conioynethe of the northe parte to Fraunce Narbonense, made on euery other parte as an yle thro the compassenge of the occean and of the see Tirene. Neuerthelesse there be ij. Speynes. The nyer Speyne to theis costes begynnethe from the hilles Pirene, and is endede at Carthago Spartaria. The forther Spayne conteynethe the weste parte to the see Gaditan, where the pillers of Hercules haue prospecte f. 47.

Hæc itaque[1] Hispania terra est plana castellis, equis, melle,[2] et metallis copiosa. Quondam vocabatur[3] Hesperia ab Hespera[4] stella vespertina, Græcos illuc[5] dirigente. Demum dicta[6] Hiberia ab Hibero flumine. Tandem dicta est Hispania ab Hispalo flumine. Hispania octo[7] habet provincias, scilicet, Tarraconensem, Carthaginensem, Lusitaniam, Galliciam, Bœticam, Tingitanam, Asturiam, Arragoniam.[8] *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.*[9] Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spartaria ad differentiam alterius magnæ Carthaginis quæ est in Africa, quam Scipio consul Romanus delevit. Sed ista Carthago Spartaria condita fuit ab Afris sub duce Hanibale,[10] et cito post capta a Romanis; sed denuo totaliter subversa a Gothis, qui Hispaniam diu possederunt, potissime sub temporibus Honorii imperatoris. Hos tandem Sarraceni erumpentes ab Africa post tempora Heraclii imperatoris devicerunt. Sed et illi Sarraceni postmodum a

---

[1] *itaque*] om. C.D.

[2] *melle*] om. C.D.

[3] *dicebatur*, C.D.

[4] *ab Hespera*] om C. (not D.) The text should be *ab Hespero*, but the error is probably due to Higden himself.

[5] *illuc navigantes*, C.D.

[6] *dicta*] om. C.D.; B. adds *est*.

[7] So B.; *sex*, A.D.

[8] This sentence is slightly transposed in C.D. The names are somewhat barbarised in the MSS.

[9] *tertio capitulo primo*, C.; *li.* 1. *ca.* 1., D.; *cap. primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. xv. c. 1. § 30, and § 67. See Isid. Hisp. *Op.* vol. 4, pp. 200, 207. (Ed. Arev.)

[10] *Hanibale*] Space left for word in B.

Trevisa.

þe hille[1] mont Atlas. Þis Spayne is a playn lond and haþ grete copy and[2] plente of castell,[3] of hors, of metal, and of hony, and heet somtyme Hesperia of Hespera,[4] þe eue sterre, þat ladde þe Grees þider and was her lode[5] steire. Afterward he heet Hiberia of þe ryuer Hiberus; but at þe laste he hatte Hispania of þe ryuer Hispalus. In[6] Hispania beeþ sixe prouinces þat beeþ Tarraconensis, Lusitania, Gallicia, Betica, Tingitana, Asturia, Arragonia. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* Þis Carthago of Spayne is i-cleped Spartaria, for to haue difference bytwene þis Carthago [and þe grete Carthago][7] of Affrica, þat Scipio consul of Rome destroyed. Afri, men of Affrica, made þis Carthago Spartaria in duke Hanybal his tyme: but sone aftirward þe Romayns took þis Carthago Spartaria,[8] and at þe laste Gothi destroyed it al out,[9] for Gothi were lordes of Spayne long tyme, and specialliche in Honorius þe emperours[10] tyme. But afterward þe Sarecenes brak[11] out of Affrica and put Gothi out of Spayne after Heraclius þe emperoures[12] tyme.[13] But þe Saracenys were aftir-

MS. Harl. 2261.

towarde the mownte Atlantike. That Spayne is a pleyne londe, plentuous of castelles, horses, of hony, and of metalle; somme tyme callede Hesperia, of the sterre Hesperia directenge the Grekes to hit. After that hit was callede Hiberia, of the floode callede Hiberus. But at the laste hit was callede Hispania, after the floode callede Hispalus. Spayne hathe vj. prouinces, that is to say Terraconense Lucitany, Gallicea, Bethlike, Tingitine, Astury, and Arrogany. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* This Carthago of Spayne was callede Spartaria vn to the difference of Grete Carthago, whiche is in Affrike, whom Scipio the consul of Rome destroyede, but this Cartago Spartaria was made of men of Affrike under Duke Hanibal, but after that hit was destroyede of the Gothes, whiche hade possession longe in Speyne, and specially in the tymes of Honorius themperoure. The Saracenes brekenge furthe from Affrike after the tymes of Heraclius themperoure ouercome the Gothes. Whiche Saracenes were de-

[1] *hille*] om. Cx.
[2] *copy and*] om. Cx.
[3] *castelles, a.*, Cx.
[4] *Espera*, MS.
[5] *lood, a.*
[6] *Hispalus. In*] om. MS. After *Hispalus* Cx. adds, *or of Hispanus, that Hercules ordeyned gouernour and kyng there.*
[7] Words in brackets added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] Cx. omits the fourteen words preceding.
[9] *al out*] om. Cx.
[10] *emperour his, a.*
[11] *breek, a.*
[12] *emperour his, a.*
[13] The preceding sentence omitted in Cx.

Carolo Magno devicti occiduas partes Hispaniæ, quæ sunt Gallicia, Lusitania, amiserunt, orientales partes Hispaniæ solummodo retinentes.[1]

Cap. XXX.

De Insulis Maris Magni.[2]

Gades Insula.

Apte prima inter insulas magni maris Gades[3] ponitur, quæ in occiduo fine Hispaniæ in fauce occidentalis oceani situatur, ubi oceanus magnus in terras erumpit, dividens Africam ab Europa; quam Tyrii[4] de mari Rubro profecti occupantes lingua sua Gades vocaverunt, quod sonat *septam,* pro eo quod mari undique[5] cingatur, centum et decem passibus a[6] terra separata; ubi et Hercules posuit columnas mirabiles et memorabiles, tanquam in orbis extremo, quæ de nomine illius insulæ dictæ sunt Gades.[7] *Hugutio,*[8] *capitulo Gades.* Et

---

[1] The preceding paragraph from Isidore appears thus in C.D.: *Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spa*[*r*]*taria, ab Afris sub Hanibale condita, a Romanis cito post capta, sed postea a Gothis est subversa. Alia est Carthago Africæ, quam Scipio delevit,* C.D.

[2] The sections are transposed in C.D., and much abbreviated. It is, therefore, impossible to collate them minutely. The paragraph on Corsica is omitted entirely.

[3] *Apte . . . Gades*] Apud insulas maris prima, B.

[4] *Tirii* or *Tiri,* MSS.

[5] *sepiatur sive,* B.

[6] *a terra . . . Gades*] om B.

[7] Abbreviated in C.D., and placed at end of the chapter; the paragraph from Hugutio being omitted.

[8] *Hugo,* B.

ward ouercome of Charles þe Grete, and lost þe west landes of Spayne, Gallicia,[1] and Lusitania; and hilde onlice þe este londes and contrayes of Spayne. TREVISA.

De Insulis Maris Magni.

Capitulum tricesimum.

GADES is couenableliche first i-sette among þe ylondes of þe greet-see, and stondeþ in þe west ende of Spayne in a mouþe of the west occean. Þere þe grete occean brekeþ in to þe ynner londes, and departeþ atwynne[2] Affrica and Europa. Tiries come, seilled[3] out of þe Rede see, and occupied þat lond[4] and cleped it Gades in hir langage, and Gades is to mene[5] *byclipped*, for it[6] is byclipped [al][7] aboute wiþ þe see, and is from þe lond an hondred paas and ten. Þere[8] Hercules sette his pileres, þat beeþ wel[9] wonderful, as it were in þe vttermeste[10] ende of all þe erþe;[11] and þe same pileres beeþ i-cleped after þe name of þe ilond Gades also. *Hugutio, capitulo Gades.*[12] And þerof it come

victe of Grete Charles, and losenge the weste partes of Spayne, whiche be callede Gallicia Lucitania, receyuede oonly to theyme the este partes of Speyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Yles of the Grete See. Capitulum tricesimum.

THAT yle callede Gades is put firste amonge the yles of the grete see, whiche is sette in the weste ende of Speyne, as in the mowthe of the weste occean, where the grete occean brekenge vp diuidethe Affrike from Europe; whom men of Tire occupyenge callede hit Gades, whiche is in theire langage, *compassede abowte*, in so moche that hit is compassede abowte with the see, departede from the londe c. and x. passes; where Hercules putte mervellous pyllors as a memorialle in the extremite of the worlde, whiche be callede Gades, after the name of that yle. *Hug. capitulo*

[1] So Cx.; *Gallacia*, MS. Gallæcia is the ancient classical name; but Higden probably intended to use the later form Gallicia.
[2] *a sonder*, Cx.
[3] *seyling*, Cx., which is better.
[4] *ilond*, *a*.
[5] *saye*, Cx.
[6] *he*, *a*.
[7] *al*] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[8] *There as*, Cx.
[9] *right*, Cx.
[10] *otmeste*, *a*.
[11] *of the world*, Cx.
[12] Cx. gives the first sentence thus: —*And to gyue knowleche that there is no place ne lond ferther westward that stronge man Hercules sette the pylers there by Gades; thenne estward from these pylers, &c.*

inde inolevit, ut[1] columnæ positæ a viris fortibus[2] in illis locis, quæ supergredi[3] non possent, Gades vocarentur. Post has versus orientem Baleares insulæ, Majorica et Minorica situantur.

De Sardinia. Deinde Sardinia insula ad austrum habet Africam, ad septentrionem Siciliam; quæ nec serpentes habet nec lupos nec venenum, sed herbam quam apium vocant, quæ homines ridere facit et ridendo interire.[4] Hæc regio fontes habet calidos et salubres, quarum aqua latronibus cæcitatem affert,[5] si sacramento præstito oculos jurantis attigerit.[6]

De Corsica Insula. Corsica[7] insula multis promunctoriis angulosa, gignens lætissima[8] pascua et lapidem aconitem, habet ab oriente Tyrrhenum mare, ab austro Sardiniam ad triginta milliaria, ab occasu Baleares, a septentrione Ligusticum sinum et Liguriam Italiæ provinciam. Et tenet in longum[9] centum sexaginta millia passuum, in latum[10] vero viginti sex. Est autem insula illa dicta Corsica[11] a quadam muliere Corsa, quæ cum

---

[1] *quod*, A.
[2] *fortissimis*, B.
[3] *quæ transgredi*, B.E.; *quos . . . non possunt*, A.
[4] *interimit*, D.
[5] *confert*, C.D.
[6] *tetigerit*, C.D. The whole passage about Sardinia slightly altered in C.D.
[7] *Cortica*, B.
[8] *latissima*, A.
[9] *longitudine*, B.
[10] *latitudine*, A.B.
[11] *Crosica*, A., (which has *Crosa* below); *Corcica*, B.

þat [1] þe pilers, þat þe orped men and stalworþe setteþ in place þere þey mowe no furþere passe, beeþ i-cleped Gades; þan aftirward [2] from þese pileres and from þe ilond Gades by [3] þe ilondes Baleares, þat hatte Maiorica and Minorica. Þan is þe [4] ilond Sardinia, and haþ in þe souþ side Affrica, and in þe norþ Sicilia, and haþ noþer addres noþer venym, but þey haue [5] an herbe þat hatte apium, þat [6] makeþ men laughe hem selue to deþ. Þis lond [7] haþ hoot welles and heleful [8] þat makeþ [9] þeues blynde, and þey forswere hemself and touche hir eiȝen wiþ þe water of þilke welles.[10] Þe ilond Corsica is cornered wiþ many forlondes schetynge [11] in to the see; þerynne is noble lese and pasture for bestes; þereynne is a stone þat hatte aconites.[12] Corsica haþ in þe est side þe see Tyrrhenus, in þe souþ þe ylond Sardinia þritty mile þennes, in þe west þe ylondes Baleares, and in þe norþ þe see Ligusticus and Liguria a prouince of Italia, and is eiȝte score myle in lenȝþe and sixe and twenty in brede, and haþ þat name Corsica of a womman þat heet [13] Corsa. Þis

TREVISA.

Gades. Where of a consuetude was taken, that pyllers sette of myȝhty men in those places whiche myȝhte not be paste were calledde Gades. After these the yles callede Baleares, Maiorica and Minorica, be sette towarde the este. After theyme the yle callede Sardinia, hauenge on the sowthe to hit Affrike, at the northe Sicille; in whiche yle be noo serpentes, neither venom, but an herbe whiche thei calle apium, causenge a man to laȝhe, and in laȝhenge to dye. That region hathe hoote welles and wholleſom, the water of whom causethe blyndenesse to theves, after the sacramente recevede, if his eies be towchede with water there of. Corsica is an yle gendrenge nowble pastures, and a ston callede aconites; hauenge on the este to hit the see Tirene, and of the weste the yles callede Baleares, at the sowthe Liguria, a prouince of Italy; hauenge in longitude a c. lx. m. passes, and in latitude xxvi. m. passes. That yle, callede Corsica, toke the name of hit of a woman

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þat*] Added from *a*.
[2] *estward*, read by Cx., is probably right.
[3] *ben*, Cx. (in the same sense.)
[4] *is there the*, Cx.
[5] *þei haþ*, *a*.; *ther growth*, Cx.
[6] *whiche*, Cx.
[7] *ylond*, *a*. and Cx.
[8] *holsom*, Cx.
[9] *which water maketh*, Cx.
[10] *theuys and men that forswere hem self blynde, yf theyr eyen touche the water of thylke welles*, Cx.
[11] *ȝstretchyng*, Cx.
[12] *aconiþtes*, MS.
[13] *heyght*, Cx., and *highte* below, contrary to his custom.

videret taurum suum a reliquo armento frequenter discedere ac mari[1] transito melius refectum redire, navicula ascensa taurum usque ad insulam illam subsecuta[2] est, cujus fertilitate agnita Ligures[3] illuc primo[4] adduxit.

De Arado insula.

Aradia sive Aradium[5] est insula, quæ tota est civitas, non longe ab urbe Tyro,[6] viros habet nauticos in pugna[7] validissimos.

De insulis Cycladibus.

Cyclades insulæ, numero[8] quinquaginta tres,[9] sic vocantur a *cyclon*[10] Græce, quod est *circulus* Latine, quia quasi in orbem, id est circulum, circa Delon insulam sitæ sunt.[11] Aliqui dicunt eas[12] sic vocari propter scopulos qui in circuitu earum sunt. Harum prima ad orientem[13] est Rhodus, et finiuntur versus septentrionem in littore Asiæ minoris; habent quoque ab austro in boream millia quinquaginta, ab ortu vero ad occasum millia[14] ducenta.[15] Media autem illarum est Delos,[16] quod sonat *manifestum*, eo quod post diluvium ante alias terras fuerit[17] a sole illuminata. Ipsa etiam

---

[1] *et mare*, B.
[2] *secuta*, B.
[3] *Ligureos*, B.
[4] *post*, B.
[5] *Gradia sive Gradium*, B. The only correct form is *Aradus*, which is, therefore, adopted in the marginal summary, where the MSS. have *Aradia*.
[6] *a Tiro*, C.
[7] *bellis navalibus*, C.D.
[8] *in numero*, A.
[9] *numero quinquaginta tres*] om. B.
[10] *siclon*, A.; *ciclon*, E. Higden should have written *cyclos*. The derivation is omitted in D.
[11] *statuuntur*, D.
[12] *Aliqui tamen volunt eas*, A.B.
[13] *ab austro*, D.
[14] So B.; *milliaria*, E.
[15] 220 D., which omits the remainder of the paragraph.
[16] *Delon*, MSS., and so below.
[17] *fuerat*, A.

Corsa hadde a bole þat ofte lefte companye of oþer bestes, and swam in to þat ilond and com home in wel[1] better poynt þan he ȝede[2] oute. Corsa say[3] þat, and wayted hir tyme, and took a boot, and folwed[4] þe bole in to þat ilond, and sey[5] þat þere was good[6] lond for to bere corne and gras, and brouȝt þider first men þat were i-cleped Ligures. Aradia, þat haþ[7] Aradium also, is an ilonde þat is al oon citee nouȝt fer from þe citee Tyrus, and haþ many schip men þat beeþ ful stronge in fiȝtinge. Cyclades beeþ many ilondes to gedres, þre and ffifty, and beeþ[8] so i-cleped of þat Grew word ciclon þat[9] is a cercle in[10] Englisshe. For þey beeþ i-sette all rounde as it were a cercle aboute þe ilond þat hatte Delon. Nopeles som men seiþ þat þei beeþ so i-cleped by cause of hiȝe rokkes þat beeþ al aboute hem. Þe firste of hem is Rode[11] toward þe est; and þese[12] ilondes endeþ toward þe north in þe clyue[13] of þe lasse Asia, and haueþ out of þe souþ in to þe north fifty myle, and out of þe[14] est in to þe west two hundred myle. The myddel ilond of hem hatte[15] Delon, þat is to menynge *i-schewed;* for he was by schewed[16] to fore oþer londes after Noes

TREVISA.

callede Corsa, whiche seenge a bulle departenge ofte from other bestes, and to comme ageyne better fedde then other, meruaylede, and, takenge a schippe, folowede the bulle in to that yle. The plentuosenes of hit knowen, sche brouȝhte men from the prouince of Liguria to inhabite hit. Aradia or Aradium is an yle whiche is alle a cite, not ferre from the cite of Tyrus, hauenge schippe men, worthy men in batelle. There be liij. other yles, callede Cyclades, of this word, ciclon, in Grewe, that is, a cercle, in Latyn, sette abowte the yle callede Delon. Somme men wylle they be soe namede for stones beenge in theyme. The firste yle of theyme towarde the este is the yle of Roodes, and thei be finischede in the northe in the brynkes of the lesse Asia, whiche haue from the sowthe in to the northe a m. and l^ti myles, from the este to the weste ij^c. myles. The myddel yle of theyme is callede Delon, whiche sowndethe *open*, in that hit was illuminate of the son a fore other londes after

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *moche*, Cx.
[2] *wente*, Cx.
[3] *sey*, *a.*; *sawe*, Cx.
[4] *folowed after*, Cx.
[5] *seie*, *a.*; *sawe*, Cx.
[6] *good*] om. Cx.
[7] So MS.; *is called*, Cx.
[8] *ar*, Cx.
[9] *of cyclon in Grewe whiche*, Cx.
[10] *and*, *a.*
[11] *Rodes*, Cx.
[12] So *a.* and Cx.; *þe see*, MS.
[13] *clyf*, Cx.; and *hath*, below.
[14] þe] om. MS. Added from *a.* and Cx.
[15] *is named*, Cx., as usual.
[16] *beschyned*, *a.*; *it was somtyme byschyne with the sonne*, Cx.

Delos dicta est Ortygia, quia ortygiæ, id est coturnices, ibi abundant.[1] Ibi quoque Latona[2] peperit Apollinem Delphicum.

De Samo insula. Samos vel Samia est insula ubi nati sunt Pythagoras philosophus,[3] Juno, et Sibylla. Hæc terra albam et rubeam prodit argillam, unde fiunt vasa fictilia peroptima.[4]

De Cypro insula. Cyprus insula, quæ et Paphos[5] sive Cethim, ab austro cingitur Phœnicis pelago, ab occidente mari Pamphylico, a circio Ciliciam habet, continet centum octoginta millia in longum,[6] sed centum viginti quinque in latum.[7] Ibi æs et æris usus primo fuerunt reperta,[8] cujus terræ vinum est fortissimum.[9]

De Creta insula. Creta insula a quodam Creto indigena denominata est, quæ etiam Centapolis dicta est, eo quod[10] centum urbibus quondam insignis fuerit.[11] Terra quidem Saturni et Jovis, quæ[12] de antiquo jure ad Græciam

---

[1] So B.; *abundant ibi*, A.E.

[2] *Locani*, B.

[3] *Pitagei philosophi*, B.; *Phitagoras*, E.

[4] *optima*, B.; paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

[5] *Phason*, B.; *Paphon*, A.E.

[6] *longitudine*, B.

[7] *latitudine*, B.

[8] *inventa*, A.B.

[9] The paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

[10] *quondam* before *centum* in B.

[11] *fuerit insignis*, A. (but interlineated).

[12] *et*, B.

schippe. Þe same[1] Delon hatte Ortygia; for ortigie, (þat beeþ[2] coturnicies, curlewes,) beeþ þerynne[3] greet plente. Also þere[4] Latona bore Appolyn Delphicus. Samos, þat hatte Samia also,[5] is an ilond. Þere ynne[6] Pythagoras[7] þe philosofre and Iuno and Sibylla were i-bore. In þat lond is whyte cley and rede cley;[8] of þe[9] whiche cley men[10] makeþ erþene vessel good wiþ þe beste.[11] Cyprus þat ilond[12] hatte Paphon and Cithim[13] also, and is byclipped in þe souþ side wiþ þe see of Phenicia, in þe west wiþ þe see Pamphylicus, and in þe north west with Sicilia,[14] and is eiȝte score myle in lengþe and six score and fyue in brede. Þere[15] bras and craft of bras was firste i-founde. Þe wyn[16] of þat lond is strengest of alle wynes. Creta þat ylond[17] haþ þat name of oon Cretus, þat wonede þerynne. Þat ilond hatte Centapolis also, þat is a lond þat haþ an hundred citees. For þere were þerynne an hondred citees somtyme, and þere[18] was somtyme Iupiteres[19] and Saturnus

TREVISA.

Noe floode. That yle was callede other wise Ortygia, for curlewes be there habundante, where Latona childede Apollo Delphicus. Samos or Samias ys an yle, where Pythagoras[7] the philosophre and also Sibille the prophetisse were borne. That londe bryngethe furthe white clay and redde, of whom pottes or godardes be made. Cyprus is an yle, whiche[20] otherwise callede Paphon or Cethim, cincte on the sowthe parte to hit with the see of Phenicia,[21] on the weste with the see Pamphilike, conteynenge in longitude c. and lxxx. myles, and in latitude c. xx^ti and v. myles. There brasse and the use of hit were ffounde fyrste. The wyne of whiche londe is moste stronge and myȝhty. The yle callede Creta toke the name of hit of a man inhabitenge hit, whose name was Cretus; whiche was callede somme tyme Centapolis, in that hit hade a c. nowble cites in hit. The londe of Saturne and Iupiter, whiche longede to Grece in

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 47. b.

[1] *same*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[2] *ben called*, Cx.
[3] *whiche ben there*, Cx.
[4] *in that place*, Cx.
[5] *otherwyse called Samia*, Cx.
[6] *in whiche*, Cx.
[7] *Pittagoras*, MSS.; *Pyctagoras*, Cx., omitting *þe philosophre*.
[8] *cley*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[9] *þe*] om. Cx.
[10] *me*, *a.*
[11] *vessel at beste*, Cx.
[12] *lond*, Cx.
[13] *Cichym*, Cx.
[14] So MSS. and Cx. for *Cilicia*.
[15] *In that yle*, Cx.
[16] *wynes*, Cx.; who, however, has *is* below.
[17] *þat ylond*] om. Cx.
[18] *þere*] Added from Cx.
[19] *Iubiteres*, MS. (not *a.*)
[20] Either *whiche* should be cancelled, or *is* inserted.
[21] *Fenicea*, Harl. MS.

pertinet. Habet ad austrum mare Libycum, ad septentrionem [1] Græciæ æstibus allambitur, ab ortu in occasum porrigitur. Remis,[2] armis, sagittis prima claruit, litteris [3] jura [4] dedit, equestres turmas docuit, studium musicum ab Idæis [5] dactylis repertum mundo tradidit et ampliavit. Oves et capras habet multas, sed [6] cervos et capreas paucas.[7] Noxia animalium genera, ut vulpes, lupos, serpentes nocuas nusquam gignit; quin etiam venenosa illuc allata moriuntur. At [8] cum majoribus venenis careat, gignit tamen araneas [9] venenosas quas spalangias [10] vocant. *Orosius.* Continet in longum hæc insula millia passuum centum octoginta septem; in latum vero millia quatuor.[11] *Ranulphus.* In hac insula est una de quatuor labyrinthis, sicut infra dicitur.[12]

---

[1] *a septentrione,* B.
[2] *Remis*] plena, B.
[3] *litteras,* A.
[4] *jura*] om. B.
[5] *ab Idæis*] Alcideis dali, B.
[6] *et,* B.
[7] *paucas et panteres,* B.
[8] *Sed,* B.
[9] *arenas,* B.
[10] Higden should have written *phalangas.*
[11] *vi.,* A.B.
[12] The whole paragraph much abbreviated in C.D.; the latter half being omitted entirely. The Harleian version, on the contrary, contains the latter part, while it omits much of the earlier.

lond, and it[1] longeþ to Grecia riȝtfulliche[2] of olde tyme, and haþ in þe south side þe see Libycus, and in þe norþ side it is bygoo wiþ þe see of Gres,[3] and strecheþ out of þe est in to[4] þe west, and was þe firste lond þat was parfite and noble in craft of ores and of armes and of arwes,[5] and ȝaf lawe i-write in lettres and tauȝte horse men to ryde in rotes;[6] and [þer was] musyk and craft of syngynge[7] of Ideis dactalis i-founde. Men[8] of Creta made it more, and communede it in to[9] oþer londes aboute. In þat londe[10] beeþ many scheep and geet and fewe roos and hertes; þerynne is[11] no foxes noþer wolfes noþer addres noþer non suche[12] venemous bestes. And þat lond hateþ so venym, þat ȝif me bryngeth þider[13] eny venemous bestes oþer wormes out[14] of oþer londes he deieþ[15] anon; but þeyȝ þere be no grete bestes of venym, ȝit þere beeþ venemous attercoppes[16] þat beeþ i-cleped spalangia[17] in þat ilond. Þis[18] ilond is eiȝte score myle and seuene in lengþe and an hundred myle in brede. In þis ilond is oon of the foure laborintus, as it schal be ynner more declared.[19] *Treuisa.* For to brynge here hertes out of þouȝt þat hereþ speke of laborintus, here I telle what laborinthus is to menynge.

TREVISA.

olde tyme, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the see of Libya; in whiche yle be mony schepe and gaytes or gootes, but there be fewe hertes and hyndes; gendrenge not foxes, wulfes, or nyous serpentes. And also bestes replete with venom dye anoon after thei be brouȝhte þider. Neuertheleese that cuntre gendrethe gravelle with venom, whom they calle Spalingeas. *Orosius.* That yle conteynethe in longitude c. lxxx. and vij. m. passes, and in latitude a m. and vj. In that yle is also oon of the iiij. mases, as hit

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *it*] Added from Cx.
[2] Cx. reads thus: *For therin were somtyme an C cytees somtyme (sic), and there was Saturnus and Iupiter born, and were first kynges there, and of right it longeth to Grecia of old tyme, and hath, &c.*
[3] *and in the north the see of Grecia,* Cx.
[4] *oute in to the eest, and in to,* Cx.
[5] *crafte of rowyng with oores, armes, and shotyng with arowes,* Cx.
[6] *routes, a.*
[7] *lawe wreton, and taughte men ride on horsbak; and ther was the craft of musike and syngynge,* Cx.
[8] *They,* Cx.
[9] *yaf it in knowleche to,* Cx., who adds: *That lond is now called Candia,* after *aboute.*
[10] *ylond,* Cx.; and so elsewhere in the chapter, and conversely.
[11] *be,* Cx.
[12] *ne such,* Cx.
[13] *þider*] om. Cx.
[14] *out*] om. Cx.
[15] *they deyen,* Cx.
[16] *and though ther be no grete venemous beestes in that lond, yet ben ther attercops,* Cx.
[17] So MSS. and Cx.
[18] *Orosius seith that this,* Cx.
[19] *be sayd afterward,* Cx.

De Sicilia. Sicilia insula aliquando[1] vocabatur Trinacria quasi triquadra, a tribus montibus in ea prominentibus sic dicta, qui vocantur[2] Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybæum.[3] Deinde dicta est Sicilia a Siculo Itali fratre. Aliquando etiam vocabatur Sicania a Sicano rege. Habet quoque ab aquilone partem Italiæ, Apuliam, marino brachio nunc discretam;[4] sed olim, secundum Salustium, Sicilia fuit Italiæ conjuncta, sed postmodum aut aquarum alluvione aut terræ motu ab invicem scissa;[5] ita quidem[6] quod fretum illud strictum, quod trium millium[7] spatio Siciliam[8] hodie distinguit ab Italia,[9] Rhegium vocatur, quod Græce sonat *ab-*

---

[1] *aliquando*] aliter, B.

[2] *quia*, E.; *quæ vocabatur*, B.

[3] *Libeum* or *Libium*, MSS. and versions.

[4] So A.B.; *discretam nunc*, E.

[5] *Habet .... scissa*] De Sicilia refert Salustius, quod olim fuerit Italiæ conjuncta; post hæc aut aquarum alluvione aut angustia scissa est ab ea, D., where it occurs about the middle of the paragraph. The remainder down to *comœdia* is scarcely at all altered.

[6] *quidem*] om. B.

[7] *miliarium*, B.

[8] *Siciliam*] om. B.

[9] *quoque*, B.

Laborintus is an hous wonderliche i-buld wiþ halkes and hernes,[1] wiþ tornynges and wendynges and wonderful weyes so dyuersliche and so wrynkyngliche i-wroȝt, þat who þat is wiþ ynne þat hous and wil out wende, [þey he wende] wel faste oo wey and oþer, hiderward and þiderward, estward and[2] westwarde, norþward and[3] souþward, whider euere þey drawe, [and] of [alle] þe weies chese þe faireste; þey he trauaile neuere so sore, al is for nouȝt. For out gooþ he neuere, but he haue a craft þat nédeþ þerfore.[4] Þe Sicilia þat ilond was somtyme i-cleped Trinacria, as it were þre square, bycause of þre hiȝe hilles þat beeþ þerynne. Þe hilles hatte Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybeum, and afterward was i-cleped Sicilia of Siculus þat was Italus his broþer, and þat londe heet somtyme Sicania of Sicanus þe king; and haþ in the norþ side Apulia, a party of Italy, and is departed bytwene wiþ an arm[5] of þe see and ioynede somtyme to Italy, and[6] afterward was i-cloue and i-parted þere fram wiþ grete wateres oþer wiþ erþe schakynge, so seiþ Salustius; and þe see þat is now bytwene Sicilia and Italy is þre myle brood, and hatte Rhegium, þat is to menynge, i-broke of.

TREVISA.

schalle be expressede afterwarde. That yle Sicilia[7] was callede somme tyme Trinacria, of thre hilles schewenge in hit, whiche be namede Pelorum, Pachynum,[7] and Lilybeum. After that hit was callede Sicilia,[8] of Siculus broþer to Italus. Also hit was callede Sicania, of Sicanius kynge, hauenge on the northe to hit Apulia, a parte of Ytaly, now diuidede by an arme of the see. But after Salustius, Scicille was coniuncte somme tyme to Ytaly, but afterwarde hit was diuidede auþer thro invndation of water, other thro the movenge of erthes, in so moche that a see diuidethe now Ytaly from Scicille by the space of iij. myles. That

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *hirnes, a.*
[2] *and*] om. *a.*
[3] *and*] om. *a.*
[4] In the preceding extract from Trevisa the words in brackets are added from *a.* Caxton's text has been very much altered thus: "For "to late men haue knowleche what "laborintus is, it is an hous won-"derly buylded and wrought with "halkes and huyrenes, tornynges, "and windynges so diuersly by won-"derful wayes and wrynclis, that "who, that gooth in to that hows "and wold come out agayn, though "he retorne hytherward and thy-"derward eeste, west, north, or "southward, whyther euer he drawe "and for alle the wayes he can "chese, though he trauaylle neuer "so sore, he shal be so mased that "out can he not goo, but yf he haue "the craft that serueth therfore."
[5] *departed fro that part with grete waters of an arme of the see or clouen by erthshakyng*, Cx., who has slight variations in the words following.
[6] *and*] Added from *a.*
[7] *Pathnium*, Harl. MS.
[8] *Scicilia*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

ruptum. Habet quoque illud fretum duo famosa et fabulosa monstra, Scyllam et Charybdim. Scyllam accolæ saxum mari imminens[1] appellant, humanæ formæ similem capitibus caninis[2] succinctam fingunt, quia[3] collisi ibi fluctus videntur latratus exprimere. Charybdis autem est mare vorticosum[4] et naufragosum, ter in die fluctus evomens et ter absorbens.[5] *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Hæc insula primo omnium terrarum pro committendis seminibus fertur aratro fuisse proscissa,[6] ibique primum inventa fuit comœdia. *Beda de Naturis.* Tellus Siciliæ cavernosa, sulphure ac bitumine strata, ventis pene tota et ignibus patet; spiritu quoque introrsus cum igne concertante, multis sæpe locis fumum, vaporem, seu flammas eructat;[7] vel etiam, vento acrius incumbente, arenarum lapidumve moles egerit, indeque montis Ætnæ tam diutinum est incendium. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, capitulo septimo.* Ætna mons versus eurum et Africum[8] habet spe-

Ætna mons.

[1] *iminens* (sic), A.E.; *minans*, B. Probably *eminens* is the true reading.
[2] *caninam*, A.E.; *succinctum*, B.
[3] *qui*, B.E.
[4] *verticosum*, MSS.
[5] *absorbens ter*, B.
[6] *precisa*, B.
[7] *emittit*, B.
[8] So A.B.; *Affricam*, E.

In þat see beeþ tweie greet periles and [1] wonderful and wel wyde i-knowe; þat oon is Scylla, þat oþir is Charybdis. Men of þat lond clepeþ Scyllam a greet stoon, þat is þere i-seie aboue þe water, i-schape as a man, byclipped aboute wiþ hondes,[2] and feyneþ and seieþ þat it semeþ þat þe wawes berkeþ,[3] þat beteþ þere vppon. Charybdis is a perilous whirlynge see þat casteþ vp water and wawes, and swoloweþ hem yn þries a day.[4] *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* In þis ilond me [5] erede firste wiþ plowȝ for to sawe [6] in corn and oþer sedes, and þere was commedy a song of gestes firste i-founde. *Beda de Naturis.* Þe lond of Sicilia is holow and ful of dennes, and haþ moche [7] brymstone and glewe, so þat the eier and feire [8] haþ wey i-now þerto, and fuyre i-closed in þe dennes and chenes [9] wiþ ynne þe erþe stryueþ wiþ þe [10] ayer and wiþ [11] oþer þinges þat beeþ contrarye to þe fuyre and makeþ ofte and in meny places breke out a [12] smoke and brennynge leie.[13] And somtyme the strengþe of þe wynd þat is wiþ inne makeþ breke vp [14] hepes of grauel and of stones; for suche doynge it is þat þe brennynge of þat hil [15] mont Etna[16] dureþ so longe. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Þat hille mount Etna toward þe souþ est haþ many chenes and holow[17] dennes [18] wiþ inne þe erþe ful of

Trevisa.

see hathe ij. famous wondres and fulle of fables, that be Scylla and Charybdis. This Scylla, as men dwellenge there expresse, seyen that hit is a ston apperenge in the see lyke to the forme of man with hedes lyke to dogges. Wherefore thei seyne that thynge as to berke for the collision of waters metenge there. Charybdis is callede properly a turnenge water, and perellous for destroyenge of schippes, evometenge waters thryes in the day, and devourenge theyme. *Isidorus, Eth., libro quarto decimo.* That londe occupiede tyllenge of the londe with a plowe firste of alle other londes. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, capitulo septimo.* In this Scicille is the mownte callede Etna,[16] hauenge in hit towarde the sowthe weste pyttes of

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *and*] om *a.*, Cx.
[2] *houndes heedes*, Cx.
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *brekeþ*, MS.
[4] *in agayn thryes in a day*, Cx.
[5] *men*, Cx., as usual.
[6] *sowe*, *a.*, Cx.
[7] *caues and moche sulphur or brymstone*, Cx.
[8] *fire*, *a.*
[9] *in the caues and in the chinnes*, Cx.
[10] þe] om. *a.*
[11] *wiþ*] om. Cx.
[12] *greet*, *a.*
[13] *to fyre, and that causeth ofte smoke and brennyng leyte to breke out in many places*, Cx.
[14] *to breke oute*, Cx.
[15] *hille that is called the mount*, Cx.
[16] *Ethna*, MSS. and Cx.
[17] *holw*, MS.
[18] *chynnes and holowe dennes or caues*, Cx.

luncas sulphure plenas, quæ ventum recipientes ignem gignunt fumosum. *Ranulphus.* In quo loco apparent figuræ et audiuntur voces gemebundæ, unde creditur a plerisque ibi fore [1] loca pœnalia animarum, quemadmodum Beatus Gregorius in suo dialogo videtur facere mentionem.[2] *Giraldus in Topographia.*[3] Est in Sicilia [4] fons, ad quem si quis rubro indutus vestimento accesserit,[5] statim ad accedentis staturam prosiliens in altum aqua [6] ebullit, ad alios prorsus colores immota.[7] Sunt et in ea cicadæ alatæ arterias apertas sub gutture habentes, quæ melius [8] (ut fertur) decapitatæ quam [9] integræ dulciusque [10] mortuæ quam vivæ canunt.[11] Unde et pastores terræ, ut dulciorem cantum ab eis [12] extorqueant, eas decapitare solent.[13] In hac quoque terra urbs est Palerma,[14] quæ plus certi [15] reditus reddit annuatim regi terræ quam tota Anglia reddit de certo [16] regi suo. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Sunt in Sicilia fontes duo, quorum unus sterilem fecundat, alter vero fecundam[17] sterilem reddit.

---

[1] *quædam loca*, B.

[2] The three foregoing citations, and part of the opening words of this paragraph, are thus abridged in C.D. "Sicilia habet ab aquilone Italiam, "marino brachio a terra Calabriæ "separatam; quondam dicta est "Trinacria, quasi triquadra, a tribus "montibus. Demum Sicilia a Si-"culo Itali fratre, aliquando etiam "dicta est Sicania a Sicano rege. "Terra cavernosa et sulphurea; "in qua est mons Ætna (Ethna) "jugiter ardens. Sunt in ea sales "argentini (agergentini, D.) ad ig-"nem solubilis in aquam (aqua, D.) "crepitantes."

[3] *topicis*, A.

[4] *ea*, C.D.

[5] Transposed in C.D.; *cum indutus vestimento rubeo accesserit*, B.

[6] *fons*, C.D.

[7] *immotus*, C.D.

[8] *in olivis*, B.

[9] *vel*, B.

[10] *dulcius*, B.

[11] *canunt* before *mortuæ*, B.

[12] *ab eis*] om. C.D.

[13] *Ysidorus Ethimologiæ libro* 13 added in C., wrongly.

[14] So C.; *Palerna*, A.D.E.

[15] *certi*] om. C.D.

[16] *de certo*] om. C.D.

[17] *fecundam* after *reddit* in A. This sentence, and all that follow, except the first, are omitted in D.

brymston, þat fongeþ [1] moche wynde and gendreþ fuyre and smoke. R. In þat place beeþ i-seie dyuers figures and schappes and i-herd reweful [2] voys and gronynge. Þerfore some men weneþ þat soules beeþ þere in peyne, as it semeþ þat Seint Gregorie makeþ mynde in his dialogo.[3] *Giraldus in Topographia.* Þere is a welle in Sicilia, ȝif a man comeþ þerto i-cloþed in reed, anoon þe water of þat welle springeþ vp as hiȝe as þat manis hede; and for oþer colour and [4] hewe þe water meueþ nouȝt. Þere beeþ also cicade bryddes þat syngeþ at þe [5] beste, and haueþ a pipe open vnder þe þrote, and syngeþ better whan þe hede is offe þan while [6] it is onne, and better whan þey beeþ dede þan while þey beþ on lyue.[7] Þerfore herdes of þat lond byhedeþ hem forto haue þe swetter song. Also [8] in þat lond is a citee þat hatte Palarna,[9] and [10] ȝeldeþ euery ȝere more of certeyn rente to þe kyng of þat lond [11] þan þe kyng of Engelond haþ of certeyne [12] rente of Engelond.[13] *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Sicilia beeþ tweie welles, þat oon of hem makeþ a bareyn womman bere [14] children, TREVISA.

---

sulphur,[15] whiche receyvenge wynde gendre a fumose fyre. R. In whiche place figures do appere and lamentable voices be herde ofte tymes; where fore mony men suppose that þer be places of peynes for sawles, as Seynte Gregory semethe to afferme in his dialogges. *Gir. in Top.* Also in Scicille is a welle to whom a man commenge in redde clothenge anoon that water movethe vp, not movenge to other coloures. Also in hit be gressehoppers, hauenge streyte veynes vnder the throte; whiche, hauenge theire hedes kytte of, synge more swetely, as hit is seyde, then when thei haue theire hedes, and dedde better then on lyve. Wherefore the schepardes, wyllenge to make theyme to synge swetely, kytte of theire hedes. In hit is a cite callede Palerna, whiche yeldethe more rente yerely to the kynge þer of, more then alle Englonde yeldethe to the kynge of certenty. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Also in Scicille be ij. welles, oon of theyme makethe plentuous a bareyne thynge; that other welle makeythe bareyne a MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *resseyneth*, Cx., as usual; and *engendryth* below.
[2] *rufol*, *a.*
[3] *dyaloge*, Cx.
[4] *and*] or, Cx.
[5] *wel in the best wyse*, Cx.
[6] *whan*, Cx.
[7] *a lyue*, Cx.
[8] *And*, Cx.
[9] So MSS. and Cx.
[10] *that*, Cx.
[11] *to þe kyng of þat lond*] om. Cx.
[12] *siker*, Cx.
[13] *of al Engelond*, *a.*
[14] *to bere*, Cx.
[15] Perhaps *sulphure* is the reading of Harl. MS.

De insulis Æoliis. Sunt et[1] in Sicilia sales Agrigentini, contra morem alterius salis in[2] igne solubiles et in[3] aqua crepitantes. Item juxta Siciliam est insula Æola, sic dicta ab Æolo, quem poetæ finxerunt deum venti, pro eo quod ipse existens rector Æoliarum[4] insularum, numero novem, ex fumosis et nebulosis vaporibus ascendentibus prædicebat ventos affuturos, ac per hoc putatus est ab imperitis ventos habere in potestate. *Ranulphus.* Hæ eædem novem insulæ dictæ sunt[5] Vulcaniæ,[6] eo quod ignis in eis[7] jugiter ardeat. Sunt et aliæ insulæ in mari Euxino, quod magna[8] pars est
Colchos. maris magni, inter quas famosæ sunt Colchos, ubi Jason quæsivit vellus aureum, sicut infra tangitur[9]
Patmos. circa bellum Trojanum; et Patmos,[10] ubi[11] Johannes relegabatur.[12]

---

[1] *et*] om. A.; etiam ibidem, B.
[2] *in*] om. B.
[3] *in*] om. B.
[4] *Eolarum*, MSS.
[5] *dictæ sunt*] om. B.
[6] *vulcane*, MSS.
[7] *in eis ignis*, B.
[8] *magna*] om. B.
[9] *tangetur*, B,
[10] *Pathmos*, MSS., as usual.
[11] *sanctus*, added in B.
[12] *relegabat*, B.E.

and þe oþer makeþ a childyng womman barayn. In Sicilia is salt Agrigentinus,[1] wonderful and contrarie to oþer salt. For þey[2] melteþ in fuyre, and lepeþ and sprankeleþ[3] in water. Byside Sicilia is an ilond þat hatte Eola, and haþ þe name of Eolus. Poetes feynede and cleped[4] [þat][5] Eolus god[6] of wyndes; for while he was rulere of[7] nyne ilondes, euerich of hem heet Eola; by risynge of moisture of myst and of smoke he wolde telle whan it schulde reyne; and þerfore men, þat kouþe but litel good, wende þat[8] he hadde þe wynde in his power and myȝt. Þe same nyne ilondes hatte volcane,[9] that is *fuyre*,[10] for fire brenneþ þere all wey. Þere beeþ oþer ilondes in þe see Euxinus.[11] Þat see Euxinus is a grete partie of þe grete see of myddel erþe; among þe whiche ilondes þe ilond Colchos is famous. Þere Iason[12] fette þe golden flees, as it is[13] declared wiþ ynne[14] aboute þe batayle of Troye. And Patmos[15] is an ilond in þe same see; þere Seynt[16] Iohan þe Euangeliste was, whan he was outlawed[17] oute of oþer londes.

TREVISA.

---

thynge plentuous. Also in Scicille is white salte, contrary to the nature of other salte, whiche, beenge soluble in the fyre, brestethe and brekethe in the water. Also there is an yle nye to Scicille callede Eola, takenge the name of hit of a man callede Eolus, whom poetes feynede to be god of wynde, in so moche that he, beenge gouerner of the seide ix. yles, seyde ofte tymes when wyndes scholde folowe by fumose vapores ascendenge. Where fore indiscrete men supposede hym to haue the wynde in his gouernaile and powere. These ix. yles be namede and callede Walcane, in that fire brennethe in theyme continually. Also there be other yles in the see Eusyne, whiche is a grete parte of the grete see, amonge whom the yle callede Colchos, where Iason did seche the fleese of golde, as hit schalle be towchede abowte þe batelle of Troye, ys moste of fame; and Patmos,[15] where Seynte Iohan was in exile.

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So *a.* and Cx.; *arigentinus*, MS.
[2] *it*, Cx.
[3] *sprancleth*, *a.*; *sperclyth*, Cx.
[4] *feynen and saye*, Cx.
[5] *þat*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[6] *is god*, Cx.
[7] *of the*, Cx.
[8] *therfore symple men supposed that*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *vleane*, MS., *a.*
[10] *fyry*, Cx.
[11] *Eusinus*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.
[12] *as Iason*, Cx.
[13] *shal be*, Cx.
[14] *after*, Cx.
[15] *Pathmos*, MSS. and Cx.
[16] *as seynt*, Cx.
[17] *exyled*, Cx.

Cap. XXXI.

De insulis oceani.

De insulis Fortunatis.

Plinius et Isidorus. Temperatæ sunt insulæ Fortunatæ in occidentali oceano positæ, quæ putatæ sunt a Gentilibus esse Paradisum propter soli fecunditatem et aeris temperiem. Ibi enim fortuitis vitibus juga collium vestiuntur et herbarum more messis et olus vulgo [1] est.[2] Proinde ob uberem proventum Fortunatæ dicuntur quasi felices, nam ibi sunt arbores usque ad centum quadraginta pedes porrectæ in altum. Ibi etiam est [3] insula Capraria, a multitudine caprarum et arietum sic dicta.[4] Et etiam insula Canaria, a multitudine canum sic dicta.[5]

De Dacia insula.

Dacia est insula boreali parti Germaniæ contigua, cujus gens quondam ferox et bellicosa,[6] propter quod Britannicas oras et Gallicas aliquando occuparunt.[7] Et dicuntur Daci quasi Dagi,[8] quia de Gothorum genere procreati.[9] Gens ejus copiosa, elegantis staturæ, et de-

---

[1] *vulgus*, B.

[2] The whole much abbreviated in C.D., in which the remainder of the paragraph does not occur.

[3] *est etiam*, B.

[4] *est*, added in A.B.

[5] *sic dicta*] fortium nuncupata, A.B.

[6] *gens pulchra et pia*, D.

[7] *occupaverunt*, A.

[8] *Dage*, B.

[9] *de stirpe Gothorum descendens*, D.

De insulis Oceani.

Capitulum tricesimum primum.

TREVISA.

Isidorus, libro quinto. Insulé Fortunate, (þat beeþ þe gracious ilondes, and beeþ of good temprure of wynde and of weder i-sette in þe west occean and of som men i-holde paradys by cause of goodnesse of þe lond and of temperure of weder,[1]) þere by[2] gracious tymes; þe hulles beeþ i-heled, and corne[3] and herbes groweþ as it were gras. Þerfore by cause of plente of corne and of fruyt þey beeþ i-cleped Fortunat, þat is, gracious: for þere beeþ trees of seuen score foot of heithe.[4] Þere is þe ilond Capr[ar]ia, þat is þe ilond of Geet; for þere beeþ meny geet and wetheris also. Þere is þe ilond Canaria, þat is þe ilond of Houndes, [for þerynne beeþ ful meny strong houndes].[5] Dacia, þat is Denmark, is an ilond þat ioyneþ to þe north side of Germania. Men of[6] Denmark were somtyme ful sturne and goode men of armes; þerfore þey occupied somtyme greet contrayes in Brytayne[7] and in Fraunce, and hatte Daci as it were Dagi, for þey come of [þe][8] Gothes. Þere beeþ many men in Dacia, and beeþ faire

Off the Yles of the Occean. Capitulum tricesimum primum.

Plinius, et Isidorus libro quinto decimo.[9]

MS. HARL. 2261.

THE Yles Fortunate be temperate, putte in the weste occean, supposede of mony men to be paradise for the temperaunce of the aier and fecundite or plentuosenes of the soyle; the hilles of those yles be clothede as by fortunable enchaunce with herbes and other commodites, for whiche cause men inhabitenge theyme calle theym the yles fortunate or happy. Where trees be extente in altitude by a c. and xl[ti] foote. Where is an yle callede Capraria, namede soe of the multitude of stronge dogges. Dacia, that is callede Denmarke, is an yle contiguate or adnecte to the northe parte of Germayne, the peple of whom was cruelle somme tyme and bellicose, in so moche that thei entrede þe prouinces or costes of Fraunce and of Englonde; callede Daci, as Dagi, for thei come of the kynde of Gothes. The peple of hit is copious, of semely stature, f. 48. b.

[1] *of temperate weder*, Cx.
[2] So MS. and *a.*; *ben*, Cx., which is equivalent.
[3] *couerd with corne*, Cx.
[4] *hize*, *a.*, Cx.
[5] The words in brackets added from *a.* (not Cx.)
[6] *of that*, Cx.
[7] So Cx.; *Brutayne*, MS.
[8] *þe*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[9] Both versions are wrong; the true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 6, § 8.

centis faciei et comæ, et quamvis contra hostes sæva, tamen erga innocentes pia; de uno notatur,[1] quod excessum potandi Angliæ[2] adduxit.[3]

De Wyntlandia insula.

Wyntlandia[4] insula, ad occasum Daciæ, terra sterilis est,[5] gens barbara et idolatra, quæ navigantibus ad eorum portum[6] ventum vendere solent, quasi sub nodis fili[7] inclusum;[8] quorum enodatione ventus augebitur, ut voluerint.

De Islandia.

Islandia[9] insula[10] habet ab austro Norguegiam, ab aquilone mare congelatum; gentem habet breviloquam, veridicam, ferinis pellibus tectam, quæ piscationi indulget; eundem habet regem quem et[11] sacerdotem. Ibi sunt gyrofalcones et[12] accipitres generosi, ursi albi aquam gelatam rumpentes ut[13] pisces extrahant.[14] Hæc terra propter nimium[15] frigus oves non nutrit nec

---

[1] *notantur*, B.

[2] *Angliæ potandi*, B.

[3] The preceding paragraph abbreviated in C.D., the last sentence being entirely omitted.

[4] *Haulandia*, C. (not D.)

[5] *est*] et, A.

[6] *ad eorum portum*] de prope, C.D.

[7] *sub globo fili nodosi inclusum*, C.D., omitting the remainder of the sentence.

[8] *interclusum*, B.

[9] *Flandria*, C. (not D.)

[10] *insula*] om. C.D.

[11] *et*] om. C.D.

[12] *et*] om. A.

[13] *et*, C.D.

[14] *extrahentes*, C.D.

[15] *nimium*] om. C.D.

of stature and semeliche of face and of here. And þouȝ[1] þey be sterne aȝenst here enemyes, þey beeþ to gode[2] men and trewe boþe esy and mylde:[3] but þat[4] may not be forȝete, þat[5] þey brouȝte grete drynkynge into Engelond. Wyntlandya, þat ilond, is by west Denmark, and is a barayne lond and[6] of men mysbyleued;[7] þei[8] worschippeþ mawmetrie, and selleþ wynd to schipmen, þat seilleþ to hire hauenes,[9] as it were i-closed vnder knottis of þrede; and as þe knottes beeþ vnknette,[10] þe wynde wexeþ at her owne wille.[11] Islond, þat ilond, haþ in þe est side Norþwey,[12] in þe north þe froren[13] see, [that is,][14] mare congelatum. Þe men of þat ilond beeþ schort of speche, trewe[15] of hir wordes, and i-cloþed in wylde bestes skynnes, and beeþ fissheres, and haueþ al[16] oon man kyng and preost.[17] Þere beeþ girefaucouns and gentil haukes, and þere beeþ þe[18] whyte beres, þat brekeþ þe yse for to drawe out fische. Þere beeþ no schepe in þat lond, and

Trevisa.

beatuous of face; thauȝhe that peple be cruelle ageyne theire enmyes, neuerthelesse hit is meke ageynes innocentes. Also oon thynge is attendede specially of the Danes, that thei brouȝte firste in to Englonde the excesse and surfette in drynkenge. Wytlandia is an yle at the weste parte of Denmarke, a bareyn grownde, inhabite with peple of barbre worschippenge ydoles; whiche be wonte to selle wynde to men commenge to theire portes as inclusede vnder knottes of threde, causenge the wynde to be encreasede after theire pleasure thro that threde. Islandia is an yle, hauenge on the sowthe to hit Norweye, on the northe the see congelede; hauenge also peple of schorte langage, couerede with the skynnes of wilde bestes, ȝiffenge theire labour to fischenge, hauenge to theire kynge whom thei have to theire priste. There be grete fawkunnes and gentylle gossehawkes, white beres brekenge the water congelede to drawe owte fysches. That londe noryschethe not schepe for habundance

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *þeiȝ*, *a*.
[2] *to god boþe gode*, MS.
[3] *they ben esy and mylde to good men and trewe*, Cx.
[4] *þat þey*, MS., *a*.
[5] *but it may not be forgoten, that*, Cx.
[6] *and*] Added from Cx.
[7] *oute of byleue*, Cx,
[8] *þei*] Added from Cx.
[9] *that come to theyr portes*, Cx.
[10] *vnknytte*, Cx,
[11] *theyr wille*, Cx.
[12] *Norwaye*, Cx.
[13] *frozen*, *a*. 'not Cx.)
[14] Added from Cx.
[15] *and trewe*, *a*., Cx.
[16] *al*] om. Cx.
[17] *preest*, Cx.
[18] *þe*] om. *a*. and Cx., which is perhaps better.

segetes, excepta avena. Et[1] distat hæc insula ab Hibernia sive a Britannia trium dierum velificatione.[2]

De Thule insula.

Solinus de mirabilibus.[3] Tile[4] ultima oceani insula inter septentrionem[5] et occidentalem plagam post Britanniam ultima[6] est, et[7] [8] vix paucis nota habetur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.* A sole nomen habet, quia ab æquinoctio vernali usque ad[9] æquinoctium autumnale sol semper ibidem præsens est, et nox nulla; et iterum[10] ab æquinoctio autumnali usque ad æquinoctium vernale[11] sol semper abest, et dies nulla; quamobrem inhabitabilis est in æstate propter continuum solem, et[12] in hieme propter continuum frigus;[13] quamobrem[14] annona ibi[15] crescere non potest. Ibi quoque[16] mare est congelatum et concretum, quod nos stromum[17] appellamus.[18] Inter eam insulam[19] et Britanniam sunt insulæ Scandia,[20] Lingos, Vergion.[21] Ipsa tamen Tile[22] sex dierum velificatione[23] distat a Britannia. *Giraldus in Topographia.* At[24] cum Augustinus, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, dicat Tilen[25] esse insulam Indiæ[26] cujus arbores folia

---

[1] *Et*] om. B.

[2] Transposed in C.D.

[3] *de mirabilibus*] om. C.D.

[4] So A.D.E.; *Tyle*, B.; *Tila*, C. Similarly the versions. Thule is, of course, intended, yet the correction can hardly have place in the text; (see below). In the marginal summary the MS. reading has been corrected.

[5] *septentrionalem*, C.D.

[6] *ultima*, B.

[7] *et*] *ut*, A.; om. C.D.

[8] C.D. here bring in Orosius, and then the reference to Pliny.

[9] *ad*] om. C. (not D.)

[10] *et iterum*] item, C.D.

[11] *vernale*] om. C.; *ad aliud æquinoctium*, D.

[12] *et*] om. C.D.

[13] *nihil ibi crescere potest*, added after *frigus continuum* in C.D.

[14] *ideo*, B.

[15] *ibidem*, B.

[16] *quoque*] om. C.D.

[17] So A.C.D.E.; *stremum*, B.

[18] *vocamus*, B.C.D.

[19] *insulam*] om. C.D.

[20] *Naudia*, B.

[21] *Verigon*, C.; *Virigon*, D.

[22] *Ipsa tamen Tile*] Tyle, B.; et sex, C.D.

[23] *navigatione*, D.

[24] *At*] om. C.

[25] *Tylen*, B.

[26] Slightly transposed in C.D.

TREVISA.

þat is for greet colde,[1] noþer corn but otes. þat ilond is from Irlond and from Bretayne þre dayes seillynge. *Solinus de mirabilibus.* Tile[2] is þe vttermost[3] ylond of occean, by twene þe norþ and þe west cost by ȝonde Bretayne, and wel[4] fewe men knoweþ þat ilond. *Plinius, libro secundo.*[5] Tile haþ þat name of þe sonne, for from springynge tyme whan þe day and þe nyȝt beeþ euen anon[6] to heruest tyme, whan þe day and þe nyȝt be euene eft sones, it is all wey beschyne wiþ þe sonne; and eft from þat tyme anon to þe[7] springynge tyme aȝen, whan þe day and þe nyȝt beþ euene, it[8] haþ no liȝt of þe sonne, but all wey derk nyȝt and no day. And þerfore þe lond is nouȝt couenable for men to wonye ynne in somer for hete and in wynter for colde and derk;[9] and bycause þerof þere may no corn growe. Also þere the see is hard i-frore. By twene þat ylond and Bretayne beeþ þe ilondes þat hatte Scandia, Lingos, and Vergion. Noþeles Tyle is sixe dayes seillynge oute of Bretayne. *Ranulphus, Giraldus in Topographia.*[10] For Seint Austyn, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, spekeþ of Tyle, and seiþ þat it is an ylond of Inde, and seiþ þat þe treen[11] of Tyle leseþ neuere hire leues: but

MS. HARL. 2261.

of colde, neither cornes, otes excepte. Whiche yle is from Breteyne by the saylenge off iij. daies. *Solinus de mirabilibus mundi.* Tyle is the laste yle of the occean after Briteyne, betwene the northe plage and the weste, the knowlege of whiche yle is hade vnnethe of men. *Plinius, libro secundo.* That yle takethe the name of hit of the son, for from the equinoccialle of Ver on to the equinoccialle of herveste the son is allewey presente there, and neuer nyȝhte, and the son is absente also alleweyes from the equinoccialle of herveste to the equinoccial of Ver. Wherefore hit is inhabitable in the somer, for the continualle presence of the son beynge there, and also in wynter, for contynualle coldenes beenge there, and for the absence of the son. Wherefore corne may not growe there. Betwene whom and the yle of Briteyne be oþer yles, callede Scandia, Lingo, and Virgion. That Tyle is from Breteyne by the saylenge of vj. dayes. *Giraldus in Top.* Seynte Austyn, xxj°. libro, de Civitate Dei, seythe that Tilis is an yle of Ynde, the trees of whom suffre not theire leves

[1] The six preceding words follow *otes* in Cx.
[2] *Tile* or *Tyle*, MSS. and Cx., and so below.
[3] *otmeste, a.*
[4] *wel*] om. Cx.
[5] Reference omitted in MS. (not Cx.)
[6] *at oon*, MS.; *vnto*, Cx.
[7] *þe*] om. *a.*
[8] *about September, it*, &c., Cx.
[9] *derknesse, a.*; Cx.
[10] So MS., *a.*, and Cx.; but *Ranulphus* should be cancelled, or *et* added.
[11] *trees*, Cx.

non deponunt, æquivocatio nominum [1] non decipiat te lectorem,[2] quæ [3] in recto reperietur non in obliquo. Illa enim quæ Indiæ est dicitur Tilis in nominativo, sed quæ occidentis est dicitur Tile in recto,[4] teste Isidoro, Etymologiarum libro quinto decimo.

De Norguegia.

Norguegia [5] ab euro Daciæ et Gothiæ contermina ab austro [6] habet Scotiam, ab aquilone Islandiam; insula quidem [7] lata, mari undique cincta, regio aspera,[8] frigida, montuosa, silvestris. Ibi [9] rara annona, feri [10] multi,[11] ursi albi, fibri, et castores. Cujus terræ incolæ plus piscatione et venatione vivunt quam pane. In cujus aquilonali [12] parte sol æstivo solstitio non occumbit [13] per dies plures, et itidem in solstitio hiemali non videtur oriri; quo in [14] tempore oportet incolas quod necessarium est [15] operari cum candelis. In qua [16] terra est fons, quo [17] lignea seu [18] lanea [19] imposita per annum [20] in lapidem congelantur. Gens illa scrutatrix

---

[1] *nominum*] om. C.D.

[2] *non . . . lectorem*] Space left for the words in B.; *lectorem* om. C.D.

[3] *quia*, C. (not D.)

[4] *in nominativo*, C.D., ending the sentence there.

[5] *Norvegia*, A.; *Norwegia*, B.D.

[6] *euro*, E. only.

[7] *quidem*] om. C.D.

[8] *aspera*] om. C. (not D.)

[9] *Ibi*] om. C.D.

[10] *feræ*, A.B.C.D.

[11] *multæ*, D. (not A., whose text seems to be *annona fere; multi ursi, &c.*)

[12] So A.E.; *aquilonari*, B.C.D.

[13] *videtur occumbere*, C.

[14] *in*] om. C.D.

[15] *fuerit*, B.

[16] *hac*, C.D.

[17] *in quo*, C.D.

[18] *vel*, B.D.

[19] *vel linea*, added in C.D. (the latter has *seu.*)

[20] *pro parte vel pro toto durissimum*, added in C.D.

TREVISA.

be war þat þou be nouȝt begiled by liknes of names: for þat ylond of Ynde hatte Tilis in þe nomenatyf caas; and þe [1] ilond of occean hatte Tyle in þe nominatyf caas, and beeþ liche in oþer, as ȝif þou canst declyne þilke tweye names, and speke Latyn; so seiþ Isidre, Ethym., libro quinto decimo. Norway strecchеþ somdel est toward Denmark and Gothia, and haþ in þe souþ side Scotlond and in þe northside Islond. Þe ilond is brood, byclipped aboute wiþ þe see, and is ful scharpe and colde, and haþ many hilles and woodes and [2] wylde bestes, white beres, bausons, and brokkes, and scarsite of corne. Men [3] of þat lond leueþ more by fisshynge and huntinge þan by brede and corn. In þe norþ side of þat lond meny nyȝtes in þe somer tyme aboute þe styntynge of þe sonne, þe sonne goþ nouȝt doun but schyneþ al nyȝt; and eft as many dayes in þe wynter aboute þe styntynge of þe sonne, the sonne ariseþ nouȝt for to ȝeue hem lyȝt; perfore al þat tyme þey moot do by candel [4] what work þat hem nedeþ. In þat londe is a welle þat torneþ tree and leþer in to stoon, and it be þerynne from þe bygynnynge of a ȝere [5] to þe ȝeres ende.[6] Þe men of þat lond beeþ to falle. Therefore, who so euer dothe rede this processe, y wylle he aduertise that there be yles, the oon of theyme is callede Tilis, and that other is callede Tile, leste equiuocacion of the names deceyve hym. That yle in Ynde is callede Tilis, and that yle in the weste is callede Tile in the nominatiue case, Isidorus wittenesse, Eth., xx°. Norguegia, that is callede Norway, is nye to Dacia and Gothia, hauenge on the sowthe to hit Scotlande, of the northe Island; a grete yle, and compassede abowte with the see, a colde londe, a bareyne cuntre, and fulle of hilles. There is litelle corne, mony beeres and brockes. The peple þer of lyve more by fyschenge then by huntenge, eitenge but lytelle brede. In the northe parte of that cuntre the sqn goethe not down in the solstice of somer by mony daies, and is not seen to aryse ageyn in the solstice of wynter by mony dayes. In whiche tyme hit behouethe men laborenge to worche by lyȝhte of candeles. In that londe is a welle in whom woodde putte or wolle by a yere be congelede in to a ston. The peple of hit, serchenge the

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So Cx.; *and in þe*, MS.
[2] *and*] om. Cx.
[3] *In þe norþ side men*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
[4] *they muste werke by candel light*, Cx.
[5] *aȝere*, MS. conjunctim. Similar instances occur elsewhere, and are not always noticed.
[6] *and it abyde therinne a yeer hoole*, Cx.

oceani vitam piraticam exercet; quorum expeditio navali fit certamine.[1]

Cap. XXXII.[2]

De Hibernia.

Quæ de Hibernia digna memoratu.

Erat Hibernia ab olim Britanniæ jure dominii[3] concorporata, quam, duce Giraldo in sua Topographia eam[4] ad unguem plenius describente, profusioribus laudibus congruit illustrare.[5] Ad cujus notitiam liquidius consequendam viam aperiunt[6] tituli subsequentes. Dicetur ergo:

De situ terræ locali: De ejus quanto et quali: In quibus terra sufficit: In quibus rebus deficit: De incolis prioribus: De incolarum moribus:[7] De locorum prodigiis: De sanctorum præconiis.

De situ terræ locali.

Hibernia omnium insularum occidentalium novissima sic dicta est[8] ab Hibero Hispanico, fratre scilicet[9] Hermonii, qui duo simul juncti[10] eam conquisierunt;

---

[1] So A.B.; *cujus expeditio navali certamine est*, C.D.; last clause omitted in E.

[2] This and all the following chapters of the first book are contained in Gale's Hist. Brit. Scriptores xv., vol. i. pp. 179–212, Oxon. 1691. His readings, and occasionally those of his MS. (G.) are noted below.

[3] So A.B.D.; *domini*, C.; om. E.

[4] *eam* before *in*, B.

[5] *illustrari*, B. The sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

[6] *aperient*, Gale (not G.)

[7] *majoribus*, C. (not D.)

[8] *est*] Added from A.D. and Gale.

[9] *scilicet*] om. C.D.

[10] *simul juncti*] om. C.D.

schipmen and þeues of þe see. *Treuisa.* For to knowe what þe styntynge of þe sonne is to menynge, take hede þat þe sonne styntep twyes a ȝere; ones a somer, whan he gop no heiȝer; and eftsones a[1] wynter, whanne he goop[2] no lower; and so in eiþer[3] tyme is þe styntynge of þe sonne. TREVISA.

De Hibernia. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.

HIBERNIA, þat is Irlond, and was of olde tyme incorporat in to þe lordschippe of Bretayne, so seiþ Giraldus in sua Topographia. Þere[4] he descryuep it[5] at þe fulle, ȝit it is worþy and semelich to preise þat lond wiþ large[6] preysinge. For to come to cleer and ful knowleche of þat lond, þese tyteles þat folwep oponep þe way: þerfore first me schall[7] telle of [þe][8] place and stede of þat lond, how greet and what manere lond it is; where of þat lond haþ plente; and where of he haþ defaute; of men þat woned þere first; of maneres of men of þat londe; [of the wondres of þat lond;][9] of worþynesse of halewes [and] of seyntes.[10]

De situ Hiberniæ locali. Irlond is þe laste of alle þe west ilondes, and hat[11] Hibernia of oon Hiberus of Spayne, þat was Hermonius his broþer. For þese tweie breþeren

occean, exercise the lyfe of schippemen; þe victory and spede of theim is by riȝhte in schippes on the see. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Irlonde. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.

IRLONDE was somme tyme to Briteyne concorporate by ryȝhte of dominacion, whom Giraldus describenge in his Topographye extollethe hit with mony laudes. The titles here folowenge expresse and schewe the way. Therefore, hit schalle be seyde of the site and place of that londe, of the quantite and qualite of hit, and the defawtes of that londe, of the firste dwellers of hit, and of the maneres of the inhabitatores of hit.

Of the localle site of Irlonde. Irlonde, the laste of all the weste yles, toke the name of hit of Hiberus brother of Hermonius, whiche coniuncte to gedre gate that

[1] *a*] *at*, Cx.
[2] *no heiȝer . . . goop*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *neiþer*, MS. absurdly.
[4] *where*, Cx.
[5] *it*] Added from Cx.
[6] *larger*, *a.*; Cx.
[7] *I shal*, Cx.
[8] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[9] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[10] *of halowes and saintes of that lond*, Cx.; and so *a.*, omitting *of that lond.*
[11] *height*, Cx.

vel dicta est ab Hibero flumine Hispaniæ occidentali.[1] Dicta est etiam aliquando Scotia a Scotis eam inhabitantibus, priusquam ad aliam Scotiam[2] Britannicam[3] devenirent.[4] Unde in Martyrologio[5] legitur: "Tali die " apud Scotiam Sanctæ Brigidæ;" quod est, apud Hiberniam. Hæc terra ab euro-austro[6] habet Hispaniam trium dierum[7] navigatione collateralem; ab oriente habet Britanniam majorem,[8] unius[9] diei velificatione distantem; ab occasu habet oceanum infinitum; a septentrione Islandiam, trium dierum velifico cursu distantem. *Solinus.* Sed et mare quod inter hanc et Britanniam interluit undosum et inquietum est toto anno, et nisi paucis diebus vix enavigabile, in[10] centum viginti millia passuum latitudinis expansum.

De ejus quanto et quali.

Hibernia insula post Britanniam maxima ab austro in boream[11] extensa,[12] a Brendanicis scilicet montibus usque ad Columbinam insulam, continet octo dierum diætas, quarum quælibet quadraginta milliarium existit; et a Dublinnia[13] usque ad Patricii colles[14] Connacticumque mare in latum quatuor dierum excursum tenet; quæ in sui medio strictior est quam circa capita, sed[15] econtra est de[16] Britannia; et sicut Hibernia brevior

---

[1] *sive ab Hebero flumine Hispaniæ*, D.
[2] *Scotiam*] om. B.
[3] *Britannicam*] om. C.D.
[4] *devenerunt*, B.
[5] So A.; *Martilogio*, D.E.
[6] *euro*] om. C.D.
[7] *naturalium*, added in C.D.
[8] *majorem*] om. C.D.
[9] *noctis et unius*, B.
[10] *in*] om. C.D.
[11] *in boream*] om. B.
[12] *expansa*, C. (not D.)
[13] *Dublinia*, B.D.
[14] *colles Patricii*, B.
[15] *sed*] om. C.D.
[16] *de*] om. G. and Gale.

gat and whan[1] þis lond by conquest. Oþer it hatte Hibernia of þat ryuer Hiberus, þat is in þe west ende of Spayne. And þat londe hatte Scotland also, for Scottes woned þere somtyme, or þey come into þe[2] oþer Scotland, þat longede to Bretayne. Þerfore it is i-write in þe martiloge: "Suche "a day in Scotland Seint Bryde was i-bore;" and þat was in Irlond. Þis lond haþ in þe souþ est side Spayne þre dayes seillynge þennes aside half, and haþ in þe est side þe more[3] Bretayne, þennes a dayes seillynge; in þe west side he haþ þe endeles occean, and in þe norþ side Iselond þre dayes seillynge þennes. *Solinus.* But þe see þat is bytweene Bretayne and Irlond is al þe ȝere ful of greet wawes and vnesy, so þat me may seelde sikerliche seille bytwene. Þat see is six score myle brood. TREVISA.

De ejus quanto et quali. Irland is an iland grettest after Bretayne, and strecche þ norþward from Brendans hilles anon to þe ylond Columbyna, and conteyneþ eiȝte dayes iorneis, euerich iorney of fourty myle. And from Deuelyn to Patrykes hilles and to þe see in þat side in brede is[4] foore iorneyes. And Irlond is narwer in þe myddel þan in þe endes, al oþerwise þan Bretayne is i-schape.

londe. Or elles hit was namede of a weste floode of Speyne callede Hiberus. And hit was callede also Scotia, of Scottes inhabitenge hit or that thei come to that other Scotlande. Wherefore hit is redde in the martilogge: "Suche a day at Scotlande Seynte Brigida," whiche was at Irlonde. That londe hathe on the southe este to hit Spayne by the sailenge of thre dayes from hit as colaterally, and on the este to hit the more Briteyne beenge from hit by the saylenge of oon day, and on the weste to hit the occean infinite, of the north Islande from hit by the saylenge of iij. dayes. *Solinus.* The see that departethe hit from Briteyne is perellous and fulle of water, and inquiete of alle the yere, and vnnethe able to be passede with schippes in eny tyme; extente in latitude cxx[ti] m. passes. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the quantite and qualite of hit. The yle of Irlonde, after Briteyne moste extendede in to the northe, conteynethe from Brendan hille to the yle callede Columbina xvi[xx]. myles, and from Dublyn to the hilles of Seynte Patrikke viij[xx]. myles, whiche londe is more streyte in the myddes then at the endes, but hyt is in contrary

[1] *wan, a.*, Cx.
[2] *that*, Cx.
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *more half*, MS.
[4] *is*] Added from Cx.; *ben* would be more correct. Several minute variations below are unnoticed.

est ad boream quam Britannia, ita productior est ad austrum. Terra quidem inæqualis,[1] montuosa, pluviosa,[2] ventosa, mollis,[3] et silvestris; per latera maritima valde demissa; introrsus[4] montana et sabulosa. *Solinus.* Alias ita pabulosa ut pecora ibidem, nisi[5] a pascuis interdum[6] arceantur, ad periculum agat satietas.[7] *Giraldus.*[8] Indigenarum sanitas continua, advenarum quoque propter humiditatem[9] nutrimentorum fluxus ventris periculosus[10] est.[11] Carnes ibi[12] vaccinæ salubres, porcinæ nocentes. Incolæ nulla febris specie vexantur, excepta acuta, et hoc perraro. Omnes igitur orientales pompas in lignis, herbis, gemmis, vestibus, hujus terræ salubritas et veneni carentia compensant; et videtur hæc salubritas causari

---

[1] *æqualis*, B.
[2] *pluviosa*] om. C.D.
[3] *mellis*, E. (clerical error.)
[4] *interius*, C.
[5] *ibidem nisi*] ibidem nisi interdum, B.; nisi interdum, C.D.
[6] *interdum*] om. B.C.
[7] *satietas*] om. B.
[8] *in topographia*, added in C.D., Gale.
[9] So A.B.C.D., Gale; *nuditatem*, E.
[10] *periculosa*, B.
[11] *est*] om. B.C. (not D.)
[12] *ibi*] om. B.; *hic*, D.

As Irlond is schorter norþward þan[1] Bretayne, so is he lenger souþward. Þe lond is not playne; but ful of mountaynes and of hilles, of wodes, of mareys, and of mores: þe lond is nesche,[2] reyny, and wyndy, and lowe by þe see syde, and wiþ ynne hilly and sondy. *Solinus.*[3] Þere is grete plente of noble pasture and of lese; þerfore bestes moot[4] ofte be dreue out of hir lese, leste þey fede hem self to ful and schende hemself, and þey moste ete at hir owne wille.[5] *Giraldus.* Men of þat lond haueþ here hele alwey,[6] and straunge men[7] haueþ ofte a perilous fluxe[8] by cause of moysture of mete; þere cowes flesche[9] is holsom and swynes flesch vnholsom. Men of þat lond haueþ no feuere, but onliche þe feuere agu, and þat wel silde whanne.[10] Þerfore þe holsomnesse [and helþe][11] of þat lond and þe clennesse wiþoute[12] venyme is worþ al þe boost and richesse of treen, of herbes, of spicerie, of [riche][13] cloþes, and precious stones of þe est londes. Hit semeþ þat þe helþe

TREVISA.

---

wyse of Briteyne; and lyke as Irlonde is more schorte to the northe then Briteyne, in lyke wise hit is more large at the sowthe. A londe inegalle fulle of hilles and water. *Solinus.* That londe is so plentuous in pastures to bestes that the fattenes of theyme scholde cause perelle, with oute the bestes were removede from hit oþer while. *Giraldus.* The flesche of that cuntre inducethe sanite to men of that londe, and causethe strongeours to haue the flux for the moisture of the noryschenge of theyme. The flesche of a kowe is wholsom there; but swyne flesche be nyenge moche: the dwellers of hit be not vexede with the axes excepte the scharpe axes, and that is but selde. Men of that londe thenke that the wholsomnes of that londe and wontenge of venom excelle and compense alle the prides of the este, as in wode, herbes, gemmes, and oþer clothes. The holsomnes of that cuntre semethe

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *þat*, MS. (not Cx.)
[2] *soft*, Cx.
[3] Added from Cx.
[4] *must*, Cx.
[5] *dryue oute of theyr pasture, leeste they ete ouermoche, for they shold shende hem self, yf they myght ete at theyr wylle*, Cx.
[6] *haue comunely theyr helth*, Cx.
[7] *straungers*, Cx.
[8] *flixe, a.*
[9] *flessh of kyen*, Cx. (with other slight variations.)
[10] *that right selde*, Cx.
[11] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[12] *wiþoute*] *oute of*, Cx.
[13] Added from *a.* and Cx.

ex eo quod modicus est ibi excessus in frigore aut calore.[1]

In quibus rebus sufficit.

Terra hæc magis vaccis quam bobus, pascuis quam frugibus, gramine quam grano fecunda. Abundat tamen[2] salmonibus, murænis,[3] anguillis,[4] et cæteris marinis[5] piscibus; aquilis quoque, gruibus, pavonibus, coturnicibus, niso, falcone et accipitre generoso.[6] Lupos quoque[7] habet,[8] mures nocentissimos; sed et araneas, sanguisugas, et lacertas habet[9] innocuas. Mustelas quoque parvi corporis sed valde[10] animosas possidet. Habet et[11] aves quas bernaces[12] vocant, quas aucis[13] silvestribus similes de lignis abietinis quasi contra naturam natura producit, quibus viri religiosi tempore jejuniorum vescuntur, eo quod de coitu vel de carne minime procreantur.[14] Sed huic repugnare videtur,[15] quod siquis de femore primi parentis comedisset, carnem utique comedisset, quamvis de carne minime propagatam; et sicut illa caro ex limo, ita ista caro[16] ex

---

[1] The clause abbreviated in C.D.
[2] *tamen*] hæc terra, C.D.
[3] *et*, added in C.D.
[4] *anguillis*] om. B.
[5] *maris*, B.
[6] *geso*, Gale, and so G.
[7] *etiam*, C.D.
[8] *vulpes et*, added in C.D.
[9] *habet*] om. B.
[10] *valde tamen*, B.
[11] *etiam*, C.D.; *et habet*, A.
[12] *bernahes*, B.
[13] *aves*, A.
[14] *creantur*, C.D.
[15] *repugnat*, C.D.
[16] *caro*] om. C.D.

of[1] þat lond is bycause þat þere is noȝt gret passynge and exces in hele[2] noþer in hete. TREVISA.

In quibus rebus sufficit. In þis lond beeþ mo kyn[3] þan oxen, more pasture þan corne, more gras þan seed. Þere is grete plente of samon, of lampreys, of eles, and of oþer see fisch; of egles, of[4] cranes, of[5] pekokes, of corlewes, of sperhaukes, of goshaukes, and of gentil faucouns, and of wolfes, and of wel schrewed mys. Þere beþ attercoppes, blood soukers, and enettes[6] [þat dooþ noon harm].[7] Þere beeþ veyres[8] litel of body and ful hardy and strong. Þere beeþ bernakes[9] foules liche to wylde gees; kynde bryngeþ hem forþ wonderliche out of[10] trees, as it were kynde worchynge aȝenst kynde.[11] Men of religioun eteþ bernakes in[12] fasting dayes, for þey comeþ nouȝt of flesche noþer beeþ i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder: but þey beeþ ful lewedliche i-meued, for resoun is contrarie to þat doynge.[13] For ȝif a man hadde i-ete[14] of Adams þigh,[15] he had i-ete flesch; and ȝit Adam com nouȝt[16] of flesch,

---

to be causede in that there is but lytelle excesse in coldenesse or in heete. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of what thynges that londe is suffisiaunte. That londe is more habundaunte in kye then in oxen, in pasture then in corne. Neuerthelesse, hit habundethe in salmones, eles, lawmpreis, and in other fysche of the see; in egles, cranes, pokokkes, curlewes, sparrehowke, ffawken, and gentille gossehawke; hauenge wulphes and moste nyous myse, and weselles lytelle in body, but bolde in herte. Also there he bryddes whiche thei calle bernacles, lyke to wylde gese, whom nature producethe ageyne nature from firre trees, whom religious men do eite in fastenge daies, in that thei be not bredde and geten thro the acte off venery. But an obieccion may be made ageyne that cause; for and if a man scholde haue eiten of the flesche of Adam he scholde have eiten flesche with

---

[1] Thus in Cx: *The cause of the helthe and holsomnes of that londe is the attemperat hete and colde that is therinne.*
[2] *chele*, α.
[3] *keen*, α.
[4] *and*, α. (not Cx.)
[5] So α., Cx.; *and pekokes*, MS.
[6] *eeftes*, Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] *feyres*, Cx.
[9] *bernacles*, Cx.
[10] *whiche growen wonderly vpon*, Cx.
[11] *nature wrought agayn kynde*, Cx.
[12] *on*, Cx.
[13] Cx. thus: *by cause they ben not engendryd of flesshe, wherin, as me thynketh, they erre; for reson is ayenst that.*
[14] *eten*, Cx.
[15] *legge*, Cx.
[16] *was not engendred*, Cx., with other slight variations, and some omissions.

ligno æque mirabilis. Abundat etiam[1] hæc terra lacte, melle, vinis, non vineis. Et quamvis Beda dicat illam terram[2] vinearum non expertem,[3] et Solinus ac Isidorus apibus eam carere asserant, circumspectius tamen e diverso scripsissent,[4] si eam vineis carere et apum[5] expertem non fuisse[6] dixissent; item Beda dicit caprorum[7] venatu insulam fore insignem, cum tamen constet eam semper capreis caruisse.[8] Nec mirum; cum Beda nihil de hac insula oculata fide cognoverit, sed per relatorem[9] audierit. Ibi[10] quoque gignitur lapis[11] sexagonus, scilicet Iris, qui soli appositus format[12] in aere celestem arcum. Ibi quoque invenitur[13] lapis gagates et margarita candida.

In quibus rebus deficit.

Tritici grana sunt hic[14] minuta,[15] vix manu purgabilia, et omnium animantium[16] corpora hic[17] quam alibi minora exceptis hominibus reperiuntur. Desunt hic[18] pene[19] omnes pisces, qui[20] ex aquis dulcibus non

---

[1] *etiam*] om. C.D.

[2] *illam terram*] eam, C.

[3] So C.D.; *vineis non expertem*, B., Gale; *vineis expertem*, A.E.

[4] *circumspectius scripsissent e diverso*, B.

[5] *apium*, C.D.

[6] *esse*, C.D.

[7] *capreorum*, B.C.D.

[8] See Solinus, *Pol.* c. 22, § 6. Isid., *Etym.* lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6. Bede's words (*Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. i.) are: Dives lactis ac mellis insula, nec vinearum expers, pisciumque volucrumque, sed et cervorum caprearumque venatu insignis.

[9] *latorem*, C. (not D.)

[10] *Ibi . . . candida*] om. C.D.

[11] *lapis*] om. B.

[12] A space left for *format* after *arcum* in B.

[13] *Inveniturque ibidem*, B.

[14] *ibi*, C. (not D.)

[15] Slightly transposed in G. (not D.)

[16] *omnia animalium*, B.

[17] *ibi*, C. (not D.)

[18] *ibi*, C. (not D.)

[19] *fere*, C.D.

[20] *quæ*, all MSS. collated for this edition; *qui*, G. and Gale, correctly; but perhaps Higden used the feminine.

noþer was i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder. But þat flesch com wonderliche of þe erþe, so þis flesche[1] comeþ wonderliche of þe tree. In þis lond is plente of hony and[2] of mylk and of wyn, and nouȝt of vyneȝerdes. [Solinus and Isidorus wryten that Irlond hath no bees; netheles it were better wryten that Irlond hath bees and no vyneyerdes.][3] Also Beda seiþ þat þere is grete huntynge of[4] roobukkes, and it is i-knowe þat roobukkes beeþ noon þere.[5] It is no wonder of Beda; for Beda knew[6] neuere þat ilond wiþ his eyȝe; bot som tale tellere tolde[7] hym suche tales. Also þere groweþ þat stoon Saxagonus,[8] and is i-cleped Iris also, as it were þe reynebowe; ȝif þat stoon is i-holde aȝenst þe sonne, it[9] schal schape a reynbowe. Þere is i-founde a stoon þat hatte gagates,[10] and white margery perlis.

TREVISA.

In quibus rebus deficit. Whete cornes beeþ[11] þere ful smal, vnneþe i-clansed[12] wiþ manis hond; out take men,[13] alle bestes beeþ smallere þere þan in oþer londes. Þere lackeþ wel nyh al manere of[14] fresche water fische, þat is owte dowte thauȝhe hit come not of flesche; for like as the flesche of Adam was made of the erthe, so those bryddes comme of a tre, as a thynge to be hade in meruayle. Also that londe is habundante in mylke, hony, in wynes, but [not] in vynes. And also thauȝhe that grete clerke Bede seye that londe not to be experte of vynes, and Solinus and Isidorus[15] seye hit to wonte bees, neuertheles thei scholde haue writen more circumspectely, if they hade seide that londe to wonte vynes, and to haue be habundante in bees. Also Bede seythe that yle to habunde in dere, sythe hit is provede by experience that londe to have wontede suche bestes, and no meruayle, sythe Bede provede not the trawthe of the commodites of that yle by his awne person, but by the relacioun of other men. A ston is gendrede there whiche is callede Iris, whiche putte to the sonne causethe a reynebawe to appere in the aier. Also a ston callede gagates, and a white margarite be founde there.

MS. HARL. 2261.

In what thynges that londe is defectiue. The cornes off whete be scarse there and lytelle. Also that londe

[1] So *a.*; *fesche*, MS.
[2] *and*] om. *a.*
[3] This sentence added from Cx.
[4] *to*, *a.*
[5] *that ther ben none*, Cx.
[6] *he sawe neuer*, Cx.
[7] *somme men had told*, Cx.
[8] *sexagonus*, Cx.
[9] *anon it*, Cx,
[10] So Cx.; *gogathes*, MS. and *a.*
[11] *bee*, *a.*
[12] *i-clensed*, *a.*
[13] *reserued men*, Cx.
[14] *of*] om. Cx. (a frequent variation); *alle manere fische of fresshe water*, *a.*
[15] *Ysodorus*, Harl. MS.

marinis sementinam trahunt originem; desunt hic [1] degeneres falcones, quos laniarios [2] vocant, desunt et gyrofalcones,[3] perdices, phasiani,[4] picæ et [5] philomelæ.[6] Caret quoque capreis et damis, hericiis,[7] putaciis, et [8] talpis et cæteris [9] venenosis. Unde fingunt aliqui satis favorabiliter Sanctum Patricium cunctis pestiferis animantibus [10] insulam purgasse; sed probabilius [11] [12] est insulam ab initio hujusmodi nocivis caruisse. Quinetiam [13] venenosa aliunde allata statim moriuntur ibidem, et toxicum aliunde advectum ultra medios fluctus versus Hiberniam vim suæ malignitatis amittit; ac etiam [14] pulvis terræ illius aliunde aspersus venenosos vermes fugat, adeo ut corium hujus terræ vermi circumdatum [15] aut ipsum occidit aut terram penetrare cogit. In hac terra galli cantant in ipso noctis crepusculo, et quantum alibi a tertia,[16] tantum hic [17] a prima galli voce dies distare dignoscitur.[18]

---

[1] *ibi*, C. (not D.)
[2] *lanerios*, Gale (not G.)
[3] *jerofalcones*, B.; *girofalcones*, A.D.E.
[4] *fasiani*, A.D.; *foliani*, C.; *faciani*, B.E.
[5] *et*] om. B., Gale.
[6] *philomenæ*, MSS. and Gale.
[7] *putaciis* before *hericiis* in D.
[8] *putaciis et*] om. B.
[9] *et cæteris*] om. C.D., which have *etiam caret* after *venenosis*.
[10] *animantibus*] om. C.D.
[11] *probabile*, B.; in D. some erased word has been altered to *probabilius*.
[12] *puto ab initio hujus (hujusmodi*, D.) *nocivis fuisse destituta*, C.D.
[13] *Sed etiam*, C.D.; *Quin et*, Gale.
[14] *ac etiam*] om. C.D.
[15] *circumdata*, MSS. and G., not Gale. Probably *corium* should be changed into *torva*. See Trevisa.
[16] *a tertia*] om. B.
[17] *ibi*, C. (not D.)
[18] *dinoscitur*, MSS. and Gale.

nouȝt gendred in þe see; þere lakkeþ vnkynde faukouns, girefaukouns, partriche,[1] fesauntes, nyȝtingales, and pies. Þere lakkeþ also roo and bukke and ilspi[les],[2] wontes, and oþere venemous bestes; þerfore som men feyneþ and fauorabliche seiþ[3] þat Seynt Patryk clensed þat lond of wormes and of venemous bestes. Þerfore som men feyneþ þat it is[4] more probable and more skilful, þat þis lond was from þe bygynnynge alwey wiþ oute suche wormes. For venemous bestes and wormes deyeþ þere anon, and me[5] brynge hem þider out of oþer londes; and also venym and poysoun, i-brouȝt þiderward out of oþer londes, leseþ his[6] malys anon as he passeþ þe myddel of þe see. Also powder of[7] erþe of þat lond i-sowe[8] in oþer londes vseþ[9] awey wormes so fer forþ, þat a torf of þat lond i-doo aboute[10] a worme sleeþ hym oþer makeþ hym þrulle þoruȝ[11] þe erþe for to scape a way. In þat lond cokkes croweþ wel[12] litel to fore day; so þat þe firste cokkes crowe in þat lond and þe þridde in oþer londes beeþ i-liche[13] fer to fore day.

TREVISA.

---

wontethe fisches whiche haue theire originalle naturalle in fresche waters. Also that cuntre hathe not a kynde of hawkes that be callede lauerettes and gretefawkones, partricche and fesaunte, pyes, nyȝhtegales, bucke and doo, wontes and other bestes of venom. Wherefore somme men feyne fauorably, seyenge Seynte Patrike to haue purgede and made clene that yle thro his preyers from nyous bestes. But hit is more probable to say that yle to haue wontede suche bestes from the begynnenge of hit. Also other bestes fulle of venom brouȝhte from other places to hit dye anoon. Also if poison be brouȝhte to that londe, hit losethe the strenȝhte of hit or that hit comme in þe myddes of the water nye to that londe. Also the erthe of that londe caste abrode in other cuntres or londes dothe expelle venomous bestes, in so moche that parte of that erthe putte to worme auther sleethe hit other elles constreynethe hit to entre in to the erthe. Cokkes in that cuntre begynne to crawe in the begynnenge of the nyȝhte; neuerthelesse day is supposede to drawe nye at the firste crawenge of the cocke.

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *partrichis*, Cx.
[2] *ilspiles*, *a.*; *ylespiles*, Cx.
[3] *and that fauourably*, Cx.
[4] *But it is*, Cx.
[5] *if men*, Cx. (as usual).
[6] *theyr*, Cx., who has not very consistently replaced *he* by *it* just afterwards.
[7] *and*, *a.*, Cx.
[8] *caste and sowen*, Cx.
[9] *veseþ*, *a.*; *driuen*, Cx.
[10] *be putte aboute* (with other slight variations), Cx.
[11] *þoruȝ*] om. *a.*; *thrille the erthe*, Cx.
[12] *but*, Cx.
[13] *like*, Cx.

Cap. XXXIII.

De incolis prioribus.

Refert Giraldus quod hæc insula inhabitata[1] sit primo[2] a Casera[3] nepte[4] Noe diluvium timente, et ad hanc insulam cum tribus viris et quinquaginta mulieribus proximo ante diluvium anno[5] applicante. Secundo a Bartholano[6] Sere[7] filio cum tribus filiis de stirpe Japhet filii Noe descendentibus, ccc°.[8] post diluvium anno, casu vel industria hic[9] applicantibus, qui usque ad novem millia virorum excrescentes ex corruptione cadaverum gigantum[10] quos oppresserant omnes mortui sunt, excepto solo Ruano, qui per mille quingentos annos usque ad tempora Sancti Patricii perdurans[11] cuncta gesta illius gentis sancto viro replicabat. Tertio Nimeth sive Nimedus cum quatuor filiis suis[12] de Scythia[13] veniens per ducentos sedecim annos terram incoluit; et[14] tandem, ejus sobole per varia infortunia bellorum et mortalitatum detrita,[15] ducentis

---

[1] *primo inhabitata*, B.; *sit*, om. A.
[2] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[3] So A. E.; *Cesera*, C.; *Cesarea*, D.; *Sera*, B.
[4] *nepote*, E. only.
[5] *anno*] om. C. (not D.)
[6] *Bartolano*, C. (not D.); *ab Archolano*, B.
[7] *Cesere*, C. (not D.)
[8] So A.C.D., Gale (in figures); *tricesimo*, E. (at length).
[9] *ibi*, C. (not D.)
[10] So C.; *gigantorum*, A.D.E.; *gigantium*, Gale.
[11] *perdurans*] om. B.
[12] *suis*] om. C.D.
[13] Variously barbarized in MSS.
[14] *et*] om, C.D.
[15] *decreta*, C. (not D.)

De incolis prioribus. TREVISA.

Capitulum tricesimum tertium.

GIRALDUS seiþ þat Casera, Noes nece,[1] dradde þe flood, and fliȝ[2] wiþ þre men and fifty wommen into þat ilond, and wonede þer ynne first þe laste ȝere to fore Noes flood. But afterward Bartholanus, Seres[3] sone, þat com of[4] Iapheth, Noes sone, come þider wiþ his þre sones by hap oþer by craft þre hundred ȝere after Noes flood, and woned þere, and encresede to þe noumbre of nyne þowsand men; and afterward, for stenche of kareyns of geantes þat þey hadde i-kyld, þey deiden alle saue oon, Ruanus, þat durede[5] a þowsand ȝere and fyue hundred anon to Seynt Patrikes tyme, and enformed þe holy man of þe forsaide men[6] and of alle hir doynge and dedes. Þan þe þridde tyme come þider Nemeþ[7] out of Scythia[8] with his foure sones, and woned þere and encresed to þe noumbre of[9] two hondred ȝere and sixtene; and at þe laste al his ofspringe by dyuers myshappes of werres and of moreyn was clenliche[10] destroyed, and þe lond lefte voyde two hundred ȝere aftir-

[1] *niece, a.*
[2] *fledde,* Cx.
[3] So Cx.; *Seth his,* MS.
[4] So Cx.; *to,* MS.
[5] *lyued,* Cx.
[6] So Cx.; *man,* MS. (clerical error.)
[7] *Nymeth, a.* and Cx.
[8] *Schitia,* or *Scitia,* MS.
[9] *and encresede to þe noumbre of*] om. *a.* and Cx., probably rightly.
[10] *they were clene,* Cx.

Of the firste Inhabitatores of that Londe. Capitulum tricesimum tertium. MS. HARL. 2261.

GIRALDUS rehersethe and seithe that londe was inhabitate firste of Casera, son of the douȝhter of Noe, [which] dredenge the grete floode, come to that yle in the yere a fore that floode, with iij. men and l^ti^ women. In the secunde tyme hit was inhabite of Bartholarius with iij. childer, of the stocke of Iaphethe son of Noe, in the iij^c^. yere after that grete floode; which encreasenge vn to the nowmbre of ix. m. alle diede thro the corrupcion of carion of the bodies of giauntes whom thei had oppressede, Ruan excepte, whiche lyvede by m. yere and a halfe, vnto the tymes of Seynte Patrike, tellenge to that holy man the gestes of that peple. In the thrydde time Nimeth or Nimedus, with his iiij. childer, cummenge from Scythia,[7] inhabite that londe by ij^c^. and xvi. yere; and at the laste that stokke and kynnerede destroyede by diverse infortuny of batelles and of oþer mortalite, that londe was vacante from inhabitatores by ij^c^. yere f. 52. ends.

itidem annis terra vacua mansit. Quarto vero [1] quinque duces, germani fratres, Gandius,[2] Genandius, Segandius,[3] Rutheragus,[4] et Slanius,[5] de posteris Nimedi prædicti,[6] de Græcia venientes terram occupaverunt, et eam [7] in quinque partes diviserunt, quarum quælibet pars continebat triginta duo cantredos; (est autem [8] cantredus portio centum villarum;) posueruntque [9] lapidem in media terra quasi in medio [10] umbilico, velut quinque [11] regnorum principium. Tandem Slanius [12] factus est [13] monarcha terræ totius. Quinto debilitata multum per triginta [14] annos natione ista, advenerunt de Hispaniæ partibus, in sexaginta [15] navium classe, quatuor nobiles Millesii regis filii, cum pluribus aliis, de quibus duo nominatissimi fratres Hiberus [16] et Hermon regnum inter se diviserunt. Sed procedente tempore, rupto fœdere fraterno, Heberoque occiso, Hermoni cessit monarchia, a cujus tempore usque adventum [17] Patricii primi [18] cxxxi. reges de eadem gente fuerunt. Et sic ab adventu Hiberniensium usque ad obitum [19] Patricii

---

[1] *vero*] om. C.D.
[2] *Glandius*, C. (not D.)
[3] *Sagandius*, A.B.; om. C.D.
[4] *Ruteragus*, A.; *Natheragus*, C. (not D.)
[5] *Slanius*] So A.C.D., Gale; *Clamius*, B.; *Salnius*, E. (but *Slanius* below.)
[6] *prædicti*] om. C.D.
[7] *eam*] om. C. (not D.)
[8] *et est*, B.
[9] [*que* om. A.
[10] *terræ*, C.; *terra*, D. (clerical error.)
[11] *velut quinque*] tanquam, C.D.
[12] *Sclanius*, C.; *Psalmus*, B.
[13] *primus* added in C.D.
[14] 20, C.; 200, D.
[15] So A.D.E., Gale; 20, C.; *xl.*, B.
[16] *Heberus*, A.D., Gale.
[17] *Sancti*] added in C.D.
[18] *primi*] om. C.D.
[19] *Sancti* added in C.D.

ward.[1] Þe fourþe[2] tyme fyue dukes,[3] Gandius, Genandyus,[4] Sagandius, Rutheragus, Salinus,[5] of þe forseide Nymeþ his successours come out of Grees, and occupied þat lond and deled it in fyue parties. And[6] eueriche party conteynede two and þritty candredes; (a candrede is a contray þat conteyneþ an hondred townes;) and þey sette a stoon in þe mydel of þe lond as it were in þe nauel and bygynnynge of fyue[7] kyngdoms. At þe laste Salynus[8] was i-made kyng of al þe lond. Þe fifte tyme, whan þis nacioun was þritty ȝere to gidres, þey woxe swyþe[9] feble, foure noble men, þat were Millesius[10] þe kynges sones, come out of Spayne wiþ many oþer in a naueye of þre score schippes and tweie: þe[11] worþiest of þese foure breþeren, þat heet Heberus and Hermon, deled þe lond bytwene hem tweyne; but afterward couenaunt was to broke by twene þese tweyne breþeren, and[12] Heberus[13] was i-slayne.[14] Þan Hermon was kyng of al þat lond, and from his tyme to þe firste Patrik his tyme were kynges of þat nacioun sex score and enleuene. And so from þe comynge of[15] Hiberniensis anon to þe deth of

TREVISA.

foloenge. In the iiij^{the} tyme v. dukes and breþer german, Gandius, Sanandius, Segandius, Rutheragus, and Sclanius, commenge by succession of the stocke of Nimedus, commenge from Grece, occupiede þat londe, diuidenge hit in to v. partes. Euery parte in that diuision did conteyne xxxij. tancredes. And a tancrede is a porcion of c. townes, whiche putte a ston in the myddes, as in the navelle, as the begynnenge of v. realmes. After that Sclanius was made the holle lorde of alle that londe. In the v^{the} tyme, that londe made feble by mony yere, iiij. sonnes of kynge Millesius comme to hit with iij^{xx}. sayles from Speyne, with mony other, of whom Heberus and Hermon were gouernoures, diuidede that realme amonge theyme, but by succession of tyme the bonde of luffe was broken betwene theyme. And so, Heberus sleyne, the holle monarchy succeedede to Hermon, from the tyme of whom were cxxxj^{ti} kynges of that peple to the tyme of the firste Patrikke. And so from the commenge of theyme vn to the dethe of Seynte Patrikke

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *after*, Cx.
[2] *ferþe*, *a*.
[3] *dukes that were bretheren*, Cx.
[4] *Genandus*, *a*.; *Genundus*, Cx.
[5] *Selanius*, Cx.
[6] So *a*. and Cx.; *in*, MS.
[7] *fyue*] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[8] *Slanius*, *a*., Cx. (rightly.)
[9] *swyþe*] om. Cx.
[10] *Myllesius*, Cx.
[11] *of the*, Cx. (without sense.)
[12] *hem both and*, Cx.
[13] *Hebreus*, MS.; *Hiberus*, Cx.
[14] *slawe*, *a*.
[15] *of the Hybermensis* (sic) *vnto the fyrst Patrik*, Cx.

primi[1] sunt anni mille octingenti. Ab isto Hibero dicti sunt Hibernici, vel secundum alios ab Hibero Hispaniæ fluvio. Dicti sunt etiam Gaytheli[2] et Scoti[3] a quodam Gaythelo, Phenii nepote, qui post linguarum confusionem[4] apud Nemproticam turrim in variis linguis peritus duxit Scotam filiam Pharaonis;[5] ex quibus ducibus[6] Hibernienses descenderunt. Iste etiam Gaythelus, ut aiunt,[7] Hibernicam linguam composuit, quæ et Gaythelaf[8] dicitur, quasi ex omnibus linguis collecta. Tandem Gurguntius,[9] Belini regis Britanniæ filius, de Dacia rediens apud Orcades insulas quosdam Basclenses de Hispaniæ partibus advectos invenit, quos locum habitationis petentes rex ad[10] Hiberniam tunc vacuam transmisit,[11] quibus duces aliquos ex suis designavit. Ex quo videtur[12] quod de jure antiquo Hibernia debeat ad Britanniam pertinere.[13] Ab adventu autem[14] Sancti[15]

---

[1] *primi*] om. C.D.

[2] *Gaiteli*, B.C. Gale; *Gaitili*, A. Similar variations below.

[3] *Scotti*, E.

[4] *confusionem linguarum*, A.B.

[5] *Phōnis*, MSS. and G.; *Pharonis*, Gale.

[6] *duobus*, C.D., which seems right.

[7] *annuit*, A.

[8] *Gaitelak*, C.D.; *Gaitelaf*, A.B., Gale.

[9] *Burguntius*, A.B.

[10] *ad*] om. A.B.

[11] *atque quosdam ex suis præfecit eis duces*, C.D.

[12] *patet*, C.D.

[13] Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

[14] *autem*] om. B.

[15] *Sancti*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

þe first Patrik his tyme were a þowsand ȝere and eiȝte hondred. Þey hadde þat name Hiberniensis and Hibernici of þe forsaide Hiberus; oþer, as som men wolde wene, of[1] Hiberus a ryuer of Spayne; þei were i-cleped also Gaitels and Scottes of oon Gaithleus,[2] þat was Phenius his neuew. After þat men speked[3] many langages at Nemprot his tour,[4] þis Gaythelus kouþe speke many langages and tonges; and wedded o Scota[5] Pharoo[6] his douȝter. Of þese dukes come þe Hibernienses. Me seith þat þese[7] Gathleus made þe Irische langage and cleped hit Gathelaf,[8] as it were a langage i-gadered of alle langages and tonges. At the laste Belinus, kyng of Bretaigne,[9] hadde a sone þat heet Gurguntius. As þis Gurguntius come out of Denmark at þe ilondes[10] Orcades, he fonde men þat were i-cleped Basclenses and were i-come þider out of Spayne. Þese men prayed and bysouȝte for to haue a place for to wone inne; and þe kyng sent hem to Irlond þat was þoo voyde and wast, and ordeyned and sent wiþ hem[11] dukes and lederes[12] of his owne. [And][13] so hit semeþ þat Irlond schulde longe[14] to Britayne by lawe[15] of olde tyme. From[16]

[1] *or ellys of*, Cx.
[2] *Gaithelus*, α.; *Gaytelus*, Cx. Similar variations below.
[3] *speke*, α.
[4] *After . . . tour*] om. Cx.
[5] *oo Scota*, α.; *one Scota*, Cx.
[6] *Pharoes*, Cx.
[7] *þeose*, α.; *these*, Cx. The true reading must be *þis*.
[8] *Gaithelaf*, α.; *Gaytelef*, Cx.
[9] *Brytayne*, α.; *Bretayn*, Cx.
[10] *atte Irlondes*, Cx. (typ. error.)
[11] So Cx.; *hym*, MS.
[12] *capitayns*, Cx., and so below.
[13] Added from α. and Cx.
[14] *longe*] Added from Cx.
[15] *right*, Cx.
[16] So Cx.; *For*, MS. and α.

MS. HARL. 2261.

the firste were m[l] yere and ccc. Men of Irlonde toke the name of theym of this Heberus, other elles after somme men of a floode of Speyne callede Heberus. Also thei were callede Gaiteles and Scottes after a man callede Gaitelus nevewe to Phenius, whiche, after the confusion of langages at the towre of Nemproth, wyse in diuerse langages did wedde Scota, the douȝhter of kynge Pharas, of whiche dukes men off Irlonde haue descendede. This Gaitelus, as hit is seide, made the langage of that cuntre, whiche is callede Gaitelaf, as a langage collecte of alle langages. At the laste Gurguntius, the sonne of Belyn kynge of Briteyne, turnenge from Denmarke to the yles callede Orcades, founde a certeyne peple of the cuntre of Speyne callede Basclenses, whiche desirenge to haue inhabitacion, the kynge sende theyme in to Irlonde to inhabite hit, that tyme voide of inhabitatores. Whiche made a certeyn gouernoure especialle amonge theyme. Wherefore hit semethe that Irlonde longethe or perteynethe to Briteyne by olde lawe and

Patricii primi[1] usque ad Fedlimidii regis tempora, triginta tres reges per quadringentos[2] annos in Hibernia regnaverunt. In hujus autem[3] Fedlimidii[4] diebus Norguagenses,[5] duce Turgesio, terram hanc occupaverunt; factisque quam pluribus[6] per loca fossatis profundis castella simplicia, duplicia, triplicia, pluraque[7] murata adhuc integra, vacua tamen, erexerunt. Sed Hibernicus populus castella non curat, nam silvis pro castris, paludibus[8] utitur pro fossatis. Tandem Turgesius dolo puellarum delusus, interiit. Et quia Anglorum populus clamat Gurmundum subjugasse Hiberniam et illa fossata fecisse, de Turgesio nihil memorans;[9] Hibernienses vero Turgesium prædicant, Gurmundum vero[10] prorsus ignorant;—ideo sentiendum[11] est Gurmundum in Britanniæ regno quod sibi subjugaverat extitisse, et a Britannia Turgesium istum cum electa

---

[1] *primi*] om. C.D.
[2] 300, C.D.; 406, B., apparently.
[3] *autem*] om. C.
[4] *regis* added in B.C.D. (D. twice has *Fedlinidii*. See Harl. MS.)
[5] *Norvagenses*, A.; *Norwagenses*, B.D.
[6] *quamplurimis*, B.
[7] So A.B. (corrected); *pleraque*, D.E., Gale.
[8] *et paludibus*, C. (not D.)
[9] *est reminiscens*, C.; and so D. omitting *est*.
[10] *autem*, C.D.; om. B.
[11] *sciendum*, C.D.; *censendum*, B.

þe firste Seynt Patryk anon to Fedlimidius[1] þe kynges tyme, foure hondred ȝere, þre and þritty kynges euerich after oþir regned[2] in Irlond. In[3] þis Fedlimidius his tyme Turgesius, duke and ledere of Norweyes, brouȝt þider Norwayes,[4] and occupied þat lond, and made in wel[5] many places many[6] depe diches and castelles sengle, double, and [treble, and][7] many wardes strongliche i-walled; and many þerof stondeþ ȝit al hool. But Irische men recchep nouȝt of castelles; for þey taken[8] wodes for castelles, and mareys and mores for castel diches. But at þe laste Turgesius deide by gile ful wyles and[9] wrenches. And for Englische men seiþ þat[10] Gurmundus wan Irlond, and made þilke diches, and of Turgesius makeþ no mynde;[11] and Irische[12] men speken of Turgesius, and knowep not of Gurmundus:—þerfore it is [to] wetynge[13] þat Gurmundus hadde i-wonne Bretayne, and woned þerynne, and sente Turgesius wiþ grete strengþe of Bretouns[14] in to Irlond

TREVISA.

ryȝhte, where xxx^ti iij. kynges reigned from the tyme and commenge of the firste Patrikke to the tyme of kynge Fedlinidius in that londe by iiij^c. yere. In the tyme of kynge Fedlinidius men of Norway commenge with a duke callede Turgesius occupiede that londe, makenge grete diches, castelles symple, dowble and threfolde as in veyne; for the men of Irlonde attende not to castelles, for thei vse woodes for castelles and marras. At the laste this duke Turgesius was perischede and extincte thro the disseyte of maydenes. And for cause the peple off Englonde sayethe and cryethe Gurmunde to haue subiugate Irlonde and to have made those dyches, hauenge not Turgesius in vre or in remembraunce; but men of Irlonde remembre that duke Turgesius, hauenge noo remembraunce of Gurmunde;—therefore hit it to vnderstonde Gurmunde to haue bene in the realme of Briteyne, whiche he subduede to hym, and to haue sende Turgesius with a multitude of peple to Irlonde

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *Fedlinudius*, Cx., and so below.
[2] Placed after *yere* in Cx.
[3] *in to*, MS. (not *a*, or Cx.)
[4] *men of Norweye*, Cx.
[5] *wel*] om. Cx.
[6] *many*] om. Cx.
[7] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[8] *takiþ a.*; *take*, Cx. These variations are frequent.
[9] *of*, *a.*; *of wymmen*, Cx. The text of MS. makes excellent sense, but the true reading is, doubtless, *of wenches* (*puellarum*).
[10] So *a.*, Cx.; *at*, MS.
[11] *mencion*, Cx. (who transposes some words.)
[12] *Erisshe*, *a.*
[13] *to witynge*, *a.*; *to wete*, Cx.
[14] *of Bretouns*] out of Bretayne, *a.*, the words are omitted in Cx.

juventute ad Hiberniam expugnandam transmisisse; qui quidem Turgesius, quia hujus expeditionis tribunus et rector extiterat, idcirco illum [1] gens Hiberniæ [2] quem vidit et novit famose prædicat.[3] Gurmundo tandem in [4] Galliarum partibus interfecto, Turgesius in Hibernia filiam regis Medensis adamavit, quam pater suus cum quindecim puellis transmittere Turgesio promisit, quibus apud [5] stagnum Lacherinum cum totidem nobilioribus gentis suæ Turgesius occurrere spopondit. Quod dum faceret, a quindecim juvenibus imberbibus sub habitu puellari sicas ferentibus dolose occiditur, postquam triginta annis in insula imperaverat. Non multo post de Norguegiæ [6] partibus, quasi sub pacis obtentu et mercationis exercendæ prætextu, tres fratres Amelanus,[7] Siracus, et Ivorus [8] cum sua sequela ad hanc insulam venerunt; et de consensu Hiberniensium otio deditorum maritima loca occupantes tres civitates [9]

---

[1] *eum*, C.D.
[2] *ista*, C.D.
[3] *celebrat*, C.D., Gale; *prædicat et celebrat*, A.
[4] *in*] om. B.; *in Gallorum*, A.
[5] *ad*, B.
[6] B. has *Norwagiæ*, and uses the same form throughout; A., here and commonly, *Norvegiæ*; D. here has *Norvagesiæ*.
[7] *Aurelanus*, B. and Harl. MS.
[8] *Iviorus*, B.D. (apparently.)
[9] *tres civitates*] om. C.D.

forto wynne þat lond. And so for[1] Turgesius was gyour and ledere[2] of þat viage and of þat iornay,[3] and so i-seie in Irlond and wel[4] i-knowe[5] among Irische men,—þerfore Irische men speke þ moche of hym as of a noble man þat was i-seie in Irlond and wel i-knowe in þat lond. At þe laste whan Gurmundus was i-slawe in Fraunce, Turgesius loued þe kynges douȝter of Meth of Irlond; and hir fader behiȝt Turgesius, þat he wolde sende hir hym to þe Lowe Lacheryn wiþ fiftene maydenes; and Turgesius behiȝt for to mete him[6] þere wiþ fiftene þe[7] noblest men þat he hadde. He hyld[8] couenant and þouȝt of[9] no gile, but þere come fiftene ȝong berdles men i-cloþed as wommen,[10] wiþ schorte swerdes vndir her cloþes, and fil on Turgesius, and slowe hym riȝt þere. And so Turgesius was traytourliche[11] i-slawe, after þat he hadde reigned þritty ȝere in þat lond. Nouȝt longe afterward þre[12] breþeren, Amelanus, Siracus, and Iuoris, come in to Irlond wiþ hir men out of Norway, as it were[13] for loue of pees and[14] of marchaundise, and woned by þe see sides by assent of Irische men þat were alwey idel as Poules[15] knyȝtes. And

TREVISA.

to expugne hit. And for cause that Turgesius was as the gouernoure in that labor, þerfore þe peple of Irlonde namethe hym whom thay[16] see. Gurmunde dedde at the laste in Fraunce, Turgesius luffede moche þe doȝhter of kynge Medense, whiche mayde here fader promisede to sende to Turgesius with xv. other maides, whom Turgesius made promyse to mete at a water callede Lacheryne, with so mony nowble men of his peple. Whiche Turgesius was sleyne by disseyte of those xv. yonge men in the habite and clothenge of women hauenge weppen vnder theire clothes, after that he hade reignede in that yle xxx^ti yere. After that thre breþer come to that yle from the partes of Norway, as in signe of pease, Aurelanus, Siracus, and Iuorus, with other people, whiche, thro the consente of men of Irlonde, ȝiffen to ydellenes, occupienge the places and f. 51. b.

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *And by cause*, Cx.
[2] *capytayn and leder*, Cx.
[3] *and iourney*, Cx.
[4] *wel*] om. *a.*, Cx.
[5] *i-knowe in þat lond*, MS.; om. *a.* and Cx. The latter has other omissions.
[6] So *a.* and Cx.; *him*, MS.
[7] *of þe*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
[8] *and helde*, Cx.
[9] *of*] om. Cx.
[10] *like wymmen*, Cx.
[11] *traytouresliche*, *a.*; *traitorously*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
[12] So *a.* and Cx.; *þis*, MS.
[13] *had been*, Cx.
[14] *and*] Added from Cx.
[15] *Paules*, Cx.
[16] So Harl. MS.

Dublinniam,[1] Waterfordiam, et Limiricum [2] construxerunt, qui tandem numero [3] succrescentes contra indigenas frequenter [4] rebellaverunt,[5] et usum [6] [7] securium, qui [8] Anglice [9] *sparth* [10] dicitur,[11] ad terram Hiberniæ [12] comportarunt. Igitur a tempore Turgesii usque ad ultimum monarcham Rothericum Connactiæ regem, septendecim reges in Hibernia fuerunt.[13] Et sic in universo a primo Hermone usque ad ultimum [14] Rothericum, quem subjugavit rex Angliæ Henricus secundus anno ætatis suæ [15] quadragesimo, regni [16] sui septimo decimo,[17] ab incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo septuagesimo secundo, rexerunt Hiberniam centum octoginta unus [18] reges non coronati, non inuncti, non hæreditarii, sed vi et armis succedentes.

Cap. XXXIV.

De incolarum moribus.

Refert Solinus quod[19] gens hujus terræ sit[20] barbara, inhospita, bellicosa, fasque[21] nefasque pro eodem ducens.[22]

---

[1] *Dubliniam*, D.
[2] *Limicium*, B.
[3] *in numero*, A.
[4] *frequenter*] om. B.
[5] *rebellarent*, A.; *debellarunt*, B.; *rebellarunt*, D.
[6] *husum*, B.
[7] *et* added in B.
[8] *qui*] om. C. (not D.)
[9] *Anglice*] om. A.B.
[10] *sparthus*, C. (not D.)
[11] *dicitur*] om. C. (not D.)
[12] *Hiberniæ*] om. C.; *istam*, D.
[13] E. has some clerical omissions.
[14] *ultimum*] om. B.
[15] *suæ*] Added from B.C., Gale.
[16] *vero* added in B.
[17] 7°, C. (not D.)
[18] *unum annum*, E. (without sense.)
[19] *Refert Solinus quod*] om. C.D.
[20] *sit*] om. C.D.
[21] *fas que nephas*, A.
[22] *ducunt*, C.D.; om. E.

þese Norwayes bilde þ[r]e[1] citees, Deuelyng, Waterford, and Limyriche; and encresed faste afterward, and wax[2] rebel aȝenst men of þe lond, and brouȝt first sparthes in to Irlond. So fro[3] Turgesius tyme anon to Roþeryk his tyme, kyng of[4] Connoccia, þat was þe laste þat was kyng of al þe lond, were seuentene kynges, [in Irlond. And so þe kynges][5] þat reigned in Irlond, from þe firste Hermon his tyme anon to þe laste Rotheryk his tyme, were in al an hondred kynges foure score and oon, þat were nouȝt i-crowned noþer anoynt, noþer by lawe of heritage, bot by myȝt and maistrie and strenȝþe[6] of armes. Þe secounde Henry[7] kyng of Engelond made þis Rotherik sugette þe ȝere of kynge Henries tyme of age fourty, and of his kyngdom seuentene, þe ȝere of oure Lord elleuen hundred þre score and twelue. TREVISA.

De incolarum moribus.

Capitulum tricesimum quartum.

SOLINUS seiþ þat men of þis lond beeþ straunge[8] of nacioun, housles, and grete fiȝteres, and acounteþ riȝt and costes of that cuntre nye to the see, made Dublyn, Waterforde, and Lymyrike, thre cites. Whiche encreasenge in nowmbre, made mony batelles ageyne the inhabitatores of that cuntre. Therefore from the tyme of Turgesius vn to the laste Rotherike, whom kynge Henry the secunde made subiecte to hym in the xl^ti^ yere of his age, and in the xvij^the^ yere off his reigne, in the yere of oure Lorde God m. c. lxxvij., a c. lxxxj. kynges gouernede Yrlonde, not crownede neither anoyntede, neither occupienge hit by ryȝhtefulle inheritaunce, but obteynenge the predominy by strenȝhte and armes. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Disposicion of the Inhabitatours of that Londe.
Capitulum tricesimum quartum.

SOLINUS, the grete clerke, rehersethe that the peple of that londe be like to the peple of Barbre, bellicose, accom-

[1] *thre*, Cx.; *þe*, MS. and *a*.
[2] *encresed and after wexe*, Cx.
[3] *from*, *a*.
[4] *of*] added from Cx., who has *Cannacia*.
[5] Added from *a*. and Cx. The latter has a few very slight variations in the sentence following.
[6] *by strengȝe*, *a*.
[7] *Harry*, Cx., and so below.
[8] So *a*. and Cx.; *strong*, MS.

Gens habitu singularis et inculta, victu parca, animo sæva, affatu aspera, sanguine interemptorum prius hausto[1] vultus[2] suos oblinivit.[3] Carnibus et fructibus pro esu, lacte pro potu contenta.[4] Gens quidem ludis, otio, et venationi plus dedita quam labori. *Giraldus in Topographia Hiberniæ.*[5] Gens ista post ortum suum[6] dure nutritur, moribus et vestibus inculta. Laneis tam braccis quam caligis, capuciis quoque strictis trans humeros deorsum cubito tenus protensis,[7] et vice palliorum phalangis[8] nigris utitur;[9] item non sellis, non[10] ocreis, non calcaribus equitando utuntur. Virgam in superiori parte cameratam ad concitandos[11] equos manu ferunt;[12] frænis[13] cami vice fungentibus et pabula nequaquam[14] impedientibus utuntur. Inermes corpore, pugnant attamen[15] jaculis binis, lanceis, et securibus amplis. Una tantum manu confligunt; lapides pugillares, cum alia defecerint, in promptu habent. Gens itaque[16] agriculturam spernens, pascuis tantum utens, barbis et comis

---

[1] *hausta*, E.
[2] *multos*, B.
[3] *ablinunt*, A.; *obliniunt*, B.C.D., Gale; probably rightly. Solinus (c. 22) has *oblinunt*.
[4] *est contenta*, A.B.C.D.
[5] C.D. omit reference; A.B. omits *Hiberniæ*.
[6] *suum*] om. C.D., Gale.
[7] *prætensis*, Gale (not G.)
[8] So A.C.; *phalingis*, D.; *falangis*, B.E., Gale.
[9] *utuntur*, B.
[10] *nec*, B.
[11] *concitandum*, A.D.
[12] *ferunt*] om. E.
[13] *frenis circa capita equorum non in ore fugantur*, (for *utuntur*,) *pabula nequaquam impedientibus*, C. (not D., which agrees with the text.)
[14] *non*, B.
[15] *tantum*, Gale (but cancelled in G.)
[16] *Gens ista silvestris*, C.; *gens itaque silvestris*, D.

wrong al for oon,[1] and beeþ sengle of cloþinge, scarse of mete, cruel of herte, and angry of speche, and drinkeþ firste blood of dede men þat beeþ i-slawe, and þan wassheþ here face[2] þerwiþ; and holdeþ hem apayde[3] wiþ flesshe and fruit instede of mete, and wiþ mylk instede of drynke, and vseþ moche playes[4] and hydelnesse and huntynge, and trauailleþ ful litel.[5] In hir child hode þey beeþ harde i-norisched and hard i-fed, and þey beeþ vnsemeliche of maneres and of cloþyng, and haueþ breche and hosen al oon[6] of wolle, and straiȝt[7] hodes þat strecchеþ a cubite ouer þe schuldres by hynde, and blak faldynges[8] instede of mantels and of clokes. Also sadeles, bootes, [and][9] spores þey vseþ none, whan þey rideþ; but þey dryueþ hir hors wiþ a chambre ȝerde[10] in þe ouer ende instede of barnacles[11] and of britels of reest; and vseþ bridels[12] þat letteþ nouȝt here hors of here[13] mete. Þey fiȝteþ[14] vnarmed, naked in body; neuerþeles wiþ tweie dartes and speres and wiþ brode sparthes.[15] Þey fiȝteþ wiþ oon hond;[16] and whan oþer wepene failleþ, þey haueþ good publestones redy at hond. Þese men forsakeþ tilienge of lond and kepeþ pasture for beestes: þey vseþ longe berdes and longe lokkes

TREVISA.

ptenge ryȝhte and wronge as for oon thynge, a peple symple in habite, scarse and litelle in fyndenge, cruelle in herte, scharpe in speche, vsenge frutes for flesche, mylke for drynke, a peple that ȝiffethe more attendaunce to ydelnesse and to disportes then to labour. The peple of that cuntre is norischede hardely after thei comme in to this worlde, whiche vse no sadelles in rydenge, neither spurres, neither bootes. Neuerthelesse thei haue a wonde, other a rodde, clenede in the hier parte of it to cause the horses to move and labour in theire honde; which fiȝhte with oute armoure, neuerthelesse thei vse dartes and speres, and thei fiȝhte also with oon honde and with brode axes, vsenge moche stones in theire fiȝhtenge when thei wonte other weppen. This peple despisethe tyllenge of londe, vsenge pastures, and suffrenge the hynder partes of theire hedes to groe in to a

MS. HARL. 2261

[1] *one thyng*, Cx.
[2] *theyr vysages*, Cx.
[3] *paid*, Cx.
[4] *pleyng*, Cx.
[5] *lyte*, *a*.
[6] *hon*, *a*.
[7] *strait*, *a*.; *strayt*, Cx.
[8] *and foldynges*, Cx.
[9] Added from *a*.
[10] *chambred yerd*, Cx., who transposes some previous words.
[11] *barnacles*] *byttes with trenches*, Cx., who has *brydles* for *britels*.
[12] *briderls*, *a*.
[13] *to ete theyr*, Cx.
[14] *fiteþ*, *a*.
[15] So *a*. and Cx.; *sparthus*, MS.
[16] Cx. omits to *at hond*.

[1]a posteriori parte capitis[2] luxurians,[3] non lino, non lanificio, non aliquo mercationis genere, nec ulla mechanicarum artium specie[4] vitam producunt; sed otio dediti, delicias reputant[5] labore carere, divitias deputant libertate gaudere. Et cum Scotia hujus terræ filia utatur lyra,[6] tympano, et[7] choro, ac Wallia cithara, tibiis,[8] et choro; Hibernici tamen[9] in duobus musici generis instrumentis, (cithara scilicet[10] et tympano æreis[11] chordis armato,) præ cæteris sunt periti; quibus instrumentis quamvis[12] precipitem et velocem,[13] suavem tamen et jocundam crispatis modulis et intricatis notulis[14] efficiunt harmoniam. A B molli incipiunt et sub obtuso[15] grossioris chordæ sonitu latenter ludentes in idem redeunt, ut pars artis maxima[16] videatur artem velare, tanquam,

Si lateat, prosit; ferat ars deprensa[17] pudorem.

Gens etiam ista spurcissima, nondum decimas solvunt, nondum matrimonia rite contrahunt, non incestus[18]

---

[1] *præcipue* added in C.D.
[2] *capitis*] om. B.C.D.
[3] *intricans*, B.
[4] *spem*, A.D.
[5] *deputant*, C. (not D.)
[6] *libia*, C. (not D.)
[7] *et etiam*, A.
[8] *tibia*, C. (not D.)
[9] *tantum*, C. (not D.)
[10] *scilicet*] om. A.
[11] *æneis*, C.D.; *æris*, B.
[12] *quam*, E.
[13] *quamvis præcipitem et velocem*] licet præcipue, C.D.
[14] *et intricatis notulis*] om. D.
[15] *optuoso*, A.
[16] *maximam*, B.
[17] *deprehensa*, MSS. and Gale.
[18] *incestus non*, B.

hongynge doun by hynde hir nolles.[1] Þey vse[2] no craft of flex and[3] wolle, of metal, noþer of marchaundise; but ȝeueþ hem alle[4] to idelnesse and to sleuþe,[5] and counteþ[6] reste for likyng and fredom for richesse. And þey Scotlond þe douȝter of Irlond vse harpe, tymbre, and tabour, [and Wales useþ harpe and pipe and tabour],[7] neuerþeles Irische men beeþ connyng in tweie manere instrumentis[8] of musyk, in harpe and tymbre þat is i-armed wiþ wire and wiþ strenges of bras. In þe whiche[9] instrumentis,[8] þey [þei][10] pleye hastiliche and swiftliche, þey makeþ wel[11] mery armonye[12] and melody wiþ wel picke[13] tunes, werbeles, and nootes; and bygynneþ from bemol, and pleieþ priueliche vnder deepe[14] soun of þe grete strenges and torneþ aȝen in to þe same, so þat þe grettest partie of þe craft hideþ þe craft; [as hit wolde seme as þei þe craft][15] so i-hidde schulde be aschamed, and it were i-take. Þese men beeþ of yuel maneres and of leuynge; þey paieþ none teþinges,[16] þei weddeþ lawefulliche none wyfes, þey spareþ not her alies, bot þe broþer weddeþ his broþer[17] wyf. Þey beeþ

TREVISA.

grete lengthte: not vsenge theire lyfe in makenge of clothe of wolle, other elles of lyne or flex, neither in eny kynde of marchandise, neither in eny honde crafte; but ȝiffen to ydelnesse, accompte to be with owte labor delites, and a pleasure to ioye in liberte. Also Scotlande, the doȝhter of hit, as in ydelnesse vsethe an harpe, a tympan, and a crowde. And Wales vsethe trumpettes, an harpe, and a crowde. Neuerthelesse men of Irlonde be experte specially in ij. kyndes of musike, that is to say, an harpe, and a tympan stryngede and armede with cordes off brasse. But thauȝhe thei make a swyfte melody ther with and a swete, thei begynne with a softe noyce and tune, and pleyenge priuely vnder a dulle sounde of a more grosse corde returne to the same. The peple of this cuntre is vile of condicion; vn to this tyme presente they pay not theire tythes, thei make not lawefulle contractes in matrimony, thay avoide not inceste, but breþer wedde the wyfes of theire brether, vsenge gretely

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *hedes*, Cx.
[2] *vseþ*, *a*.
[3] *of*, *a*., Cx.
[4] *alle*] om. Cx.
[5] *slouthe*, Cx.
[6] *rekene*, Cx.
[7] Added from *a*. (not in Cx.)
[8] So *a*.; *instrumentz*, MS. (twice.)
[9] *in whiche*, Cx., with other slight variations.
[10] *though they*, Cx.
[11] *right*, Cx.
[12] So Cx.; *armenye*, MS.
[13] *with thyck*, Cx.
[14] *secretely vnder dymme*, Cx.
[15] Added from *a*. and Cx. The latter slightly varies a few words in the previous sentence.
[16] *tythes*, Cx.; *no teþinges*, *a*.
[17] *the broders*, Cx.

vitant; sed fratres fratrum uxores ducunt, proditionibus insistunt, securim, id est sparth,[1] in manu quasi pro baculo bajulant,[2] qua[3] sibi confidentes præoccupant. Gens ista versipellis et inconstans, varia et[4] versuta, cujus[5] magis timenda[6] ars quam Mars,[7] pax quam fax, mel quam fel,[8] malitia quam militia; cujus mores sunt,[9] quod nec in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles inveniuntur.[10] Cum illo quem dolose opprimere volunt, primo[11] compaternitatis et consecratæ fraternitatis fœdera jungunt; in qua alter alterius sanguinem sponte[12] fusum bibunt. Alumnos et collactaneos aliquantulum diligunt, fratres et cognatos persequuntur, vivos decipiunt, mortuos ulciscuntur. Inter quos adeo in naturam converti prævaluit pravæ consuetudinis longus abusus, adeo a convictu[13] mores formantur, ut etiam[14] hoc vitio prodi-

---

[1] *id est sparth*] om. C.D.
[2] *gestant*, C. (not D.)
[3] *quas*, B.
[4] *et*] om. C.D. (twice.)
[5] So C.D., Gale; *cui*, A,E.
[6] *timenda*] om. E.
[7] So Gale; *Mars quam ars*, MSS. and G. (contrary to the meaning.)
[8] *mel . . . fel*] om. B.
[9] *sunt*] om. C.D.
[10] *inveniuntur*] om. C.D.
[11] *puro*, E.
[12] *sponte sanguinem*, B.
[13] *adeoque convictu*, A.
[14] *in*, B.

besy forto betraye hire neiȝbores and opere. Þey beren sparthes in here hond instede of staues, and fiȝteþ þerwiþ[1] aȝenst hem þat tristeþ[2] to hem beste; þe[3] men beeþ variable and vnstedefast, trecherous and gileful. Who þat deleþ wiþ hem nedeþ more to be war more of gile þan of craft, of pees þan of brennynge brondes, of hony þan of galle, of malice þan of knyȝthode. Þey haueþ suche maneres þat þei beeþ not stronge in werre and bataille, noþer trewe in pees. Þey bycomeþ [gossibs to hem][4] þat þey wolleþ falseliche betraye in[5] gosibrede and holy kynrede; euericne drinkeþ operes blood, whan it is i-sched. He[6] loueþ somdel her norice and here pleieng[7] feres whiche þat[8] soukeþ þe same melk þat þey soukeþ, while they beeþ[9] children. And þey purseweþ here breþeren, her cosyns, and here oþer kyn; and despiseþ hir kyn, while þey beeþ on lyue,[10] and awrekeþ[11] her deeþ, and[12] þey beeþ i-slawe. Among hem longe vsage and euel custume haþ so longe i-dured,[13] þat it haþ i-made[14] þe maistrie, and torneþ among hemself[15] traisoun in to kynde so fer forthe, þat as[16] þei be traytoures by kynde,[17] so aliens and men of straunge londes þat woneþ longe among hem draweþ aftir þe manere[18] of hir companye, and skapeþ wel vnneþe[19] but þey be

Trevisa.

treason, berenge in theire honde an instrumente callede a sparth as for a staffe with the whiche they perische oftetymes men trustenge in theyme. This peple is frowarde and inconstante, diuerse or variable, and wyly, amonge whom batelle is more to be dredde then arte, peace more then armor, hony more then galle, malice more then cheuallery; the propertes and condicions of whom be, thei be neither stronge in battelle neither tru in pease; whiche ioyne to theyme men whom thei intende to sle by the bonde of compaternite and of consecrate fraternite, by whiche oon of theyme drynkethe the bloode of that other wyllefully. Which luffe theire childer in a maner, and breþer; whiche prosecute their cosynnes; deceyvenge men in lyfe, and tak-

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *þerwiþ*] om. Cx.
[2] *truste moost*, Cx.
[3] *þese*, *a*., Cx;
[4] Added from Cx. (not in *a*.)
[5] *in þe*, *a*.
[6] So MS. and *a*.; *they*, Cx. (in the same sense.)
[7] *pley feres*, *a*., Cx.
[8] So also *a*., and Cx.
[9] *were*, Cx.
[10] *alyue*, *a*.; *they lyue*, Cx.
[11] *auenge*, Cx.
[12] *whan*, Cx. (so often).
[13] Slightly varied in Cx.
[14] *goten*, Cx. adding *ouer them*.
[15] *among hemself*] om. Cx.
[16] *as* and *so*, below, om. Cx.
[17] *nature*, Cx.
[18] *maneres*, *a*.
[19] *folowen their maners that vnnethe*, Cx.

tionis[1] alienigenæ huc advecti fere inevitabiliter involvantur. In hac gente quamplures viri sedendo, mulieres stando urinam emittunt. Multi sunt in hac terra deformes, naturæ beneficio in[2] membris destituti; ita ut sicut[3] qui hic[4] bene formantur nusquam melius, ita[5] qui male nusquam pejus; et recte quidem, ut de gente incesta[6] nequiter copulata,[7] natura nequiter deformante, natura[8] læsa contra legem naturæ[9] producat. In hac terra et in Wallia vetulas quasdam in leporinam formam se transmutare[10] ubera vaccina[11] sugendo, alienum lac surripere,[12] leporariosque magnatum[13] cursu fatigare vetus quidem et adhuc frequens querela est. Quidam etiam magicis artibus pingues porcos (sed rubeos duntaxat) ex aliqua præjacente materia producentes in nundinis vendunt; sed hi statim, ut aliquam

---

[1] *perditionis*, B.
[2] *in*] om. B.
[3] *sicut*] om. C.D.
[4] *hic qui*, B.
[5] *ibi*, C. (not D.)
[6] *incestu*, C. (not D.)
[7] *nequiter deformata vel natura læsa*, C. (not D.)
[8] *talis natura*, A. (second hand) B.D.
[9] C. (not D.) adds, *ne proles deformis producatur.*
[10] *transformare unita ubera*, A.; *mutuo transformare*, B.
[11] *vaccinea*, C.D.
[12] *suscipere*, C. (not D.)
[13] *magno*, C.D.

i-smotted[1] wiþ þe schrewednesse and bycomeþ traytours[2] also. Among hem many men pisseþ sittynge and wommen stondynge. Þere beeþ meny men in þis[3] lond wonder[4] foule and yuel i-schape yn lymes and in body.[5] For in hir lymes lakkeþ[6] þe benefice of kynde, so þat nowher beeþ no[7] better i-schape, þan þey þat beeþ þere wel i-schape; and nowher non worse i-schape þan þey þat beeþ þere euel i-schape. And skilfulliche kynde, i-hurt and defouled by wykkednesse of lyuynge, bryngeþ forþ suche foule gromes and euel i-schape of hem þat wiþ vnlaweful weddynge[8] wiþ foule maneres and euel lyuynge so wickedliche defouleþ[9] kynde.[10] In þis lond and in Wales olde wyfes and wymmen were i-woned, and beeþ ȝit (as me pleyneþ)[11] ofte forto schape hem self in liknes of hares for to melke here neiȝhebores keen,[12] and so[13] stele hire melk, and ofte grehoundes[14] renneþ after hem and purseweþ hem, and weneþ þat þey be hares. Also som by craft of nygramauncie makeþ fat swyne [þat beeþ reed of colour,][15] and noon oþer, and selleþ hem in chepinge[16] and in feires; but anon as þese[17]

Trevisa.

enge vengeaunce for dedde men. Mony men of that cuntre vse to make water and to sende furthe theire vryne sytenge, and women stondenge. Also there is moche peple of that londe destitute in theire membres thro the deformite of nature; for lyke as men amonge theyme welle formede by nature be semely men, so men deformede by nature amonge þeim be moste vile and hade in contempte; and by ryȝhte, for hit is not to be hade in meruayle, thauȝhe nature hurte brynge furthe peple as ageyne the lawe of nature, amonge peple vsenge inceste and takenge women ageyne the lawe of God. Also hit is seide amonge commune peple, olde women of that londe, and of Wales, to chaunge theyme in to the forme of an hare and to sowke bestes, and to take aweye the mylke of other men, and to make feynte the grehowndes of grete men thro cowrsenge and rennenge. And somme of theim causenge redde swyne thro wycchecrafte, after thei were made fatte and solde at feires, when

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *smytted*, *a*.
[2] *ther is none but he is besmitted with their treson also*, Cx.
[3] *that*, Cx.
[4] om. Cx.
[5] Slightly varied in Cx.
[6] *they lacke*. Cx.
[7] *non*, *a*.
[8] *delyng*, Cx.
[9] So Cx.; *and defouleþ*, MS. and *i*. (without sense.)
[10] *kynde and nature*, Cx.
[11] So also *a*.; *as men seyne*, Cx.
[12] *kyne*, Cx.
[13] *so*] om. C.
[14] *gerhoundes*, Cx.
[15] Altered from Cx., who has *for to be reed, &c.* Absent from *a*.
[16] *markettis*, Cx.
[17] *the*, Cx.

aquam transeunt, in propriam naturam redeunt. Sed et hi quacunque[1] industria serventur ultra triduum non perdurant.[2] Inter hæc et hujusmodi[3] advertendum est, quod[4] mundi extremitates[5] novis semper quibusdam prodigiis pollent;[6] ac si natura licentius ludat in privato et remoto, quam in propatulo[7] et propinquo. Unde et in hac insula plurima sunt miranda et stupenda.[8]

Cap. XXXV.

De locorum prodigiis.

Affirmatum est a multis[9] quod in boreali parte Hiberniæ sit insula viventium,[10] in qua nemo mori potest; sed, cum diutino[11] detenti fuerint languore, ad proximam deportantur insulam. Est et alia ibi[12] insula, in qua mulieres parere non possunt, tamen concipere[13]

---

[1] *Sed et hi quacunque*] *sed quantacumque*, C.D.; *at quantacumque*, B.
[2] *durant*, C.D.
[3] So B., Gale; *hujus*, A.E.
[4] *Inter . . . quod*] om. C.D.
[5] *extremitas*, G. and Gale.
[6] *prodigiis quibusdam pollet*, G., Gale.
[7] *patulo*, B.
[8] *et stupenda*] om. C.D.
[9] *a multis*] om. A. (which has erasures) B.
[10] Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
[11] *diuturno*, B.
[12] *Et est ibi alia*, A.
[13] *concipere tamen*, D.

swyne passeþ ony water þey torneþ aȝen in to hir owne kynde, where[1] it be straw, hey, gras, oþer torues.[2] But þese swyn mowe not be i-kept by no manere[3] craft forto dure in liknesse of swyn[4] ouer þre dayes. Among þese wondres and opere take hede þat in þe vttermeste[5] endes of þe world falleþ ofte newe meruailles and wondres,[6] as þei kynde pleyde wiþ larger[7] leue priueliche and fer in þe endes þan openliche and nyȝ in[8] þe myddel. Þerfore in þis ilond beeþ meny grisliche meruayles and wondres. TREVISA.

De locorum prodigiis.

Capitulum tricesimum quintum.

Giraldus, capitulo nono.[9] Meny men telleþ þat in þe norþ side of Irlond is þe ilond of lyf; in þat ilond is[10] no man þat[11] may deie;[12] but whan þey beeþ i-holde wiþ hard[13] siknesse þey beeþ i-bore out to þe next ilond,[14] and deie þere. Þere is anoþer ilond in Irlond; þere no womman may bere a childe, but ȝit sche[15] may conceyue. Also þere

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 50. *b.*

thei come to eny water to returne in to an other kynde, causenge that body soe to endure by wycchecrafte by the space of thre dayes. Amonge whiche thynges hit is to be aduertede that the extremites of the worlde schyne in newe wondres and meruailes, as if that nature scholde schyne and play more in priuate places and remouede then in open places and also nye.

Of the Wondres and Meruayles of hit.
Capitulum tricesimum quintum.

Giraldus. Mony men afferme and say that ther is an yle in the northe parte of Yrlonde whiche is callede the yle of men lyvenge, in whiche yle a man may not dye, but after that thei be detente with longe infirmite thei be brouȝhte to another yle nye to hit. Also there is an other yle, in whom a woman may not be delyuerede; neuerthelesse thei may conceyve in

[1] *wheþer, a.*, Cx.
[2] *turues*, Cx.
[3] *manere*] om. Cx.
[4] Four previous words om. in Cx.
[5] *otmeste, a.*
[6] Slightly varied in Cx.
[7] So Cx., who has *loue* (typ. error ?); *large*, MS. and *a.*
[8] *in*] om. Cx.
[9] Reference added from *a.*
[10] *is*] om. *a.*
[11] *þat*] om *a.*
[12] *noman may deie*, Cx.
[13] *old and be vexed with grete*, Cx.
[14] *londe*, Cx.
[15] *he, a.* (probably meaning *they*. See pp. 357, 383.)

possunt. Est et alia insula[1] in qua mortuorum corpora putrescere non possunt.[2] Est lacus in Ultonia insulam continens bipartitam, cujus[3] una pars visitationibus angelorum[4] assueta, altera dæmonum incursibus exposita, in qua est purgatorium Patricii; quod[5] precibus[6] obtinere meruit ad confirmationem dicti sui, dum populo incredulo de pœnis reproborum ac[7] gaudiis sanctorum prædicaret. Cujus[8] loci, ut asserunt, si quis tormenta[9] ex injuncta pœnitentia sustinuerit, infernales pœnas (nisi[10] finaliter fuerit[11] impœnitens) non subibit,[12] sicut in fine hujus capituli plenius exemplabitur.[13] Est

Purgatorium Patricii.

[1] *insula*] om. C.D.

[2] *poterunt*, C.D.

[3] *cujus*] om. C.D.

[4] *vastationibus Anglorum*, Gale, absurdly, and against G.; where, however, *Angelorum* is deceitfully abbreviated.

[5] C.D. add *quidem*.

[6] *suis* added in B.

[7] *pœnis reproborum ac*] om. C. (not D., which has *de gaudiisque*.)

[8] *Hujus*, C.D. (with slight transpositions.)

[9] *tormenta* is in the place of *pœnitentia* in B.

[10] *ubi*, Gale, misreading the contraction in G.

[11] *fuerit finaliter*, B.

[12] *subiet*, B.

[13] *sicut .... exemplabitur*] om. C.D.

is an ilond, þere [1] no dede body may roty.[2] In Vltonia is an ilond in [3] a lake departed wonderliche atweyne; in þe [4] oon partie is ofte grete destourbaunce and discomfort of fendes, and in þe oþer partie greet likynge and coumfort of aungelles.[5] Þere is also Patrick his purgatorie, þat was i-schewed at his prayere [6] to conferme his prechynge and his lore, whan he preched to mysbileued men of sorwe and peyne þat euel men schal þole [7] for hire wicked wordes,[8] and of ioye and of blisse þat good men schal fonge for here holy dedes.[9] He telleþ [þat] [10] who þat suffreþ þe peynes of þat purgatorie, ȝif it be enioyned hym for penaunce, he schal neuere suffre þe peynes of helle, but he dye fynalliche wiþ oute repentaunce of synne, as þe ensample is i-sette more ful at this chapitres ende. *Treuisa.* Þei þis sawe myȝt be sooth, it is but a iape. For [11] no man þat dooþ dedely synne schal be i-saued, but he be verrey repentaunt,[12] [what sommeuer penaunce he doo; and euery man that is verray repentaunt] at his lifes ende of al his mysdedes, he schal be sikerliche i-saued and haue þe blisse of heuene, þey he neuere hire speke [13] of Patrik his purgatorie.[14] R. Þere is an ilond in Conacte [15] Salo,[16] þat

Trevisa.

hit. Also there is an other yle in whom the bodies of dedde men may not be putrefiede. Also there is a place in Vltonia, that is callede Vlster, conteynenge an yle partede in tweyne. That oon of theyme is wonte to be vsede with the visitacion of angelles. That other is expownede to the incursion of deuelles, in whiche parte the purgatory of Seynte Patrikke is, whiche he deseruede to obteyne by hys preiers to the confirmacion of his seyenge, when he prechede to reprobable peple of the ioyes of heuyn and of the peynes of helle. For, as hit is seide, if eny man susteyne the tormentes of that place by penaunce injoynede to hym, he schalle not suffre the peynes of helle with owte that he were inpenitente finally, as hit schalle be schewede more pleyneley in the ende of this chapitre. Also there is an

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *in whiche*, Cx.
[2] *rootye*, *a.*; *roten*, Cx.
[3] So *a.*, Cx.; *and*, MS.
[4] *that*, Cx.
[5] Slightly transposed and varied in Cx.
[6] *prayers*, Cx.
[7] *poole*, *a.*; *suffer*, Cx.
[8] So also *a.*; *werkes*, Cx., which is better.
[9] Very slight variations in the above sentence in Cx.
[10] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[11] *But*, Cx.
[12] *he be verrey repentaunt*] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[13] So *a.*; *neuere speke*, MS.; *here*, Cx.
[14] In the preceding extract, Cx. omits the first sentence, and, besides slight variations, adds the words in brackets, which are absent from MS. and *a.*
[15] *Connacte*, *a.*; *Cannacte*, Cx.
[16] So Cx.; *Salao*, MS.; *Saloo*, *a.*

et insula in Connacte salo a sancto[1] Brendano consecrata, muribus carens, ubi humana corpora nec[2] humantur nec[2] putrescunt, sed sub divo servantur incorrupta. Est fons in Momonia,[3] cujus aquis si quis abluitur, pro toto seu pro parte canus efficitur. E contra est alius[4] fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius.[5] Est et fons in Momonia,[6] qui si tactus fuerit ab homine, statim tota provincia pluviis inundat,[7] quæ non[8] cessabunt donec sacerdos virgo a nativitate,[9] missa in vicina capella celebrata, aquæ benedictione et lactis[10] vaccæ unius coloris aspersione, barbaro satis ritu, fontem reconciliaverit. Apud Glyndelacan circa oratorium Sancti Keywyni[11] salices more pomerii[12] poma proferunt magis salubria quam sapida, quæ sanctus ille ad salutem pueri sui[13] precibus

Fons Pluviæ.

Salices.

---

[1] *dicto*, A.

[2] *non*, C.D.

[3] *Nemonia*, B.

[4] *alius*] om. C.D., and the words slightly transposed.

[5] *amplius*, C.D. This and the previous sentence omitted in A., which consistently omits the *etiam* following. They occur lower down.

[6] *E. . . . Momonia*] om. B.

[7] *inundatur*, A.; *inundavit*, B.

[8] *quæ non*] et non, D.

[9] *virgo* after *nativitate* in B.

[10] *lacte*, C.D. (with other slight variations.)

[11] *Kewyni*, B.; *Keilwin*, C.; *Keuinii*, D. (apparently.)

[12] *pomarii*, A.C.D.

[13] *sui*] om. C. (not D.)

is, in þe see of Conactia, i-halowed of Seynt Brendoun,[1] and haþ no myse; þere dede bodyes beeþ nouȝt i-buried, but beeþ i-kepte þere oute [of therthe][2] and rotieþ nouȝt. In Mamonia is a welle; who þat wascheþ[3] hym wiþ þe water of þat welle, for som oþer for alle[4] he schal worþe hoor.[5] Þere is anoþer welle in Vltonia,[6] who þat[7] is i-wasche þerynne, he schal neuere wexe hoor afterward. Þere is anoþer[8] welle in Mamonia;[9] ȝif any man toucheþ þat welle, anoon schalle falle a[10] greet reyn in to[11] alle the prouince; and þat reyn schal neuere cese, or[12] a preost þat is clene[13] mayde singe a masse in a chapel þat is faste by, and blisse[14] þe water, and with mylk of a cowe þat is of oon here byspringe þe welle, and so reconsile þe welle in a[15] straunge manere. At Glyndalkan[16] aboute þe oratorie of Seint Keynewyn wilewys[17] bereþ apples as it were appel treen, and beeþ more holsom þan sauory; þat holy[18] seynt brouȝt forþ þilke apples by prayeres for to hele his childe.[19]

TREVISA.

---

yle in that cuntre, whiche was consecrate of Seynte Brendan, wontenge myce, where the bodies of men neither rote neither be beriedde, but lye with owte incorrupte. Also there is a welle in Manonia that and if a man wasche alle his body with that water, other elles parte, he schalle be made hoore. Also there is a welle in Vlster, where in a man waschenge hym schalle not wexe hoore afterwarde. Also there is a welle in Manonia whiche towchede of a man schalle cause alle the prouince to habunde in reyn, whiche schalle not sease vntille a preste beenge a virgyn from his natiuite syngenge masse in a chapelle nye to hit, makenge holy water, schalle reconsile that welle after the ryte of men of Barbre, castenge holy water abowte that welle with the mylke of a kowe that is of oon coloure. Also at a water callede Glynde, nye to the chyrche of Seynte Kexwyne, welotrees bere apples more hollesom then thei appere to the savoure, whom that seynte causede to be brouȝhte furthe thro his preiers for the sawle healethe of his childe. Also

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Brendan, α.*
[2] Added from Cx.; not in α.
[3] So α. and Cx.; *wasteþ*, MS.
[4] *for som . . . alle*] om. Cx.
[5] Cx. adds *on his hede.*
[6] So Cx.; *Mamonia*, MS., α.
[7] *who someuer*, Cx.
[8] *a*, α., Cx.
[9] *Mownstere* or *Momonia*, Cx.
[10] *a*] om. Cx.
[11] *to*] om. Cx.
[12] *til*, Cx.
[13] *a clene*, Cx.
[14] *blesse*, Cx.
[15] *in this*, Cx.
[16] *Glydalcan*, α.
[17] *withges*, Cx.
[18] So Cx.; *þat þe holy*, MS., α.
[19] Cx. adds *that was seek.*

Lacus in Ultonia.

produxit. Est lacus in Ultonia piscosa satis, triginta millia passuum in longum [1] et quindecim in latum [2] habens, ex quo fluvius Banna usque in [3] oceanum borealem se diffundit;[4] cui [5] lacui [6] talis, ut asserunt, casus initium dedit. Celebre fuit aliquando [7] apud loci illius [8] incolas, vitio coeundi cum bestiis consuetissimos,[9] quod, quam cito fons quidam terræ illius ex prisca reverentia semper tectus [10] relinqueretur discoopertus, tanta statim fons inundatione exuberaret, quod totam provinciam submergeret.[11] Unde [12] contigit mulierem quandam [13] hauriendi causa ad fontem accessisse, qua necdum fonte signato ad parvulum vagientem properante, fons ita ebullivit, ut et [14] mulierem cum parvulo mergeret, et totam provinciam stagnum faceret. Hujus rei argumentum est, quod piscatores aquæ illius turres ecclesiasticas more [15] patriæ illius [16] altas et rotundas sub undis sereno tempore adhuc conspiciunt. Apud

---

[1] *longitudinem*, B.C. (not. D.)
[2] *latitudine*, C. (not D.)
[3] *ad*, A.B.D.
[4] *transfundit*, D. (with other slight variations.)
[5] *huic*, C.D.
[6] *cujus lacus*, B.
[7] *quondam*, C.D.
[8] *illius*] om. C.D.
[9] *consuetos*, B.; *vitiosissimos*, C.D.
[10] *semper tectus*] coopertus, C.D.
[11] *dilueret*, C.D.
[12] *Dudum*, B.
[13] *quondam*, A.
[14] *et*] om. C.D.
[15] *secundum modum*, B.
[16] *illius*] om. C.D.

Þere is a lake in Vltonia[1] and fisshe inow[2] þerynne, and is þritty myle on[3] lengþe and fiftene in brede; þe ryuer Ban[4] renneþ in to þe norþ occean out of þat lake; and me seith þat [þat][5] lake bygan in þis manere: þere were men in þat contre þat were of yuel leuynge, coeuntes cum brutis, and þere was a welle in þat lond in grete reuerence in[6] olde tyme and alle wey i-heled;[7] and ȝif it were vnheled, þe welle wexe[8] and adrenche[9] al þe lond. And so it happed þat a womman wente to þat welle for to fecche water, and hiȝed[10] wel[11] faste to hir childe þat wepte[12] in his[13] cradell, and lefte þe welle vnheled; þan þe welle sprong so faste, þat it dreynt[14] þe woman and hir child, and made al þe contray a grete[15] lake and a fische pond. For to preue þat þis is soop, it is a grete argument þat whanne þe wedir is clere fischeres of þat water seen[16] in þe grounde vnder þe water rounde toures, [and][17] hiȝe, i-schape as cherches of þe[18] lond. In þe norþ side of Irlond in the

Trevisa.

there is a water in Vlster ful of fisches, hauenge xxx^{ti} m. passes in longitude and xv. m. in latitude, from whom the water, callede Banne, goethe furthe vn to the northe occean, to whiche place and water a meruellous chaunce happede, as hit is seide. For that abhominable vice of sendenge furthe of sede was vsede amonge men of that cuntre with brute bestes, where a welle vsede to be couerede for olde reuerence, laste at a tyme vncouerede that welle so habundaunte in water drownede alle that prouince. Where of hit happede a woman to haue goen to that welle for cause to drawe water, and leuenge hit vncouerede, makenge haste to here childe cryenge, the water was so habundante that hit pereschede þe woman with here childe, and makenge alle the prouince a water: an argumente and a probacion of this thynge dothe appere in that the fischer, vsenge to fische in that water, may see in the bryȝhte daies of somer vnder the waters hye towres and rownde of chirches, after the vse of that cuntre. Also at the sowthe parte of Irlonde, in

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *Vlster*, Cx.
[2] *moche fyssh*, Cx.
[3] *in*, *a*.
[4] So Cx.; *Ban þat*, MS. and *a*.
[5] Added from *a*.; *that this*, Cx.; the *þat* of MS. is probably transposed; see preceding note.
[6] *of*, *a*., Cx.
[7] *couered*, and *vncouered* below, Cx.
[8] *wexe*] *wold ryse*, Cx.
[9] *drowne*, Cx.
[10] *hied*, *a*., Cx.
[11] *wel*] om. Cx.
[12] *weep*, *a*.
[13] *the*, Cx.
[14] *drowned*, Cx.
[15] *grete*] om. Cx.
[16] *see*, Cx.
[17] Added from *a*. and Cx.
[18] *that*, Cx. (not *a*.)

australem Hiberniam in regione Ossiriensi[1] quolibet septennio, per imprecationem cujusdam sancti abbatis,[2] duo conjuges mas et fœmina a finibus illis et a formis propriis exulare coguntur. Nam formam lupinam induentes completo septennio, si forte superstites fuerint, aliis duobus loco eorum[3] simili conditione subrogatis, ad pristinam redeunt tam patriam quam naturam.

Lacus mirabiles.

Est lacus in hac terra, quo si per aliquod spatium palus ligneus infigatur, pars solo inhærens fit ferrea, quæ in aqua est fit lapidea, sed quæ supra aquam est lignea manet.[4] Est etiam ibidem[5] lacus, in quem si virgam de corylo injeceris,[6] convertitur in fraxinum, et e contra. Item in Hibernia sunt tres salmonum saltus, quibus ad summa ab imis contra rupem ad altitudinem unius hastæ[7] salmones se[8] transferunt. Item in Lagenia[9] est unum stagnum ubi[10] sunt aves

---

[1] *Assiriensi*, C.; *Hossiriensi*, D.; *Affriensi*, B.

[2] *sancti abbatis*] E contra est alius fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius. Est et fons qui .... (blank in MS.), B., and so A. nearly.

[3] *illorum*, C.D.

[4] Slightly varied in C.D.

[5] *ibi*, C.D.

[6] *projeceris virgam coruli*, C.D.; *corulo*, B.

[7] *unius hastæ altitudinem*, B.

[8] *salmones se*] om. C.D.

[9] *Laegenia*, B.

[10] *in quo*, B

contray of Ossiriens[1] eueriche seuene ȝere, at þe prayere of oon þat was an[2] holy abbot, tweyne þat beeþ i-wedded a man and a womman schal[3] nedes be outlawed[4] out of þat contray and out of here owne schap. For þilke seuene ȝere þey schul be riȝt as wolues i-schape; and, ȝif þey lyueþ so longe, þey schulle turne aȝen in to hir owne lond and in to hir schap at þe seuen ȝeres ende. Þanne schullen oþer tweyne in her stede be in þe same manere outlawed and i-schape for oþer seuen ȝere.[5] Þere is a lake in þis lond, ȝif a pole is i-piȝt[6] þerynne, þat partie of þe pole[7] þat is in þe erthe schal turne in to iren; al þat is[8] in þe water schal torne in to stoon; and al þat is aboue þe water schal be tree and in his owne kynde. Also þere is a lake þat torneþ hasel into asche and asche into hasel, if it is i-doo[9] þerynne. Also in Irlond beeþ þre samoun lepes; þere[10] samoun[11] lepeþ aȝenst a roche a longe speres lengþe. Also in Lagenia is a ponde; þere is Seynt Colman[12]

TREVISA.

the region off Ossirience, a man and a woman be constreynede to indue an other forme in the ende of vii. yere from that costes,[13] thro the preier of an holy abbotte, whiche induede with the forme of a wulfe the space of vij. yere complete, if they be in lyve thei returne in to theire propre nature, other tweyne subrogate in to the places of theyme in lyke wyse. Also there is a water in that cuntre, in to whom if a staffe or a thynge of a tree be put by a certeyne tyme, the parte of that tre beenge in the erthe is yrne, that parte in the water is as the substaunce of a ston, that parte above the[14] water dothe remayne in that forme as when it was putte ynne. Also there is a lake in that cuntre, in to whom if thou putte a rodde of an haselle tre hit is turnede in to an asche, and in contrary wyse. Also there be in Yrlonde iij. weres, whiche be in latitude of the hiȝhte of a spere, ageyne a hille ouer whom salmones wylle passe þro a sprentenge. Also there is a water in Legennia, where [be] the bryddes of Seynte

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a.*, Cx.; *Assiriens*, MS.
[2] *of an*, Cx.
[3] *must*, Cx.
[4] *exyled and forshappen in to lykenes of wolues, and abyde oute seuen yere*, Cx.
[5] The sentence is thus recast by Cx.: *And at thende of seuen yere, yf they lyue, they come home agayn and take agayn theyr owne shappe; and then shal other tweyne goo forth in theyr stede, and so* [*be?*] *forshapen for other seuen yere.*
[6] *pight*, *a.*, Cx., who adds *and stycked.*
[7] *shaft or pool*, Cx.
[8] *and that part that abydeth*, Cx., who has other slight variations.
[9] *it be don*, Cx.
[10] *there as*, Cx.
[11] *samouns*, *a.*
[12] *Coloman*, *a.*
[13] So Harl. MS., but the sentence is more or less corrupt.
[14] *that*, MS.

Sancti Colemanni,[1] scilicet cercellæ[2] manibus hominum assuetæ; quibus, si injuria fiat, aves non redeunt, et aquæ ibidem amarescunt, et fœtent; et injuriator non evadet[3] vindictam, nisi condigne[4] satisfaciat.[5] *Ranulphus.*[6] Circa purgatorium Patricii est notandum, quod Sanctus Patricius secundus, qui fuit[7] abbas et non episcopus, dum in Hibernia prædicaret, studuit animos hominum illorum[8] bestiales terrore tormentorum infernalium a malo revocare, et gaudiorum Paradisi promissione ad bonum confirmare. Illi autem dixerunt se nolle converti, nisi aliquis eorum[9] tormenta illa et gaudia posset[10] aliqualiter in hac vita experiri. Quamobrem Patricio super hoc oranti apparuit Jesus Christus dans textum evangelii

De Purgatorio S. Patricii.

---

[1] *Colomanni*, A.B.
[2] *cercellæ*] om. C.D.
[3] *evadit*, C.D.
[4] *digne*, B.
[5] *condigna satisfactio subsequatur*, C.
[6] *Ran. . . . intendit* (end of chapter)] om. C.D.
[7] *fuit*] om. E.
[8] *illorum hominum*, B.
[9] *illorum*, B.
[10] *possit*, B.

his briddes; [þe briddes][1] beeþ i-cleped cercelles, and comeþ homeliche to manis honde; but ȝif me dooþ hem harme,[2] þey gooþ awey and comeþ nouȝt aȝen, but[3] the water þere schal wexe bitter and stynke; and he þat dede þe wrong schal nouȝt asterte wiþ oute wreche and meschief, but þei doo ful[4] amendes. R.[5] Touchynge[6] Patrik his purgatorie take hede þat[7] þe secounde Seynt Patryk, þat was abbot and nouȝt bisshop, whyle he preched in Irlond studied wel faste besily[8] for to torne þilke wicked men, þat leuede as bestes, out of here yuel lyf for drede of þe peynes of helle, and for to conferme hem in good lyf by hope of þe grete blisse of heuene; and þey seide þat þey wolde nouȝt torne, but some of hem myȝte knowe somwhat of þe grete peynes and þe blisse, þat he spak of, whyle þey were here on lyue.[9] Þanne Seynt Patrik preied to God alle myȝty þerfore; and oure Lord Iesus Crist apperede to Patrik, and took hym a staf,[10] and þe text of

TREVISA.

Colomanne, whiche be callede cercelle, wonte to the hondes of men: if iniury be doen to those bryddes, they comme not ageyne; and also the waters þer wexe bytter and make an ylle savour; and the doer of the iniury schalle not escape vengeaunce, vn tille that he have doen dewe satisfaccion. Also hit is to be attendede abowte the purgatory of Seynte Patrik, that Seynte Patrik the secunde, whiche was an abbot and not a byschoppe, when he prechede in Yrlonde, studiede to calle ageyne and brynge to the weye of sawle healethe the sawles of the bestialle peple in that cuntre from the peyne of helle, and to confirme the myndes of theyme in goodenesse thro the promission of the ioyes of paradise. The men of that cuntre seide they wolde not be conuertede, but if somme of theym myȝhte haue experience in this lyfe in a parte of the ioyes of paradise and of the peynes of helle: wherefore Seynte Patrike makenge his preyers for that cause, oure Lorde Iesus Criste apperede to hym, ȝiffenge to hym a texte of the gospelle

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] Added from *a.* and Cx. (the latter has *the birdes.*)
[2] *yf men do hem wrong or harme,* Cx.
[3] *and,* Cx.
[4] *ful*] om. Cx.
[5] Reference omitted in *a.*
[6] *As touching,* Cx.
[7] *ye shal vnderstande that,* Cx.
[8] *besy, a.*; *labored and studied for to torne,* Cx.
[9] Cx. has some omissions (and slight variations) in the previous sentence.
[10] The remainder of the sentence omitted in Cx., who has *staf and ladde.*

et baculum unum, quæ adhuc manent in patria[1] apud summum archiepiscopum. Eduxit ergo[2] Dominus Patricium in desertum locum, ubi fossam unam[3] rotundam intrinsecus obscuram ei ostendit dicens: Quod si veraciter quis pœnitens[4] per diem et noctem in illa fossa manserit, et fide constans per illam transierit, videbit tormenta malorum et gaudia beatorum.[5] Ad hæc Christo disparente, Patricius construxit ibidem ecclesiam, canonicos regulares instituens;[6] fossam autem[7] illam, quæ modo[8] in cœmeterio[9] est ad orientalem ecclesiæ frontem, muro circumcinxit; januam obseravit, ne quis temere sine licentia episcopi et loci prioris ingrederetur. Multi quippe tempore illius Patricii ingressi sunt et regressi, narrantes pœnas et gaudia quæ viderant, quæ et[10] literis ibidem demandantur.[11] Qua occasione multi tunc ad fidem convertebantur. Multi quoque intraverunt, qui nusquam redierunt. Sed et[12] diebus Stephani regis An-

---

[1] *patria illa*, A.
[2] *igitur*, A.
[3] *unam*] om. B.
[4] *pœnitens aliquis*, B.
[5] *bonorum*, Gale.
[6] *constituens*, B.
[7] *fossamque*, omitting *autem*, B.
[8] *modo*] om. B.
[9] *cimiterio*, MSS.
[10] *et quæ in*, A.
[11] *literis . . . demandantur*] Space left for the words in B.
[12] *et*] om. B.; *in*, Gale.

Trevisa.

þe gospel þat beeþ in þe contray in þe erchebisshops ward.[1] Þanne oure Lorde ladde Patrik in to a wilde place, and schewed hym þere a round pitte þat was derke wiþ ynne, and seide: ȝif a man were verray repentaunt and stable of byleue, and went in to þis pitte, and waked[2] þere inne a day and a nyȝt, he schulde see þe sorwes and þe peynes of euel men and þe ioye and þe blisse of goode men; þan Crist vanysched out of Patrik his siȝt.[3] And Patrik rered þere a chirche, and dede þere[4] chanouns reguler, and closed þe pitte aboute wiþ a wal; and[5] is now in the chirche ȝerde[6] riȝt at þe est ende of þe chirche, and is fast i-loke[7] wiþ a strong ȝate.[8] For no man schulde niseliche wende yn[9] wiþ oute leue of þe bisshop and[10] of þe priour of þe place. Meny men went yn þere and come[11] out aȝen in Patrik his tyme, and tolde of peynes and ioye þat þey hadde i-seie, and meruayles þat þey sey beeþ ȝit þere i-wrete.[12] And by cause þerof meny men torned and were conuerted to riȝt byleue. Also meny men wente yn, and come neuer aȝen. In kyng Steuene his tyme, kyng of

MS. Harl. 2261.

Of þe purgatory of Seynte Patryk.

Seynte Patrik was a chanon.

and a staffe, whiche remayne ȝitte in the cuntre with the archibischoppe. After that oure Lorde ledde furthe Seynte Patrike in to a deserte place, where he schewede to hym a lytulle rownde dyche, obscure and derke with ynne, seyenge that if a man, beenge truly penitente, abyde in hit by a day and a nyȝhte, he schalle see the tormentes of ylle men and also the ioies of blessede men. Then Criste euaneschede awey, and Seynte Patrike made a chirche there, ordeynenge in hit chanones reguler, compassenge abowte that dyche with a walle, whiche is now in the chirche yerde at the este parte of the chirche, and kepenge hit with grete diligence vnder a locke, leste eny man scholde entre in to hit in foly, withowte licence of the byschoppe and of the prior of that place. Mony men entrede in to þat place in the tyme of Seynte Patrik, whiche commenge ageyne tellede of the peynes and of the ioyes that thei hade seen; þro whiche thynge mony men were conuertede to the feithe of Criste: and mony men entrenge in to that place come neuer ageyne. But in the daies of Steven kynge of Englonde,

[1] So *a.*; *name*, MS.
[2] *walked*, *a.* and Cx.
[3] Cx. has a few trivial variations in the previous sentence, and also in the following.
[4] *and put therin*, Cx.
[5] The syntax requires *whiche*, or the addition of a nominative.
[6] *hiȝe*, *a.*
[7] *shytte*, Cx.
[8] *dore*, Cx.
[9] *goo in nycely*, Cx.
[10] *or*, Cx.
[11] *cam*, Cx., and so below.
[12] *sawe ben there yet wreton*, Cx.

gliæ quidam miles, nomine Owynus, intravit, et rediens mansit in negotiis monasterii Ludensis ordinis Cisterciensis quoad vixit,[1] narrans quæ viderat. Locus autem vocatur purgatorium Patricii, ecclesia vocatur[2] Reglis.[3] Nulli imponitur ut locum intret, sed potius in principio[4] sibi dissuadetur ingressus; quod si omnino intrare voluerit, accedet primo ad episcopum loci, qui primus[5] ingressum dissuadet, sed perseveranti in tali proposito literas tradit ut loci priorem adeat, qui similiter ingressum dissuadet, hortando ut aliam pœnitentiam assumat. Quod si perseverat, introducit eum in ecclesiam, ut quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus indulgeat, post quos hominem communione munitum perducit cum processione et letania[6] usque ad ostium purgatorii, ubi etiam iterum[7] dissuadet

---

[1] *quoad vixit*] om. B.; *quo adduxit*, A. (without sense); *quo advixit*, E.
[2] *vocatur*] om. A.B.
[3] *regularis*, Gale.
[4] *primo*, Gale.
[5] *primo*, A.
[6] *latania*, B. The form *letania* (for *litania*) is admitted by Du Cange, and so has been allowed to stand.
[7] *iterum*] om. B.

Engelond, a kny3t þat heet Owen went into Patryk his purgatorie, and come a3en, and dwelled al his lyf tyme afterward in þe nedes of þe abbay of Ludensis þat is of þe ordre of Cisterciens,[1] and tolde meny men of wondres þat he hadde i-seie in Patrykes purgatorie.[2] And the chirche hatte Reglis. No man is enioyned forto wende[3] in to þat purgatorie, bote i-counseilled wel faste þat þey[4] schulde not come þere; but 3if he wil nedes entre, he schal first be i-sent to þe bisshop of þe place, and he schalle counsaile hym for to leue; and 3if þe man is stable, and wil nede take þe wey, þe bisshop schal sende hym wiþ lettres to þe priour of þe place; and þe priour schal counseille hym to leue. And he wil[5] take þat wey, he schal be i-brou3t into þe chirche, and þere he schal be in prayers and in fastynge fiftene dayes.[6] [And after fiftene dayes][7] he schal be housled and i-lad to þe dore of purgatorie wiþ processioun and letanye; and þere[8] he schal

Trevisa.

a kny3hte, Owyne by name, entrede in to hit, whiche returnenge ageyne was made a monke of the ordre Cisterciens, in the monastery of Ludense, whiche taryede þer after alle the tyme of his lyfe, tellenge thynges that he hade seene: that place is callede the purgatory of Seynte Patrikke. Truly eny man is not movede to entre in to that place, but he hathe cownselle in the begynnenge that he scholde not entre in to hit. But and if a man wille entre into hit, in eny wyse he schalle goe firste to the bischoppe of that place, whiche 3iffethe cownselle to hym that he scholde not entre in to hit; but and if he remayne in that purpose, he takethe to hym a letter to goe to the prior of that place, whiche cownsellethe hym also that he schalle not entre in to hit, movenge hym to take other penaunce. And if the man be perseuerante in his purpose, and wylle to entre in to that place, the prior bryngethe hym in to the chirche that he may applye hym selfe in fastenges and preiers by xv. daies. After that the prior, causenge the man to receyve the blessede sacramente, 'bryngethe hym furthe with procession, the conuente syngenge the letany, vn to the durre of the purgatory, where the prior of that

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] So *a.*; *Cistirensis*, MS.; *Ciste*, Cx.

[2] Cx. has a few very slight variations.

[3] *goo*, Cx.

[4] *he*, Cx., which is better.

[5] *he wil*] om. *a.*

[6] The two previous sentences are almost entirely recast in Cx.

[7] Added from *a.* and Cx.

[8] *yet*, Cx., who has also slight variations elsewhere in the remainder of the chapter.

ingressum. Sed si perseverat, ostium ei [1] cum benedictione aperit, et post ingressum ostium consignat usque in diem alterum mane. Quo adveniente, prior,[2] si hominem regressum repererit, cum processione in ecclesiam deducit,[3] ubi aliis quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus intendit.

Cap. XXXVI.

De Sanctorum Præconiis.[4]

Notat hic Giraldus, quod [5] sicut istius nationis homines hac in vita [6] sunt præ aliis gentibus impatientes et præcipites ad vindictam, sic sancti hujus terræ [7] præ cæteris regionibus vindicis [8] animi esse noscuntur. Clerus hujus terræ castitate pollet, orationi vacat, sed et [9] abstinentiæ per diem artificialem [10] indulget, noctem tamen [11] assidua potatione polluit. Ita ut pro miraculo

---

[1] *ei*] om. B.
[2] *prior*] om. B.
[3] *reducit*, A.
[4] Title wanting in A.
[5] *Notat . . . quod*] om. C.D.
[6] *in hac vita*, B.
[7] *terræ istius*, C.D.
[8] *vindicis*] Space originally blank in B., filled in by a later hand.
[9] *et*] om. A.
[10] *naturalem*, C. (not D.)
[11] *autem*, B.

be counseilled to leue þat weye. Þan yf he is stedfast and stable, þe dore schal be i-opened, and he schal be i-blessed, [1] and he schal blesse hymself also, and goo yn a Goddes half,[2] and holde forþ his wey. Þan þe dore schal be faste i-loke[3] forto anoþer day.[4] Whan þe day is come, þe priour comeþ to þe dore erliche and by tyme, and openeþ the dore; and ȝif þe man is i-come, he ledeþ hym in to þe chirche wiþ processioun; and þere he schal be fiftene dayes in prayers and in fastinge. TREVISA.

De Præconiis Sanctorum.

Capitulum tricesimum sextum.

Here Girald makeþ mencioun,[5] þat as men of þis nacioun beeþ more angry þan oþer men and more hasty for to take wreche, while þey beeþ on lyue;[6] so seyntes and halowes of þis lond beeþ more wrecheful þan seyntes of oþer londes. Clerkes of þis lond beeþ chast, and biddeþ meny bedes,[7] and dooþ greet abstinence a day, and drynkeþ al nyȝt; so þat

[1] The clause following omitted in Cx.
[2] *on Goddes name*, Cx.
[3] *shette*, Cx.
[4] *til the next day*, Cx.
[5] *mynde*, Cx.
[6] *alyue*, z. A frequent variation.
[7] *sayen many prayers*, Cx.

place movethe hym ageyne that he scholde not entere in to hit. But and if the man be perseuerante in that purpose, he openethe the durre with a benediccion, makenge the durre sure after hym, goethe ageyne in to the place, vn tylle the morowe followenge, whiche commenge to that place with the conuente, and fyndenge the man commen ageyne, bryngethe hym in to the chyrche with procession, where he taryethe afterwarde by xv. dayes in fastenges and preiers. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the Preconyes of Holy Men and Seyntes of that Londe. Capitulum tricesimum sextum.

Giraldus rehersethe and seythe that like as men of that nacion be more impaciente afore other folke in this lyfe, and prompte to take vengeaunce, soe in like wise the seyntes of that cuntre be knowen to be of a moore vengeaunce then seyntes of other regiones. The clergy of that londe schynethe in chastite, ȝiffenge attendaunce to preier and to abstinence by the day artificialle, spendenge the nyȝhtes in surfettes and in ryette. Soe that hit may

ducatur;[1] quod[2] ubi vina dominantur, Venus non regnet.[3] Et sicut inter eos mali sunt pessimi, ita boni (quamvis pauci) sunt optimi. Prælati locorum in corripiendis[4] excessibus desides, contemplationi et otio, non prædicationi vacantes. Unde fit ut omnes sancti terræ istius[5] confessores sint,[6] et nullus martyr. Nec mirum, cum omnes pene hujus terræ prælati de monasteriis in clerum electi, quæ monachi sunt complent; quæ[7] clerici sunt vel prælati, negligunt. Unde, cum semel Cassiliensi episcopo objectum fuisset,[8] quomodo tot sancti possent esse in illa[9] terra ubi nullus martyr, ex quo tam feroces sunt subditi et desides prælati,[10] respondit ille[11] satis oblique: "Verum est," inquit, "quod gens nostra satis ferox[12] est, sed ad "seipsam; nunquam tamen in Dei ministros manum

---

[1] *dicatur*, A. (apparently) C.D.
[2] *ut*, B.
[3] *regnat*, B.
[4] *corrigendis*, C.D.
[5] *illius*, B.; *hujus*, C.D.
[6] *sunt*, B.D.
[7] *vero* added in C.D.
[8] *esset objectum*, B.
[9] *illa*] om. C.D.
[10] *ex . . . prælati*] et tam torpentes prælati circa curam subditorum fuissent, C.D.
[11] *ille*] om. C.D.
[12] *fera*, C.D.

it is acounted for a myracle þat leccherie reigneþ nouȝt þere, as wyn reigneþ. And as moche schrewes among hem beeþ of alle schrewes worste,[1] so good men among hem, (þeiȝ þere beeþ[2] but fewe,) beeþ goode at þe best. Prelates of þat contray beeþ wel[3] slowe in correccioun of trespas, and besy in contemplacioun, and nowt[4] of[5] prechynge of Goddes word. Þerfore it is þat alle þe seyntes of þat lond beeþ confessoures, and non martir among hem; and no wonder, for wel nyh[6] alle þe prelates of þat contrey beeþ i-chose out of abbayes in to þe clergie, and dooþ as monkes schulde. What clerkes and prelates schulde doo is to hem vnknowe; þerfore whan it was[7] i-putte aȝenst þe bisshop of Casille, how it myȝte be þat so meny seyntes beeþ in Irlond and neuere a martir among ham,[8] siþþe[9] þat þe men beeþ so schrewed and so angry, and þe prelates so recheles and so slowh[10] in correccioun of trespas, þe bisshop answerde frowardliche[11] i-now, and seide: "Oure men beeþ "schrewed and angry inow to[12] hem self, but in Goddes ser- TREVISA.

---

be seide as a myracle lecchery not to reigne in those places where wynes be moche vsede. And lyke as ylle men amonge theyme be moste wickede, soe in lyke wyse goode men amonge theyme be moste holy, thawȝhe þer be but fewe goode men. The prelates of places in that cuntre be slawthefulle to do correccion for excesses, ȝiffenge attendaunce to ydlenesse, and not to predicaciones. Where of hit is causede that alle the seyntes of that cuntre be confessores, and noo martir. But meruayle defendethe lytelle þer of; for allemoste alle men exaltede in to grete dignites there be taken from monasteryes, whiche fullefille raþer the office of a clerke then the office of a prelate. Wherefore an obieccion was made in a tyme to the bischoppe Cassielense, how so mony seyntes myȝhte be in that londe, and alle confessores and noo martir, sythe the subiectes of that londe be so cruelle, and prelates there be soe slawe in correccion. That byschoppe answerede and seide, "Trawthe "is that the peple of that cuntre be cruelle amonge theyme "selfe, but not to the seruauntes of God, sythe thei MS. HARL. 2261. f. 54. b.

---

[1] *And they that ben euyl of them ben worst of all other, so, &c.*, Cx.
[2] *be*, *a.*, Cx. (the latter has other slight variations.)
[3] *ful*, Cx.
[4] *nouȝt*, *a.*
[5] *in*, *a.*
[6] *wel nyh*] om. Cx.
[7] *was*] So *a.* and Cx.; *is*, MS.
[8] MS. and *a.* (not Cx.) badly add *and no wonder.*
[9] *seþ*, *a.*
[10] *slowe*, *a.*
[11] So *a.* and Cx. (*frowardly*); *liche*, MS.
[12] So Cx.; *and to*, MS. and *a.*

" mittere voluit,[1] cum eos summe colat;[2] verum[3] " modo[4] venit in hanc terram gens Angligena,[5] quæ " martyres facere et[6] novit et consuevit." *Ranulphus.* Hoc autem dixerat episcopus ille, quia tunc temporis venerat Rex Henricus Secundus ad terram illam recenter post martyrizationem Beati Thomæ Cantuariensis. *Giraldus.*[7] In hac etiam terra, sicut[8] in Wallia et in Scotia, sunt campanæ,[9] baculi recurvi,[10] et alia hujusmodi pro reliquiis in magna veneratione[11] habita, ita ut sacramenta super hæc longe magis quam super evangelia præstare vereantur,[12] inter quæ præcipuus videtur baculus Jesu[13] apud Dublinniam; per quem, ut aiunt, [14] Patricius[15] primus[16] vermes ejecit.[17] *Augustinus*[18] *de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo.* Si quæratur, quomodo varia genera animalium, quæ ex commixtione procreantur, etiam post diluvium in insulis esse potuerunt, creditur,[19] aut ad insulas transisse natando, sed tunc ad proximas;[20]

---

[1] *voluerunt*, C.D.
[2] So B.; *coluit*, A.; *colant*, E. Transposed in C.D.
[3] *sed*, B.
[4] *nunc in hoc regnum venit*, C.D.
[5] *Anglicana*, A.B., Gale.
[6] *et*] om. B.
[7] *Ranulphus. . . . Giraldus*] om. C.D.
[8] *et* added in C.D.
[9] *et* added in C.D.
[10] *libri*, B.
[11] *in magna veneratione*] om. C.D.
[12] *revereantur*, Gale.
[13] *habitus*, B.
[14] *Sanctus* added in C.D.
[15] *Patricius*] om. B.
[16] *primus*] om. C.D.
[17] *expulit*, B.; *de terra venenosos*, added in C.D.
[18] *Augustinus . . . . viventem* (end of cap.)] om. C.D.
[19] *credere*, B.
[20] *sed . . . proximas*] om. B.

" uauntes þey leye [1] neuere no [2] hond, but þey dooþ hem greet " reuerence and worschippe ; but Englische men comeþ in to " þis lond, þat konneþ make martires and were i-woned to vse " þat craft." [3] Þe bisshop seide so, bycause þat kyng Henry [4] þe secounde was þoo [5] i-come in to Irlond freschliche after þe martirdom of Seint Thomas of Caunturbury. *Giraldus.* In þis lond, in Wales, and in Scotlond, bee billes [6] and staues wiþ croked hedes, and oþere such þinges for relikes, in grete reuerence and worschippe ; so þat men of þis lond dredeþ more forto swere [7] vppon eny of þilke belles and gold battes [8] þan vppon þe gospel. Þe chief of alle suche relikes is i-holde [9] Iesus his staf [þat is at Develynge ; wiþ þe whiche staf] [10] þey seiþ þat þe first Patrik droof þe wormes out of Irlond. *Augustinus de Ciuitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulo septimo.* ȝif me axeþ, how it may be þat dyuerse manere bestes and of dyuerse kynde, þat beeþ kyndeliche i-gete by twene male and female, come and beeþ in ilondes after Noes flood, me troweþ [11] þat suche bestes swam in to ilondes aboute, and firste to þe nexte, TREVISA.

" worschippe and luffe theyme moste: but now the peple of " Englonde is comen in to oure cuntre, whiche haue hade " knowlege and exercise to make martires." Þ. That byschoppe seyde in that wyse, for kynge Henry the secunde was commen that tyme in to the costes of Yrlonde newely after the martirizacion of Seynte Thomas of Canterbery. *Giraldus.* Belles and crokede staves, and suche other thynges, be hade in that londe in grete veneracion, as thei vse in Wales and in Scotlande, in so moche that thei drede more to swere by theym then to swere on the masse booke. Amonge whom the staffe of Ihesus is as a thynge principalle, beenge at Dublynne, by whom thei say Seynte Paterike the firste to haue expellede serpentes and wormes owte from that londe with that staffe. *Aug. de Civ., libro* 16, *ca°.* 7. And if hit be inquirede how diuerse kyndes of bestes whiche be procreate of commixtion myȝhte be in yles after the grete floode of Noe, hit is to be ȝiffen to credence that auther thei come thider by swymmenge, MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *leieþ, a.*
[2] *no*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[3] A few trifling variations in Cx.
[4] *Harry,* Cx.
[5] *þoyȝ i-come, a.* ; *tho newe comen,* Cx.
[6] *beeþ bellis, a.*
[7] *swerie, a.*
[8] *staues,* Cx.
[9] *in hold,* MS. ; *y holde,* Cx.
[10] Words in brackets added from *a.* and Cx.
[11] So MS. and *a.*; *men supposen,* Cx.

aut per homines navigantes studio venandi adductas; aut Dei jussu et opere angelorum allata; aut ex terra exorta secundum primam originem, quando Deus dixerat: **Producat** terra animam viventem.

Cap. XXXVII.

De Albania sive[1] *Scotia.*[2]

Vulgatum est quod[3] Scotia, prout hodie nuncupatur, promunctorium et[4] borealis pars Britanniæ majoris, [5]marinis brachiis ab ea separata versus austrum;[6] in reliquis lateribus[7] undique cincta[8] mari. Hæc[9] quondam vocabatur Albania ab Albanacto, regis[10] Bruti filio, eam primum[11] inhabitante; sive ab Albania provincia, quæ est pars Scythiæ, vicina Amazonibus; unde et Scoti quasi Sciti a Scythia,[12]

---

[1] *Albania sive*] om. A.C.D.
[2] *De Insula Scotia*, B.
[3] *Vulgatum est quod*] om. C.D.
[4] *quod . . . et*] Space left in B.
[5] *aqua*] added in C.D.
[6] *in australi parte separatur*, C.D.
[7] *partibus*, C.D.
[8] *clausa*, C.D.
[9] *Hæc*] om. C.D.; *Hoc*, E.
[10] *Regis*] om. C.D.
[11] *primo*, B.C.D.
[12] *Scicia*, AB.; *Sithia*, C.D.; *Shicia*, E. Similar barbarisms in the MSS. of the versions.

and so forþ in to opere; opere[1] men seillinge into opere londes[2] brouȝte wiþ hem suche bestes for loue of huntinge; oþer aungelles at God Almyȝties heste[3] brouȝte suche bestes in to ilondes aboute; oþer þe erþe brouȝt hem forþ ferst, and fulfilled þoo Goddes heste, þat heet[4] þe erþe brynge[5] forþ gras and quyk bestes. TREVISA.

De Scotia.

Capitulum tricesimum septimum.

Hit is comoun[6] sawe þat [þe][7] contray þat now hatte Scotlond is an out strecching, and is þe[8] norþ partie of þe more Bretayne, and is departed in þe south side from Bretayne wiþ armes of þe see, and in þe oþer sides al aboute byclipped wiþ þe see. Þis lond heet somtyme Albania, and had[9] þat name of Albanactus, þat was kyng Brutis[10] sone, (for Albanactus woned first þerynne,) or of[11] þe prouince Albania, þat is a contray of Scythia and nyȝ to Amazonia; þerfore Scottes beeþ i-cleped as it were Scites, for he[12]

---

other thei were brouȝhte thyder for cause of disporte by men saylenge in schippes, other by the precepte of Allemyȝhty God, other elles by the helpe of angelles, or elles thei come of the erthe after the firste originalle, when God seyde commandenge the erthe to brynge furthe euery thynge hauenge the spirite of lyfe. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of that Londe callede Scottelande. Capitulum tricesimum septimum.

Hit is made commune that the londe whiche is callede nowe Scotlande is the northe parte of the moore Briteyne, departede from hit by armes of the see towarde the sowthe, in other partes compassede with the see. That londe was callede somme tyme Albania, of Albanactus, the son of Brute, the kynge inhabitenge hit firste; other elles of Albannia, whiche is a parte of a londe callede Scythia, nye to þe Amazones. Wherefore Scoti, that be callede Scottes, be seide to take theire begynnenge of

---

[1] *or els*, Cx.
[2] *in to ylondes*, Cx.
[3] *comaundement*, Cx., and so below.
[4] *commaunded*, Cx.
[5] *to brynge*, Cx.
[6] *a comyn*, Cx.
[7] Added from α. and Cx.
[8] *and is þe*] of the, Cx. (his own alteration.)
[9] *hath*, Cx.
[10] *Brutus*, Cx.
[11] So Cx.; *þerof*, MS. and α.
[12] So MS. and α.; *they*, Cx. (in the same sense.)

originem duxerunt.[1] Postmodum dicta est Pictavia a[2] Pictis ibidem regnantibus per spatium mille septuaginta annorum, vel secundum quosdam[3] per[4] mille trecentos sexaginta annos; et[5] tandem dicta est Hibernia. *Giraldus in Topographia.*[6] Tum propter affinitatem contractam cum Hiberniensibus, de quibus uxores acceperant,[7] quod tam cultu quam lingua, tam[8] armis quam moribus patenter ostenditur,[9] tum propter habitationem[10] Hiberniensium. *Beda, libro primo.* Qui Hibernienses,[11] duce Reuda[12] de Hibernia, quæ proprie Scotorum patria est, progressi,[13] ferro vel amicitia juxta Pictos[14] sedes sibi[15] ad septentrionalem partem[16] statuerunt.[17] *Giraldus.* Nunc autem corrupte vocatur Scotia a Scotis de Hibernia venientibus et in ea regnantibus per spatium trecentorum quindecim annorum, usque scilicet[18] ad regnum Willelmi[19] Rufi fratris Malcolmi.[20] *Ranulphus.* Quod autem hæc Scotia sæpius vocetur Hibernia patet per Bedam, libro secundo,[21] capitulo quarto,[22] ubi dicit[23] sic:[24] Laurentius archi-

---

[1] *traxerunt*, A.
[2] *Picto sive a*, added in C. (not D.)
[3] *mille . . . quosdam*] om. B.
[4] *per* added from C.D.
[5] *et*] om. C.D.
[6] *in Topographia*] om. B.
[7] *acceperunt*, C.D.
[8] *quam*, A.
[9] So C.D.; *ostendit*, A.E., Gale.
[10] *inhabitationem*, B.C.D.
[11] *Hibernienses*] om. C.D.
[12] *Reuda*] Space in B.; *Rheuda*, D.
[13] *progressus*, C. (not D.)
[14] *juxta Pictos*] om E.
[15] *quas* added in C.D.
[16] *Pictorum hactenus habent*, C.D.
[17] B. *Sicut infra ultimo capitulo de Britannia plenius dicetur*, added in C.D.
[18] *scilicet*] om. C.D.
[19] *Wiltī* or *Willī*, MSS.; *Wilhelmi*, Gale. His coins have, in general, *Willelmus*, (mostly written *Pillelmus*); his great seal has *Wilielmus*. (Ruding, i. 162. Third ed.) Higden, however, should have written *Leonis* for *Rufi*.
[20] *Malcolini*, B., Gale.
[21] *j.*, B.C.D., wrongly.
[22] 4, C.D., correctly; x., A.B.E.
[23] *ait*, C.D.
[24] *sic*] om. C.D.

com out of Scythia. Afterward þat lond heet[1] Pictauia ; for þe Pictes reignede þerynne a þousand ȝere, þre score, and ten; oþer, as som men telleþ, a þowsand ȝere, þre hundred, and sixty ; and at þe laste heet[1] Hibernia, as Irlond heet.[2] *Giraldus in Topographia.*[3] For meny skiles oon skile is for affinite and alye, þat was by twene hem and Irische men; for þey toke wyfes of Irlond, and þat is opounliche i-sene in her byleue, in cloþinges, in langage, in[4] speche, in wepene, and in maneres. A noþer skile is for Irische men woned þere somtyme. *Beda, libro primo.* Out of Irlond, þat is þe propre contray of Scottes, come Irische men with here duk þat heet Reuda,[5] and wiþ loue oþer wiþ strengþe made hem cheef cees and citees besides þe Pictes in þe norþside. *Giraldus.* Now þe lond is schortliche i-cleped Scotlond of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede þere inne þre hondred ȝere and fiftene anoon to Reed[6] William his tyme, þat was Malcolms[7] broþer. R. Meny euidencis we haueþ þat þis Scotlond is ofte i-cleped and hatte Hibernia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. Þerfore[8] Beda, libro secundo, capitulo decimo, seiþ þat Laurence, Trevisa.

Scythia. That londe was callede afterwarde Pictauia, of Pictes reignenge there by the space of a m. lx. and x. yere, and after somme men a m. iij^{c}. yere and iij^{xx}., whiche was clepede Hibernia, and Yrlonde afterwarde. *Gir. in top.* Whiche thynge is schewede amonge theyme as welle in armes as in maneres, and also by theire langage, and what for the affinite contracte betwene men of Yrlonde and theyme, of whom the Scottes toke theire wyfes, and also for the inhabitacion of men of Yrlonde dwellenge in hit. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche men of Yrlonde goenge furthe with Reuda the gouernoure of theyme, from partes nye to Scotlande, takenge to theyme a place nye to the Pictes, taryede in the northe partes to theyme. *Giraldus.* That londe is callede now Scotlande, of Scottes commenge from Yrlonde, reignenge in hit by iij^{c}. and xv. yere vn to the reigne of William Rufus,[9] brother to Macolmus. R. That theke[10] Scotlande be spoken of ofte tymes in the name of Yrlonde, hit is schewede by Bede in his secunde boke, the x^{the} chapitre, when he seithe that the arche- MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *het, a.* (twice.)
[2] *hatte, a.*
[3] So *a.* and Cx. ; *Beda,* MS.
[4] *and, a.*
[5] *Renda,* Cx. The MSS. both of the text and versions equally resemble this reading; but *Reuda* is doubtless correct. See Bede, lib. 1. c. 1. and Smith's note.
[6] *the rede,* Cx.
[7] *Malcolins,* MS.
[8] Sentence varied in Cx.
[9] *Ruphus,* Harl. MS.
[10] So Harl. MS.

episcopus Dorobernensis[1] Scotorum populis, qui Hiberniam[2] insulam Britanniæ proximam incolunt, pastoralem curam impendebat. Item Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo septimo: Clades mortalitatis Hiberniam insulam pari clade premebat.[3] Item, libro tertio, capitulo secundo: Porro gens Scotorum, quæ[4] in australibus Hiberniæ partibus morabantur. Item[5] libro quarto, capitulo tertio: Ubi dicunt[6] Ceddam adolescentem didicisse normam monasticam[7] in Hibernia. Item libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo secundo: Rex Northumbrorum Egfredus[8] vastavit Hiberniam.[9] Item libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo: Plurima pars Scotorum in Hibernia. Et ibi in[10] eodem capitulo vocat Hiberniam proprie dictam illam[11] insulam in occidente,[12] quæ centum milliaribus ab omni Britannia[13] per mare separatur, et Scotiam vocat illam partem quæ nunc Scotia dicitur, ubi dicit[14] quod Adamnan,[15] abbas insulæ Hii,[16] navigavit Hiberniam,[17] ut doceret[18] Hibernicos legitimum pascha, ac tandem Scotiam rediit. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.*[19] Hujus Scotiæ incolæ dicuntur Scoti propria lingua, seu Picti[20] a picto corpore, quasi scissi,[21] eo quod aculeis ferreis cum atramento variarum figurarum stigmate antiquitus notabantur.[22] *Herodotus.*[23] Scoti sunt animo[24] leves, barbari satis et silvestres,

[1] *Dorobernicæ*, Gale; *Dorobernensis archiepiscopus*, B.
[2] *Hiberniæ*, B., Gale.
[3] *Item . . . premebat*] om. B.
[4] *qui*, B.
[5] *Idem*, D.
[6] *dicit*, B.
[7] *monachicam*, B., Gale.
[8] *Egifridus*, A.; *Elfridus*, D.
[9] *morabantur. . .Hiberniam*] om. E.
[10] *ibi in*] itidem, C.; ibidem, D.
[11] *illam scilicet*, D.
[12] *in occidente*] om. C.D.
[13] *Britanniæ latere*, C. (not D.)
[14] *dicitur*, D.
[15] *Aminanus*, B.; *Aidaman*, D.
[16] *insulæ Hii*] So E.D.G. (first hand); huc, C.; hujus, A.B.G. (second hand), Gale, and the versions.
[17] *Hiberniam*] om. C.D.; *ibidem*, B.; *navigaret in Hiberniam*, A.
[18] *ubi docuit*, C.D.
[19] 9, C.D., correctly. See lib. ix. c. 2, § 103. Reference transposed in A.B. to *quasi*, badly.
[20] *seu Picti*] om. C.D.
[21] *scisi*, D.; *cisi*, A.E.; *Schyti*, Gale; *Schiti*, G.
[22] *antiquitus* (interlineated) *vocabantur*, A.
[23] *Erodocius*, B. The rest *Erodotus*, and so the versions.
[24] *Scoti sunt animo*] Animo quidem, C.D.

archebisshop of Donbarre,[1] was archebisshop of Scottes, þat woned in an ilond þat hatte Hibernia and is next to Bretayne. Also Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo septimo, seiþ: Pestilens of moreyn bare doun Hibernia; also, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, seiþ þat þe Scottes, þat wonede in þe souþ side of Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo tertio, he seiþ þat Chadde was a ȝongelyng, and lerned the rule of monkes in Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo secundo, Egifridus,[2] kyng of Northumberlond, destroyed Hibernia; also, libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo: Þe moste deel of Scottes in Hibernia. And in þe same chapitre he clepeþ Hibernia propurliche i-nempned, þat west ilond þat is an hundred myle from euery Britayne, and departed wiþ þe see bitwene; and clepeþ Hibernia þat contre, þat now hatte Scotlond. Þere he telleþ, þat Adamnan, abbot of þis ilond, seillede to Hibernia for to teche Irische men þe laweful Esterday, and at þe laste com hoom[3] aȝen in to Scotlond. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro quartodecimo.* Men of þis Scotlond hatte Scottes in hir owne langage, and Pictes also; for somtyme here body was i-peynt in þis manere. Þey wolde somtyme wiþ scharpe egged tool picche[4] and kerue here owne bodies, and make þeron dyuers figures and schappes, and peynte hym[5] wiþ ynke oþer wiþ oþir peynture and[6] colour. And for[7] þey were so i-peynt, þey were icleped Picti, þat is *i-peynt.* *Herodotus.*[8] Scottes beeþ lyȝt of herte, strange and wylde[9] i-now, but by mellynge[10] of

Trevisa.

bischoppe Dorobernense ȝafe cure pastoralle to the peple of Scottes, inhabitenge an yle nye to Briteyne, callede Yrlonde. Also in the thrydde booke, the secunde chapitre, the peple of Scottes, whiche inhabite and dwelle in the sowthe partes of Yrlonde. Also hit is seide in the v^the^ booke, the xv^the^ chapitre, that a grete parte of Scottes was in Irlonde, callenge in the same chapitre Yrlonde proprely that yle in the weste whiche is separate from alle Bryteyne by the see by a c. myles, and Scottelande, that parte whiche is callede now Scottelande, where he seithe that Amna an abbotte of that yle sailede to Yrlonde that he myȝhte teche men of that cuntre to knowe the lawefulle tyme of Ester, after that returnenge at the laste to Scottelande. *Herodotus.* Scottes be liȝhte in sawle, cruelle and wylde; but now thei be amendede thro

MS. Harl. 2261. f. 55. b.

[1] *Dunbar*, Cx. Trevisa should have written *Canterbury.*
[2] *Egfridus*, Cx.
[3] *hoom*] om. Cx., with a few other trivial variations.
[4] *prycke*, Cx.
[5] *or*, Cx.
[6] *hem*, *a.*
[7] *for*] by cause, Cx.
[8] *Giraldus*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)
[9] So Cx.; *mylde*, MS., *a.*
[10] *medlynge*, Cx.

sed admixtione cum Anglis[1] in parte emendantur. In hostes sævi,[2] servitutem summe[3] detestantur. In lecto mori reputant[4] segnitiem,[5] in campo interfici arbitrantur gloriam. Parci victu, diutius famem sustinent. Raro ante solis[6] occasum comedunt; carnibus, lacticiniis,[7] piscibus, et fructibus magis quam pane vescuntur. Et[8] cum sint elegantis formæ satis tamen ex proprio habitu deformantur. Paternos ritus commendant, alienos aspernantur. Terra eorum satis fertilis in pascuis, hortis, et agris. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo octavodecimo.*[9] Scotorum principes, sicut Hispaniæ reges,[10] nec coronari solent[11] nec ungi.[12] In hac terra Scotiæ memoria beati Andreæ apostoli quamplurimum celebratur; nam[13] Beatus Andreas,[14] qui sorte prædicationis[15] aquilonales[16] mundi partes, Scythas[17] scilicet et Pictavos, suscepit convertendos, tandem apud Patras civitatem Achaiæ[18] in Græcia occubuit, ubi custodita[19] sunt ossa ejus usque

---

[1] *Agnis*, C. (not D.)
[2] *sed* added in B.; *sed cum*, A.
[3] *summe*] om. C.D.
[4] *deputant*, D.
[5] *vilissimum*, B.
[6] *solis*] om. B.
[7] *et* added in A.C.
[8] *Et . . . octavo decimo*] om. C.D.
[9] *xiiij.*, E.
[10] *sicut Hispaniæ principes dicuntur reges*, D.
[11] *consueverunt*, C.D.
[12] *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo* 18°, added in C. Reference omitted in D.
[13] *nam*] om. C.D.
[14] *Apostolus* added in C.D.
[15] *prædicandi*, C.D.
[16] *aquilonares*, B.D.
[17] *Scitas*, A.B.; *Scithas*, C.; *Sithas*, D.; *Shites*, E.
[18] *Achaiæ*] om. C.D.
[19] *condita*, B.

Englisch men þey beeþ moche amended; þey beeþ cruel vppon hir enemyes, and hateþ bondage most of eny þing, and holdeþ a foule slewþe,[1] ȝif a man deieþ in his bed; and grete worschepe, ȝif he deie[2] in þe feeld. Þey beeþ litel of mete, and mowe faste longe, and eteþ wel seelde while[3] þe sonne is vppe, and eteþ flesche, fysshe,[4] mylk, and fruyt more þan brede. And þey [he] be[5] faire of schap, þey beeþ defouled and i-made vnsemelich i-now wiþ here owne cloþinge. Þey[6] preiseþ faste þe vsage of þeyre[7] owne forme fadres[8] and despiseþ oþer mens[9] doynge. Here lond is fruytful i-now in pasture, gardynes, and feeldes. *Giraldus, dist. prima,*[10] *capitulo octavodecimo.* Þe princes of Scottes, as þe kynges of Spayne, beeþ nouȝt i-woned to be annoynt noþer[11] i-crowned. In þis Scotlond is solempne and grete mynde of Seynt Andrew þe apostel; for Seint Andrewe hadde þe norþ contrayes of þe worlde, Scites and Pictes, to his lot, for to preche and conuerte þe peple to Cristes byleue; and was at þe laste i-martired in Achaie[12] in Grecia in a citee þat hatte Patras, and his bones were i-kept two hondred ȝere, þre skore, and twelue

TREVISA.

the admixtion of Englische men. Thei be cruelle ageyne theire enmyes, hatenge gretely seruitute, accomptenge a slawe man that wolde dye in bedde, thenkenge hit a glory to dye in batelle. Skarse peple in meite and drynke, suffrenge hungre a longe tyme. Thei eite selde vn til after the goenge downe of the son; fedde more with flesche, fisches, white meite, and with frutes, then with brede. And sythe thei be semely in person, thai be deformede ynowe in theire propre habite, commendenge the consuetudes of that cuntre, and of theire predecessores, despisenge the rytes of other peple. That londe is plentuous ynowe in pastures, in gardynes, and in feldes. *Giraldus, dist. prima,*[10] *capitulo octavodecimo.* The princes of Scottes be not vsede to be anoynted, lyke to the kynges of Speyne. In that londe the memory of Seynte Andrewe thapostole is haloede gretely, and hade in veneracion; for blessede Andrew thapostole, whiche was sende by chaunce to preche to the men of the northe partes of the worlde, as to men of Scythia and to Pictes, diede at a cite callede Patras in the londe of Grece, where his boones restede vn

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *sleuþe, a.*; *slouthe,* Cx.
[2] *deieþ, a.*
[3] *whan,* Cx.
[4] *fysshe*] Added from Cx.
[5] *þeiȝ he be, a.*; *though they,* Cx. *þey be,* MS.
[6] *þe, a.*
[7] *here, a.*
[8] *for faders,* Cx. (as usual.)
[9] So *a.*; *men,* MS.; *mennes,* Cx.
[10] *De p^m.*, MS.; *de p.*, Cx.; Harl. MS.
[11] *enioynted* (sic) *nother,* Cx.
[12] *Achaia, a.*, Cx.

ad tempora Constantini Magni spatio ducentorum septuaginta duorum annorum; et tunc[1] translata sunt Constantinopolim, et[2] recondita usque ad tempora[3] Theodosii[4] spatio centum decem[5] annorum. Tunc rex Pictorum in Scotia Ungust[6] magnam partem Britanniæ devastans,[7] cum apud campum Merc[8] a numeroso[9] exercitu Britonum circumdaretur, audivit subito Beatum Andream sic eum alloquentem: "Ungus, "Ungus,[10] audi me apostolum Christi auxilium tibi pro- "mittentem; cum hostes tuos, me juvante,[11] deviceris, "dabis tertiam[12] partem hæreditatis tuæ Deo in elee- "mosynam et in honorem Beati Andreæ." Et sic tertia die, signo crucis exercitum ejus præcedente, victor effectus est. Sic quoque patriam[13] reversus hæreditatem suam[14] divisit. Et cum incertum haberet quam urbem beato Andreæ assignaret,[15] per triduum cum

---

[1] *et tunc*] inde, C.D.

[2] *et*, placed before *Constantinopolim* in C.D.

[3] *tempus*, C.D.

[4] *imperatoris* added in A.B.C.D., Gale.

[5] 100, C.D.

[6] *Unguus*, B.

[7] *vastans*, Gale.

[8] *Cassummert*, B.

[9] *numeroso*] universo, B.

[10] *Unguste, Unguste*, C.D.

[11] *me juvante*] om. C.D.

[12] *decimam*, C.D. This reading seems to be correct. See below.

[13] *Sic quoque patriam*] patriamque, C.; est effectus. Patriam, D.

[14] *suam*] om. C.D.

[15] *ev* added in C.D.

anon to þe Grete Constantinus tyme[1] and þan þey were translated in to Constantinople,[2] and i-kepte [there][3] an hondred ȝere and ten anon to Theodosius þe emperours tyme. Þanne Vngust, kyng of Pictes, in Scotlond, destroyed a greet partie of Britayne, and was[4] bysette wiþ a grete oost of Bretouns in a felde þat hatte Merk, and herde Seynt Andrew speke to hym in þis manere: "Vngus, "Vngus, here þou me Cristes apostle, I behote[5] þe help "and socour; whan þou hast ouercome þyn enemyes by "myn help, þow schalt ȝeue þe þridde dele of þyn heritage "in[6] almes to God Almyȝhty and in worschippe of Seint "Andrew." And þe signe of þe crosse[7] wente to fore his oost, and þe þridde day he hadde þe victorie, and so torned home aȝen and deled his heritage as he was i-hote.[8] And, for he was vncerteyn what citee he schulde dele for Seynt Andrewe; he fasted þre dayes boþe he and al[9] his

Trevisa.

to the tyme of Grete Constantine, by the space of ijc. lx. and vii. yere. The boones of the apostle Seynte Andrew were translate that tyme vn to the cite off Constantinople, restenge there vn to the tyme of Theodosius emperoure by the space of a c. and x. yere. Then Vnguste, the kynge of Pictes in Scottelande, wastenge a grete parte of Briteyne, was compassede abowte with a innumerable hoste of Briteynes at a felde callede Merc. Herenge also a voice seyenge to hym, "Vngus, Vngus, here me "thapostole of Criste promisenge helpe to the; for thou "schalle haue the victory ageyne thyne enmyes by my "helpe, if thou wille ȝiffe the thrydde parte of thy "lyvelode to God in to almes and in the worschippe of "blessede Andrewe his apostole." And in the thrydde day folowenge, Vngus, the kynge of the Pictes, hade victory of the Briteynes, enmyes to hym, the signe of the crosse goenge before his hoste. This kynge Vngus returnenge to his cuntre after that victory, diuidede his lyvelode in to thre partes, beynge not in certitude to what cite he scholde assigne that lyvelode in to the worschippe of Seynte Andrewe thapostle. Wherefore Vngus, that kynge, with alle his peple, faste by the space of thre daies,

MS. Harl. 2261.

[1] *vnto Constantinus themperours tyme*, Cx.
[2] *Constantyne noble*, MS., *a.*; *Constantinoble*, Cx.
[3] Added from Cx.
[4] *wæst*, *a.*
[5] *promise*, Cx.
[6] So *a.* and Cx.; *I*, MS.
[7] *croys*, *a.*
[8] *boden*, Cx., who has also some slight variations.
[9] *al*] om. *a.*

populo suo [1] jejunavit,[2] orans Beatum Andream ut super hoc certificaretur.[3] Et ecce unus de custodientibus corpus Beati [4] Andreæ apud Constantinopolim admonitus est [5] in somnis, ut exiret de terra illa, et locum adiret quo angelus [6] eum duceret; qui tali ducatu venit [7] in Scotiam ad verticem montis Rigmund [8] cum septem comitibus suis. Eademque [9] hora lux cœlica circumfulsit regem Pictorum venientem cum exercitu ad locum qui dicitur Carcenan, ubi statim plurimi sanabantur infirmi. Ibique [10] occurrebat regi Regulus monachus [11] Constantinopolitanus cum reliquiis Beati [12] Andreæ. In cujus honore fundata est [13] ibi ecclesia,[14] quæ caput est omnium ecclesiarum in terra Pictorum. Hunc locum frequentant peregrini omnium [15] terrarum, in quo loco [16] Regulus monachus factus est [17] primus abbas, qui [18] monachos ibidem [19] congregavit, ac totam

---

[1] *suo*] om. C.D.
[2] *jejunante*, C.D.
[3] The last clause omitted in C.D.
[4] *Sancti*, B.
[5] *est*] om. E.
[6] *præmiis* added in D.
[7] *qui venit prospere*, D.
[8] *Rigmond*, A.; *Rigmundi*, D.
[9] *Eadem quoque*, B.
[10] *Ibi quoque*, A.
[11] *monachus*] om. E.
[12] *Sancti*, B., Gale.
[13] *fundavit*, B.
[14] *ecclesiam*, B.
[15] *cunctarum*, D.
[16] *in quo loco*] ibi primus, C.D.
[17] *fuit*, C.D.
[18] *et*, C.D.
[19] *ibidem*] om. C.D.

meyny,[1] and prayed[2] Andrewe þat he wolde schewe what place he wolde chese. And, loo,[3] oon of þe wardeynes þat kepte þe body of Seint Andrewe in Constantinople[4] was i-warned in his sweuene,[5] þat he schulde wende out of þat lond in to a stede whider an aungel hym wolde lede, and by suche ledynge[6] he com in to Scotlond wiþ seuene felawes to þe cop[7] of þe hille þat hat Ragmund.[8] Þe same oure liȝt of heuene byschon and byclipped þe kyng of Pictes, þat was comyng wiþ his oost to a place þat hatte Carcenan. Þere were anon i-heled meny seke men; þere mette wiþ the kyng Regulus þe monk of Constantinople wiþ þe relikes of Seynt Andrewe. [There is founded a chirche in worship of Seynt Andrew,][9] þat is hede of alle chirches in þe lond of Pictes, þat is Scotlond. To þis chirche comeþ pilgrymes oute of alle londes; þere was Regulus first abbot, and gadered monkes. And so al þe

TREVISA.

---

preyenge to the holy apostole of Godde that thei myȝhte be certifiede in that thynge. And anoon oon of the kepers of the blessede body of Seynte Andrewe was moneschede in his slepe that he scholde goe furthe from that londe vn to the place wheder an angelle scholde lede hym, whiche come thro the ledenge of an angelle in to Scotlonde, vn to the toppe of an hille callede Ragmunde with his vij. felawes. And in that howre a heuynly lyȝhte compassede abowte Vngus, the kynge of Pictes, commenge with an hoste to that place whiche is callede Carcenan, where mony seke men were healede anoon. And Regulus, a monke off Constantinople, mette that kynge þer with the relikkes of Seynte Andrewe, in to the worschippe of whom a chirche was edifiede, whiche is the principalle chirche of alle the chirches in the londe of the Pictes. Whiche place pilgremes of alle londes visitte. In whiche place Regulus the monke of Constantinople was made the firste abbotte, whiche gedrede monkes there, distributenge thro the monastery the holle tythe and grownde whom the kynge

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *meyny*] om. *a.*; *he and his men*, Cx.

[2] *Seynt* added in *a.*

[3] *loo*] om. Cx.

[4] *Constantyn noble*, MS. and *a.*; *Constantynoble*, Cx., and similarly below.

[5] *swefene*, *a.*

[6] *that he shold go in to a place whyder an angle* (sic) *wolde lede him, and so he cam, &c.*, Cx. A fair specimen of his free handling of the text, which makes a minute collation almost impossible.

[7] So MS., apparently; but *c* and *t* can hardly be distinguished. *toppe*, Cx. Both forms are good.

[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *Ragmul*, MS.

[9] Added from Cx. Absent also from *a.*

decimam terram, quam rex sibi assignaverat, per monasteria locorum[1] distribuerat.[2]

Cap. XXXVIII.

De Cambria sive[3] *Wallia.*

Libri finis[4] nunc Cambriam
Prius tangit quam Angliam;[5]
Sic[6] propero ad Walliam,
Ad Priami prosapiam;
Ad magni[7] Jovis sanguinem,
Ad Dardani progeniem.
Sub titulis his quatuor
Terræ statum exordior:
Primo de causa nominis;
Secundo de præconiis;
Tandem de gentis ritibus;
Quarto de mirabilibus.

---

[1] *locorum*] om. C.D.

[2] *distribuebat*, C.D. The readings of C.D. seem preferable throughout.

[3] *Cambria sive*] om. A.B.C.D.

[4] *cursus*, G. Gale.

[5] *Priusquam tangam Angliam, quæ vastam vult materiam*, C.D. The alteration, not for the better, has doubtless been made for the sake of a different initial letter (L), so as to form the acrostick. See the Introduction.

[6] *Jam*, C.D.

[7] *Et magni*, A.

teþe [1] londe, þat þe kyng hadde assigned him,[2] he departed in dyuers places among abbayes. TREVISA.

De Wallia.

Capitulum tricesimum octavum.

How [3] þe book takeþ in [4] honde
Wales to fore Engelonde;
So I take my tales
And wende forþ [5] in to Wales,
To that noble brood
Of Priamus his [6] blood,
Knoweleche for to wynne
Of greet Iubiter his [7] kynne,
For to haue in mynde
Dardanus [8] his kynde.
In þis [9] foure titles I fonde
To telle þe state [10] of þat londe.
Cause of þe name I schal telle,
And þan preise þe lond I [11] welle.
Than I schal write wiþ my pen
Alle þe maneres of þe men.
Than I schal fonde
To telle mervailes of þe londe.

---

hade ȝiffen in to the worschippe of God and of Seynte Andrewe. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of Wales, and of the Maneres and Consuetudes of hit. Capitulum tricesimum octavum.

THE auctor of this presente Cronicle towchethe in his progresse other processe rather Wales then Englonde, makenge haste to Wales to the kynrede of Priamus, to the bloode of grete Iupiter, and to the kynrede of Dardanus. Begynne the state of that londe vnder these iiij. titles. Fyrste of the cause of the name; in the seconde of the preconyes; in the thridde of the rites of the peple in hit; and in the iiij^{the} of the mervayles of hit. *Of the reason of the name of hit.* That londe whiche is callede

---

[1] *tienthe*, Cx.
[2] So *a.*; *hem*, MS.
[3] *Now*, *a.*; *now this*, Cx.
[4] *on*, *a.*
[5] *forþ*] om. Cx.
[6] *his*] om. Cx.
[7] *Jupiters*, Cx.
[8] So *a.* and Cx.; *Bardanus*, MS.
[9] *thyse*, Cx.
[10] *mervayll*, *a.*
[11] *I*] om. *a.*; *and welle*, Cx.

De ratione nominis.

Hæc terra, quæ nunc Wallia,
Quondam est [1] dicta Cambria,
A Cambro Bruti filio,
Qui [2] rexit hanc dominio:
Sed post [3] est dicta Wallia,
A Gwalaes [4] reginula,
Regis Ebranci filia,
Ad hæc nupta confinia;
Seu a Gualone [5] procere,
Rupto soni caractere,[6]
Reperies ad litteram
Denominatam Walliam.
Cujus circumferentia,
Quamvis sit minor [7] Anglia,
Par tamen [8] glebæ gloria,
In matre et in filia.

De patriæ præconiis.

Terra fecunda fructibus,
Et carnibus, et piscibus;
Domesticis, silvestribus,
Bobus, equis, et ovibus;
Apta cunctis seminibus,
Culmis, spicis,[9] graminibus;

---

[1] *est quondam*, B.
[2] *Nam hanc rexit*, C.D.
[3] *prius*, G. and Gale, absurdly; *post hæc* (h^c), A.
[4] *Walles*, B.
[5] *Gwalone*, D.
[6] *carcere*, B.
[7] *minor sit*, D.
[8] *est*, B.
[9] *spericis*, E. (clerical error.)

TREVISA.

Wales hatte now[2] Wallia,
And somtyme hi3te[3] Cambria,
For Camber, Brutes sone,
Was kyng,[4] and þere dede wone;
Þan Wallia was to mene,
For Gwalaes the quene,
Kyng Ebrank his childe,
Was wedded þider mylde.
And of þat lord *Gwaloun*
Wiþdrawe þ lettres of þe soun,
And putte to L, I, and A,
And þow schalt fynde *Wallia*.
And þey þat this[5] londe
Be wel[6] lasse þan Engelonde,
As good glebe is oon as other,
In þe dou3ter and[7] in[8] þe moder.
They þat londe be luyte,
Hit is ful of corne and fruyte;[9]
And haþ grete plente i-wys[10]
Boþe of flesche, and of[11] fische;
Of bestes, tame and wylde,
Of hors, schepe, and oxen mylde;
Good lond for alle sedes
For corn, herbes, and gras þat[12] spredes.

Of the name, how it is named Wales.[1]

Of the commodytees of the lond of Wales.

MS. HARL. 2261.

now Wallia, other Wales in Englische, was callede somme tyme Cambria, of Camber the son of Brute, whiche was lorde of hyt. Afterwarde hit was callede Wales, other wise Wallia, of Gwaleas the qwene, the do3hter of Kynge Ebrancus wededе vn to those costes. Other elles hit was callede Wallia of Gualo a gentilman. Thau3he the circumference of hit be lesse then the grownde of Englonde, neuerthelesse hit is egalle to hit in fertilite what in the moder and in the do3hter. *Of the preconyes of that cuntre.* That londe is plentuous in frutes, flesche, fische, horses, oxen, and schepe bothe wylde and tame. That londe is apte also to alle seedes, gresse, cornes, medoes, feldes, and

---

[1] Marginal summaries added everywhere from Cx.
[2] *now hatte, a.; now is called,* Cx.
[3] *heet, a.; it heet,* Cx.
[4] *prynce, a.,* Cx.
[5] *though this,* Cx.
[6] *moche,* Cx.
[7] *and*] as, Cx.
[8] *in*] om. *a.* (not Cx.)
[9] *of fruyte, a.*
[10] *ywys,* Cx. (conjunctim.)
[11] *Of flesshe and eke of,* Cx.
[12] Here and elsewhere in these verses, Caxton has printed the word thus: þ^t; but perhaps in every other instance he replaces þ by *th*.

Arvis, pratis, nemoribus,
Herbis gaudet, et floribus;
Fluminibus et fontibus,
Convallibus et montibus;
Convalles pastum proferunt,
Montes metalla conferunt;
Carbo sub terræ cortice,
Crescit viror in vertice;
Calcem per artis regulas
Præbet ad tecta[1] tegulas.
Epularum materia
Mel, lac, et lacticinia;
Mulsum,[2] medo, cervisia
Abundat[3] in hac patria;
Et quicquid vitæ congruit
Ubertim terra tribuit.
Sed ut de tantis dotibus
Multa claudam sub brevibus,
Stat hæc in orbis angulo,
Ac si Deus a sæculo
Hanc[4] daret promptuarium
Cunctorum salutarium.
Hæc[5] Wallia dividitur
Amne qui Tiwy[6] dicitur,

---

[1] *tecti*, B.
[2] *Musim*, E. (clerical error.)
[3] *abundant*, A.D., Gale.
[4] *Ac*, A. (without sense.)
[5] *Hæc*] om. A.
[6] *Tiwi*, A.D.; *Twy*, C. Originally a space in B. filled in by a later hand, *Wy*. Certainly the Wye suits the description better (or rather, less badly) than anything else.

There beep wodes and medes,
Herbes and floures pere spredes ;
There beep ryuers and welles,
Valeies and also helles ;
Valeys bryngep forp food,
And hilles metal riȝt good,[1]
Col[2] growep vnder lond,
And gras aboue at pe hond ;[3]
There lyme is copious,
And sclattes also for hous.
Hony, mylk, and whyte[4]
There is deyntees,[5] and not lyte.
Of braget,[6] meth,[7] and ale
Is grete plente in pat vale.[8]
And al pat nedep to pe lyue
Pat lond bryngep forp ful ryue.
But of greet riches forto[9] drawe
Meny in a schort[10] sawe,
Hit is in a corner smal ;
And[11] as pei God first of al
Made pat lond so feele[12]
To be celer[13] of al heele.
Walys is deled by
A water pat hatte Twy.[14]

TREVISA.

---

woodes, with herbes and floures, floodes and welles, vales and hilles. The vales in hit brynge furthe foode, and the hilles metalles. And the matere and substaunce amonge theyme is hony, mylke, and whitemeite. Methe and bragotte be there, as ale habundantely in that cuntre ; whiche londe bryngethe furthe plentuously what so euer thynge that is necessary to the lyfe. Entendenge to conclude mony thynges of those dowerys in fewe wordes, that yle stondethe in an angle of the worlde as God dothe from hit, ȝiffenge that londe as a promptuary of alle hollesomme thynges. That londe is diuidede by a water whiche is callede Tywy, whiche

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *metals good*, Cx.
[2] So α ; *Cool*, Cx. ; *Gold*, MS.
[3] *atte honde*, Cx. (a frequent variation.)
[4] *Hony and mylke whyte*, Cx. (wrongly ; see text.)
[5] *deynte*, Cx.
[6] *braket*, Cx.
[7] *mede*, α.
[8] So α. and Cx. ; *and þat in vale*, MS.
[9] *forto*] to be, Cx.
[10] *And close many in short*, Cx., probably rightly.
[11] *And*] om. Cx.
[12] So α ; *fele*, Cx. ; *freele*, MS.
[13] *selere*, Cx.
[14] So also Cx. ; *Tiwy*, α.

North-Wallos[1] ab Australibus
Scindit certis limitibus;
Austrina[2] pars Demetia,[3]
Secunda Venedotia;
Prima sagittis prævalet,
Hastis secunda præminet.
In hoc procinctu Walliæ
Tres olim erant curiæ,
Ad Kaermarthyn[4] primaria,
In Anglesey[5] sed[6] alia,
Tertia in Powysia,[7]
Pengwern, quæ nunc Salopia.
Septem quondam pontifices,
Nunc quatuor sunt præsules;
Quondam suis principibus
Parebant, nunc[8] Saxonibus.

De incolarum moribus.[9]

Convictus hujus patriæ
Differt a ritu[10] Angliæ,
In vestibus, in victibus,
In cæteris quampluribus.
His vestium insignia
Sunt chlamys[11] et camisia,
Et crispa femoralia,
Sub ventis et sub pluvia.

---

[1] So A.; *Nortwales*, B.; *Nortwallos*, D.; *Northwalles*, E.; *Norwallos*, Gale.
[2] *Austerna*, B.
[3] *Demicia*, B.
[4] *Kaemerthyn*, B.; *Chaermerthin*, D.
[5] *Anglesie*, D.
[6] So E. and Gale; *est*, A.B.C.D.
[7] *Powisia*, A.
[8] *ut*, B.
[9] *ritibus*, A.B., Gale.
[10] *a ritu differt*, B.
[11] *clamis*, A.B.E.

TREVISA.

Norþ Wales from þe south
Twy[1] deleþ in place ful couþ.[2]
The south hatte Demesia,
And þe oþer Venedocia;
The firste scheteþ and arwes[3] beres,
And þe oþer[4] deleþ alle wiþ speres.
I[5] Wales how it be
Were somtyme contrees þre;
At Karmarthyn was þat oon,
And þat oþer was in Moon;[6]
The þridde was in Powisy
In Pengwern, þat now is Schroysbury.[7]
There were bisshopes seuene,
And now beeþ foure euene,
Vnder Saxons al at honde;
Somtyme vnder princes of þat lond.
The manere leuynge of þat lond
Is wel dyuers from Engelond,
In mete and drynk and cloþinge,
And many oþer doyng.
They beeþ cloþed wonder wel
In a scherte and in[8] a mantel;
A crisp breche wel fayn
Boþe in wynd and in rayn.

Of maner and rites of the Walss-men.

---

diuidethe northe Wales from the southe parte of hit by certeyne merkes. The sowthe parte of Wales is callede Demecia. That other parte is callede Venedocia. Men of Demecia use bawes to schote, and men of Venedocia use speres. In whiche procincte were wonte to be thre courtes. The firste was at Caermerthyn, the secunde was in Anglesey, the thrydde was in Powiselonde at Pengwerne, whiche is now callede Schrewisbery. Somme tyme þer were vij. bischopes in hit, and now þer be iiij., whiche were obediente somme tyme to the princes of that cuntre, but now thei be obediente to the Saxones. *Of the rytes of the inhabitatores of hit.* The vse of that cuntre differrethe from the rite of Englonde in clothenge, in fyndenge, and in mony other thynges. A mantelle and a schurte be the nowble thynges of vesture amonge theyme, whiche vse to bere fewe clothes in wynter,

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *Tiwy, a.*
[2] *fu kouth, a.*
[3] *arowes,* Cx.
[4] *That other,* Cx.
[5] *In, a.,* Cx.
[6] *Mone,* Cx. (who prints *one* above.)
[7] *Shrousbury,* Cx.
[8] *in*] om. *a.* (not Cx.)

Plura non ferunt tegmina,
Quamvis brumescat borea.
Sub istis apparatibus,
Spretis linteaminibus,[1]
Stant, sedent, cubant, dormiunt,
Pergunt, pugnant, prosiliunt.
Hi sine supertunicis
Collobiis et tunicis,
Capis, tenis, capuciis,
Nudatis semper tibiis,[2]
Vix aliter incederent,
Regi licet occurrerent.
Hastis, sagittis brevibus
Concertant in conflictibus,[3]
Validiores pedites
Ad pugnam sunt quam equites.
His silvæ sunt pro turribus,
Paludes pro[4] aggeribus,
Fugam ut pugnam capiunt,
Cum opportunum sentiunt.
Hos dicit Gildas[5] fragiles,
Et nec[6] in pace stabiles;
Cujus si causa quæritur,
Mirum nequaquam cernitur,

---

[1] *linthiaminibus*, MSS.
[2] *tubiis*, B.
[3] *Pugnant in certaminibus*, C.D.
[4] *cum*, A.
[5] *Non Britanni sunt in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles.* Gild. *Hist.* c. 4.
[6] *nunc*, A.

TREVISA.

In þis clopynge þey beeþ bolde,
Þeyȝ þe weder be riȝt colde;
Wiþ oute schetes alway
Euermore in þis array
They gooþ, fiȝteþ, pleieþ, hoppeþ, and[1] lepeþ,
Stondeþ, sitteþ, liggeþ,[2] and sleþeþ,
Wiþ oute sorcot, gowne, coote,[3] kirtelle;
Wiþ gipoun,[4] tabard, cloke, and[5] belle;
Wiþ oute lace and chapelet, þat hire lappes,
Wiþ oute hodes, hatte, or cappes.
Thus arraied gooþ þe geggis,[6]
And alle[7] wiþ bare legges;
He[8] kepeþ non oþer goyng,[9]
Þey he[8] mete wiþ þe kyng.
Wiþ arwes and schort speres
Þey fiȝteþ wiþ hym[10] þat hem deres.
They fiȝteþ better, ȝif hit nedeþ,[11]
Whan þey gooþ þan whan þei rideþ.[12]
Instede of castel and toure
They taken mareys and wodes[13] for socour,
Whan þey seeþ þat hit is to do,[14]
In fiȝtinge þey wil be a goo.
Gildas seiþ þey be variable
In pees, and no þing stable.
ȝif me axeþ why hit be,
Hit is no[15] wonder forto se,

MS. HARL. 2261.

thauȝhe wynde blawe ryȝhte coldely; whiche sytte, stonde, and slepe despisenge schetes; with owte huddes, cootes, or tabardes, bare on the legges; whiche vse vnnethe to go eny other way, thauȝhe thei scholde mete a kynge; fiȝhtenge with shorte speres in conflictes, amonge whom the men in foote be more stronge then the horse men. Woodes be to theym as for towres, and marras for places of defence; whiche take fleenge as fiȝhte, when' they thenke tyme and oportunite. Gildas rehersethe Wallche men to be frayle, not stable in pease. And if the cause be inquirede, hit is not

---

[1] *hoppeþ and*] om. Cx.
[2] *lye*, Cx.
[3] *koot*, *a*.
[4] *iopen*, Cx.
[5] *or*, Cx.
[6] So *a*.; *segges*, Cx. (quid?); *gigges*, MS.
[7] *alwey*, *a*.
[8] *They*, Cx. (twice.)
[9] So Cx.; *þing*, MS.
[10] *hem*, *a*.; *them*, Cx.
[11] *they neden*, Cx.
[12] The metre requires *redeþ*.
[13] *wode and marys*, *a*.
[14] So *a*. and Cx.; *I doo*, MS.
[15] *no*] om. Cx.

Si gens expulsa satagat,
Ut expulsores abigat.
Sed frustra his temporibus,
Succisis jam nemoribus,
Cum sint circa maritima
Firmata castra plurima.
Gens diu famem sustinens,
Communem victum diligens,
Coquorum artificia
Non quærit ad edulia;
Nam panem hordeaceum [1]
Edit et avenaceum,
Latum, rotundum, tenuem,
Ut decet tantum [2] sanguinem.
Raro frumento vescitur,
Vix furni flammis utitur;
His pultes ad legumina
Pro epulis [3] acrumina,
Butyrum, lac, et caseus
Oblongus [4] et tetragonus;
Hæc sunt eorum fercula,
Quæ provocant ad pocula
Medonis et cervisiæ,
Quibus instant quotidie.
Vinum putant præcipuum,
Quanto sit magis rubeum.

---

[1] *ordeacium*, B.
[2] *priscum*, C.D.
[3] *Pepulis acrimonia*, B.
[4] *Prolongus*, C.D.

TREVISA.

They men i-putt out of londe
To putte out opere wolde fonde.
But al for nou3t at þis stounde,
For[1] meny wodes beeþ at grounde;
And vppon þe see among
Beeþ castellis[2] i-buld ful strong.
The men may dure longe vnete,
And loueþ wel comune mete;
They conne ete and be[3] mury[4]
Wiþ oute grete kewery.[5]
They eteth brede, colde and hote,
Of barliche and of oote;
Brood cakes, round and þynne,
As wel semeþ so grete kynne.
Seelde þey eteþ brede of whete,
And seelde þey dooþ oues ete.
They haueþ growel[6] to potage,
And a leke is skyn[7] to compernage;[8]
Also butter, melk, and chese[9]
I-schape euelong and cornered wise.[10]
Swiche[11] messes þey eteþ snel;
And þat makeþ hem drynk wel.
Mede[12] and ale, þat haþ my3t,
Ther ynne[13] þey spendeþ day and ny3t.
Euere þe redder is þe wyn,
Þey holdeþ it þe more fyn;

MS. HARL. 2261.

to be hade in meruayle if a peple expulsede be abowte to expelle the expulsores of hit. But now in this tyme, the woodes kytte, mony castelles be made after the costes in the see. The peple of that cuntre wille suffre hungre longe, luffenge the commune foode, inquirenge not the artificialle operacion of cookes at the dyners of theyme, eitenge brede made of otes and of barly, brode, rownde, and thynne, as hit besemethe suche bloode. That peple dothe eite selde whete that is baken in an oue; the meites of whom be buttyr, mylke, and chese; which prouoke a man to drynke methe and ale, whiche thei do vse daily. Thei accompte that wyne moste principalle whiche is moste redde, whiche peple vsenge to drynke seasethe not from

---

[1] *For al*, Cx.
[2] So *a.*; *castell*, MS.; *castels*, Cx., who omits *ful*.
[3] *ben*, Cx.
[4] So also Cx.; *merye*, *a.*
[5] *cury*, Cx.
[6] *grewel*, *a.*; *gruel*, Cx.
[7] *a leke his kyn*, *a.*; *And lekes kynde*, Cx.
[8] *companage*, Cx.
[9] *chyse*, *a.*
[10] *corner wese*, Cx.
[11] *suche*, *a.*, Cx.
[12] *Methe*, Cx.
[13] *Theron*, Cx

Potando gens hæc garrula
Vix cessat fari [1] frivola.
Ad mensam et post prandium
Sal porri sunt solatium.
Sed et paterfamilias
Hoc [2] reputat delicias,
Caldarium cum pultibus
Dare circumsedentibus,
Taxando portiunculas,
Servans sibi reliquias.
Hos eis nocet nimium
Ad carnis infortunium,
Quod contra jussum physicum
Edunt salmonem calidum.
Domos demissas incolunt
Ex virgulis quas construunt,
Distantibus limitibus,
Non prope, ut in urbibus.
Cum devastarunt [3] propria,
Vicina quærunt atria;
Edentes [4] quod inveniunt,
Post hæc [5] ad sua redeunt;

---

[1] *loqui*, B.
[2] *Hæc*, B.
[3] *devastarint*, B.
[4] *Edendo*, C.D.
[5] *hæc*] om. B.

Whan þey drynkeþ at þe[1] ale, TREVISA.
They telleþ meny a lewed tale.
For whan drynk is in handelyng
Þey beeþ ful al[2] of iangelynge.
At þe mete, and after eke,
Hir solace is salt and leke.
The housbonde in his wise
Telleþ þat a grete prise,
To ȝeue a caudron[3] wiþ grewel
To hym þat sitteþ at[4] his mel,
He deleþ his mete at þe mel,
And ȝeueþ eueriche manis del,[5]
And alle the ouer pluse
He kepeþ to his owne vse.[6]
Therfore þey haueþ woo
And myshappes also,
They eteþ hote samoun alway,
They[7] phisik seie nay.
Here hous[8] beþ lowe wiþ alle,
I-made[9] of ȝerdes smalle;
Nouȝt, as in citees, nygh,
But fer atwynne, and not to hiȝe.[10]
Whan al is i-ete[11] at home,
Þanne to her neighebores wil þey rome;
And ete what þey may fynde and see,
And þanne torne home aȝe.

communicacion and talkenge of ydelele thynges. Salt and lekes be to theyme solace at meyte, and after; acomptenge that a grete solace to ȝiffe a caldron with potages to men syttenge abowte and to diuide to euery man his porcion, kepenge to hym the remanente. But the infortuny of flesche nyouthe theim moche eitenge salmon hoote ageyne the precepte of phisike. Whiche inhabite howses, whom thei make of litelle roddes; not nye to gedre, as thei vse to make edificacions in cites. This peple vsethe to deuoure the goodes of other men after that thei haue deuourede theire awne goodes, eitenge that thei fynde, returnenge after that to theire awne places, spendenge theire MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *at þe*] atte, Cx., and so commonly.
[2] *al ful, α.*
[3] *gawdron, α.*
[4] *hem that sitten on*, Cx.
[5] The lines are transposed in MS. (not *α.*)
[6] *house, α.*
[7] *All though*, Cx.
[8] *howses*, Cx.
[9] *And made*, Cx.
[10] So *α.*; *nygh*, MS.
[11] *eten*, Cx.

Vitam ducentes otio,
Sopori, et incendio.
Mos cunctis est Wallensibus
Aquam dare hospitibus;
Si primo pedes laverint,
Pendunt quod bene venerint.
Ita quieti [1] victitant
Quod raro bursam bajulant.
His pecten et pecunia
Pendent [2] ad femoralia;
At [3] cum abhorrent nimium
Ani pudendum sonitum,
Mirum quod ante ostium
Habent latrinas sordium.
Choro, lyra, et tibiis
Utuntur in conviviis,
Sed elatis funeribus
Clangunt caprinis cornibus.
Extollunt Trojæ sanguinem,
De quo ducunt originem.
Propinquos satis reputant,
Quos centum gradus separant.
Sic præferunt se cæteris,
Parent [4] tamen presbyteris,

---

[1] *quiete*, B.
[2] *pendunt*, A.
[3] *Et*, D.
[4] *Favent*, B.

The lyf is idel, þat þei ledes,
In brennynge and [1] slepynge and such dedes.
Walsche men vseþ wiþ hir myȝt
To wasche here gestes feet at nyȝt; [2]
ȝif he wasche here feet, al and some,
Þanne þey knoweþ þey beeþ welcome.
They leueþ so esiliche in arowte, [3]
Þat seelde þey bereþ purse aboute.
At here breche out and at home
They hengeþ [4] boþe money and come. [5]
Hit is wonder þey beeþ so hende,
And hateþ a crak of þe neþer ende,
And with oute [ony] [6] core
Makeþ her wardrope at þe dore.
They haueþ in greet mangerie
Harpe, tabor, and pype for mynstralcie.
They bereþ forþ cors [7] wiþ sorwe grete;
Þey bloweþ [8] lowde hornes of geete.
They preiseþ faste Troian blood,
For þere of come al hir brood;
Nigh [9] kyn þey wil [10] bee
Þey he [11] passe an hondred gree. [12]
Aboue oþer men þey wil hem [13] diȝte;
And worschippeþ preostes wiþ her myȝte;

Trevisa.

---

life in ydelnesse and in slawthe. The consuetude is of Walche men to ȝiffe water to theire gestes to drynke. And if thei wasche theire feete, thei thenke that thei be welle commen. That peple lyvethe in suche ease that vnnethe thei bere a purse, for thei vse to honge theire moneye at the hippes of theyme, mervaylenge moche, sythe that thei abhorre moche the sownde of the partes posterialle, that thei make seges of filthe afore the durres of theym. Men of that cuntre vse in theire festes a crowde, an harpe, and trumpes. But at the dethe of a man thei crye lyke to wylde bestes in exaltenge the bloode of Troy, of whom thei toke begynnenge. That peple thenkethe men nye to theyme by bloode whom a c. degrees do separate. Neuerthelesse thei be obediente to pristes, worschippenge theyme

MS. Harl. 2261.

f. 57. b.

---

[1] *and*] om. Cx., perhaps rightly.
[2] *anyȝt, a.*, Cx.
[3] *a rowte*, Cx. (which is also good.)
[4] *hongeþ, a.*
[5] *combe*, Cx.
[6] Added from Cx. (not in *a.*)
[7] *corps*, Cx., who has also *sorow*.
[8] *And bloweþ, a.*; *And blowe*, Cx.
[9] *Nyȝ, a.*
[10] *wole, a.*
[11] *they*, Cx. (not *a.*)
[12] *degree*, Cx.
[13] So *a.*; *hym*, MS.

Et summi [1] Dei famulos
Venerantur ut angelos.
Hos consuevit fallere
Et ad bella impingere [2]
Merlini vaticinium,
Et frequens sortilegium.
Mores brutales Britonum
Jam ex [3] convictu [4] Saxonum
Commutantur in melius,
Ut patet luce clarius.
Hortos et agros excolunt,
Ad oppida se conferunt,
Et loricati equitant,
Et calceati peditant,
Urbane se [5] reficiunt,
Et sub tapetis dormiunt;
Ut judicentur [6] Anglici,
Nunc potius quam Wallici.
Hinc si quæratur [7] ratio,
Quietius jam [8] solito
Cur illi vivant hodie,
In causa [9] sunt divitiæ;
Quas cito [10] gens hæc perderet,
Si passim nunc confligeret.

---

[1] *summe*, A.
[2] *producere*, C.D.
[3] *nam jam*, A.
[4] *convicta*, C. (not D.)
[5] *se*] om. C. (not D.)
[6] *videntur*, B.
[7] So A.C.D.; *quæretur*, E.
[8] So A.; *quam*, D.E., Gale.
[9] *Revera*, B.
[10] *cito*] om. A.

As aungeles of heuene riȝt
Þey worschippeþ seruantes of God almyȝte.
Oft gyled[1] was this brood,
And ȝerned batail al for wood,
For Merlyns prophecie,
And ofte for sortelegie.[2]
Best in maneres of Bretouns,[3]
For companye of Saxouns,
Beeþ i-torned to beter riȝt;
Þat is knowe as clere as liȝt.
Thei tilieþ[4] gardyns, feeld, and downes,
And draweþ hem to gode townes;
They rideþ i-armed, as wolde[5] God,
And gooþ i-hosed and i-schod;
And sitteþ faire at hir mele,
And slepeþ in beddes faire and wele.[6]
So þey semeþ now in mynde
More Englische men þan Walsche kynd;
ȝif me axeþ whi þey dooþ now soo,[7]
More þan þey were woned[8] to doo,
They leueþ in more pees,
By cause of hir riches.
For hir catel schulde slake,
And[9] þey vseþ ofte wrake.
Drede of losse of here good
Makeþ hem now stille of mood;

TREVISA.

as the angelles of God. The prophecy of Merlyne and wycche crafte was wonte to begile theyme and to move theim to batelles. But nowe thei chaunge theire maneres gretely in to better exercise thro the communicacion of Saxones. Thei tylle feldes and gardynes, and applye theim to inhabite townes, usenge haburiones, and goenge with schoes, refreschenge theim in meites after curtesy, slepenge in beddes after the consuetude of Englische rather then after the maner of theim vsede afore tyme. And if the cause be inquirede why thei lyve so now rather then in tymes afore, hyt may be ansuerede and seide that rychesse be the cause þer of, but now the drede of theire goode withdrawethe theim from the exercise of conflictes. For a man

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So *a*, and Cx.; *Of giles*, MS.
[2] So *a*, and Cx.; *sortelogie*, MS.
[3] Cx. puts a full stop after *Britons*. It is almost certain that for *best in* we should read *bestly*.
[4] *tillen*, Cx.
[5] *wol*, *c*.; *wole*, Cx. The text seems corrupt.
[6] *fele*, Cx.
[7] *now doo so*, Cx.
[8] *they woonte*, Cx.
[9] *If*, Cx.

Timor damni hos retrahit,
Nam nil habes[1] nil metuit.
Et, ut dixit Satiricus,[2]
Cantat viator vacuus
Coram latrone, tutior
Quam phaleratus[3] ditior.

De terræ mirabilibus.

Ad Brehnoch[4] est vivarium
Satis abundans piscium,
Sæpe coloris varii
Comam gerens pomarii,[5]
Structuras ædificii
Sæpe videbis inibi.
Sub lacu cum sit gelidus,
Mirus auditur sonitus.
Si terræ princeps venerit,
Aves cantare jusserit,
Statim depromunt[6] modulos,
Nil concinunt ad cæteros.
Juxta Caerlegion[7] mœnia,
Ad duo milliaria,
Stat rupes[8] fulva nimium
Contra solarem radium,
Quam Goldeclif[9] gens nominat,
Ut aurum[10] quia rutilat;
Nec frustra fit in rupibus
Flos talis sine fructibus,

---

[1] *habens*, B.
[2] Juven. Sat., xii. 22.
[3] *phalaratus*, B.
[4] *Breghenoc*, D.
[5] *pomij*, E.; *pomerii*, A.D., Gale. Both forms occur, but *pomarii* suits the metre best.
[6] *deprompt*, A.B.D.
[7] *Caerleon*, A.; *Caerlion*, B.D., Gale.
[8] *rupis*, C.D.
[9] So A., Gale; *Goldcluf*, D. (apparently); *Goldclif*, E.
[10] *aurumque*, C. (not D.)

TREVISA.

Alle in oon hit is brouȝt;
Haue no þing and drede nouȝt.
The poete seiþ a sawe of preef,
Þe foot man lereþ synge[1] to fore þe þeef,
And is wel bolder on his[2] way
Þan þe horsman[3] riche and gay.
There is a pole at Breigheynok,[4]
There ynne of fische is many a flok;
Ofte he chaungeþ his hewe on cop,
And bereþ aboue a gardyn crop;
Ofte tyme, how it be,
Schap of hous þere þou schalt[5] see.
Whan þe pole is frore, hit is wonder
Of þe noyse þat is þere vnder;
Ȝif þe prince of þe lond hote,
Briddes syngeþ wiþ mery[6] note,
As mery[7] as þey kan,
And syngeþ for noon oþer man.
Bysides Carleoun,[8]
Tweyne[9] myle from þe toun,
Is a roche wel briȝt of leme
Riȝt aȝenst þe sonne beme;
Gold clif þat roche hiȝte,
For he[10] schyneþ as gold ful briȝte;
Suche a floure in stoon is nouȝt
Wiþ oute fruyt, and[11] hit were souȝt;

Of the marueylles and wonders of Wales.

---

that hathe noȝhte to loose dredethe but lytelle; þerfore Satiricus seithe that a man hauenge but lytelle goode syngethe, and goethe in more suerte afore a thefe then a ryche man. *Of the meruayles of Wales.* At Brehenoc is a water habundante in fisches of diuerse coloures, where a man may see in clere tymes meruellous edifienges, where a meruellous noyce and sownde be herde. And if the prince of that londe come, the bryddes synge and make grete melody to him, schewenge not pleasure and comforte to any other man. Also there is a grete broken hille nye to the walles of Kaerlyon, schynenge moche ageyne the beames of the sonne, whom peple calle Goldecliffe, in that hit schynethe like to golde. Whiche floure apperethe not there with owte frute, if the interialle partes of that hille

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *foteman singeth*, Cx.
[2] *is bolder on the*, Cx.
[3] *horsmen*, Cx.
[4] *Brechnok*, Cx.
[5] *shal* (sic) *thou*, Cx.
[6] *singe wel mery*, Cx.
[7] *merily*, Cx.
[8] *Carlion*, Cx.
[9] *Twa*, Cx.
[10] *it*, Cx. (and so often.)
[11] *if*, Cx. (and so often.)

Si foret [1] qui penitima,[2]
Terræ venas et viscera,
Transpenetrare sedula
Novisset arte prævia.
Occulta latent plurima
Naturæ beneficia;
Quæ, hactenus incognita
Humana pro incuria,
Per posterorum [3] studia
Patebunt sub notitia;
Quod antiquis necessitas,
Hoc nobis dat sedulitas.
Itidem in [4] South-Wallia
Apud Kardeff [5] est insula,
Juxta Sabrinum [6] pelagus,
Barri [7] dicta antiquitus;
In cujus parte [8] proxima
Apparet rima modica,
Ad quam si aurem commodes,
Sonum mirandum audies;

---

[1] *floret*, G. and Gale.
[2] *finitima*, A.B.
[3] *posteriorum*, B.
[4] *Sowth*, B.
[5] *Caerdif*, B.; *Kerdif*, D.; *Kaerdif*, A., Gale.
[6] D. adds *est*.
[7] *Barra*, A.
[8] *terra*, B.

TREVISA.

ȝif me koupe [1] by craft vndo
Þe veynes of þe erþe, and come þerto.
Many benefices [2] of kynde [3]
Beeþ now i-hidde fro manis mynde,
And beeþ vnknowe ȝit,
For defaute [4] of manis wit.
Grete tresour is hid in grounde,
And after þis it schal be founde
By greet studie and besynesse
Of hem þat comeþ after vs.
Þat olde men hadde by grete nede,
We haueþ be [5] besy dede.
Treuisa.[6] In bookes ȝe may rede,
Þat kynde failleþ not at nede;
Whanne no man hadde craft in mynde,
Þan of craft halp God and kynde;
Whan no techere was in londe,
Men hadde craft by Goddes sonde; [7]
Þey þat hadde craft so þenne
Tawȝte forþ craft to oþere menne;
Som craft, þat ȝit come nouȝt in place,
Somme men schal haue by Goddis grace.
R. An [8] ilond is wiþ noyse and strif
In West Wales at Cardif, [9]
Faste by Seuerne [10] stronde;
Barry hiȝte þat ilonde.
In þe hider [11] side in a chene [12]
Þow schalt here a wonder dene,
And dyuerse noyse also,
ȝif þou putte þyn ere to.

---

were souȝhte; for mony benefites of nature be priveye in hit, whiche be vnknowen yitte for the ignoraunce of men, but thei schalle be knowen by the study and labores of men to comme afterwarde. Also in Sowthe Wales is an yle at Kaerdif, nye to the water of Seuerne, callede in olde tyme Barri, in a nye parte to whom is a place, and if thou putte thyne eiere to hit thou schalle here a maruellous sownde and noyce, otherwhile like to the blawenge

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] *men coude*, Cx.
[2] *benefyce*, Cx.
[3] *knynde*, MS.
[4] *deuaute*, a.
[5] *by*, Cx.
[6] This and the following reference added from a. and Cx. (the former has only a space for R.)
[7] *honde*, Cx.
[8] *And*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
[9] *and Kardyf*, a.; *Kerdyf*, Cx.
[10] *Seuarn*, Cx.
[11] *hiȝ hider*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
[12] *chyne*, a.

Nunc quasi flatus follium,
Nunc metallorum [1] sonitum,
Cotis ferri fricamina,
Fornacis nunc incendia.
Sed hoc non est [2] difficile
Ex fluctibus contingere
Marinis subintrantibus,
Hunc sonum procreantibus.
Apud Penbroc [3] est regio,
Quam dæmonum illusio
Vexat jactando sordida
Et exprobrando vitia,
Qui nullis valent [4] artibus
Fugari neque precibus;
Quod, quando terram agitat
Casum gentis [5] pronosticat.
Ad Crucmaur [6] in West-Wallicis [7]
Est tumulus mirabilis,
Qui se conformem [8] cuilibet
Advenienti exhibet;
Ubi si arma integra
Relinquantur in vespera,
Confracta proculdubio
Reperies diluculo.
Ad Nevyn in Norwallia [9]
Est insula permodica,
Quæ Bardeseya [10] dicitur;
A monachis incolitur.

---

[1] *martellorum*, B.D.
[2] *Hoc non erit*, C.D.
[3] *Penbrok*, D.
[4] *valȝ*, E.; *valet*, A.D.G., Gale (without sense).
[5] *gentis casum*, D.
[6] So G. and Gale; *Crucinaur*, A.D.E.; *Crucina*, B. The text seems to be right. See Nennius, c. 87, in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.* p. 80.
[7] So C.D.; *West-Wallis*, A.B.E.G., Gale.
[8] *conformet*, E.
[9] *Northwallia*, A.B.D.G., Gale.
[10] *Bardiseya*, A.; *Pardiseya*, C.; *Berdesia*, D.; *Bardiseia*, G.

Noyse of leues and of wynde,[1]
Noyse of metal þou schalt fynde;
Frotinge of iren and whestones þou schalt hire,
Hetynge ouenes[2] þan wiþ fire;
Al þis may wel be
By wawes of þe see,
þat brekeþ in þare
Wiþ suche noyse and fare.
At Penbrook in a stede
Fendes dooþ ofte quede,
And proweþ foule þing ynne,
And despiseþ also synne.
Noþer craft ne bedes may
Do[3] þennes þat sorwe away;
Whan hit greueþ soo
To þe men hit bodeþ woo.
At Crucinar[4] in West Wales
Is a wonder buriales;
Euerich man, þat comeþ hit to see,
Semeþ it euene as moche as he;
Hool wepoun þere a nyȝt
Schal be i-broke er day lyȝt.
At Nemyn[5] in Norþ Wales
A litel ilond þere is,
þat hatte Bardeseie;[6]
Monkes woneþ þere alweie.

TREVISA.

of belose, and in an other season lyke to þe sownde of metalles, and otherwhile like the rubbenge of a qwettengeston, and otherwhile lyke to the noyce of a flame of fire. But hit is noo meruayle these thynges to happe of the floenges off water causenge that sownde vnder the erthe. Also there is a region at Penbroke[7] whiche is vexede moche by the illusion of deuelles, whiche can not be made clene thro eny crafte other preiers, whiche, movenge that londe, dothe prenosticate a grete falle of the peple of that cuntre. Also there is a maruellous berielle at Curcinaur in Weste Wales, whiche is conformede to euery man commenge to hit; if holle armor be lafte þer at nyȝhte, þou schalle fynde theim broken in the mornenge. Also in a place in Northe Wales callede Neuyn is an yle whiche is callede Pardesey, inhabite of monkes, where thei lyve soe

MS. HARL 2261. f. 58. a.

[1] This line is absent from MS.
[2] *of ouenes, a.*
[3] So *a.* and Cx.; *De*, MS.
[4] So *a.* and Cx.; *Crucina*, MS.
[5] So MS. and *a.*
[6] *Bardysey*, Cx.
[7] So the MS., in extenso.

Ubi tam diu vivitur
Quod senior præmoritur;
Ibi Merlinus conditur
Silvestris, ut asseritur;
Duo fuerunt igitur
Merlini, ut conjicitur,[1]
Unus dictus Ambrosius,
Ex incubo[2] progenitus,
Ad Kermerthyn[3] Demetiæ
Sub Vortigerni tempore;
Qui sua vaticinia
Proflavit in Snawdonia[4]
Ad ortum amnis Coneway[5]
Ad clivum montis Eriry;[6]
Dynas-Embreis,[7] ut comperi,
Sonat collem Ambrosii;
Ad ripam quando regulus
Vortiger sedit anxius.

---

[1] Slightly transposed in C. (not D.); *convicitur*, B.
[2] *incuba*, C.D.
[3] *Carmerthyn*, A.
[4] *Snowdonia*, B
[5] *Conowey*, A.; *Conwy*, B.
[6] *Eryry*, A.; *Erryri*, B.; *Eriri*, C.
[7] *Dinas Embreys*, A.G.; *Duas Embrex*, B.; *Dyneis Embreis*, D.; *Duias Embreys*, Gale.

Men lyueþ so longe in þat hurste,
þat þe eldest deiȝeþ furst.
Me seiþ þat Merlyn i-buried þere is,
þat hiȝte also Siluestris.
There were Merlyns tweyne
And prophecied alle[1] beyne.
Oon hiȝte Ambrose and Merlyn,
And wes i-gete of[2] gobolyn.
In Demecia at Caermerthyn,
Vnder kyng Fortigeryn,[3]
He tolde oute his prophecie;
Euene in Snawdonye.
At þe heed of þe water of Conewy,[4]
In þe side of mount Eryry,
Dynays Embreys a[5] Walsche,
Ambrose his hille on[6] Englisch,
Kyng Fortigern[7] sat on
þe water side, and was wel ful of woon.
þan Ambrose Merlyn prophecied so
To fore hym þere riȝt þoo.[8]
[*Trevisa*][9] What wight[10] wolde wene
þat a fend myȝt now gete a[11] childe?
Som men wolde mene,
þat he may no werk soche wilde.[12]
That fend þat gooþ a nyȝt,
Wommen wel[13] ofte to begile,[14]
Incubus hatte be ryȝt;
And gileþ men oþer while,
Succubus is þat wight:
God graunte vs non suche vile.
Who þat in hir myȝt[15]
Comeþ wonder hap schal[16] smyle.

TREVISA.

---

that the elder man diethe euer a fore the yonger man. Where Merlyn callede Silvestris is beryede, as hit is seide. Therefore there were ij. Merlynes; oon of them callede Ambrosius, geten of a spratte at Kaermerthyn in Sowthe Wales, whiche[17] profeciede in Snawdonia in the tyme of Vortigernus. Also there was an other Merlyn in Albania,

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *alle*] om. *a.* and Cx.
[2] *y-goten by*, Cx.
[3] *Vortigerin*, Cx.
[4] *Coneway*, Cx.
[5] *a*] in, Cx. (not *a.*)
[6] *on*] in, Cx. (not *a.*)
[7] *Vortigere*, Cx.
[8] *tho*, Cx.
[9] This and the following reference omitted in MSS. and Cx.
[10] *witte*, Cx., who omits *now* below.
[11] Om. *a.*
[12] *no such werk welde*, Cx.
[13] *ful, a.*, Cx.
[14] *gile*, Cx.
[15] *Who that cometh in hir gyle*, Cx. The text is very obscure, and perhaps corrupt.
[16] *Wonder happe shal he*, Cx.
[17] *in the whiche*, MS., originally.

Est[1] alter de Albania
Merlinus, quæ et[2] Scotia;
Repertus est binomius
Silvestris Calidonius;[3]
A silva Calidonia,[4]
Qua promsit[5] vaticinia;
Silvestris dictus ideo,
Quod consistens in prœlio
Monstrum videns in aere
Mente[6] cœpit excedere,[7]
Ad silvam tendens[8] propere,
Arthuri[9] regis tempore;

---

[1] So A.B.C.D., Gale; *Et*, E.
[2] *est*, A.B.D.; *nunc*, G., Gale.
[3] *Callidonius*, A.
[4] *Collidonia*, A.
[5] *prosit*, B.
[6] *mentem*, B.
[7] *incendere*, B.
[8] *tondens*, A.
[9] *Cathuri*, C. (not D.)

Wiþ wonder dede
Boþe men and wommen sede
Fendes wyl kepe
Wiþ craft, and brynge in on hepe.[1]
So fendes wilde
May make wommen bere childe;
ȝit neuere in mynde
Was childe of fendes kynde.
For wiþ oute eye
There myȝte childe non suche[2] deye.
Clergie makeþ mynde
Deeþ sleeþ nouȝt[3] fendes kynde;
But deth slowe Merlyn,
Merlyn was ergo no gobelyn.
[R.] Anoþer Merlyn of Albalonde,[4]
Þat now hatte Scottelonde,
Hadde[5] names two,
Siluestris and Calidonius also,
Of þat wode Calidonie,
For þere[6] he tolde his prophecie;
And heet Siluestris as wel,
For whan he was in [a][7] batel,
And sigh[8] aboue a grisliche kynde,
And fil anon out of his mynde;
And made no more bood,[9]
But ran[10] to þe wood.
Treuisa.[11] Siluestris is wood,
Other wilde of mood;
Other elles,
Þat at þe wode he dwelles.[12]
R. Siluestris Merlyn
Tolde prophecie wel and fyn,
And prophecied ful sure[13]
Vnder kyng Arthure,

TREVISA

---

calledé now Scottelande, whiche hade ij. names; oon name was Siluestris, that other was Calidonius, of a woode callede Calidonia, where he propheciede; callede Silvestris in that he beenge in batelle see in the aiere a meruellous thynge thro the whiche siȝhte he began to be distracte. Whiche goenge to a woode began to prophecy in the tyme of

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] *bringe an heepe*, Cx.
[2] *no suche child*, Cx.
[3] *no*, Cx.
[4] *Albin lond*, Cx.
[5] *And he had*, Cx.
[6] So Cx. (*there*); *þat*, MS., *a*.
[7] Added from *a*.
[8] *sawe*, Cx.
[9] *abood*, Cx.
[10] *ran anon*, Cx.
[11] This and the following reference added from Cx.
[12] *welles*, *a*.
[13] *soure*, *a*.

Prophetavit apertius
Quam Merlinus Ambrosius.
Sunt montes in Snawdonia
Cum summitate nimia,
Ab imis usque verticem
Vix transmeatur per diem.
Quos Cambri vocant Eriry,[1]
Quod sonat montes[2] nivei;
Hi Walliæ pecoribus
Sufficerent in pascuis;[3]
In horum[4] summo vertice
Sunt duo lacus hodie,
Quorum unus erraticam
In se concludit[5] insulam,
Ventis hinc inde mobilem,
Ripis approximabilem,[6]
Ita[7] ut armentarii
Mirentur se clam provehi.
Dat alter[8] lacus perchios,
Turtros[9] omnes monoculos;
Quod[10] reperitur hodie
In Mulwellis[11] Albaniæ.
Ruthelan in confinibus
Tegengil[12] est fons modicus,

---

[1] *Eriri*, A.C.D.; *Erriri*, B.
[2] *mons*, E. (clerical error.)
[3] So MSS. and Gale; but the metre suggests *pastibus*.
[4] *quorum*, B.
[5] *conclaudit*, D.
[6] *approbriabilem*, C. (not D.)
[7] So A.C.D.; *Item*, E.
[8] *altera*, B.
[9] *Turcos*, A., Gale. Possibly *turtas* should be read. See Ducange, s.v. *truta*.
[10] *Hoc*, C.D.
[11] *Mulwelles*, B.; *Mulwelle*, C. (not D.)
[12] *Tegnigil*, A.; *Tetungil*, B.

Openliche, nouȝt[1] so cloos
As Merlyn Ambros.
There beeþ hilles in Snowdowye,
Þat beeþ wonderliche hiȝe,
Wiþ heiȝte as grete way[2]
As a man may goo a day;
And hiȝte[3] Eryry in Walische,[4]
Snowy hilles on Englische.
In þese hilles þere is
Leese i-now for al[5] Walis;
Þis hil in þe cop berys
Tweye grete fische werys,
Conteyned in þe oon[6] pond;
Meueþ wiþ the wynd an ilond,
As þeigh he dede swymme,
And neiȝeth[7] to þe brymme;
So þat herdes haueþ greet wonder
And weneþ þat þe world meueþ vnder.
In þe oþer is perche and trouȝtis,[8]
Euery fysshe one eyed is;[9]
So fareþ as wel
In Albania þe Milewel.[10]
In Ruthlond by Tygentil[11]
There is a litel[12] welle,

Trevisa.

Kynge Arthure. There be hilles in Snawdonia of a grete altitude, in so moche that a man may vnnethe goe from the foote of hit to the hiȝhte of hit in a day. Whiche hilles men of that cuntre calle Eriri, that sowndethe in Englishe the hilles of snawe, whiche be sufficiaunte in pastures to alle the bestes in Wales; in the altitude of whom be ij. waters, oon of whom concludethe an yle movede to and fro with the wynde, in so moche that drovers of bestes meruaile theyme to be caryede from oon place to an other sodenly. That other water ȝiffethe fisches of diuerse kyndes hauenge but oon eie, whiche thynge is founde also in the Mulwelle of Albania. Also there is a lytelle welle in the costes of Ruthlande, Tetengil by name, whiche

MS. Harl. 2261.

---

[1] *and not*, Cx.
[2] *a waye*. Cx.
[3] *hatte*, *a*.; *heete*, Cx.
[4] *on Walsshe*, Cx.
[5] *al beestes of*, Cx.
[6] *that one*, Cx.
[7] *neiȝheþ*, *a*.
[8] *trowȝtis*, *a*.; *and fysshe*, Cx.
[9] So Cx., omitting *fysshe*; *And oþer fische on euery side is*, MS., *a*.
[10] *Meluel*, *a*.; *Mylwel*, Cx.
[11] *Tegentil*, *a*.; *Tetingel*, Cx.
[12] *lite*, *a*.

Qui non marinis moribus
Die bis undat fluctibus,
Sed undis crebro deficit,
Undis vicissim sufficit.
In Monia [1] Norwalliæ,[2]
Quæ Anglesey est hodie,
Est lapis, sicut didici,
Concors humano femori;
Qui, quantolibet spatio
Asportetur ab aliquo,[3]
Nocte per se revertitur.
Hoc comperit, ut legitur,
Hugo comes Salopiæ
Henrici primi[4] tempore;
Probandi causa lapidem
Ligavit ad consimilem
Magnis catenis ferreis,
Et projecit in fluctibus;
Qui tamen sub diluculo[5]
Visus est loco pristino.
Hunc semel quidam[6] rusticus
Ligavit suis cruribus;
Statim femur computruit;
Lapis ad locum rediit.

---

[1] *Menia*, B.
[2] *North Walliæ*, A.D., Gale.
[3] *Aquilo*, G., and Gale, absurdly.
[4] *primo*, B.
[5] *diliculo*, B.
[6] *quidem*, D.

Trevisa.

Þat flowe þ nou ȝ t alway,
As þe see twies a day;
But somtyme it is drye,
And somtyme al ful vp to[1] þe y ȝ e.
There is in North Wallia
In Mon, þat hatte Angleseia,
A stoon, acordynge ful[2] nyhe
As hit were a manis þyghe;
How fer euere þat stoon
Be i-bore of eny moon,
A[3] nyght he goo þ hoom his way.
Þat he fonde by assay
How,[4] þe erle of Schroisbury,[5]
In tyme of þe firste Henry;[6]
For he wolde þe so þ fynde,
Þat stoon to ano þ er he gan bynde[7]
Wi þ grete cheynes of ire,
And þrewe al in fyre[8]
I-bounde at oon hepe
In to a water depe.
ȝ et a morwe þat stoon
Was i-seie erliche in Moon.
A cherl helde hymself ful sligh,[9]
And bonde þat stoon to his þigh;
His þigh was roted[10] or day,
And þe stoon went away.

MS. Harl. 2261. fol. 58. b.

dothe not floo and refloo in the maner of a see, but otherwhile water habundethe there, and otherwhile hit wontethe water. Also there is a ston in Mononia in Northe Wales, whiche is callede Angleseye, as y haue lernede, accordenge to the hippe of man; whiche ston brou ȝ hte from that place by a certeyne space of eny man is returnede to his propre place ageyne in the ny ȝ hte, as hit hathe bene provede mony tymes. Hugo, therle of Schrewesbury, provenge the seide thynge in the tyme of kynge Henry the firste, bonde that ston to an other with grete cheynes of yrne, and caste hit in to the water, whiche ston was founde in the mornynge in his olde place. Whiche ston a churle bonde in a tyme to his the ȝ he, and hit rotede anoon, and the ston wente to

---

[1] *to*] by, *a.*, Cx.
[2] *wel*, *a.*
[3] *On*, Cx.
[4] *Hughe*, Cx.
[5] *Srouysbury*, *a.*; *Shrewsbury*, Cx.
[6] *Harry*, Cx.
[7] So *a.* and Cx.; *another kynde*, MS.
[8] So *a.*; *al in þe fyre*, MS.; *al y feren*, Cx.
[9] *sly ȝ*, *a.*, which has both *þigh* and *þi ȝ* below.
[10] *roten*, Cx.

Si opus fiat Veneris
Juxta procinctum lapidis,
Lapis sudorem faciet,
Et proles non proveniet.
Est[1] rupes audientium,
Sic dicta[2] per contrarium;
Ubi,[3] si sonum feceris
Cornu vel exclamaveris,
Hac parte non percipitur
Sonus, qui illac editur.
Est alia et[4] insula
Huic loco contigua,
Sed eremitas[5] continet,
Quorum si quisquam dissidet,
Statim se mures congregant;
Escas eorum devorant.
Nec cessat hæc molestia,[6]
Donec cesset discordia.
Sicut hic et Hibernia[7]
Gens extat melancholica,[8]
Sic sancti hujus climatis
Propositi sunt vindicis.
In hac quoque provincia,
Hibernia, et Scotia

---

[1] *Est*] Et, E.
[2] So C.; *dictus*, A.D.E., Gale (though having *rupes* or *rupis* above).
[3] *Ibi*, A.
[4] *Est et alia*, D.
[5] *heremitas*, MSS.
[6] *malitia*, A.
[7] So D., Gale; *Hibernica*, A.E.
[8] *malencolica*, A.D.; *malancolia*, B.

TREVISA.

ȝif me doop[1] leccherie
Nigh þat stoon faste bie,[2]
Swoot comeþ of þe stoon,
But child comeþ þere noon.
There is a roche wel[3] wonderly,
Þe roche of herynge be contrary,
Theyȝ þere crie eny man i-born,
And blowe also wiþ an[4] horn,
Noyse þat is þere i-made, þeiȝ þou abide,
Þow schalt here non in þis side.
Þere is anoþer ilond
Faste by Mon at þe hond,
Heremytes þere beeþ ryue;
ȝif ony of hem dooþ stryue,
Alle þe mys þat may be gete
Comeþ and eteþ al hir mete;
Þanne ceseþ neuere þat woo,
Ar þe strif[5] cese also.
As men in þis londe
Beeþ angry, as in Irlond,
So seyntes of þis contray
Beeþ also wrechefull alway.
Also in þis lond,
In Irlond, and in Scotlond

MS. HARL. 2261.

his propre place. And if the synne of lechery be fulle-fillede with in the caste of ston to hit, that ston wille sende from hit as sweetenge, and also thei schalle not gette a childe. Also there is an hille of men herenge, callede so by name contrarious, that and if thou make a sownde, other elles blawe with an horne, the sownde is not perceyvede in that parte. Also there is an other yle contiguate to that place, conteynenge heremites; and if there be discorde amonge theyme, myce gedre anoon and devoure the meites of theyme, whiche greuaunce dothe not cease tille that peace be reconsilede amonge theim. Also that peple of that cuntre be replete with the melancholy lyke to the peple of Yrlonde, so seyntes of that cuntre be prompte vn to vengeaunce; where belles and crokede staves be hade in grete veneration, as men vse in Yrlonde and in Scotte-

[1] *men don*, Cx. (as usual.)
[2] *that stone by*, Cx.
[3] *right*, Cx.
[4] So Cx.; *wiþoute*, MS., *a*.
[5] So *a*. and Cx.; *firste*, MS.

Campanæ [1] sunt et baculi
Ornatu sub [2] multiplici,
Tam digni proculdubio
In clero et in populo,
Quod vereantur hodie
Perjurium committere
Tam super horum alterum,
Quam super evangelium.
Ad Basingwerk [3] fons oritur,
Qui sacer [4] vulgo dicitur;
Et [5] tantis bullis scaturit,
Quod mox injecta rejicit;
Tam magnum flumen procreat,
Ut Cambriæ sufficiat.
Ægri, qui dant rogamina,
Reportant medicamina.
Rubro guttatos lapides
In scatebris [6] reperies;
In signum sacri sanguinis,
Quem Wenefredæ virginis
Guttur truncatum fuderat.
Qui scelus hoc patraverat,
Ac nati et nepotuli,
Latrant, ut canum catuli;

---

[1] *Campani*, C.D.

[2] *sub*] om. A.

[3] *Basingworth*, B.

[4] *Qui sacer*] Fons sicut, C. And so D. apparently (fic[9].)

[5] *Qui*, D.

[6] *scatebro*, B.

Ben[1] belles and staues
[That][2] in worschippe men haues,
And beeþ worschipped [so][3] þanne
[Of][4] clerkes and lewed menne,
Þat dredeþ also
To swere by[5] ony of þo
Staf oþer belle,
As hit were þe gospelle.
At Basyngwere[6] is a welle,
Þat sacer hiȝt, as men dooþ telle.
Hit springeþ so sore, as men may see,
What is cast yn, it proweþ aȝee.
Þere of springeþ a grete stronde;
Hit were i-now for al þat londe.
Seke at þat place
Haueþ boþe hele and grace.
In þe welmes ofter þan ones
Is y-founde reed splekked[7] stones;
In tokene of [þe][8] blood reed,
Þat þe mayde Wynefrede
Schadde at þat putte,[9]
Whan hire þrote was i-kutte.
He þat dede þat dede
Haþ sorwe on his sede;
His children at alle stoundes
Berkeþ as whelpes of houndes.

TREVISA.

---

lande, whiche peple drede more to swere by theym then on a masse booke. Also at Basyngwere spryngethe an holy welle, whiche is of so grete feruence that hit castethe owte thynges caste in to hit, whiche bredethe so grete a water that myȝhte suffice to alle Wales; whiche water ȝiffethe grete helpe to seke peple; where thou schalle fynde stones hauenge in theym as dropes of blood, in the signe of the holy bloode whiche floede owte from the throte of Seynte Wenefride. For whiche offence the doers of hit and alle theire childer and successores berke in the maner of dogges,

MS. HARL. 2261.

---

[1] So Cx.; *Boþe*, MS., *a.*
[2] Added from Cx.
[3] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[4] Added from Cx.
[5] *on*, Cx.
[6] *Basyngwerke*, Cx.
[7] *plekked*, *a.*; *sperclid*, Cx.
[8] Added from *a.* and Cx.
[9] *put*, *a.*; *pytte*, Cx., and *kytte*, below.

Donec sanctæ [1] suffragium
Poscant [2] ad hunc fonticulum,
Vel ad urbem Salopiæ,
Ubi quiescit hodie.

---

[1] *sanctum*, B. | [2] *poscunt*, B.

For þy[1] pray þat mayde grace
Riȝt at þat welle place,
Oþir in Schroysbury[2] strete;
Þere þat mayde resteþ swete.

TREVISA.

vn til thei aske the suffrage and helpe of Seynte Wenefride at that welle, other elles at the cite of Schrewisbury, where sche restethe now, hade there in grete veneracion.

MS. HARL. 2261.

[1] So MS. and *a.*; *For to they*, Cx. | [2] *Shrowsbury*, Cx.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

Description of Paradise in the Geographia Universalis.

MS. Arundel. Mus. Brit. 123. f. 14 b. vellum 4to. XIV. cent.

Paradisus est locus in partibus orientis constitutus, cujus vocabulum ex Græco in Latinum vertitur *hortus*. Porro in Hebraico *Eden* dicitur, quod apud nos *deliciæ* interpretatur, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo ij. Est enim hortus deliciarum, ut dicit idem, quia cum ex omni genere ligni et pomiferarum arborum est consitus, habens in se lignum vitæ, non ibi frigus, non ibi æstus, sed perpetua aeris temperies, ex cujus medio fons prorumpens totum nemus[2] irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina; cujus aditus post peccatum primi hominis humano generi interclusus fuit, quia undique flammea rumphea, id est muro igneo circumcinctus,[3] ita ut ejus pene cum cœlo incendium conjungatur; præsidiumque angelorum arcendis spiritibus malis super rumpheæ flammam est a Domino ordinatum, ut homines flammæ, angelos vero malos boni angeli submoveant, ne alicui spiritui vel carni peccatrici aditus pateat paradisi. Hucusque Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo iij., ubi tractat de regionibus. Secundum Magistrum autem in Historiis, capitulo ij. super Genesim, dicitur sic: Plantavit, inquit, Deus, id est, a principio creationis, herbis et arboribus, locum deliciarum aptavit, et hoc in mundi principio, scilicet in oriente; et ille locus est amœnissimus,

Ibi non est frigus nec æstus, sed perpetua aeris temperies.[1]

De muro igneo circa paradisum.

[1] The marginal notes are in another hand and ink.

[2] *venus*, MS.

[3] *circumcincta*, MS.

longo terræ et maris contractu a nostro habitabili[1] segregatus, id est altus, ut usque ad lunarem globum attingat, ubi et propter situs altitudinem aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt, ut dicit idem. De paradiso autem dicit Johannes Damascenus: Quia vero ex visibili creatura conditurus erat Deus hominem ad imaginem suam et similitudinem, sicut quendam regem et principem omnis terræ et omnium quæ sunt in ipsa, construxit ante quasi quandam regionem, in qua conversatus beatam duceret vitam; et iste locus divinus est paradisus, Dei manibus in Eden,[2] id est, deliciis et voluptate, plantatus, in oriente quidem omni terra celsior, penitus temperato et tenuissimo aere circumfulgens, plantis semper floridis comatus et bono odore plenus, lumine repletus [et] pulchritudine universa, gaudii et exultationis promptuarium, creaturæ sensibilis excedens intelligentiam; divina regio et digna eo[3] qui secundum imaginem erat, in quo nil irrationabilium habitabat, sed solus homo divinarum[4] manuum plasma. Item Strabus et Beda dicunt quod paradisus locus in oriente positus, interjecto oceano et montibus oppositis, a regionibus quas incolunt homines secretus et remotissimus est, pertingensque altitudine usque ad circulum ipsius lunæ; fuit locus summe conveniens homini innocenti propter ejus summam temperiem, quare non frigus ibi est nec æstus, sed perpetua temperies, ut dicit Isidorus. Item propter omnium bonorum abundantiam; quia, ut dicit Augustinus de Civitate Dei xiiij., capitulo x., quid timere aut dolere poterant in tantorum tanta affluentia bonorum, ubi non aberat quicquam quod bona voluntas adipisceretur,[5] nec inerat quod carnem [vel] animum hominis feliciter viventis offenderet vel in aliqua molestaret? Item propter summam amœnitatem; nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium, ut dicit

Aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt ad paradisum.

Paradisus est omni terra altior.

De pulchritudine et gloria paradisi.

De altitudine situs paradisi.

Continua temperies ibi est.

Omnium bonorum abundantia.

Summa amœnitas.

[1] *habitali*, MS.
[2] *Edom*, MS.
[3] *digno digna ei*, MS.
[4] *divinorum*, MS.
[5] *adipiscere*, MS.

Damascenus, quod attestatur tam arborum quam florum et frondium immarcessibilis pulchritudo; nam arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Item propter summam jocunditatem, quod attestatur fructuum dulcedo, quia ibi est omne lignum pulchrum visu et suavissimum ad vescendum, Genesis ij. Idem etiam attestatur lucis plenitudo, nam puritate aeris claritas lucis proportionatur, ut dicit Beda. Item propter soli fecunditatem, quod attestatur fontium irrigantium multitudo; dicitur autem, Genesis ij.: Fons ascendebat et irrigabat paradisum, qui in quatuor flumina est divisus, Genesis ij. Item propter loci securitatem, quod attestatur situationis ejus altitudo; nam lunarem tangit circulum, ut dicunt Beda et Isidorus, id est, pertingit usque ad aerem quietum post istum aerem turbulentum, ubi finis est et terminus exhalationum et vaporum humidorum quorum fluxus et progressus lunari corpori approximatur; sicut exponit Alexander, non secundum veritatem attingere [1] in altitudine orbem lunæ, sed circulum lunarem attingere hyperbolice, ut ejus maxima altitudo et incomparabilis respectu terræ inferioris insinuaretur. Item propter ejus incorruptibilitatem, quod attestatur existentium ibi vitæ longitudo; nam ibi sunt Elyas et Enoch vivi usque hodie et incorrupti, [ut] dicit Magister in Historiis. Nihil enim potest ibi mori quod est vivum; nec hoc mirandum est de paradiso, cum in Hibernia scimus esse insulam in qua mortuorum corpora non putrescunt, et aliam in qua homines mori non possunt, sed oportet ut ultimo senio extra insulam deferantur; quære supra de Hibernia in littera J. De paradiso autem et ejus situ fuit opinio apud gentiles, ut refert Plinius, ubi loquitur de insulis Fortunatis; de quibus etiam loquitur Isidorus, libro xv., inter quas est una quæ omnia fere parturit bona, ubi humus sponte procreat omnes fructus, ubi in jugis collium arbores virore frondium et dulcore fructuum semper vestiuntur, ubi ad herbarum vicem

Pulchritudo paradisi.

Summa jocunditas.

Plenitudo lucis.

Fecunditas soli.

Securitas loci.

Incorruptibilitas loci.

Elias et Ennok ibi sunt.

Nil ibi moritur.

De loco in Hibernia in quo homines non moriuntur.

De insulis Fortunatis.

[1] *nam . . . . attingit*, MS., against the sense; see below.

messis et olus crescit, unde et gentilium error et sæcularium carmina poetarum propter soli fecunditatem easdem insulas paradisum esse putaverunt; quod quidem ponere est erroneum, cum prædictæ insulæ Fortunatæ sint in occidente contra lævam Mauritaniæ in oceano collocatæ, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv. Paradisus autem in oriente, in altissimo monte, de cujus cacumine cadentes aquæ maximum faciunt lacum, et in suo casu tantum faciunt strepitum et fragorem, quod omnes incolæ juxta prædictum lacum nascuntur surdi ex immoderato sonitu seu fragore sensum auditus in parvulis corrumpente, ut dicit Basilius in Exameron; similiter et Ambrosius. Ex illo autem lacu, velut ex uno fonte, procedunt illa flumina quatuor, Phison qui et Ganges, Gyon qui et Nilus dicitur, et Tigris ac Euphrates de quibus in libro Geneseos fit mentio specialis.

Propter sonitum aquarum cadentium fiunt homines surdi.

The same, as it is given in the shorter form of the Polychronicon (C. D.[1])

Isid. li. [*xiv.*] *c.* 3. Paradisus locus est in Oriente, longo maris tractu a nostro habitabili segregatus, cujus vocabulum a Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ;* quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum.* Est enim locus omni genere arborum consitus, ubi est et lignum vitæ; cujus loci aditus post peccatum primi hominis interclusus est; septus est enim undique rumphea flammea, id est, muro igneo, ita ut ejus cum cœlo pæne jungatur incendium. Supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni ad arcendum spiritus malos; rumphea etiam arcet homines. Habet etiam locus ille salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus habet nec æstum; et quicquid ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui rei attestatur quod Enoch et Helias

[1] The text is taken from D. Compare pp. 66–78 of this volume.

adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus.* Habet etiam locus ille amœnitatem, nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium. Ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt; flores non marcescunt. Habet etiam jocunditatem; cui rei attestatur fructuum dulcedo. *Giraldus,* 3. Et omne lignum pulchrum visu et ad vescendum suave. Habet et securitatem, cui rei attestatur loci altitudo. *Beda.* Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum. *Petrus,* c. 13. Idcirco aquæ diluvii illuc minime pervenerunt. R. Quod exponens Alexander,[1] dicit ita esse non secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sit ejus incomparabilis altitudo respectu nostri habitabilis ostenderetur. *Basilius in Exameron* Igitur de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum; ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isidorus libro quarto.* De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina. *Josephus libro primo.* Nam Phison educitur in Indiam; Euphrates et Tigris in mare Rubrum feruntur; Gion vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit. *Isidorus libro tertiodecimo.* Salustius tamen auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauneis montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasi montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum fluminum, Tigris et Euphratis, quæ ambo post longum circuitum circa Mesopotamiam descendunt in mare Rubrum. Idcirco Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum. *Petrus cap. quarto decimo.* Primus fluvius Phison circuit Indiam trahens aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangoro rege Indiæ, et interpretatur *caterva,* eo quod decem flumina recipit. Secundus dictus est Gion, qui et Nilus, et circuit Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius Tigris, secun-

[1] "Quid quod deliciis ornatus
"apex paradisi
"Lunarem tangit vertice pene
"globum?"

Alex. Neckham, *De Laud. Div. Sap.*, p. 441 (in this series), where much in common with Higden may be read.

dum Josephum, dicitur Diglath, quod sonat *acutum*, eo quod velox sit, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus Euphrates, quod sonat frugifer, et vadit contra Chaldæos. Hæc quatuor flumina ab eodem fonte manant et separantur; et iterum quædam eorum inter se commiscentur, et separantur; sæpe etiam absorbentur a terra et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt. Inde est quod de ortu eorum varia leguntur; quia Ganges dicitur nasci in locis Caucasi montis; Nilus non procul ab Atlante monte; Tigris et Euphrates in Armenia.

Specimens of the Orthography of Tenison's MS. of Trevisa, and of Caxton's printed Text. (*Compare p.* 385.)

TENISON'S MS. OF TREVISA, our *a*. (now MS. Addit. 24194, Mus. Brit.)

Beda, li°. p°. Out of Irlond, þat is, þe ꝑpre contray of scottes, come Irische men wiþ here duke þat het renda, and wiþ loue oþ° wiþ strēgþ° made hem cheef Cees and citees besides þe pittes in þe Norþside. Gir̃. Now þe lond is schortliche I cleped Scotlond of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede þerynne þre hundred ȝere and fiftene anon to reed williams tyme þat was Malcolins broþ°. ꝯ. Meny euedencis we haueþ þat þis scotlond is ofte I cleped and hatte hĩbnia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. þ°fore beda, li°. 2°. c°. 10°., seiþ þat laurence, archebisshop of Donbar, was archebisshop of Scottes þat wonede in an ilond þat hatte hĩbnia and is next to britayne. ¶ also beda, li°. 3°. c°. 27., seiþ pestilens of moreyn bar doūn hĩbnia. also, li°. 3°. c°. 2°., seiþ þe Scottes þat wonede in þe souþ side of hĩbnia; also, li°. 4°. c°. 3°. he seiþ þat chadde was a ȝongelynge and lerned þe rule of monkes in hĩbnia. Also,

CAXTON'S PRINTED TEXT.

Beda, libro primo Out of yrlond that is the propre countraye of the scottes come yrysshe men with her duke that was called renda. And with loue ⁊ with strengthe made hem chyef sees and cytees beside the pyctes in the northsyde Gir, Now the londe is shortly called scotland of scottes that come out of yrlōd ⁊ regned therinne. iij, C, xv, yere vnto the rede williams tyme that was malcolyns broder. ꝯ. many euydencis we haue of this scotland that it is ofte called and heyte hibernia, as yrlond doth, therfor beda, libro 2. c. p, seyth that laurence archibisshop of dunbar was archibisshop of scottes that dwellyd in an ylond that heet hibernia ⁊ is next to brytayne. Also beda, li, 3. c, 27. seyth Pestelence of moreyn bare doun hibernia, Also. libro tercio. capitulo secundo seyth that the scottes that dwellyd in the south side of hibernia, also libro 4. capitulo tercio, he sayth that chadde was a yonglyng and lerned the rewle of monkes in hibernia, Also libro quarto capitulo visesimo (sic)

li°. 4°. c°. 22°., Egfrid' kyng of Norþhüberland destroyede hĩbnia. Also, li°. 5°. c°. 15°., þe moste deel of Scottis in hĩbnia. ¶ And in þe same chapitre he clepeþ hĩbnia ꝑpurliche I nempned: þat West ylond. þat is an hundred myle fro ev^{o}y britayne and deꝑted wiþ þe see bytwene, and clepeþ hĩbnia þat contre þat now hatte Scotland. þere he telleþ þat adamnan, abbot of þis Ilond, seillede to hĩbnia forto teche Irisshe men þe laweful Esterday, and at þe laste come hoom a3en into scotlond. *ysid' eth̃ li°.* 14°. Men of þ^{o} scotlond hatte scottes in here owne langage and pittes also. For somtyme here body was I peynt in þis manere; þei wolde sõtyme wiþ scharpe egged tool pycche ꝫ kerue here owne bodyes and make þ^{o}on dyv^{o}s figures and schappes, and peynte hem wiþ Inke oþ^{o} wiþ oþ^{o} peynture and colo^{r} and for þey were so I peynt þei were I cleped picty, þat is, I peynt.

secundo, Egfridus kyng of northũberlaud (sic) destroyed hibernia. Also libro. 4. ca. 15. The moost dele of scottes in hibernia, And in the same chapytre he clepeth hibernia proprely named, That west ylonde is an honderd myle from eueryche brytayne and departed with the see bitwene, And called hibernia that countray that now is callid scotland, there he telleth that adanman (sic) abbote of this ylond seyled to hĩbernia for to teche yryshmen the lawful ester daye And atte laste cam agayne in to scotlõd. Ysi, ethli (sic) 14. Mẽ of this scotlãd, ben named scottes in their own lãgage ꝫ pyctes also· for sõtyme her body was peinted in this man'. they wold sõtyme with a sharp egged tole prycke ꝫ kerue her own bodyes. ꝫ make theron dyũse figures ꝫ shappes, ꝫ peynte hem with Inke or with other peynture, or colour. And by cause they were so peynted they were called picti, that is to saye peynted.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[3724.—1000.—2/65.]

LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners, or under the Direction of the Right Honourable the Master of the Rolls, which may be purchased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London; Messrs. J. H. and J. Parker, Oxford and London; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh; and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25*s.* boards, or 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828), boards: vols. 2 and 3, *price* 21*s.* each; vol. 4, *price* 24*s.*

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* The Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. (1812), folio, boards. *Price* 18*s.*

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM, Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* The Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21*s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM, large folio. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices (1819—1828). *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42*s.*

"FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ," &c.; or, Rymer's Fœdera, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21*s.* each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s.* 6*d.*; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s.*

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s.* each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s.*; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s.*

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81*s.*, cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir N. HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98*s.*; or separately, 14*s.* each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

*** The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s.*

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s.*

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14*s.*; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s.*

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s.*; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s.* 6*d.*; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS. 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price* 8*s.*

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.* Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42*s.*

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s.*

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 ; *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s.*

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above ; Henry III.—Henry VI. ; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. *Price* 10*s.*

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12*s.*

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH. 11 vols. 4to., cloth, (1830—1852), with Indices of Persons and Places. *Price* 5*l.* 15*s.* 6*d.* ; or separately, *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40*s.*

In the Press.

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq.

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[IMPERIAL 8VO. *Price* 15*s.* each Volume or Part.]

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610.
Vol. II.—1611–1618.
Vol. III.—1619–1623.
Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., V.P.S.A. 1858–1864.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.
Vol. II.—1627–1628.
Vol. III.—1628–1629.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631.
Vol. V.—1631–1633.
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.
Vol. VII.—1634–1635.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1864.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.
Vol. II.—1661–1662.
Vol. III.—1663–1664.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.
Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. VI.—1666–1667.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1864.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts),—1515–1518.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. II.—1574–1585.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1580–1590.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. II.—1559–1560.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. VIII.—1635.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. III.—1519, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. VII.—1667–1668.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. II.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[Royal 8vo. *Price* 10*s*. each Volume or Part.]

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. Monumenta Franciscana; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.
5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

9. EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1860.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859–1861.

15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA (A.D. 449—1298). *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

20. ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

21. THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1861–1863.

22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861–1863.

25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

26. DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862.

27. ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216–1235. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1862.

28. THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—THE ENGLISH HISTORY OF THOMAS WALSINGHAM, MONK OF SAINT ALBAN'S. Vol. I., 1272–1381. Vol. II., 1381–1422. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1864.

29. CHRONICON ABBATIÆ EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMIÆ ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

30. RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. I., 447–871. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.

31. YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 30–31, and 32–33. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1864.

32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Herault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ. Vol. I. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863.

34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1863.

35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864–1865.

36. ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864.

37. MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

38. CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. I. ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864.

39. RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. From Albina to 688. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, BY JOHN DE WAVRIN. From Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENI, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1865.

In the Press.

LE LIVERE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE. *Edited by* J. GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight.

THE WARS OF THE DANES IN IRELAND: written in the Irish language. *Edited by* the Rev. J. H. TODD, D.D., Librarian of the University of Dublin.

A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* GEORGE W. DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.

A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. II. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.

OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. II. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford.

ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL AND CLERICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD BETWEEN THE REIGNS OF HENRY III. AND HENRY VII. *Edited by* the Rev. H. ANSTEY, M.A.

ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.

RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, and Librarian of the University, Cambridge.

THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ. Vol. II. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.

HISTORIA MINOR MATTHÆI PARIS. *Edited by* Sir FREDERICK MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. II. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge.

CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIEROSOLYMIS. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.

THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—Vol. III., THE CHRONICLES OF RISHANGER, TROKELOWE, BLANEFORD, AND OTHERS. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. 20th, 21st, and 22nd Years. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN (continued). *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.

CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENI, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. II. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., of Durham University.

WILLIELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM, LIBRI V. *Edited by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

February 1865.